

795 F75h2

Foster

Foster's Complete Hoyle.

*Foster's Complete Hoyle.*

*CRC*

kansas city



public library

KANSAS CITY, MISSOURI

Books will be issued only  
on presentation of library card.  
Please report lost cards and  
change of residence promptly.  
Card holders are responsible for  
all books, records, films, pictures  
or other library materials  
checked out as their property.



**CRC**



3 1148 00249 4631

AVIATION

227

01-07-77

00-16-77

JUN 5 '67

FEB 21 '72

NOV 11 '72

00-14-77

NOV 10 '77

MAY 07 '72

NOV 15 1976

MAY DEC 31 1976

DEC 19 1977

JUN 3 1977







FOSTER'S COMPLETE  
HOYLE



# FOSTER'S COMPLETE HOYLE

## AN ENCYCLOPEDIA OF GAMES

INCLUDING ALL INDOOR GAMES PLAYED TO-DAY, WITH  
SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY, ILLUSTRATIVE HANDS  
AND  
ALL OFFICIAL LAWS TO DATE

**Revised and Enlarged**  
**With the Complete Laws of**  
**Contract and Duplicate Bridge**

BY

**R. F. FOSTER**

*Author of Sixty-nine Books on Cards and Other Indoor Games  
and the Inventor of the Self-Playing Whist  
Cards and the Eleven Rule*

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS DIAGRAMS  
AND ENGRAVINGS

NEW YORK  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY  
PUBLISHERS

Copyright, 1937, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

Copyright, 1927, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

Copyright, 1924, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

Copyright, 1922, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

Copyright, 1914, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

Copyright, 1909, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

Copyright, 1897, by  
FREDERICK A. STOKES COMPANY

*All Rights Reserved*

~~BIND APPROX~~

CRC

1.50

Printed in the United States of America

944699



## PUBLISHERS' NOTE.

---

*This book is entirely original.* It is the work of a single author, who has made the subject of games a life-long study, who keeps in touch with all new games, and with changes in old games. He has written the description of each game expressly for this book.

The treatment is systematic and uniform. The description of each game begins with the apparatus and the players, and then follows the natural course of play, step by step, until the end. Each part of the game is described in a separate paragraph, and every paragraph is preceded by catch-words in heavy-faced type, so that the entire work is in the nature of a dictionary, in which any part of any game can be found immediately.

All technical terms are accompanied by a full definition of their meaning, and are printed in full-face type.

All disputed points have been settled in an entirely original manner. Instead of taking any one person as an authority, the history of each game has been traced from its source to its present condition, and its rules have been carefully compared with those of other members of the same family. The times and the reasons for the various changes have been ascertained,

and the rules given are not only in strict accord with the true spirit of the game, but are based upon common sense and equity. When official laws for any game exist they are given in full.

The list of technical terms is the most complete ever published.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE		PAGE
A LIST OF TERMS .....	633	Auction Pitch .....	274
Ace in the Pot, <i>dice</i> .....	565	Authors .....	448
All Fours Family .....	268	BACCARA .....	469
All Fives .....	273	Baccara Chemin de Fer .....	474
Auction Pitch .....	274	Backgammon .....	536
Blind All Fours .....	269	Opening Throws .....	544
California Jack .....	274	English Game .....	546
Cinch .....	278	American Game .....	547
Commercial Pitch .....	274	The Laws .....	549
Dom Pedro .....	278	Russian Backgammon .....	550
Double Pedro .....	278	Banking Games .....	464
High Five .....	278	Bank-shot Billiards .....	574
Old Sledge .....	269	Baulk-line Billiards .....	573
Pedro .....	277	Bergen Game, <i>dominoes</i> .....	557
Pedro Sancho .....	277	Bézique Family .....	318
Sell-out .....	274	Bézique .....	319
Seven-up .....	269	Chinese Bézique .....	338
Shasta Sam .....	274	Chouette Bézique .....	338
Smudge .....	277	Penchant .....	328
Snoozer .....	278	Rubicon Bézique .....	330
American Billiard Laws .....	575	Cinq-Cents .....	327
American Laws of Bridge .....	44	Four-handed .....	326
American Pyramid Pool .....	586	Polish Bézique .....	326
American Skat .....	382	Three-handed .....	326
Auction Binocle .....	351	Bid Euchre .....	231
Auction Bridge .....	3	Bid Whist .....	646
Bidding the Hands .....	10	Bierspiel .....	263
Defensive Calling .....	32	Billiards and Pool .....	568
Laws ( <i>see under Contract Bridge</i> ) .....		American Game .....	572
Penalties .....	6	Amer. Pyramid Pool .....	586
Scoring .....	6	Baulk-line Billiards .....	573
Varieties of Auction .....	105	Black Pool .....	601
Auction Cinch .....	284	Books on Billiards .....	609
Auction Euchre .....	223	Bottle Pool .....	608
Auction Hearts .....	298	Chicago Pool .....	592

	PAGE		PAGE
Billiards and Pool ( <i>Cont'd</i> )		Canfield .....	652
Colour-ball Pool .....	598	Cartomancie .....	461
Continuous Pool .....	590	Cassino .....	426
Cow-boy Pool .....	593	Spade Cassino .....	433
Cushion Carroms .....	574	21 Point Cassino .....	432
English Billiard Laws .....	603	Royal Cassino .....	433
English Billiards .....	602	Draw Cassino .....	433
English Pool .....	598	Cayenne .....	109
English Pyramids Pool .....	591	Centennial, <i>dice</i> .....	566
Fifteen-ball Pool .....	583	Chance, and its Laws .....	610
Forty-one Pool .....	592	Concurrent Events .....	613
High-low-jack Game .....	592	Conflicting Events .....	613
Kelly Rotation .....	588	Dice Probabilities .....	614
Laws of Billiards,		Distribution of Suits .....	615
American .....	575	Distribution of Trumps .....	615
Little Corporal .....	607	Doubling up Bets .....	616
Pin Pool .....	606	Luck .....	610
Rotation Pocket .....	587	Martingales .....	616
Shell Out .....	591	Maturity of the Chances .....	611
Snooker Pool .....	595	Playing Progression .....	617
Spanish Game of		Poker Probabilities .....	614
Billiards .....	608	Successive Events .....	611
Binocle .....	339	Whist Probabilities .....	615
Melds .....	342	Checkers .....	525
Auction Binocle .....	351	The Openings .....	528
Three-handed .....	349	The Four Positions .....	530
Four-handed .....	350	Theory of the Move .....	532
Black Jack or Lady .....	300	Illustrative Games .....	534
Black Pool, English .....	601	Devil and Tailors .....	535
Blind All Fours .....	269	Checker Laws .....	536
Blind Cinch .....	284	Losing Game .....	535
Blind Euchre .....	222	Polish Draughts .....	535
Blind Hookey .....	475	Chemin de fer .....	474
Block Game, <i>dominoes</i> .....	554	Chess .....	494
Bluff, <i>poker</i> .....	201	The Openings .....	505
Boodle .....	455	The Endings .....	515
Books on Billiards .....	609	Games at Odds .....	513
Boston .....	130	Knight's Tour .....	518
Payments .....	136	American Laws .....	519
French Boston .....	144	Chicago Pool .....	592
Russian Boston .....	148	Chinese Bézique .....	338
Boston de Fontainebleau .....	139	Chinese Fan Tan .....	476
Bottle Pool .....	608	Chinese Whist .....	149
Bowling Alley Laws .....	621	Chouette Bézique .....	338
Bridge .....	3	Chuck-Luck .....	488
CALIFORNIA JACK .....	274	Cinch .....	278
Call-ace Euchre .....	231	Auction Cinch .....	284
		Blind Cinch .....	284

	PAGE		PAGE
Cinch ( <i>Cont'd</i> )		Dice Games ( <i>Cont'd</i> )	
Progressive Cinch ....	284	Under and Over Seven	491
Sixty-three .....	284	Vingt-et-un .....	566
Widow Cinch .....	285	Discard Hearts .....	300
Illustrative Hands ....	286	Distribution of Suits, Whist	616
Cinch Laws .....	288	Distribution of Trumps,	
Razzle-Dazzle .....	284	Whist .....	616
Cinq-Cents .....	327	Division Loo .....	263
Colour-ball Pool .....	598	Doctrine of Chances .....	610
Commercial Pitch .....	274	Domino Hearts .....	301
Commit .....	451	Dominoes .....	553
Conquian .....	434	All Fives .....	557
Continuous Pool .....	590	All Threes .....	558
Contract Bridge .....	42	Bergen Game .....	557
Bidding the Hands ...	10	Block Game .....	554
Defensive Calling ...	18	Draw Game .....	554
LAWS .....	34	Domino Pool .....	557
Playing the Hands ...	18	Matadore .....	556
Scoring .....	7	Muggins .....	557
Cow-boy Pool .....	593	Sebastopol .....	557
Craps, <i>dice</i> .....	562	Dom Pedro .....	278
Cribbage .....	390	Double Pedro .....	278
Five-Card Cribbage ..	408	Doubling-up Bets .....	616
Six-Card Cribbage ...	392	Draughts .....	525
Seven-Card Cribbage..	410	Draw Cassino .....	433
Solitaire Cribbage ...	659	Draw Game, <i>dominoes</i> ...	554
Three-hand Cribbage..	409	Draw Poker .....	164
Four-hand Cribbage ..	409	Drive Whist .....	646
Cushion Carroms .....	574	Duplicate Bridge .....	50
Cut-throat Euchre .....	221	Apparatus Necessary .	52
		Club against Club ....	53
DICE GAMES .....	559	Gilman's System ....	56
Ace in the Pot .....	565	Howell's System .....	55
Centennial .....	566	Pair against Pair ....	57
Chuck-Luck .....	488	Team against Team ..	54
Crap Shooting .....	562	Laws of Duplicate	
Drop Dead .....	567	Contract Bridge ....	58
Going to Boston .....	565	Dutch Bank .....	475
Law of Chances .....	561		
Multiplication .....	566	EARL OF COVENTRY .....	450
Passe Dix .....	567	Ecarté .....	237
Poker Dice .....	563	Jeux de règle .....	243
Probabilities .....	614	Pool Ecarté .....	250
Raffles .....	561	Enflé .....	314
Round the Spot .....	566	English Billiards .....	602
Sweat .....	488	English Billiard Laws ...	603
Throwing Dice .....	560	English Following Pool ..	598
		English Pyramid Pool ....	591

	PAGE		PAGE
Euchre Family of Games ..	207	French Games:—	
Euchre .....	208	Baccara .....	469
Auction Euchre .....	223	Cinq-Cents .....	327
Bid Euchre, or 500 ..	231	Ferme .....	468
Blind Euchre .....	222	Humbbug Whist .....	108
Call-ace Euchre .....	231	Imperial .....	424
Cut-Throat .....	221	Macao .....	468
Five-handed .....	230	Nain Jaune .....	453
French Euchre .....	223	Rouge et Noir .....	482
Jambone .....	227	Roulette .....	484
Jamboree .....	227	Trente et Quarante ..	482
Laps .....	227	Vingt-et-un .....	465
Laws of Euchre .....	232	Frog .....	389
Military Euchre .....	225	GAIGEL .....	350
Penalty Euchre .....	223	General Laws, Card Games	630
Progressive Euchre ..	224	German Games:—	
Railroad Euchre .....	226	Binocle .....	339
Set-Back Euchre .....	222	Kreutz-Mariage .....	361
Seven-handed Euchre ..	228	Schwellen .....	314
Slams .....	227	Sixty-six .....	355
FAN TAN .....	476	Skat .....	363
Fan Tan with Cards .....	457	Solo .....	446
Farmer, or Ferme .....	408	Go-bang .....	552
Faro .....	477	Going to Boston, dice ..	565
Fifteen-ball Pool .....	583	HALMA .....	552
Five-card Cribbage .....	408	Hazard, dice .....	488, 562
Five-card Loo .....	267	Hearts .....	293
Five-handed Euchre .....	230	Auction Hearts .....	298
Five Hundred .....	231	Black Jack .....	300
Five and Ten .....	260	Black Lady .....	300
Five or Nine .....	457	Discard Hearts .....	300
Flat Poker .....	185	Domino Hearts .....	301
Following Pool .....	601	Heartsette .....	301
Fortune Telling .....	461	Howell's Hearts .....	296
Forty-five .....	260	Illustrative Hands ..	310
Forty-one Pool .....	592	Joker Hearts .....	299
Four-ball Billiards .....	574	Laws of Hearts .....	315
Four-handed Cribbage ..	409	Progressive Hearts ..	300
“ “ Bézique .....	326	Spot Hearts .....	299
“ “ Binocle .....	350	Sweepstake Hearts ..	296
“ “ Sixty-six .....	361	Three-handed Hearts ..	298
Four Jacks .....	313	Two-handed .....	298
Freeze-out, poker .....	184	Heart Solo .....	447
French Boston .....	144	Heartsette .....	301
French Carrom Game .....	572	High Five .....	278
French Euchre .....	223	High-low-jack .....	269
		“ “ “ Pool .....	592

# CONTENTS

xi

	PAGE		PAGE
Howell's Hearts .....	296	Losing Game, <i>draughts</i> ...	535
Humbug Whist .....	108	Lotto .....	487
I DOUBT IT .....	654	Luck .....	610
Imperial .....	424	MACAO .....	468
Irish Loo .....	267	Mah Jong .....	667
JACK POTS, <i>poker</i> .....	179	Man-of-war Billiards .....	603
Jambone, <i>euchre</i> .....	227	Martingales .....	616
Jamboree, <i>euchre</i> .....	227	Matadore, <i>dominoes</i> .....	556
Jass .....	655	Matrimony .....	452
Two-handed Jass .....	656	Maturity of the Chances ..	611
Jeux de Règle, <i>écarté</i> .....	243	Michigan .....	455
Jink Game, <i>spoil five</i> .....	259	Military Euchre .....	225
Joker Hearts .....	299	Mistigris, <i>poker</i> .....	172
KELLY ROTATION BILLIARDS	588	Monte Bank .....	490
Keno, or Lotto .....	487	Monte Carlo Betting Limit	485
Klondike .....	460	Morelles .....	552
Kreutz-Mariage .....	361	Muggins, <i>dominoes</i> .....	557
LANSQUENET .....	491	Multiplication, <i>dice</i> .....	566
Laps, <i>euchre</i> .....	227	NAIN JAUNE .....	453
Law of Chances .....	610	Napoleon .....	251
Laws of all Games .....	630	National Games:— .....	362
Laws, Official Codes for:—		America, Cassino .....	426
Backgammon .....	549	England, Cribbage .....	390
Billiards, American .....	575	Germany, Skat .....	363
Billiards, English .....	603	France, Piquet .....	411
Bowling, or Ten Pins .....	610	Mexico, Conquian .....	434
Chess .....	519	Newmarket .....	455
Checkers .....	536	Nine Men's Morris .....	552
Cinch .....	288	Norwegian Whist .....	647
Contract Bridge .....	34	ODD GAMES .....	445
Duplicate Contract		Old Maid .....	449
Bridge .....	58	Old Sledge .....	269
Euchre .....	232	PANGUINGUE .....	437
Hearts .....	315	Patience Games .....	458
Poker .....	194	Patience Poker .....	657
Skat .....	383	Pedro .....	277
Ten Pins, or Bowling .....	621	Peep Nap .....	256
Whist, American .....	151	Penalty Euchre .....	223
Laws of Probabilities .....	610	Penchant .....	328
Lift Smoke .....	450	Pinochle .....	339
Little Corporal .....	607	Pin Pool .....	606
Loo, or Division Loo .....	263	Piquet .....	411
Five-card Loo .....	267	Piquet Normand .....	421
Irish Loo .....	267	Piquet Voleur .....	421

	PAGE		PAGE
Piquet ( <i>Cont'd</i> )		Pool Games ( <i>Cont'd</i> )	
Piquet a Ecrire .....	422	Black Pool, English ..	601
Rubicon Piquet .....	423	Bottle Pool .....	608
Pitch .....	269	Chicago Pool .....	592
Plafond .....	3	Colour-ball Pool .....	598
Scoring .....	6	Continuous .....	590
Playing Progression .....	617	Cow-boy Pool .....	593
Pochen .....	456	Eng. Following Pool ..	598
Poker Family of Games...	163	English Pyramid Pool ..	591
Poker .....	163	Fifteen-ball Pool .....	583
Bluff .....	201	Following Pool .....	598
Bluffing .....	193	Forty-one .....	592
Cheating .....	185	High-low-jack Game ..	592
Deuces Wild .....	204	Kelly Rotation .....	588
Draw Poker .....	164	Little Corporal .....	607
Eccentric Hands .....	171	Pin Pool .....	606
Flat Poker .....	185	Rotation Pocket .....	587
Freeze Out .....	228	Shell Out .....	591
Going In .....	188	Spanish Pool .....	608
Good Play .....	187	Pool with Dominoes .....	557
High-Low Stud .....	202	Pool Ecarté .....	250
How to Win .....	192	Pope Joan .....	453
Jack Pots .....	179	Preference .....	444
Joker Poker .....	172	Probabilities .....	610
Mistigris .....	172	Progressive Cinch .....	284
Odds against Hands ..	172	Progressive Euchre .....	224
Patience Poker .....	657	Progressive Hearts .....	300
Peek Poker .....	204	Progressive Poker .....	204
Poker Gin .....	651	Purchase Nap .....	255
Poker Rum .....	650	Pyramid Pool .....	586
Poker Laws .....	194		
Probabilities 173, 189,	614	QUATRE VALETS .....	313
Rank of Hands .....	169	Quinze .....	469
Show-down Poker ....	185		
Spit in the Ocean ....	205	RAFFLES, <i>dice</i> .....	561
Straight Poker .....	201	Railroad Euchre .....	226
Stripped Pack .....	205	Rams .....	261
Stud Poker .....	202	Ranter Go Round .....	456
Table Stakes .....	183	Razzle-Dazzle .....	284
Text-books .....	205	Red Dog .....	444
Whiskey Poker .....	203	Reversi .....	551
Wild Widow, The ....	205	Rondeau .....	489
Poker Dice .....	564	Rotation Pocket Billiards	587
Polignac .....	313	Rouge et Noir .....	482
Polish Bézique .....	326	Roulette .....	484
Polish Draughts .....	535	Rounce .....	263
Pool Games:—		Round the Spot, <i>dice</i> .....	566
Amer. Pyramid Pool..	586		



# CONTENTS

xiii

	PAGE		PAGE
Royal Cassino .....	433	Solo Whist .....	115
Rubicon Bézique .....	330	Spade Cassino .....	433
Rubicon Piquet .....	423	Spanish Monte .....	490
Rum .....	648	Spanish Pool .....	608
Double-pack Rum ....	651	Speculation .....	449
Poker Gin .....	651	Spin .....	455
Poker Rum .....	650	Spoil Five .....	256
Single-pack Rum ....	648	Spot Hearts .....	299
Russian Backgammon ....	550	Stops .....	455
Russian Bank .....	661	Straight Poker .....	201
Russian Boston .....	148	Stud Poker .....	202
SANCHO PEDRO .....	277	Sweat, <i>dice</i> .....	488
Saratoga .....	455	Sweepstake Hearts .....	297
Scat <i>see</i> Skat .....	363	TABLE GAMES .....	492
Schnautz .....	204	Table Stakes, <i>poker</i> ....	183
Schwellen .....	314	Technical Terms .....	633
Sebastopol, <i>dominoes</i> ....	557	Telling Fortunes .....	461
Sell Out .....	274	Ten Pins, or Bowling ....	619
Set-back Euchre .....	222	American Ten Pins ..	621
Seven-card Cribbage ....	410	Battle Game .....	624
Seven-handed Euchre ....	228	Cocked Hat .....	623
Seven-up .....	269	Cocked Hat & Feather ..	624
Shasta Sam .....	274	"Don'ts" for Players..	628
Shell-out .....	591	Duck Pin Game .....	628
Shooting Craps .....	562	Five Back .....	627
Show-down Poker .....	185	Four Back .....	626
Shuffle Board .....	567	Head Pin; four back..	625
Six-Card Cribbage .....	392	Head Pin Out .....	626
Sixty-four Card Binocle ..	319	Kinsley Candle Pin ...	628
Sixty-six .....	355	Newport Game .....	627
Four-handed .....	361	Nine Up and Nine	
Kreutz-Mariage .....	361	Down .....	625
Three-handed .....	361	Three-card Monte .....	490
Sixty-three, <i>cinch</i> .....	284	Three-cushion Carroms ...	574
Skat .....	363, 382	Three-handed Bézique ....	326
Game Values .....	369	"    Cribbage ....	409
Scoring .....	375	"    Hearts .....	298
Illustrative Hands ....	380	"    Binocle ....	349
Skat Laws .....	383	"    Sixty-six ....	361
Slams, <i>euchre</i> .....	227	Throwing Dice .....	560
Slobberhannes .....	312	Trente et Quarante .....	482
Smudge .....	277	Tric-trac .....	538
Snip-snap-snozem .....	450	Twenty-one Point Cassino..	349
Snooker Pool .....	595	Twenty Point, <i>mah jong</i> ..	667
Snoozer .....	278	Two-handed Hearts .....	298
Solitaires ....458, 652, 657,	659	"    Jass .....	656
Solo .....	446		

	PAGE		PAGE
UNDER AND OVER SEVEN ...	491	Whist ( <i>Cont'd</i> )	
VARIETIES OF AUCTION		Cayenne Whist .....	109
BRIDGE .....	105	Chinese Whist .....	149
Vingt-et-un .....	465	Drive Whist .....	646
Vingt-et-un with Dice ....	466	German Whist .....	184
Vint .....	441	Norwegian Whist ....	647
WHISKEY POKER .....	203	Probabilities .....	615
Whist Family of Games ...	xvii	Solo Whist .....	115
Whist		Widow Binocle .....	351
American Laws .....	151	Widow Cinch .....	285
Bid Whist .....	646	Wild Widow, <i>poker</i> .....	205
		YERLASH, <i>see</i> Vint .....	441

## INTRODUCTION.

---

The word "Hoyle" has gradually come to stand as an abbreviation for an "Encyclopedia of Indoor Games." The common expression, "played according to Hoyle," usually means "correctly played," or "played according to the standard authorities." The original Edmund Hoyle wrote on very few games, but his work was the first attempt to put together the rules for the most popular indoor games in one volume. Although Hoyle died more than a hundred years ago, his work has been constantly added to as new games came into vogue, which has led many to believe that he is the authority for games that he never heard of, such as pinochle and poker.

Persons who have never given the subject much attention may be surprised to learn how little authority there is for the rules governing the majority of our popular games. If we except the table games, such as chess, checkers, billiards, backgammon and ten pins, and such card games as whist, bridge, auction, and skat, all of which are regulated by well-defined codes of laws, agreed upon by associations of prominent clubs, to govern championship contests, etc., we have very few games left which are not played in different ways in various localities.

This is undoubtedly because such games are learnt at the card table and not from books. A person who is shown a new game cannot remember all its details, some of which may not have been explained to him even. If he tries to teach it to others while his knowledge is in this imperfect state, he will naturally invent rules of his own to cover the points he has forgotten, or has never learnt, usually borrowing ideas from games with which he is more familiar.

The pupils of such a teacher pass on to others the game thus imperfectly learnt, and in a short time we have a number of corruptions creeping in, and the astonishing part of it is the

insistence with which some persons will maintain that they alone have the right idea of the rules, just because so-and-so showed them the game, or because they and their immediate friends have "always played it that way."

This does not alter the fact that the fundamental principles of every game are known and can be readily found if one knows where to look for them. The author is in possession of several hundred works in various languages—English, French, German and Italian—on nothing but indoor games, comprising probably everything ever printed on the subject that is worth preserving.

By tracing the history of a game and its development through the various books in which it is described, the game will always be found to belong to some distinct family, which has certain well-defined traits which must be preserved, no matter how much they may be altered in minor details. All games follow certain general principles, and the surest mark of error in the local rules of any game is inconsistency.

Pinochle is a striking example of this. In many places the players will not allow the same cards to be counted twice in the trump sequence, so as to meld 190; but they will count them twice in four kings and queens. They insist on the rule of at least one fresh card from the hand for each additional meld in one case, but totally disregard it in another, as when they meld 240 for the round trip, instead of only 220.

These local errors have crept into many of the Hoyles now upon the market, the works having probably been compiled from the individual knowledge of the author, limited by his experience in a certain locality. Many of these works devote much space to a certain game, which is evidently the compiler's pet, and which is accurately described; while other and equally important games are full of errors and omissions, betraying a lamentable want of care in consulting the literature of the subject.

While the author of this work does not believe it possible to compile a work that shall be universally accepted as the authority on all games, as a dictionary would be on spelling, he deems it at least possible to select what seems the most common usage, or the best rule, preserving the true spirit of the game, and to describe it accurately and bring the whole up to date.

# THE WHIST FAMILY.

---

THE most popular card games of the present day undoubtedly belong to the whist family, which embraces all those played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, ranking from the ace to the deuce, one suit being trumps, and the score being counted by tricks and honours, or by tricks alone.

The oldest and most important of the group is whist itself. The game appears to be of English origin, its immediate parent being "ruff and honours." This was an old English game in which twelve cards only were dealt to each player, the uppermost of the remaining four being turned up for the trump suit. Whoever held the ace of trumps could "ruff" or take in these four cards, discarding in their place any four he chose. As the game developed into whisk, or whist, this ruffing feature disappeared. There was no stock, the four deuces being discarded from the pack instead. Twelve cards were dealt to each player, and the last was turned up for the trump.

About 1680 a variation of the game known as "swabbers" came into vogue. The swabbers were the heart ace, club jack, and the ace and deuce of trumps. The players to whom these cards were dealt were entitled to a certain share of the stakes or payments, independent of the play for tricks and honours. This variety of the game did not long remain in favor, but gave way to make room for one of the most important changes, the restoration of the deuces to the pack, which introduced the feature of the

odd trick. This took place early in the last century, and seems to have so much improved the game that attention was soon drawn to its possibilities for scientific treatment.

About this time whist was taken up by a set of gentlemen who met at the Crown Coffee House in Bedford Row, London; chief among whom was Sir Jacob de Bouverie, Viscount Folkestone. After considerable experiment and practice this little whist school laid down the principles of the game as being; "to play from the strong suit; to study the partner's hand; never to force partner unnecessarily, and to attend to the score." It is generally believed that Edmond Hoyle was familiar with the proceedings of this set, and on their experiences based his celebrated "Short Treatise on the Game of Whist," which was entered at Stationers' Hall in London Nov. 17, 1742.

The only works previous to Hoyle touching upon whist were the "Compleat Gamester" of Cotton, which first appeared in 1674, and the "Court Gamester," of Richard Seymour, 1719. One of Hoyle's great points was his calculation of the probabilities at various stages of the rubber. This seems to have been looked upon as most important in guiding persons in their play, for we find that Abraham de Moivre, a famous mathematician, used to frequent the coffee houses, and for a small fee give decisions on questions of the odds at whist.

Bath seems to have been the great rallying-point for the whist-players of the last century; but the passion for the game soon spread all over Europe. In 1767 Benjamin Franklin went to Paris, and it is generally believed that he introduced the American variety of the game known as Boston, which became the rage in Paris some time after the war of independence.

So popular did whist become in Italy that we find the boxes at the opera in Florence provided with card tables in 1790. The music of the opera was considered of value chiefly as, "increasing the joy of good fortune, and soothing the affliction of bad."

A code of laws was drawn up about 1760 by the frequenters of White's and Saunders' in London. These seem to have remained the standard until "Cælebs" published, in 1851, the code in use at the Portland Club. In 1863 John Loraine Baldwin got together a committee at the Arlington, now the Turf Club, and

they drew up the code which is still in use all over the world for English whist. In the United States, laws better suited to the American style of play were drawn up by the American Whist League in 1891, and after several revisions were finally adopted, in 1893, as the official code for League clubs.

The literature of whist saw its palmiest days at the beginning of this century. 7,000 copies of Bob Short's "Short Rules for Whist" were sold in less than a year. Mathews', or Matthews', "Advice to the Young Whist-Player," went through eighteen editions between 1804 and 1828. After these writers came Admiral Burney, who published his "Treatise" in 1821; Major A. [Charles Barwell Coles,] gave us his "Short Whist" in 1835. Deschappelles published his "Traité du Whiste" in 1839, but it gave little but discussions on the laws. "Whist, its History and Practice" by Amateur, appeared in 1843. General de Vautré's "Génie du Whiste," in 1847. "Cælebs" [Edward Augustus Carlyon] wrote his "Laws and Practice" in 1851. Then in rapid succession came "Cavendish" in 1863, James Clay in 1864, Pole and "Cam" in 1865. Campbell-Walker's "Correct Card" in 1876; Drayson's "Art of Practical Whist," with its new theories of trumps; Fisher Ames, "Modern Whist," in 1879; "Whist, or Bumblepuppy?" by "Pembroke" [John Petch Hewby], in 1880; G. W. P. [Pettes], in 1881; Proctor's "How to Play Whist," in 1885; and the "Handbook of Whist," by "Major Tenace," 1885. Then began the long list of American authors (Pettes has already been mentioned): "Foster's Whist Manual," by R. F. Foster, appeared in 1890; "Practical Guide to Whist," by Fisher Ames, in 1891; Hamilton's "Modern Scientific Whist," in 1894, and in the same year, Coffin's "Gist of Whist," and "Foster's Whist Strategy." In 1895, Milton C. Work's "Whist of To-day," and "Foster's Whist Tactics," giving the play in the first match by correspondence; and in 1896, Val Starnes' "Short-suit Whist," and Howell's "Whist Openings." In 1897, Mitchell's "Duplicate Whist." In 1898, Foster's "Common Sense in Whist," and in 1900, Fisher Ames' "Standard Whist." Since then whist literature has given place to bridge.

In periodical literature we find whist taken up in the pages of the "Sporting Magazine" in 1793. The London "Field" has had

a card column since December 6, 1862. Proctor's work first appeared in "Knowledge." The "Westminster Papers" devoted a great deal of space to whist games and "jottings" every month for eleven years, beginning in April, 1868. "Whist," a monthly journal devoted exclusively to the game, began publication in Milwaukee in 1891; but gave it up when bridge supplanted whist in popular favor.

Whist rapidly became a "newspaper game." The New York Sunday Sun devoted two columns every Sunday to the discussion and illustration of moot points in whist tactics, and the analysis of hands played in important matches. In a series of articles begun February 23, 1896, this paper gave to the world the first systematic statement of the theory and practice of the short suit game. In 1898 there were at least forty whist columns published in the United States. Two magazines devoted to whist and bridge were published, one in Boston and the other in New York.

While the parent game has been pursuing this prosperous course, many variations have been introduced. One of the most radical changes in the game itself has been cutting down the points from ten to five, which occurred about 1810. Mathews mentions it in 1813 as having occurred since the publication of his first edition in 1804, and Lord Peterborough, the unlucky gambler, for whose benefit the change was introduced, died in 1814. Another great change took place in America, where they played for the tricks alone, the honours not being counted at all. Turning the trump from the still pack was first tried by a Welsh baronet, and is mentioned by Southey in his "Letters of Espriella." This custom was revived for a time by the Milwaukee Whist Club, and is still sometimes seen in Europe under the name of "Prussian Whist."

Altogether we can trace nineteen games which are clearly derived from whist. Duplicate, Drive, and Progressive whist are simply changes in the arrangement of the players and in the methods of scoring. Prussian whist introduces the cutting of the trump from the still pack. Dummy and Double-dummy are simply whist with a limited number of players, necessitating the exposure of one or more hands upon the table. The French game of Mort is dummy with a better system of scoring introduced. Favourite



Whist simply changes the value of the tricks in scoring, according to the trump suit. Cayenne and Bridge introduce the first changes of importance. In Cayenne, the dealer and his partner have the privilege of changing the trump from the suit turned up; in Bridge they name the trump suit without any turn-up, and play the hands as at dummy. In Boston, and Boston de Fontainebleau, in addition to making the trump suit instead of turning it up, further departures are introduced by naming the number of tricks to be played for, allowing the player to take all or none without any trump suit, and by 'spreading' certain hands, without allowing the adversaries to call the exposed cards. French and Russian Boston are simply varieties of Boston. Solo Whist is an attempt to simplify Boston by reducing the number of proposals and the complications of payments, and eliminating the feature of 'spreads.' Scotch Whist introduces a special object in addition to winning tricks—catching the ten of trumps; that card and the honours having particular values attached to them. This variety of whist may be played by any number of persons from two to eight; and its peculiarity is that when a small number play, each has several distinct hands, which must be played in regular order, as if held by different players. Humbug Whist is a variety of double-dummy, in which the players may exchange their hands for those dealt to the dummies, and the dealer may sometimes make the trump to suit himself. German Whist is played by two persons, and introduces the element of replenishing the hand after each trick by drawing cards from the remainder of the pack until the stock is exhausted. Chinese Whist is double-dummy for two, three, or four persons, only half of each player's cards being exposed, the others being turned up as the exposed cards are got rid of in the course of play.

All these varieties have been entirely supplanted and overshadowed by bridge. When they play whist at all, the English think there is nothing better than the original whist, counting honours, and playing to the score. The Americans think Duplicate superior to all other forms, especially when two tables are engaged, and four players are opposed by four others for a specified number of deals. We are inclined to agree with Clay that the French game of Mort is "charming and highly scientific." He says English dummy is a "very slow game."

Whether it is because the game has been found 'slow,' or because its more attractive forms are little known, it is certainly true that writers on whist pay little or no attention to dummy. The English authors mention it only in connection with laws and decisions. No American text-book makes any allusion to the game, and there is no reference to it in the American Whist League's code of laws.

In the first edition of this work, written in 1895, the author ventured to prophesy that the day was not far distant when dummy would supersede all other varieties of whist among the most expert players; either in the form of the charming Mort or the fascinating Bridge. Very few persons who have played either of these games sufficiently to appreciate their beauties care to return to the platitudes of straight whist.

At that time, bridge was unknown in America except to the members of The Whist Club of New York and their friends. In the short space of ten years it grew to be the card game of the world; but in spite of its present popularity it had its defects, and in time was gradually but surely supplanted by a game that allowed all four players to bid for the privilege of naming the trump suit and playing the dummy's cards in combination with their own. This is Auction Bridge, which originated in this way.

The first text-book on bridge was a little leaflet printed in England in 1886, which gave the rules for "Biritch, or Russian Whist." "Boax" came out with a little "Pocket Guide" in 1894, followed by "The Laws of Bridge" in 1895. The Whist Club of N. Y. published the American laws of bridge in 1897, and "Badsworth" came out with the English laws in 1898. In the following year, 1899, Archibald Dunn, Jr., gave us "Bridge and How to Play It," and John Doe published "Bridge Conventions," A. G. Hulme-Beaman's "Bridge for Beginners" appearing in the same year. In 1900, "Foster's Bridge Manual" appeared in America, reprinted in England under the title of "Foster on Bridge."

In the years following, text-books on bridge came from the press by the dozen, the most notable authors being Dalton and "Hellespont" in 1901; Elwell and Robertson in 1902; Street and Lister in 1903. Many of the writers already mentioned published later and more complete works, embodying the results of time and

experience. Foster's Self-playing Bridge Cards were brought out in 1903. Elwell's "Advanced Bridge" appeared in 1904 and Foster's "Complete Bridge" in 1905.

While bridge has never been such a popular "newspaper game" as whist was in America, it has been much more so in England. Articles on bridge, for beginners chiefly, were published in 1905 and 1906 by the San Francisco Call, Pittsburgh Post Despatch, Cincinnati Commercial Tribune, Chicago Journal, St. Paul Despatch, Milwaukee Journal, Baltimore American, Houston Post, Indianapolis Star, and the N. Y. Globe. These were all edited by R. F. Foster.

About 1910 it became the fashion not to play spades, it being considered a waste of time to play a hand for such a small amount as 2 points a trick, so the dealer was allowed to score 2 for the odd and 4 for honours, regardless of how the cards were distributed, the hand being abandoned. The objection to this practice was that many hands were worth much more than 2 points, and in some cases the spade make would have gone game at the score. This led to the practice of playing "royal spades," which were played at 10 and then at 9 a trick, sometimes with a penalty of 20 if the declarer failed to make the odd.

About 1903, three members of the British civil service, in a lonely hill station in India, conceived the idea of bidding for the privilege of naming the trump, and called it "Auction Bridge." A letter to the Daily Mail in London described it as a game for three players only, and it was more than two years before it was tried out as a game for four persons at the table.

Early in 1906, R. F. Foster described the game for four players in a series of articles in the New York Sun, putting it in the appendix to his "Foster's Complete Bridge," in the 1906 edition, and giving talks on the game's advantages at various card clubs; but bridge players were apparently satisfied with the game they had, and it was nearly two years before auction bridge really came into vogue. By 1910 it had completely supplanted bridge in public favor.

The great disparity in the values of the suits as then played practically confined the bidding to the hearts and royal spades. This soon brought about another change, which was to raise the values of all the suits except spades and to cut down the

no-trumper. This was done in 1912, and made it possible for any suit to go game on the hand. The spade suit then had a double value, 2 and 9, which was finally abolished in 1917, the 2 being dropped.

About this time attention was attracted to the hopelessness of weak hands offering any defense against high-scoring slam hands. To remedy this, the nullo was introduced. This was a bid to lose tricks, forcing the adversaries to win the number named by the nullo player, so that if he was successful each trick under seven counted 10 for him. The bid ranked between spades and no-trumps. Although popular for a year or two, it was never officially adopted.

For a time the new game, with the established trick values or clubs 6, diamonds 7, hearts 8, spades 9, and no-trumps 10, was called Royal Auction, the higher value of the spades being often declared as "lilies." With the complete abandonment of the spades at 2, this distinction was unnecessary and the game is now known simply as Auction Bridge, or Auction.

A form of contract bridge first made its appearance about 1921, borrowed from the European game of *plafond*, but was short lived. In 1927 The Whist Club of New York brought out a new system of scoring for contract, making clubs and diamonds 20; hearts and spades 30, and no-trumps 35, game being 100 points. A rubber won in two consecutive games counted 700. If it took three games, 500. As soon as either side won a game it was "vulnerable," and entitled to larger bonuses and greater penalties.

In 1932 the scoring was again changed, no-trumpers being alternately 30 and 40, so as to cut out the only "5" on the score sheet, making three no-trumps, 30-40-30 a game, 100. At the same time the bonuses for grand slams, bid and made, were increased to 1500 and 2250 respectively, and the scale of penalties for failure to fulfill contracts were made larger. In this game it was possible to score 3340 points on one hand by calling and making a grand slam at no-trumps with four aces in one hand and a game-in to no-game. The frequency of these big scores, against which there was usually no possible defense, was a great objection to the game which was corrected under the new laws of 1935.

Several variations, such as for less than four players, have been introduced from time to time, descriptions of which will be found in the text.

# THE BRIDGE FAMILY,



## THE BRIDGE FAMILY

---

The parent of this popular family of games is "straight" bridge, in which the dealer or his partner must make the trump, their opponents having nothing to say about it except to double the value of the tricks. The dealer's partner is always the dummy, and either side may score toward game by making the odd trick or more. Auction bridge, in which the privilege of making the trump is bid for, the highest bidder playing the hand with his partner as dummy, regardless of the position of the deal, and his side being the only one that can score toward game, the adversaries scoring nothing but penalties in the honor column if they defeat the contract, is a development.

Straight Bridge is practically no longer played, having been completely superseded by Auction Bridge, or simply Auction, for which the final revision of the official laws in 1917 settled upon what is called "the new count," for the values of the tricks, giving to each player at the table the privilege of bidding for the right to name the declaration on which the hand should be played.

There are now several variations from auction, governed chiefly by differences in scoring, such as contract and *plafond*. The preliminaries, however, such as the ranks of the cards and suits, cutting for partners, choice of seats, order of dealing, the rank of the bids, are the same in all three games. The laws governing irregularities are also similar, so that a description will apply to any until we come to the scoring. The general term "Bridge" is applied to all three.

---

## AUCTION, CONTRACT, OR PLAFOND

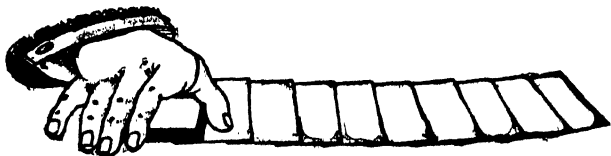
**CARDS.** Bridge is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, ranking A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2, the Ace being the highest in play for all purposes, whether in cutting or in play. Two packs should be used, the one being shuffled while the other is dealt. The still pack marks the position of the next dealer. The suits outrank one another in the order of clubs, diamonds, hearts, spades, no-trumps; clubs being the lowest and no-trumps the highest. In suits, the A K Q J 10 are honors; in no-trumps, the four aces.

#### 4 (Bridge.) *POSITION OF PLAYERS.*

**MARKERS.** In spite of many attempts to invent an acceptable mechanical bridge marker, nothing better has so far been found than pencil and paper. In some cases each player keeps his own record of the score, which leads at the end to many disputes and disagreements. If one person keeps the score in figures large enough for all to see, it stands as official if not disputed before the next deal is completed.

**PLAYERS.** Bridge is played by four persons, and the table is complete with six persons. When there are more than four candidates for play, the selection of the four is made by cutting. These cut again for partners, and the choice of seats and cards.

**CUTTING.** The usual method of cutting for partners, etc., at auction, is to shuffle the cards thoroughly, and "spread" them face downwards on the table; each candidate drawing a card, and turning it face upwards in front of him. The four cutting the highest cards playing the first game, or rubber.

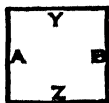


SPREADING THE PACK.

The four having been selected, the cards are again shuffled and spread, and partners are cut for; the two lowest pairing against the two highest; the highest of the four is the dealer, and has the choice of cards and seats. His partner sits opposite him, and the next higher cut has the choice of the remaining seats.

**TIES.** As between cards of equal value in cutting, the spade is the highest, then hearts, diamonds next, and then clubs.

**POSITION OF THE PLAYERS.** The four players at the bridge table are indicated by letters; A and B are partners against Y and Z; Z always represents the dealer, who always makes the first bid, A being the second bidder, Y the third and B the fourth.





**DEALING.** The cards having been properly shuffled the dealer, Z, presents them to the pone, B, to be cut. At least four cards must be left in each packet. Beginning at his left, the dealer distributes the cards one at a time in rotation until the pack is exhausted. When two packs are used, the dealer's partner shuffles one while the other is dealt, and the deal passes in regular rotation to the left until the rubber is finished. If no one makes a bid the deal passes to the next player.

**IRREGULARITIES IN THE DEAL.** If any card is found faced in the pack, or if the pack is incorrect or imperfect, the dealer must deal again. If any card is exposed in any manner; or if more than thirteen cards are dealt to any player, or if the last card does not come in its regular order to the dealer, or if the pack has not been cut, there must be a new deal. Attention must be called to a deal out of turn, or with the wrong cards, before the last card is dealt, or the deal stands.

There are no misdeals. Whatever happens the same dealer deals again. Minor irregularities will be found provided for in the laws.

The cards being dealt, each player sorts his hand to see that he has the correct number, thirteen; and the player or players keeping the score should announce it at the beginning of each hand.

If a player other than the dealer causes a card to be exposed, the adversary on his left may examine the cards already dealt to him, and may decide whether or not there shall be a new deal. If not, the player keeps the exposed card.

**STAKES.** The stake may be a unit, or for so much a 100. At contract it is usually in hundreds. The average value of a rubber at auction is a trifle less than 400 among good players. At *plafond* about 450. At contract it is nearer 900, but some rubbers run into 3000 or more. It is usual for each of the losing partners to pay his right hand adversary.

**MAKING THE TRUMP.** The dealer begins by passing, or naming any one of the four suits, or no-trumps, for any number of tricks he pleases up to 7. Each player in turn to the left then has the privilege of passing, bidding higher, or doubling. When three players in succession pass a bid or a double, it is known as the *Winning Declaration* or *Contract*.

In order to understand the principles that govern the players in their declarations, one should be thoroughly familiar with the values attached to the tricks when certain suits are trumps. The first six tricks taken by the side that has made the winning declaration do not count. This is the "book," but all over the book are called "odd tricks" and count toward making good on the contract, according to the following table:

## 6 (Bridge.)      *SCORING SCHEDULES.*

### AUCTION BRIDGE SCORING.

#### Schedule of 1934.

Clubs,	each trick over the book is worth	6 points
Diamonds,	each trick over the book is worth	7 points
Hearts,	each trick over the book is worth	8 points
Spades,	each trick over the book is worth	9 points
No-trumps,	each trick over the book is worth	10 points

These values may be doubled or redoubled.

Game is 30 points, made by trick scores only.

In addition to the trick scores there are certain **Bonuses**, which are all scored above the line, as honors:

4 honors in one hand, in any suit: 80 points.

4 aces in one hand at no-trumps: 100 points.

Little slam, winning 12 out of 13 tricks: 50 points.

Grand slam, winning all 13 tricks: 100 points.

Winning 2 consecutive games, or 2 out of 3; 250 points.

Doubling does not affect any of these.

Making a doubled contract, 50; redoubled, 100.

Each trick over a doubled contract, 50; redoubled, 100.

**THE PENALTIES.** For failure to make the contract, each trick, 50; doubled, 100. For the first revoke, the loss of two actual tricks. For any further revokes by the same side, 50 points each. Tricks taken as revoke penalties count just as if won in play. There are no revokes on the 12th or 13th tricks.

### PLAFOND SCORING.

#### Schedule of 1934.

Trick values are the same as for auction, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, respectively, for each trick over the book.

The bonus for fulfilling any contract is ..... 50 points

The bonus, for each trick over the contract is ... 50 points

The penalty for each undertrick is ..... 100 points

All the foregoing may be doubled or redoubled.

4 honors in one hand in any suit ..... 100

4 honors in one hand, 5th in partner's ..... 150

5 honors in one hand in any suit ..... 200

4 aces in one hand at no-trumps ..... 200

Little slam, even if not bid ..... 100

Grand slam, even if not bid ..... 200

For winning first game by either side ..... 100

For winning second game and rubber ..... 400

For a game in an unfinished rubber ..... 150

Doubling does not affect any of these.

## SCORING SCHEDULES. (Bridge.) 7

### CONTRACT BRIDGE SCORING

Schedule of 1935.

Clubs or Diamonds, each trick over the book,	20 points
Hearts or Spades, each trick over the book,	30 points
No-trumps, 1st trick,	40 points
No-trumps, 2nd and subsequent tricks, each,*	30 points

\* Note that 3 odd is 100; 4 odd, 130; 5 odd, 160; 6 odd is 190; and 7 odd is 220 at no-trumps.

These values may be doubled and redoubled.

Game is 100 points, made by trick scores only.

Any side winning a game becomes "vulnerable," or "game in."

4 honors in one hand, any suit, are worth,	100
5 honors, or 4 aces at no-trumps, are worth,	150
Little slam on Declarer's 1st game (no game in),	500
Little slam on Declarer's 2nd game (game in),	750
Grand slam on Declarer's 1st game (no game in),	1000
Grand slam on Declarer's 2nd game (game in)	1500
Winning the rubber in two consecutive games,	700
Winning the rubber in two games out of three,	500

Doubling does not affect any of these.

Each trick over the contract, undoubled, usual values.

But if doubled, no game in, 100. If game in, 200. If redoubled, no game in, 200. If game in, 400.

For the first revoke by adversaries, take two tricks. For any further revokes by the same side, one trick. There are no revokes on the 12th or 13th tricks.

**PENALTIES**, for failure to fulfill the contract:

No game in (not vulnerable)	Game in (vulnerable)
1 down, 50; doubled, 100	100; doubled, 200
2 down, 100; doubled, 300	200; doubled, 500
3 down, 150; doubled, 500	300; doubled, 800
4 down, 200; doubled, 700	400; doubled, 1100
5 down, 250; doubled, 900	500; doubled, 1400
6 down, 300; doubled, 1100	600; doubled, 1700
7 down, 350; doubled, 1300	700; doubled, 2000
8 down, 400; doubled, 1500	800; doubled, 2300
9 down, 450; doubled, 1700	900; doubled, 2600

If a rubber is abandoned unfinished, a game won is 300.

**IMPORTANCE OF THE SCORE.** As will be seen from the foregoing schedules, the differences in the values of the tricks makes no change in the number of tricks required to win the game

## 8 (Bridge.) *ATTENTION TO THE SCORE.*

from zero. Five clubs or diamonds, which are called the *Minor Suits*; four hearts or spades, which are *Major Suits*, or three no-trumps. In *Contract*, the score is very important.

With a partial score toward game, usually called a *Stub*, the situation changes. With 20 up, usually expressed as "20 nil," for no game in; or "game and 20," it will take four in a minor suit or three in a major suit, and still three in no-trumps, to reach game. With 30 up the only change is that two no-trumps will reach game. With 40, two in anything but a minor suit will reach game. With 60 up it takes one no-trump or two in any suit. The most advantageous stub at contract is 70, as one in anything but the minor suits goes game. It is in order to get this stub of 70 that good players will take chances on calling two no-trumps ( $40 + 30 = 70$ ), when three is out of the question and even two is a gamble.

**THE VALUE OF THE FIRST GAME** in auction is an equity of 150 points toward the ultimate winning of the rubber, plus the minimum of 30 points for actual trick score. In *plafond* it is about 250, plus the minimum value of a game, which is 86. At contract, it is 420, plus 100 for game, 520.

How much to risk by overbidding, to prevent these scores, frequently requires careful judgment, according to the state of the game scores, especially in contract. If neither side is a game in, it may be worth while to risk being down 500 to save the first game. If one side is a game in to no game, the rubber game will be worth a minimum of 820 points, and their opponents can afford to go down three tricks doubled, 500, to save it. Some will risk a "set" of 700, but that is usually considered a little too much to pay, as the rubber is not exactly "saved," but only postponed. Two consecutive games must still be won to "save" it, after paying 700 to postpone it.

**SLAMS.** These are more valuable in *plafond* than in auction and more valuable in contract than in either. In auction, slams are scored whenever a sufficient number of tricks has been made to cover the contract, even if the final bid was only one or two odd. It is not necessary to contract for the slam, or even the game, in order to win it. At *plafond* the same rule applies; but at contract, slams must be bid to be scored.

**RANK OF THE BIDS.** In order to overcall a previous bid, whether of the partner or the opponent, the bidder must undertake to win the same number of tricks in a suit of higher value, or a greater number of tricks in a suit of lower rank, such as 4 clubs over 3 spades. Players should restrict themselves to the same form of expression throughout, and all bids, even passing, must be made orally and not by gesture.

Let us suppose this to be the bidding: The dealer, Z, begins

with "No bid," second player, A, says, "I pass," or simply "No." Third bidder, Y, says, "One club," fourth player, B, "One spade." The dealer, starting on the second round, says, "Two clubs," supporting his partner's declaration. Next player, A, who passed the first time, says, "Two spades." Both Y and B pass, but the dealer, Z, says, "Three clubs."

Suppose A doubles three clubs. Y passes and B says, "Three no trumps." As will be explained presently, doubling does not affect the value of the declaration in bidding, so three no trumps overcalls three clubs doubled. Z, A and Y all pass, so three no trumps becomes the winning declaration and B is the declarer, A being the dummy, with Z to lead for the first trick.

In this example, had the bid been left at three clubs, doubled or not, that would have been the winning declaration, and the partner who first named that suit, Y, would be the declarer, Z being the dummy, although Z actually made the highest bid. It is only when the two players that have both named the winning suit are not partners that the higher bidder becomes the declarer.

If all four pass without a bid, the deal is void, and the hands are thrown in. The next player to the left deals the next hand, and with the other pack.

**DOUBLING.** No player may double his partner, but he may redouble an opponent who has doubled. All doubling must be strictly in turn, like any other bid. Doubling does not affect the value of the bids, but simply doubles the value of the tricks or penalties when they are scored at the end of the hand. Suppose A bids two spades and Y doubles. B can take A out with three clubs, because, so far as the bidding goes, two spades, if doubled, are worth no more than two spades undoubled.

Any overcall annuls the double, or redouble. Suppose A says two hearts, Y doubles, B redoubles, and Z says two spades. The doubling is all knocked out, and if A were to go three hearts and get the contract, hearts would be worth only normal value in scoring unless Y doubled all over again. A double reopens the bidding, because it is classed as a declaration, allowing the player's partner, or the player himself in his turn, to take himself out of the double by bidding something else.

---

## BIDDING THE HANDS.

**OBJECT OF THE GAME**, whether it is auction, *plafond* or contract, the object of the partnership is to secure the right to play the dummy, regardless of which individual player becomes the declarer and which the dummy, as the declarer's side is the only one that can score toward game. Any bid is an undertaking to win as many tricks over the "book" as are named in the bid. Unless a player has some pretensions to being able to win those tricks, with normal assistance from his partner, he is simply borrowing trouble, and laying himself open to serious penalties.

**VARIOUS BIDS.** Bids fall naturally into different classes. A *Free Bid* is the first call made by any player at the table, and is so called because no previous bid is forcing him to say anything to protect himself. *Defensive* bids, sometimes called *Following* bids, are those that overcall an opponent. *Supporting* bids increase the partner's contract. *Take-out* bids shift from the partner's denomination to something else. *Pre-emptive* bids aim to shut out the opponents, or to show the partner that the hand is good for nothing unless that suit is the final selection for the trump. *Secondary* bids are made after having passed up an opportunity to make a free or following bid.

**ARTICONS.** In addition to these conventional bids, there are certain artificial bids, which do not mean what they say, and which could not, by any stretch of the imagination or exercise of common sense be understood by the other players, especially the partner, without some previous understanding. Some call them "conventions" but this confuses them with the established conventions of bidding and play which have been long recognized and are quickly learnt from observation; such as leading the king from ace-king and others, and following the king with the ace to deny the queen. It has been found necessary to coin a name for these artificial conventions, so we shall call them "articons" derived from *Artificial*, and *Conventions*.

**FREE BIDS.** As any bid undertakes to win some majority of the tricks to be played for, the bidder should have more than his share of the cards with which tricks should be won if he gets the declaration; or which should be good for a certain number of tricks, if he is left to play on the defensive. This double object must be always back of a free bid, or it is unsound. This requires

a thorough understanding of the values of certain cards in combination with other cards, under different conditions. The first essential of a good player is ability to judge the value of a hand, no matter which of the three games; auction, *plafond*, or contract, he is playing.

As all these games are bidding games, certain cards vary in value according to the opposition they meet with from the adversaries, or the support given by the partner.

**PLAIN SUITS.** In the opening bids there are no such things as trumps. All four suits are plain suits. The mere calling of a suit by any player does not make it the trump, no matter how many cards he may hold in that suit. Such suits are trumps only in the optimistic imagination of the caller. They cannot be trumps until not only the partner but the opponents have consented to them as such.

This being so, all free bids must be based on the value of the cards in plain suits. As no plain suit can be depended on to go round more than twice if the opponents have a trump suit to stop it, we come to the first principle of free bids. They are first of all **Defensive**; that is, the cards must be of value no matter which side eventually gets the declaration, or what the trump suit may be, or no-trumps.

In the preliminary calling, all suits start with the value of the two top cards. If they are cards that may, or should, or will win the first or second round of the suit, they are called **Quick Tricks**. Cards that are not available until the third round, such as suits headed by Qs or Js, cannot be regarded as quick tricks.

There are only four combinations of valuable quick tricks:

A-K	A-Q	A, or K-Q	K x
2	1½	1	½

But as soon as partners agree upon a trump suit, the three top cards of all suits drop into the honor class, with these bidding values, as the suits may go round three times or more:

3	2½	2	1½	1	½
A K Q	A K J	A K x	A Q x	A x x	K x x
	A Q J	A Q 10	A J 10	K Q x	Q J x
		K Q J	K Q 10	K J 9	

The trump suit agreed upon, we have still another class of values, the **Long Cards**, giving us three divisions in all:

The *two Top* cards are Quick Tricks.

The **Three** top cards are honor tricks.

Quick Tricks		
A K	Q	x x
Honor Tricks		Long Cards

## 12 (Bridge.) DEFENSIVE VALUES.

A normal share of the 13 cards in each suit would be  $3\frac{1}{4}$  for each of the 4 players. As the  $\frac{1}{4}$  is impossible, a player must hold 3 or less, or more than 3. All over 3 are long cards. As every hand must have one long card somewhere, it has a value as soon as the trump suit is agreed upon by the holder. If any suit has less than 3, the hand as a whole must have just that many more long cards than the one that every hand starts with.

The rule for counting long cards is to add 1 to the number of cards any suit or suits is short of 3. Suppose dummy holds any one of these distributions and agrees with his partner that spades should be trumps:

S—x x x - x  
H—x x \*  
D—x x x - x  
C—x x x  
2 long cards.

S—x x x - x  
H—x x \*  
D—x x \*  
C—x x x - x x  
3 long cards.

S—x x x - x  
H—\* \* \*  
D—x x x - x  
C—x x x - x x  
4 long cards.

In the dummy hand, it does not matter where these long cards are, they always have the same value in all suits,  $\frac{1}{2}$  a trick each. In the declarer's hand, they are worth a  $\frac{1}{2}$  in plain suits; and a full trick in the trump suit.

Long cards have no value except in the hands of declarer and dummy when it comes to the play; but they may be counted on as assets in prolonging the bidding after a trump suit has been agreed upon, whether opposed or not. In contract, they are most important in helping to reach the limit value of a hand, as the limit must be bid to be scored toward game.

**DEFENSIVE VALUES.** As every free bid must have defensive values of some kind, and all original calls are made on quick tricks, it follows that the bidder should have something above average, as he is not obliged to bid if he has nothing worth calling on. There are 4 aces, 4 kings, 4 queens, 4 jacks, and 4 tens in the pack. An average hand would be one of each, and it would still be just average even if the five cards were all in one suit.

If they are in different suits, the most they can produce is two quick tricks; A-K in one suit; or A-Q in one suit, K-x in another; or A in one suit, K-Q in another; or A in one suit, K in another and Q in a third; K and Q in different suits being regarded as equal to both in the same suit. Analysis of 1,000 deals has shown them to be slightly better for defense if divided, as they break into two of the declarer's high-card sequences.

Unless a player has better than 2 quick tricks, he has no advantage over any other player. To be above average he should have at least  $2\frac{1}{2}$  quick tricks, and that has come to be universally recognized as the minimum for a free bid, except with certain classes of freak hands. A king better than average will fulfill this requirement, but it does not follow that every hand containing  $2\frac{1}{2}$



quick tricks should be a bid, especially when a game in, because the first bidder does not know what strength he may find against him.

For a free bid, his hand should meet two conditions: If he names a suit it must be what is called a **Biddable Suit**; and, he should be prepared to say something more if he does not like his partner's response.

The majority of the quick tricks—or any of them—need not be in the suit called; but they must be in the hand as a whole. Suits of only four cards must be stronger than five-card suits to be biddable. These are the standard minimums.

4 Cards  
A Q x x  
A J 10 x  
K Q x x

5 Cards  
K x x x x  
Q 10 x x x  
Any 6 cards.

Such hands as the following are not sound free bids, even if they contain  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Q.T. (quick tricks) and a biddable suit.

S—A Q 10 x x  
H—x x  
D—A x x x  
C—x x

S—K J x x x  
H—x x  
D—x x x x  
C—A K

A free bid should always be prepared to say something more after the partner has been heard from, if the adversaries pass. This is specially important in order to fit in with the modern practice of never leaving the partner in with a one bid in suit. This is called **One-over-One**, and if the take-out is not more than one in suit, such as one heart over one club, the original caller is supposed to be able to bid again. If it is more than one in suit, or is one no-trump, he may pass.

Take these two examples, which are minimums:

S—A Q J x x  
H—x  
D—K J 10 x x  
C—x x

S—x x  
H—K J x x x  
D—A K x  
C—Q 10 x

In the first, if partner goes to two hearts, or clubs, when you start with one spade, you can show your second suit. If he calls one no-trump, you can pass. In the second case, if he overcalls your one heart with one spade, you can go to no-trumps. If it is the adversary that bids, and partner passes, say nothing. You have shown the limit of your defense,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts.

With hands stronger than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  quick tricks, there is no hurry about bidding two or three. If you know your partner is not going to leave you in with a bid of one in suit, you can show your strength by rebidding, or going to no-trumps, according to what he says.

**REBIDDING** should be limited to more than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  quick tricks. To rebid a suit because it has an unusual number of rags in it is assuming that it will be the trump, in spite of the fact that your partner does not like it, or refuses to support it, and at the same time is confusing your partner, who will never know, when you rebid, whether it is on rags, or on quick tricks. Take these two examples:

S—x x x  
H—A J 10 x  
D—A K x  
C—K x x  
Dealer

S—A K Q x x  
H—K Q x x x  
D—none  
C—A Q x  
Partner

The dealer bids 1 heart. His partner 2 spades, having 3 Q.Ts. outside hearts. Instead of assisting the spades, the dealer rebids his hearts to show  $3\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts. His partner can name the cards, as they have not agreed on a trump suit. They must be quick tricks; A-K of diamonds, heart A, and club K; so the partner bids seven no-trumps. No other call will show the club K.

Playing one-over-one, the partner might call one spade, as the dealer would have to keep the bidding alive.

**TAKE-OUTS** are usually made to deny partner's suit, but are frequently used to show where the weight of assistance lies. If the dealer calls one heart, for instance, his partner might call one spade with four to the A-K-Q, nothing in the minor suits, even if he had four hearts. He can assist the hearts later. If the partner holds 3 Q.Ts. outside the dealer's suit, it is usual to jump the bid, such as in the above example. The same jump occurs in no-trumpers, which see.

**TWO BIDS**, as free bids in suit, are usually to show that the hand is good for nothing unless that suit is the trump, having no defensive values. It should be good for 8 playing tricks. The two-bid is extensively used in articon systems.

**THREE BIDS** in major suits ask partner to go game if he has an ace. **Four Bids** in minor suits must be good for four odd, that is, the hand must contain ten playing tricks. They are called **Pre-emptive**, to head off adverse calling, and ask for an ace. Weak pre-emptive bids shut out no one but the partner.

**POSITION AT THE TABLE.** It is no longer thought necessary for the fourth hand to be stronger than for any other position at the table, to open the bidding. The modern idea is that the dealer's is the dangerous position, and that fourth hand has three weak hands that have been heard from. Many good partial scores are won by fourth hand calls.

**DEFENSIVE**, or **FOLLOWING BIDS**, are usually made on as little as  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts. Some sort of defense must be made while it is

## **THE CONVENTIONAL DOUBLE. (Bridge.) 15**

cheap, or it may be too expensive later. Any five-card suit is worth showing, but four-card suits are usually better kept back, unless to ask a lead. In many hands it is evident that the dealer's bid will not be left in by third hand, and a lead may be important.

**THE CONVENTIONAL DOUBLE** by second hand is not made with any idea of defeating the contract, but asks, or rather commands, the partner to call his best suit. The doubler is supposed to hold at least three Q.Ts., but the majority of those who use this articon double do so to get rid of the responsibility of calling. The weakness of this defense is that the doubler never knows how good his partner's suit may be, or whether he would have called it if he had not been forced to do so. Analysis of this articon has shown it to be a loser in the long run. With 3 Q.Ts. it is invariably better to bid the suit.

The rules for this articon are that the doubler's partner shall not have made a bid, and that the call which is doubled is not more than two in suit, or one in no-trumps. Under all other conditions the double is for penalties.

**"SYKES."** This is an abbreviation of "psychic" and refers to calls that are intended to disconcert the adversaries, as by creating an impression that the syke bidder has a certain amount of strength in a suit in which he actually has nothing at all. There is usually a retreat if the stratagem is uncovered. The origin of syke bidding was in calling a suit second hand to a no-trumper, with nothing in the suit called, but enough in another suit, with the lead, to set a no-trumper if the adversaries could be tempted to go too far, which they invariably would do with the syke suit well stopped.

**THE PARTNER.** Using the terms dealer and partner to apply to all that follows relating to the first caller and the player opposite him, the first thing for the partner to do is to agree upon the suit suggested for the trump. The dealer expects his partner to hold at least four small cards of the suit, or three to as good as the queen. Old style auction players, who never call on less than five cards, are supposed to be satisfied with three small, or as good as queen and one, but that is unsound opposite possible 4-card suit calls.

If the partner has what is called "normal" trump support, he proceeds to see what can be done with those cards. Holding four trumps he counts on ruffing any 2-card suit once; any singleton twice, and any missing suit three times. With only three trumps he reduces this estimate a trick for each of the three situations.

**ASSISTS.** The next step is to see how many *Playing Tricks* his hand contains. This is arrived at by counting the honor tricks in all suits at the values already given for the three top cards,

and any long cards, and to count any A, K or Q of the dealer's suit as a full trick, as it is a trick the dealer expects to lose and will not lose.

**THE FIVE RULE.** For each time that the dealer bids his suit, deduct 1 from 5, and raise with the remainder. Thus if the dealer calls one heart, 1 from 5 is 4, and the partner must have 4 playing tricks to raise once. If he has not so many and the dealer rebids his suit, that is 2 bids from 5, the partner can raise with 3 playing tricks.

On the other hand, for every "playing" trick the partner holds, he deducts 2 from the total and bids the remainder. If he has 4, he bids 2 hearts if the dealer starts with 1. If he has 5 playing tricks, he calls 3 hearts; if he has 6 tricks he calls 4 hearts.

This is simply a rough and ready rule, and when it seems to carry the bidding too high, as into the realms of slams, most players deduct one trick for safety. Here are some examples. The dealer calls one spade in each case. All contract calling.

S—Q x x x  
H—x \* \*  
D—A K x x x  
C—x x x  
6½ tricks

S—Q x x x  
H—\* \* \*  
D—x x x x  
C—x x x x x  
6 tricks

S—A K 10 x  
H—K x x  
D—\* \* \*  
C—A K x x x x  
9½ tricks

In the first example, partner calling game, it was allowed to stand. The dealer made five odd. In the second example, the dealer bid a spade, second hand four hearts; dealer's partner four spades, and the dealer six spades. Player on dealer's right went to seven hearts to save the rubber. The dealer went to seven spades and made it by a finesse. In the duplicate game twelve players passed up this hand, and six hearts were made on the four bid. The third example made the grand slam easily.

**THE DECLARER** counts his hand in the same way as soon as the trump is agreed on, except that he counts all his long trumps at a full trick each; nothing for ruffing. Note that the partner never counts for ruffing two different suits.

Take these examples: dealer calling one of a suit.

S—A Q J x x  
H—K Q J x  
D—x x x  
C—x

S—x x  
H—K Q 10 x  
D—x x  
C—A Q 10 x x

S—10 x x  
H—K J  
D—K Q 10  
C—A K Q 10 x

In the first case, dealer called one spade; second hand two clubs; partner two spades, showing 4 playing tricks. Dealer now counts his hand on the agreed trump suit; 4½ in spades; 2½ in hearts = 7 to add to partner's 4, and calls game in spades. Note that it is

useless to ask a partner to bid any more, as the rule is for him to bid **The Full Value of An Assist** at once.

In the second case, dealer bid one club; second hand one diamond; partner one spade (denying normal assistance in clubs). As this is a one bid, dealer shifts to hearts, calling two. Partner bids 4, showing 6 playing tricks with hearts trumps. In the third case dealer called one club; second hand two spades; partner 4 clubs, showing 6 playing tricks. Dealer counts his own hand for  $6\frac{1}{2}$  and bids six clubs, which he made.

**SECONDARY BIDS** occur when both partners have passed the first round. If one has passed and the other has called, any response is either a denial or an assist, if not a second pass. Secondary bids are usually made on hands that have one long or strong suit, but not enough Q.Ts. to justify a free bid as dealer. The following are examples, all dealer's hands:

S—Q J x x x x x	S—A x x	S—Q x x
H—A x x	H—A x x x x	H—x x
D—x x	D—K x x	D—A 10 x x x x x
C—x	C—x x	C—x

The first example is not strong enough for a two-spade bid. Second hand bid a club, dealer's partner passed, third hand bid two hearts, dealer two spades.

The second example is not a sound free bid in hearts, even with  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts., neither is it a no-trumper; but is a very good assisting hand, or secondary bid, if the adversaries start anything and partner passes.

In the third example, second hand called one club; third hand passed and fourth hand called two spades. The dealer bid three diamonds; second had rebid the clubs, calling four, and fourth hand, with six spades to four honors, K-Q-x in diamonds bid the little slam in spades.

The dealer led his ace, dropping partner's jack, partner trumped the second round, and the dealer's queen of trumps was a sure trick to put the declarer down two tricks.

It is very important, especially in contract, for players to make due allowance for any bids that are not free bids, or answers to free bids. Following bids should always be discounted as probably not worth more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts. Denials, if they are shifts to another suit, and only enough to be take-outs, are in the same class. All secondary bids are in the nature of prospective sacrifice calls, with little but hope behind them.

This is frequently important in assisting any of these bids. With 5 or 6 playing tricks to assist a following bid, deduct a full trick, calling 2 or 3 only as a raise.

## PLAYING THE HANDS.

**OPENING LEADS.** The position which we have first to consider is that of the eldest hand, who sits on the declarer's left.

**Selecting the Suit to Lead.** If your partner has declared a suit, lead the best card you hold of it, regardless of number, unless you have an ace-king suit of your own, in which case lead the king first and have a look at dummy. If partner has not declared anything, lead your own suit. With high cards not in sequence, such as ace-queen, king-jack, or even queen-ten, in every suit but trumps, lead the trump.

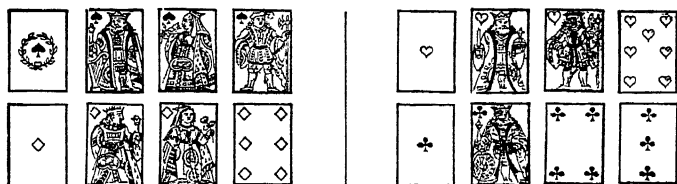
There is a great difference between playing against a trump declaration and against no-trumps; because in the first case the leader is opposed to unusual trump strength and his object must be to make what he can of his winning cards, before the declarer gets into the lead and discards his weak suits, so as to be ready to trump them. But in the second case, there being no trumps, the leader's object should be to get a suit established against the dealer, if he can, and the longer the suit is, the better. The dealer's strength in a no-trumper is usually scattered, and he may often be found with a weak or missing suit, which is generally the suit in which the eldest hand or his partner is long.

We shall first consider the leads against trump declarations, because they are more common and are also the more useful. If a player makes a trump-hand lead against a no-trump declaration, he will not do nearly so much harm as if he make a no-trump-hand lead against a trump declaration. For that reason, if a player cannot master both systems of leading, it is better for him to learn the leads against trumps than those against no-trumps.

**Rules for Leading High Cards.** With such a suit as A K Q 2, no one need be told not to begin with the deuce. Whenever a player holds two or more of the best cards of a suit he should play one of them. If he holds both second and third best, playing one of them will force the best out of his way, leaving him with the commanding card.

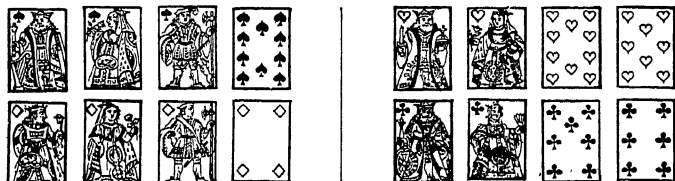
The cards which are recognised by bridge players as high, are the A K Q J 10, and if we separate the various combinations from which a player should lead each of them, a study of the groups so formed will greatly facilitate our recollection of them.

In the first group are those containing two or more of the best cards. In this and all following notation, the exact size of any card below a Ten is immaterial.



So far as trick-taking is concerned, it is of no importance which of the winning cards is first led; but good players lead the **King** from all these combinations in order that the partner may be informed, by its winning, that the leader holds the Ace also.

In the second group are those containing both the second and third best, but not the best.



The **King** is the proper lead from these combinations. If it wins, the partner should have the Ace; if it loses, partner should know the leader holds at least the Queen.

Both these groups, which contain all the King leads, may be easily remembered by observing that the King is always led if accompanied by the Ace or Queen, or both. Beginners should follow this rule for leading the King, regardless of the number of small cards in the suit.

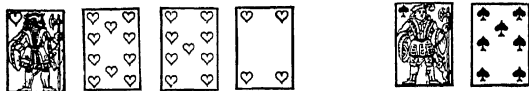
There is only one combination from which the **Queen** is led,



when it is accompanied by the Jack, and there is no higher card of the suit in the hand. Whether the ten follows the Jack or not, does not matter. With any two high cards in sequence, the lead is a high card when playing against a declared trump.

The **Jack** is never led except as a supporting card. It is always the top of the suit, and the suit is usually short. The object of

making such an opening is to avoid leading suits headed by two honours which are not in sequence. These are good Jack leads:—

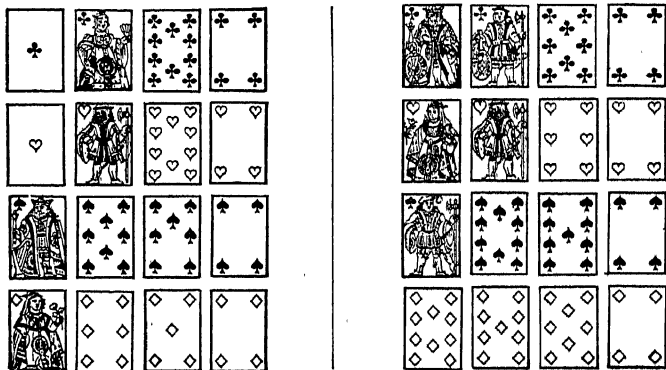


The *Ten* is led from one combination only:—



The *Ace* should not be led if it can be avoided; but it is better to lead it from suits of more than four cards, so as to make it at once. If the Ace is accompanied by the King, the King is the card to lead, not the Ace. If the Ace is accompanied by other honours, such as the Queen or Jack, it is better to avoid opening the suit, unless you have five or more cards of it. But if you do lead a suit headed by the Ace, *without the King*, be sure that you lead the Ace, when playing against a trump declaration, or you may never make it.

All such combinations as the following should be avoided, if possible, as more can be made out of them by letting them alone:—

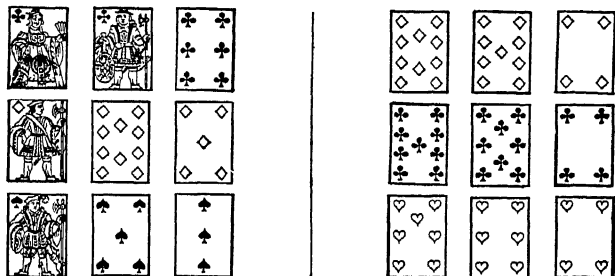


But with three honours, A Q J, the Ace should be led.

**Rules for Leading Short Suits.** It will sometimes happen that the only four-card suit in the leader's hand will be trumps or a suit headed by honours not in sequence, which it is not desirable to

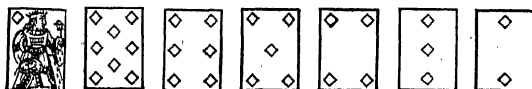


lead. In such cases, if there is no high-card combination in any of the short suits, it is usual to lead the highest card, unless it is an Ace or King. Many good players will not lead the Queen from a three-card suit, unless it is accompanied by the Jack. All such leads are called *forced*, and are intended to assist the partner, by playing cards which may strengthen him, although of no use to the leader. The best card should be led from any such combinations as the following:—



**Small-card Leads.** If the suit selected for the lead does not contain any combination of high cards from which it would be right to lead a high card, good players make it a rule to begin with the fourth-best, counting from the top of the suit. This is called the “card of uniformity,” because it indicates to the partner that there are remaining in the leader’s hand exactly three cards higher than the one led.

Should the player be forced to lead any of the undesirable combinations shown on the last page, he would begin with the Ace if he held it; otherwise he would lead the fourth-best. In each of the hands shown this would be the four, and this card would be led, even if there were five or six cards in the suit. From this hand, for instance, the five is the proper lead:—



**Rules for Leading Second Round.** If the leader wins the first trick, having the best of the suit in his hand, he should follow with the winning card; but if he has several cards which are equally winning cards, he should lead the lowest of them. This is an indication to the partner that the card led is as good as the best; therefore the leader must hold the intermediate cards. When a

## 22 (Bridge.) *LEADING SHORT SUITS.*

King wins, your partner knows you have the Ace, if he does not hold it. Then tell him what he does not know, that you have the Queen also.

Suppose you have led the King from these combinations :—

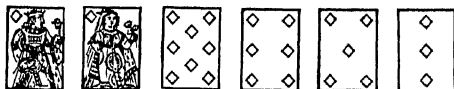


Your partner knows you have the Ace, because your King wins. From the first, go on with the Jack, which is just as good as the Ace, but tells your partner you have not only the Ace but the Queen, still in your hand. From the second, go on with the Queen, the card your partner does not know, which tells him you still have the Ace, *but not the Jack*. If you have not the Queen, you will have to go on with the Ace, and your leading the Ace *will deny the Queen*.

If you have not the best, lead one of the second and third-best, if you hold both :—



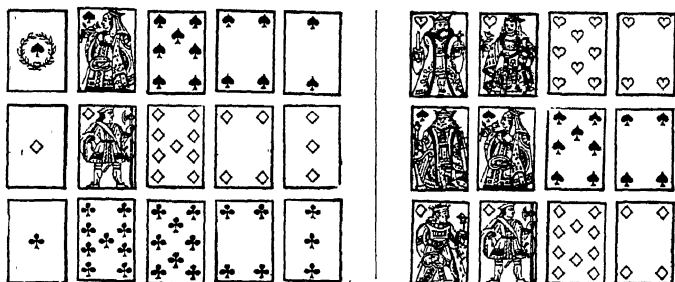
From the first of these, having led the King, if it wins, go on with the ten, whether you have any smaller cards or not. From the second, if the King wins, go on with the Jack, which denies the ten, but tells your partner you still have the Queen. No mistake is more common among beginners than leading a low card on the second round, on the assumption that the partner must have the Ace. If you have led from King and Queen only, you must go on with the fourth-best; because you have not both the second and third-best. This fourth-best is the card that was the fourth-best originally. Having led the King from this :—



the card to follow the King is the six, if the King wins the first trick.

**The Fourth-best.** From any combination of cards, if you have not the best, or both the second and third-best, in your hand for the second round, lead your original fourth-best. From

all the following, the proper lead on the second round would be the fourth-best, in each case the four of the suit :



**Leading Trumps.** A trump lead is sometimes adopted when all the plain suits are bad ones to lead away from, such as A Q, or A J, or K J in each and no length. If a player holds high cards which are not in sequence, such as the major tenace, ace and queen, it is very probable that the declarer holds the king. By refusing to lead such suits, and waiting for them to come up to the tenace, the declarer's high card may be caught and a valuable trick saved. When a good player opens his hand with a trump, right up to the declaration, his partner should lead his best supporting cards boldly up to dummy's weak suits.

**The Pone's Leads.** When the pone gets into the lead, if he does not return his partner's suit, he should open his own suits according to the rules already given for all the high-card combinations. If he has no high-card combination, it is usually better for him to lead some card that will beat Dummy than to lead his fourth-best. Suppose he wishes to lead a diamond, in which he holds Q 10 8 4 3; Dummy having the 9 and 6 only. It is better to lead the ten of diamonds than the fourth-best, because if the declarer does not follow with an honour, your partner will not have to sacrifice an honour to keep Dummy from winning the trick with the 9.

After the opening lead, when Dummy's cards are exposed, the knowledge of his cards may change the aspect of the game greatly; but the proper cards to lead to and through Dummy will be better understood in connection with the play against no-trumpers.

**No-trump Leads.** The chief difference in the leads against no-trumpers is, that there is no hurry to make your aces and kings, the chief thing being to make some of the smaller cards

good for tricks. When you are long in a suit, if you lead out the winning cards first, your partner may have none to lead you later on, and if you cannot make every trick in the suit before you lose the lead, you may never make anything but your one or two high cards.

The difference in the leads at no-trump is covered by a very simple rule; if you have only two honours in sequence, do not lead either of them, but begin with the fourth-best, even if your honours are the Ace and King. But if you have three honours in the suit, two of them in sequence, always lead an honour against a no-trumper.

The exception to this rule is, that when you are so long in the suit that you may catch some high cards with your high cards, you lead them first. With six or seven in suit to the A K, for instance, lead the King, on the chance of dropping the Queen. With seven in suit headed by the Ace, lead the Ace, but never with less than seven without the King. With six in suit, you may lead the King from K Q, without either Jack or 10; but with less than six in suit never lead the King from K Q unless you have the 10 or the J also.

**THIRD HAND PLAY.** The leader's partner must do his best to inform his partner as to the distribution of his suit. The method of doing this is entirely different when there is a trump from that which is adopted when there is no trump. In the first case, all your partner wants to know is, who is going to trump his suit if he goes on with it. In the second case, what he wants to know is his chance for getting his suit cleared or established.

**With a Trump.** When third hand makes no attempt to win the trick, either because his partner's or Dummy's card is better than any he need play, he plays the higher of two cards only, the lowest of three or more. This is called playing *down and out*. Suppose third hand holds 7 and 2 only, and the lead is a King. The 7 is played. The leader goes on with the Ace, denying the Queen, and the third hand plays the deuce. If the Queen is not in the Dummy, the declarer must have it. In any case, the leader knows that if he goes on, his partner, the third hand, can trump that suit. With three cards, the lowest falling to the first round, followed by a higher card, will show the leader that the third hand still has another of that suit. Many players use this echo to show the queen, when the king is led.

It is not necessary to play down and out with an honour, because the leader can read the situation without it. Suppose third hand holds the J 5. He plays the 5 to the first round, because one of his two cards is an honour. The leader goes on with the Ace, and

the Jack falls. Now the third hand must have the Queen or no more, and no matter which it is he can win the third round, with the Queen or with a trump.

**Against No-Trumpers.** When there is no trump, the third hand uses what is called the *Foster echo*. This consists in playing always the *second-best* of the suit, when no attempt is made to win the trick. Suppose the leader begins with the King. Third hand holds 10 8 7 4, and plays the 8. This marks him with only one card higher than the 8, and is a great exposé of false cards played by the declarer.

On the second round, the rule is, always to keep the lowest card of the suit until the last. If third hand held four originally, 10 8 7 4, his play to the second round is the 7, keeping the 4. If he held 10 8 7 only, his play to the second round would be the 10, keeping the 7. This makes it clear to the leader how many and what he holds.

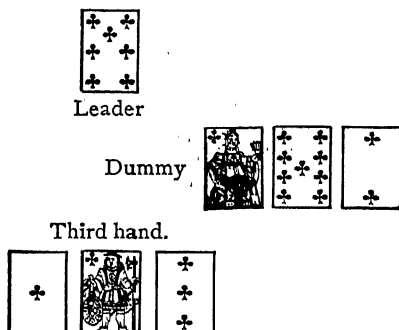
**High Cards Third Hand.** When the third hand tries to win his partner's lead, he does so as cheaply as possible. That is, holding both King and Queen, he plays the Queen, not the King. If his cards are not in sequence, he should always play the best he has. With Ace and Queen, for instance, he must play the Ace if the King is not in the Dummy. To play the Queen would be to throw it away if the declarer has the King. If the leader has the King, third hand gets out of his way by giving up the Ace.

**FOSTER'S ELEVEN RULE.** In trying to win tricks as cheaply as possible, third hand may often be guided by the Eleven Rule, which can be applied to any lead of a small card.

By deducting from eleven the number of pips on any low card led by his partner, the poney may ascertain to a certainty how many cards there are *higher than the one led*, which are not in the leader's hand. This rule, which was invented by R. F. Foster in 1881, in connection with the game of whist, is now used by everyone with any pretensions to being a bridge player. The rule itself is this :—

When the eldest hand leads any card which is not an honour, deduct the spots on it from eleven. From the remainder thus found, deduct the number of cards, *higher than the one led*, which are not in your own hand nor in Dummy's in that suit. This final remainder is the number of cards which are in the declarer's hand which are higher than the card led. The principal thing to remember is, that it is only the cards higher than the one led that you need trouble about. To illustrate :—

Suppose you are third hand, and your partner leads the seven of clubs, Dummy lays down the Q 9 2, and you hold A J 3, thus: —



Deducting seven from eleven, you find it leaves four. These four cards, higher than the one lead, are all in sight, Q 9 in Dummy; A J in your own hand, therefore the declarer cannot have any card higher than the seven. If he has, your partner's lead is not his fourth-best, as you will see if you lay out the cards.

**RETURNING SUITS.** When the third hand returns his partner's suit, he should lead the higher of two cards, and the lowest of three, unless he has a card which will beat anything Dummy may hold in the suit, in which case he should *always beat Dummy*.

**PLAYING AGAINST DUMMY.** Some of the fine points in bridge arise in situations which require a careful consideration of the Dummy's cards.

There are three great principles in playing against Dummy: —

- 1st. Lead through the strong suits, and up to the weak.
- 2nd. Do not lead through a fourchette.
- 3rd. Do not lead up to a tenace.

These rules must not be blindly followed in every instance. They are simply general principles, and some of the prettiest *coups* arise from the exceptional cases.

**Leading Through Dummy.** The eldest hand, when he does not deem it advisable to go on with his own suit, may be guided in his choice by the strength or weakness of certain suits in Dummy's hand. The play against Dummy is especially important at no trumps.

If Dummy remains with one or two small cards of a suit that has been led, and you have the best, play it on the second round. Dummy's play is evidently for the ruff, and if the declarer has not the second best, your partner has.

If you have King, and only one or two small cards, Dummy leading Queen from Q 10 x x, play your King. You cannot save yourself; but you may make the 9 good in partner's hand. If you have three or more small cards, do not play the King, for either partner or the declarer must be short in the suit. So if Dummy leads Jack from J 10 and others, play the King with a short suit. If partner has Queen you establish it; if not, you cannot make a trick in the suit.

With short suits it is usually best to cover an honour with an honour; but with several small cards, such as K x x x, Dummy leading a singleton Queen, you should pass.

With K 10 x, Dummy having J and others, play honour on honour; small card on small card, whichever Dummy leads.

It is often important for the second hand to cover with what is called an *imperfect fourchette*. A true fourchette is the card immediately above and below the one led; such as K J over the Q, or Q 10 over the J. An imperfect fourchette is the card above the one led, and another next but one below it; such as K 10 over a Q led, or Q 9 over a J led. Covering forces the opponents to play two honours to win one trick, and will often make an intermediate card good in your partner's hand.

**THIRD HAND PLAY.** In addition to the methods of *echoing* on the partner's leads of high cards in the suit first opened, third hand must be ready to adapt himself and his play to any change of suit and will require constant practice in putting himself in his partner's place, asking himself what the object is in leading certain cards through Dummy's hand. The inferences from the conventional leads should be sufficiently familiar to need no further explanation; but even good players occasionally overlook indications that partner holds certain cards. For instance: A leads a small card; Y, Dummy, holds Q xx, and plays Q. You play the King and win the trick. This marks not only the Ace, but the *Jack* in partner's hand; because the declarer would not play a twice guarded Queen from Dummy's hand if he had the Jack guarded himself.

False cards should be avoided by the third hand as much as possible. The declarer will give your partner enough to puzzle over without your adding to the confusion. There are some exceptions in trumps. For instance: You have K Q x; Dummy has A J x x, and your partner leads. Unless Dummy plays Ace, you should put on the King, and change the suit.

**ENCOURAGING DISCARDS.** In order to distinguish between discards from weakness and those from strength, many players use what is called an encouraging card. This is anything higher than a six, if they have protection in the suit, or want it led. A player with an established suit, and A 8 2 of another suit, for instance, would discard the 8, to encourage his partner to lead that suit and put him in. In case there is no card higher than the six, the *reverse discard* is used. With A 4 2, the play would be the 4 and then the 2. Some use this reverse or encouraging card to induce the partner to continue the suit he is leading.

**THE DECLARER'S PLAY.** The chief difference between the play of the Dummy and partner, and that of their adversaries, is that there is no occasion for the former to play on the probability of partner's holding certain cards, because a glance will show whether he holds them or not. There is no hoping that he may have certain cards of re-entry, or strength in trumps, or that he will be able to stop an adverse suit, or anything of that sort, for the facts are exposed from the first. Instead of adapting his play to the slowly ascertained conditions of partner's hand, the declarer should have it mapped out and determined upon before he plays a card. He may see two courses open to him; to draw the trumps and make a long suit, or to secure such discards as will give him a good cross-ruff. A rapid estimate of the probable results of each line of play, a glance at the score, and his mind should be made up. Several examples of this foresight will be found in the example hands.

Another point of difference is, that the declarer should play false cards whenever possible. He has not a partner who, if he plays the King, might jump to the conclusion that he can trump a suit, or has not the Queen. The more thoroughly the adversaries are confused, the greater the advantage to the declarer, especially in the end game.

**With a Trump.** When the winning declaration is a suit for trumps, the declarer's first consideration upon getting into the lead must be whether or not to lead trumps. As a rule, the trumps should be led at once, so as to exhaust the adversaries; but there are exceptional cases, the principal ones being:—

Do not lead trumps from the strong trump hand if it would be to your advantage to put the other hand in the lead with a plain suit, so as to let the trump lead come from the weaker hand to the stronger, as when a finesse in trumps is desirable.

Do not lead trumps if you have no good plain suit, and can make more tricks by playing for a cross-ruff.

Do not lead trumps if the weaker hand can trump some of your losing cards first. It often happens that a *losing trump* can be used to win a trick before trumps are led.



**At No-trump.** The declarer's first care in a no-trumper must be to select the suit that he will play for. Four simple rules cover this choice:—

1. Always lead from the weak hand to the strong if the suit is not already established.

2. Play for the suit in which you have the greatest number of cards between the two hands, because it will probably yield the greatest number of tricks.

3. If two suits are equal in number, play for the one in which you have the greatest number of cards massed in one hand. That is, if you have two suits of eight cards each, select the one that has six of those cards in one hand, in preference to the suit with four in each hand.

4. Everything else being equal, play for the suit which is shown in the Dummy, so as to conceal from the adversaries as long as possible the strength in your own hand.

A suit is said to be *established* when you can win every remaining trick in it, no matter who leads it. As it is very important that the hand which is longer in the suit should be able to lead it without interruption when it is established, good players make it a rule always to *play the high cards from the shorter hand* first, so as to get out of the way. With Q 10 and three others in one hand, K J and one other in the other hand, the play is the K and J from the short hand, keeping the Q 10 in the long hand.

If there is any choice, that suit should be selected which contains the longest sequence, or the sequence with the fewest breaks. It should be noticed that the sequence need not be in one hand; for it is almost as valuable if divided, and it is especially advantageous to have the higher cards concealed in the declarer's hand. Its continuity is the chief point. For instance: Declarer and Dummy hold between them one suit of K J 9 7 5 4 3, and another of Q J 10 9 8 7 5. The latter should be selected, because two leads must establish it.

**Finessing.** This is a very important part of the strategy of the game for the dealer. The adversaries of the dealer never finesse in bridge; but the dealer himself relies upon finessing for any extra tricks he may want.

A finesse is any attempt to win a trick with a card which is not the best you hold, nor in sequence with it. Suppose you have Ace and Queen in the hand which is longer in the suit and lead from the shorter hand a small card. If you play the Queen, that is a finesse, because you hope to take a trick with it, although the King is against you.

It is usually bad play to finesse when there are nine cards of the suit between the two hands, dealer's and Dummy's, because there is a good chance that the card you wish to finesse against may fall.

## ILLUSTRATIVE AUCTION HANDS.

Z is the dealer in both instances, but Y makes the winning declaration, so that B leads for the first trick. The first hand is straight auction; the second is "contract." The underlined card wins the trick and the card under it is the next one led.

A	Y	B	Z		A	Y	B	Z
<u>Q ♠</u>	2 ♣	9 ♠	♣ 2	1	♥ 6	♥ 3	♥ Q	<u>♥ K</u>
<u>A ♠</u>	6 ♣	8 ♠	♥ 3	2	♣ 8	<u>♣ J</u>	♣ 7	♣ 4
<u>K ♠</u>	10 ♣	4 ♠	♥ 7	3	<u>K ♦</u>	9 ♦	3 ♦	7 ♦
5 ♠	<u>J ♣</u>	3 ♠	♥ J	4	6 ♠	2 ♣	2 ♣	<u>♣ 5</u>
2 ♦	<u>Q ♦</u>	4 ♦	5 ♦	5	♣ Q	♣ 2	♣ 9	<u>♣ K</u>
10 ♦	9 ♦	7 ♦	<u>J ♦</u>	6	7 ♠	<u>♣ A</u>	♣ 10	♣ 6
♥ 4	3 ♦	8 ♦	<u>A ♦</u>	7	4 ♦	2 ♦	8 ♦	<u>10 ♦</u>
7 ♠	♥ 5	♥ 9	<u>K ♦</u>	8	5 ♦	4 ♣	Q ♦	<u>A ♦</u>
♥ 8	♣ 3	♥ 2	<u>6 ♦</u>	9	6 ♦	5 ♣	♥ 9	<u>J ♦</u>
♣ 4	<u>♣ Q</u>	♣ 10	♣ 9	10	♥ 4	♥ 3	♥ 10	<u>♥ A</u>
♣ 5	<u>♣ A</u>	♥ 6	♣ 7	11	9 ♠	<u>♣ 3</u>	♥ J	♥ 2
♣ 8	<u>♣ K</u>	♥ 10	♥ Q	12	10 ♠	<u>A ♠</u>	8 ♠	♥ 7
<u>♣ J</u>	♣ 6	♥ A	♥ K	13	J ♠	Q ♣	<u>K ♠</u>	♥ 8

In the first example the dealer, Z, bids a heart. A says one spade and Y two clubs. This bid of Y's denies any support for his partner's hearts, but shows a supporting minor suit, in case Z is strong enough to go on with the hearts. B bids two spades as he can stop the hearts twice and ruff the clubs. Z cannot pursue the hearts, but shows his supporting minor suit, bidding three diamonds. This says to Y, "Go no trumps if you can stop the spades." When A passes, having bid his hand on the first round, Y goes two no trumps and makes game. B leads the top of his partner's declared suit, and A leads a fourth round, hoping to get in with the club jack. At tricks 8 and 9, B signals control in hearts. A keeps the protection in clubs to the end and saves a trick by it. Y keeps two clubs in dummy, so that if club is led, he will have one to return after he has made his diamonds.

In the second example, Z bids a heart, which Y denies with one spade. This Z denies with two diamonds, which Y denies with three clubs, and Z bids five. B leads H Q, and K wins. Small trump led, and J finesse holds. D 9 led, and finesse loses to K. Small spade led, Y plays small and dummy trumps. Leads C K and 6. Y wins and leads D 2. Finesse of 10 makes three diamonds. Now H A, a trump and S A win the game, five odd.

## ILLUSTRATIVE AUCTION HANDS.

Two illustrations of the use of the conventional double. Z is the dealer in both hands, but B is the final declarer, so that Z leads. The underlined card wins the trick and the card under it is the next one led.

A	Y	B	Z		A	Y	B	Z
♥ 3	♥ 2	♥ 4	♥ K	1	♣ Q	♣ 2	♣ 6	♣ 10
<u>5</u> ♦	♥ 9	♥ 6	♥ Q	2	♥ 10	♥ 2	♥ 3	♥ A
3 ♠	5 ♠	<u>Q</u> ♠	2 ♠	3	♣ A	♣ 3	♣ 7	♣ J
<u>Q</u> ♦	6 ♦	2 ♦	3 ♦	4	♥ Q	♥ 4	♥ 7	♥ 5
6 ♠	7 ♠	<u>A</u> ♠	4 ♠	5	♥ 6	2 ♠	♥ J	♥ 9
<u>A</u> ♦	9 ♦	4 ♦	K ♦	6	2 ♦	3 ♦	<u>A</u> ♦	6 ♦
K ♠	8 ♠	♥ 7	10 ♠	7	<u>K</u> ♦	9 ♦	5 ♦	J ♦
J ♠	9 ♠	♥ 8	♥ 5	8	7 ♦	3 ♠	4 ♦	<u>Q</u> ♦
8 ♦	10 ♦	<u>J</u> ♦	♣ 5	9	♣ 5	♣ 9	♥ 8	♣ K
♣ 4	♣ 3	♣ J	♣ A	10	4 ♠	6 ♠	<u>A</u> ♠	5 ♠
♣ 8	♥ J	<u>7</u> ♦	♥ A	11	♥ K	7 ♠	8 ♠	K ♠
♣ Q	♣ 6	♣ 10	♣ 9	12	<u>10</u> ♦	10 ♠	9 ♠	♣ 4
♣ K	♣ 7	♣ 2	♥ 10	13	<u>8</u> ♦	Q ♠	J ♠	♣ 8

In the first illustration, Z deals and bids a heart, which A doubles, showing that he has a no-trumper, but is weak in hearts. Y passes and B bids two diamonds, as he is not long enough to call the spades. Z goes to two hearts, A to three diamonds, which all pass.

Z may as well lead another heart, as the declarer can ruff dummy if he does not. A leads a small spade, so as to get the finesse in trumps and then leads another spade to get out of dummy's way. After catching the king of trumps, there is no hurry about catching the ten, it being more important to discard the losing hearts on the spades. If Y trumps the spades, B can over-trump. After discarding the hearts and picking up Y's trump, the ace of clubs is the only trick lost. Five odd. Game.

In the second illustration, Z deals and bids no-trump. Instead of bidding two no-trumps, A doubles to get a suit bid from B. Y bids two spades, which he would have done whether A doubled or not. B passes, as the take-out relieves him from bidding on four small hearts. He could double, to show two stoppers; or he could have gone two no-trumps; or he could have bid the hearts. When he passes, A doubles two spades, to insist on a bid from B, who says three hearts.

Having so many re-entries, Z leads his own suit, clubs. The finesse holds. In leading trumps, B keeps high ones in each hand. After picking up the trumps, B clears the diamonds; trumping the clubs himself and letting dummy trump the spade and make the diamonds, five odd and game.

## DEFENSIVE CALLING.

A widely accepted rule for the second hand is to put in a following bid when holding at least  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts. and a 5-card suit; one trick at least being in that suit. But there are many cases in which the score modifies all rules. If the dealer's side has a stub, and a small bid will put them game, something must be done to coax them to overcall their hands, because even the first game of the rubber is worth an equity of much more than the trick score, whether the game be auction, or *plafond*, or contract.

In many cases second hand knows, from his holding in the dealer's suit, that third hand will take it out. This gives second hand two opportunities; to show the suit he would like his partner to lead in case third hand eventually becomes the declarer, and that will be led if he does not; or to wait until it is seen what third hand is going to say, and what fourth hand will do about it.

When second hand sees there is no chance to make game for his side unless fourth hand has a call, the whole attention must be concentrated on the partners showing each other the best chance to stop game. Both sides may have entered the bidding, and the correct valuation of the playing values becomes very important when the adversaries carry their calling to game. It is then a question of how much can you afford to be penalized; not what chance is there to go game against them.

A certain amount of mental dexterity, to be acquired only by practice, is required to decide just how far defensive calling may be carried. Some players are good guessers in this part of the game; others depend on simple arithmetic. Take these cases:

S—A Q 10 x x  
H—x x  
D—A x x  
C—J x x

S—A Q J x x x  
H—10 x x  
D—x x  
C—x x

S—x x x  
H—K x x  
D—A x  
C—A K Q J x

In the first case second hand calls one spade over the dealer's one heart. Third hand bids two hearts; fourth hand two spades; the dealer four hearts. Both assists have shown 4 playing tricks. Second hand has 5, adding 4 gives him 9 only; but he calls four spades to prevent four hearts going game, confident that he will go down one only if his partner has 4 playing tricks.

In the second case the dealer called one diamond with a game in to no game, at contract. Second hand one spade; third hand two

clubs; fourth hand two spades; dealer three spades. When second hand passed, third hand called seven clubs. Now if the dealer has no spades, and partner has assisted spades, second and third hand must have nine or ten between them, so second hand calls a grand slam in spades to shut out the grand slam in clubs and the rubber.

The third example shows the cards held by third hand. He should have foreseen that his grand slam would be overcalled, and contented himself with a small slam, which he would have been allowed to make. That was his defensive bid.

Psychic bids are a modern defense against hands that show every probability of bidding game and probably going on to a slam. It is very difficult to inhibit a game call, but many a slam has been shut off by a timely "syke."

If the adversaries are using any of the modern articons, such as the Vanderbilt Club, or the Big Club, it is advisable always to put in any kind of a call, however hopeless, that might find the partner with enough to prevent too great a loss in case of a penalty double. These articon players are usually so intent on going to the limit with their system that they do not stop for any average penalty. Here are some examples:

S—x x x x  
H—x  
D—K 10 9 x x x x  
C—x

S—x x  
H—K x  
D—A K x x  
C—A K J x x

In the first example, dealer calls one club, showing 3 tricks, third hand calls two clubs, showing 2 tricks, and fourth hand, with the above holding, at once calls three diamonds. This does not deter the articon players, who go right on to a small slam in clubs. Second hand, holding four diamonds to the A-J, with no-game-in against the adversaries game-in, calls six diamonds, is doubled and goes down three tricks only. The dealer's side had a laydown little slam in clubs, but would be set on the grand slam, as the diamond ace wins the first trick.

The second example is held by fourth hand, the dealer, playing the Big-Club articon, calls two clubs; third hand two diamonds. This shows fourth hand that the dealer's hand is a two-suiter in the majors, and he waits to see which is the stronger. Dealer calls two hearts, and third hand goes to four. As this assist, after denying even  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Q.Ts. must be on ability to ruff, fourth hand at once calls five clubs, is doubled and down one only, as against a sure four odd in hearts.

The worst defensive bid in the game is overcalling a no-trumper when one has the lead. This is bidding against something one knows nothing about, and at once gives the dealer the choice between trying something safer or leaving second hand in.

## THE LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE

1935

These Laws were written, approved and copyrighted by The Whist Club, No. 9 East 62nd Street, New York, and are printed in this book with its written permission.

In order properly to master and readily to find the various Laws and Proprieties, players should consider the game divided, as are these laws, into five separate and distinct time periods—

First Period—Preliminaries to the Rubber;

Second Period—The Shuffle, the Cut of the Pack, the Deal;

Third Period—The Auction;

Fourth Period—The Play;

Fifth Period—The Score.

### DEFINITIONS \*

**TABLE**—A comprehensive term, including the members entitled to play the game at each table provided for the purpose.

**MEMBER**—A candidate who has acquired title to play at a table either immediately or in his turn.

**PLAYER**—One of the four members entitled to play at a table. "Declarer's Partner" does not rank as a player.

**PARTNER**—The player who occupies the alternate seat at the table and with whom one plays as a side against the other two.

**ROTATION**—The order or succession of the game, which is from player to player to the left, in the direction taken by the hands of a watch.

**DEAL**—The distribution of the cards in rotation to the players.

**CALL**—A comprehensive term applicable to a bid, a double, a redouble or a pass.

**DENOMINATION**—The suit or no-trump named in a bid.

**ODD TRICK**—Each trick, in excess of six, won by a side.

**BID**—A call by which a player offers to contract that his side will win at least as many odd tricks as he specifies, provided that the hand is played in the denomination he names, and that his side becomes the contracting side.

**DOUBLE**—A call which, when properly made, has the effect of

\* Defined words are printed in italics in the laws when familiarity with the definition is necessary for a complete understanding of the text.

increasing certain of the points to be won or lost in the event of the last preceding bid becoming the contract.

REDOUBLE—A call which, if no bid intervenes, has the effect of doubling the points increased by an opponent's double.

INSUFFICIENT BID—A bid of a number of tricks fewer than necessary to overcall the previous bid.

DEFENDER—An opponent of declarer.

COMPLETED TRICK—Four cards, one played from each hand, in one round of play.

LEAD—The play of the opening card of a trick.

TO FOLLOW SUIT—To play a card of the suit led.

REVOKE—Failure to play as required by or under the laws of the Play Period, when able to do so.

QUITTED TRICK—A turned trick from which the hand of a player of the side winning it has been removed.

OVERTRICK—Each odd trick won by declarer in excess of his contract.

UNDERTRICK—Each trick by which declarer falls short of his contract.

HONOR—The ace, king, queen, jack or ten of a trump suit, or each of the four aces at no-trump.

SLAMS—Grand slam—the winning of thirteen tricks by one side; little slam—the winning of twelve tricks by one side.

TRICK SCORE—The score which counts both towards the winning of a game and the winning of a rubber.

PREMIUM SCORE—The score which counts towards the winning of a rubber but not towards the winning of a game.

VULNERABLE—Exposed to higher penalties for unfulfilled contracts. The term is applied to a side which has won a game.

THE RUBBER—The succession of hands ending when one side has won two games.

DEFINITIONS INCLUDED IN THE LAWS: PASS, law 18; DECLARER, law 19; MISNOMER, law 22; PLAYED CARD, law 26, section 3; PENALTY CARD, law 32.

## FIRST PERIOD

### PRELIMINARIES TO THE RUBBER

#### I. CARDS.

Each *deal* is made with a pack of fifty-two cards\* divided into four suits, Spades, Hearts, Diamonds and Clubs, ranking downwards in this order. The cards of each suit rank downward in the order, Ace highest, King, Queen, Jack, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3 and 2 lowest.

\* When practicable, two distinguishable packs should be used alternately.

## 36 (Contract.) *LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.*

### 2. DRAWING CARDS.

When cards are to be drawn, one shuffled pack is spread face down on the table and each person entitled to do so draws a card. If anyone exposes more than one card or draws one of the four cards at either end of the pack, he must draw again. If equal cards are drawn, they rank downward in the order—Spade, Heart, Diamond, Club.

A drawn card should not be exposed until all those entitled to draw have drawn cards.

### 3. THE ORDER OF PRECEDENCE.

When precedence is to be established between candidates, those who have not played, in their order of entry into the room, take precedence over those who have played. Those with equal rights draw cards, the drawer of the higher ranking card obtaining precedence.

### 4. COMPLEMENT OF TABLE.

A *table* has four, five or six *members*; one with six members is complete.

### 5. ESTABLISHING MEMBERSHIP IN A TABLE.

Any candidate may, by announcing his intention, join an incomplete *table*, unless candidates in excess of the number required to complete a table announce their intention to join at the same time. In the latter case precedence is established to determine title to membership.

### 6. SELECTION AND SEATING OF PLAYERS.

No candidate can acquire title to play in a *rubber* unless he has joined a *table* before a card is duly drawn for the selection of players or *partners*.

Before the first *rubber* when there are more than four *members*, precedence is established to determine title to play in the first rubber.

Before each *rubber*, the four *members* who are to play draw cards. The two with the highest ranking cards play as *partners* against the other two; the one with the highest ranking card *deals* first and has the right to choose his seat and the pack with which he will deal. He may consult his partner but, having announced his decision, must abide by it.

After each *rubber* place must be made, for any *member* who did not play in the last rubber and who has acquired title to play in the next rubber, by the member who has played the greater number of



## LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE. (Contract.) 37

consecutive rubbers at that table. Members who have played an equal number of rubbers draw cards, the one with the lower ranking card making place.

### 7. LEAVING AN EXISTING TABLE TO JOIN ANOTHER TABLE\*

No one can be a *member* of more than one table at the same time, unless a member consents, on request, to make a fourth at another table and announces his intention of returning to his former table as soon as his place can be filled. If he does not so announce his intention, he forfeits his membership at his former table.

If a *member* breaks up a table by leaving it with less than four members, he shall not be entitled to compete against the other three for entry into any other *table*.

## SECOND PERIOD

### THE SHUFFLE, THE CUT OF THE PACK, THE DEAL

*The period ending when the last card of a correct deal has been placed on the table.*

### 8. CALLING FOR FRESH CARDS.

A player, before the pack has been cut for a deal, may call for fresh cards. Unless damaged cards have to be replaced, he must provide two new packs of which his opponents shall have the choice.

### 9. SHUFFLING.

After the players have drawn for partners and assumed their respective seats, the player on the dealer's left shuffles the pack which the dealer has chosen.

During each *deal* the dealer's partner should collect the other cards, shuffle them and place them, as a pack, face down on his right, i.e., on the left of the player who will deal next. This pack must remain there until the next dealer takes it up for his deal.

The pack must be shuffled thoroughly in view of all players and so as not to show the face of a card.

If he desires to do so, each player may shuffle once, the dealer last.

If the above requirements have not been fully complied with, any player before the deal starts may demand a new shuffle.

\* If a member of an existing table joints another table on his own initiative; if it is a newly formed table, he ranks last in title to play the first rubber; if it is not a newly formed table, he must draw cards for title to play in the next rubber with the member who would otherwise have had title to play.

## 38 (Contract.) *LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.*

### 10. CUTTING THE PACK.

The dealer presents the pack to the player on his right who lifts off a portion from the top and places it towards the dealer beside the bottom portion. The dealer then completes the cut by placing the bottom portion uppermost.

### 11. NEW SHUFFLE AND CUT OF THE PACK.

Upon the request of a player, made before the beginning of the deal, there must be a new shuffle and cut if—

- (a) the cut is not made by the proper player;
- (b) the cut leaves fewer than four cards in either portion;
- (c) the face of a card is shown in cutting;
- (d) a player other than the dealer completes the cut;
- (e) there is doubt as to the exact place in which the pack was divided, or as to which was the top portion;
- (f) a player shuffles the cards after the cut; or
- (g) the cut is made before the play of the preceding hand has been completed.

### 12. DEALING.

*Players deal in rotation.*

The dealer must deal the fifty-two cards face down, one at a time in *rotation* into four hands, the first card to the player on his left, the last card to himself and thirteen cards to each player. If he deals two cards simultaneously or consecutively to the same hand, he may rectify the error before dealing another card.

### 13. NEW DEAL DURING THE DEAL.

There must be a new deal by the same dealer with the same or a correct pack if it is ascertained during the deal that—

- (a) the cards have not been dealt as provided in the preceding law;
- (b) a player has seen and can name a card dealt to another player; or
- (c) a player has looked at a card dealt to him.

### 14. DEALING OUT OF ROTATION OR WITH WRONG OR UNCUT PACK.

A player *dealing* out of *rotation*, or with the opponent's or an uncut pack, may be stopped before the last card is dealt; otherwise the deal stands as a correct deal made in rotation, and the packs, if changed, remain changed.

## PROPRIETIES

Avoid when dealing—

Looking at the bottom card;

Tilting a card upwards or otherwise allowing one to be seen (see law 13, b). This may cast upon another player a duty which it is not desirable to impose upon him.

## THIRD PERIOD

### THE AUCTION

*The period beginning when the last card of a correct deal has been placed on the table and ending when a call made by one player has been passed in rotation by the other three.*

#### 15. THE AUCTION AND ITS DURATION.

After the deal is completed, each player in rotation, commencing with the dealer, must *bid* or pass until the first bid is made. If all four players pass in the first round of the auction, that deal is abandoned and the deal passes in *rotation*. Otherwise, following the first bid, each player in rotation must make a *call* until three players pass successively, at which time the auction closes.

#### 16. BIDDING AND OVERBIDDING.

Each successive *bid* must either name a greater number of *odd* tricks than the last preceding bid or an equal number of a higher *denomination*. The bids of different denomination rank upward as follows—Clubs, Diamonds, Hearts, Spades, No-trump.

#### 17. DOUBLING AND REDOUBLING.

Any player may in *rotation* *double* the last preceding *bid*, if made by an opponent, or may *redouble* it, if it has been doubled by an opponent. Doubling and redoubling do not affect the number of tricks in the bid or its value for the purpose of the auction.

A bid which has been redoubled may not again be doubled or redoubled.

When a bid has been doubled, or doubled and redoubled, a player may in rotation make a further bid until the auction closes.

#### 18. PASSING.

A player who does not desire to *bid*, *double* or *redouble* must so signify by passing.

## 40 (Contract.) *LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.*

### 19. THE FINAL BID AND THE DECLARER.

The final *bid* in the auction becomes the contract. If the contract is in a suit, each card of that suit becomes a trump. The player who, for the side which made the final bid, first bid the *denomination* named in the contract, becomes the declarer; his partner ceases to be a player and becomes declarer's partner.

### 20. INFORMATION AS TO CALLS MADE.

During the auction a player may ask to have previous *calls* restated only when it is his turn to call. (See law 25, section 1.)

### 21. CLAIMING A PENALTY DURING THE AUCTION.

1. When an irregularity is committed, any player may draw attention to it, ask his partner whether he knows his rights, and give or obtain information as to the law covering it.

2. All questions as to what penalty applies to a given offense must be settled prior to the actual payment of a penalty or the taking of other action. A penalty once paid or action once taken stands, even though at some later time it is discovered to have been incorrect.

3. When a player has an option in enforcing a penalty, if the partners consult as to the advantage to be gained by exercising the option or as to which of alternative options to exercise, or if the unauthorized partner exercises it; the right to enforce the optional part of the penalty lapses.

### 22. IMPROPER CALLS.

#### MISNOMER OR SLIP OF THE TONGUE.

1. A player may correct a misnomer without penalty, but this privilege may not be used to cover the correction of a mistake or a change of mind in making a call. Any question which arises as to whether a call ranks as a misnomer depends upon the facts of the particular case and should be decided at the time by the other players.

#### IMPROPER CALL OVERCALLED BY OPPONENT.

2. If an improper *call* is overcalled in *rotation* before the non-offending side draws attention to the irregularity, the auction proceeds as if the improper call had been a proper call made in rotation.

INSUFFICIENT BID.

3. Unless overcalled (as provided in section 2) an *insufficient bid* made in *rotation* must be made sufficient in the same or in another *denomination* (see section 6, c) and if the offender selects—
- (a) the lowest sufficient bid of the same denomination, his partner must pass when next it is his turn to *call*;
  - (b) another bid, his partner must pass whenever it is his turn to call.

USING INCORRECT NOMENCLATURE WHEN DOUBLING.

4. Unless overcalled (as provided in section 2) a player, who in *doubling* or *redoubling* is cancelled, names an incorrect number of tricks or a wrong *denomination*, is deemed to have doubled or redoubled the *bid* as made, and his partner must pass when next it is his turn to *call*.

CALL OUT OF ROTATION.

5. Unless overcalled (as provided in section 2), a proper *call* made out of *rotation* is cancelled, the auction reverts to the player whose turn it was to call, and, if it was—
- (a) a pass made before the first *bid*, the offender must pass when next it is his turn to call;
  - (b) another call, the offender's partner must pass whenever it is his turn to call.

INFREQUENT IMPROPER CALLS.

6. Unless overcalled (as provided in section 2) if a player—
- (a) doubles or redoubles a bid which his partner has doubled or redoubled; the offender is deemed to have passed, his side must pass whenever it is its turn to call, and the opponent on the offender's left may cancel the double or redouble of the offender's partner;
  - (b) doubles his partner's bid, or redoubles it when it has not been doubled; the offender is deemed to have passed, and his side must pass whenever it is its turn to call;
  - (c) bids more than seven either inadvertently or in order to make his bid sufficient, bids, doubles or redoubles when required to pass in accordance with a penalty imposed under this law, or makes a call neither recognized nor dealt with in the laws of this period; his side must pass whenever it is its turn to call, and the opponent who first *bid* the *denomination* last bid by his side, or if neither opponent has *bid* the opponent on the offender's left, may cancel the improper call.

## 42 (Contract.) *LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.*

### 23. CARD FACED, SEEN OR DISCLOSED.

If, during the Auction Period, a player faces a card on the table, sees the face of a card belonging to his partner, or makes a remark which discloses a card in his hand to his partner; such card or cards must be placed face up on the table during the auction,\* and—

- (a) If the owner becomes a defender, declarer may either prohibit the opening lead from being made in the suit of such card or cards, or treat such card or cards as penalty cards (law 32); and
- (b) if such card is of honor rank or if there are two or more such cards, the owner's partner must also pass whenever it is his turn to call.

### 24. NEW DEAL DURING THE AUCTION PERIOD.

#### PICKING UP ANOTHER PLAYER'S HAND PACK FOUND IMPERFECT.

1. There must be a new deal by the same dealer with the same or a correct pack if, when the deal is completed, a player picks up another player's hand and looks at it; or if it is ascertained, that one player holds more than the proper number of cards and another less, that the number of cards in the pack is incorrect, or that a duplication exists.

#### INCOMPLETE HAND.

2. There must be a new deal by the same dealer with the same or a correct pack if it is ascertained that one player has less and no player more than the proper number of cards and that after due search, which must be made, either the missing card cannot be found, or is found in such position that the players decide that it was not duly dealt to the deficient hand. If a missing card is found in the other pack, or in such position that the players decide that it was duly dealt to the deficient hand, it shall be restored without penalty unless the partner sees its face, in which case it becomes subject to law 23.

## PROPRIETIES

### Avoid—

In making a call, any undue delay which may result in conveying improper information to partner;

Varying the formulæ used in calling;†

\* Unless such card becomes a penalty card it may be picked up when the auction is closed.

† The recommended calling formulæ are: "Pass" (avoid "I" or "no bid"); "1 heart" (avoid "1 bid"); "1 no trump" (avoid "without" or "without a trump"); "double" (avoid stating the number of tricks or the denomination doubled); "6 spades" (avoid "little slam").

## LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE. (Contract.) 43

An unnecessary request for a review of calls already made;  
Giving by word, manner or gesture an indication of the nature of the hand held;

Any remark, question or gesture from which an inference may be drawn;

Indicating in any way approval or disapproval of partner's call;

Allowing partner's hesitation, remark or manner to influence a call;

Volunteering information which should only be given in reply to a question.

It is particularly reprehensible to—

Call with special emphasis, inflection or intonation;

Pass or double with exceptional haste or reluctance;

Attract attention to the score, except when necessary to do so for one's own information;

Give unauthorized information as to any incident of the auction.

It is improper to use in calling a convention the significance of which has not been announced. The term "convention" covers a call designed to convey an arbitrary or artificial meaning, or used by a player with the assurance that his partner will not accept it in its natural sense. Such a call is not subject to penalty under law 23. It is necessary that a "convention" so used should be fully understood by the other side, and players using "convention" calls should be ready to reply fully to a proper inquiry by an opponent as to their meaning or use. Should it be necessary to make such an inquiry during the auction, the partner of the player who has made the "convention" call should reply.\*

The Committee of any Association, Tournament or Club, or groups of persons playing Contract Bridge, may prohibit "convention" calling as above or restrict the calling to such permissible "conventions" as they may decide.

It is not wrong to warn partner against infringing a law of the game, for example, against calling out of turn.

Bystanders or members not playing should refrain from making any remark during the auction. They should not call attention to any irregularity or mistake or speak on any question of fact or law, except when requested to give an opinion.

## FOURTH PERIOD

### THE PLAY

*The period beginning when a bid, double or redouble has been passed in rotation by the other three players, and ending when the number of tricks won by each side has been duly determined.*

\* The maker of the call may be requested to leave the table while the answer is given.

## 44 (Contract.) *LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.*

### 25. CALLS.

#### REVIEWING THE CALLING.

1. Before the opening *lead* has been duly made, a *player* may ask to have previous *calls* restated (see law 20). Subsequently a player may ask only what the contract is and whether but not by whom it was doubled or redoubled.

#### CALL DURING THE PLAY PERIOD.

2. If a *defender* makes a call other than a pass after the auction is closed, declarer may require the other defender to lead a specified suit when next it is his turn to lead (law 26, section 5).

### 26. LEADS AND PLAYS.

#### OPENING LEAD AND THE FACED HAND.

1. When the auction is closed, the *defender* on declarer's left makes the opening *lead*. Declarer's partner then spreads his cards face up in front of him on the table, and declarer plays both his own hand and that of his partner.

#### SUBSEQUENT PLAY AND LEADS.

2. After a *lead*, a card is played from each hand in *rotation* and the four cards thus played constitute a *completed trick*.

The leader may lead any card. The other three hands must follow suit if they can, but if unable to *follow suit* may play any card. The obligation to follow suit overrides all other requirements of the laws of this period.

A trick containing a trump or trumps is won by the hand playing the highest trump. A trick containing no trump is won by the hand playing the highest card of the suit led.

The hand winning a trick leads to the next trick.

#### PLAYED CARD.

3. A card is played—

- (a) by declarer; from his own hand when it touches the table, after being detached from his remaining cards with apparent intent to play; from the faced hand when he touches it, unless for a purpose other than play, either manifest or mentioned by him;
- (b) by a *defender*, when his partner sees its face, after being detached from his hand with apparent intent to play; and
- (c) by declarer or a defender, when named by him as the one he proposes to play.



## LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE. (Contract.) 45

### TAKING BACK PLAYED CARD.

4. A *player* may not, on his own initiative, withdraw his played card except to correct a revoke (law 27, section 1).

If, when calling a penalty, a played card is duly withdrawn by specific or implied direction, it may be picked up unless it becomes a penalty card.

### PLAYER UNABLE TO PLAY AS REQUIRED.

5. If a *player* is unable to play as required to comply with a penalty, he may play any card subject to his obligation to follow suit, and the penalty lapses except that, in the case of a penalty card, the penalty lapses as to the current trick only (law 32).

### LEAD OUT OF TURN.

6. A *lead* out of turn (see section 4) may be treated as a correct *lead*, and must be treated as such if, before the card wrongly led is withdrawn, a card is played to it by the other side. In all other cases, if a *lead* out of turn is made (see the two preceding sections)—

- (a) by declarer from either hand; either *defender* may require him to take the *lead* back, and, if he has led from the wrong hand, he must lead a card of the same suit from the correct hand;
- (b) by a *defender*.\* declarer may either treat the card led out of turn as a penalty card (law 32, section 2), or require the lead of a specified suit, from the other defender if he won the previous trick, otherwise from the defender who next wins a trick.

### SIMULTANEOUS LEAD BY DEFENDERS.

7. If the *defenders* lead simultaneously the correct lead stands and the card wrongly played becomes a penalty card (law 32, section 2).

### PREMATURE PLAY BY A DEFENDER.

8. If a *defender* plays to a trick when it is his partner's turn to play;† declarer, unless he has played from both hands, may require the other defender to play his highest or lowest card in the

\* In the case of an opening lead by the wrong defender, should any of declarer's partners cards be exposed after the out-of-turn lead and before declarer names the suit to be led, he may only treat the card led out of turn as a penalty card.

† A defender who shows his last card to his partner before the latter has played to the twelfth trick, is deemed to have played "to a trick when it is his partner's turn to play."

## 46 (Contract.) *LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.*

suit led and, should he be unable to follow suit, to play a specified suit (see section 5).

### PREMATURE LEAD BY A DEFENDER.

9. If a *defender* leads to the next trick before his partner has played to the current trick; declarer may require the other defender to play to the current trick his highest or lowest card in the suit led and, should he be unable to follow suit, to play a specified suit (see section 5). The offender, should he not win the current trick, has led out of turn to the next trick.

### PLAYING BEFORE PENALTY HAS BEEN NAMED.

10. If any player when subject to a *lead* or play penalty plays before the penalty has been named or exacted, the right to enforce the penalty is not affected thereby (see sections 3 and 4). Declarer may treat a card so prematurely played by a defender as a penalty card (law 32, section 2). If, in the above case, the non-offending side plays after the offender and before naming or exacting the penalty, the right to enforce any penalty lapses.

## 27. THE REVOKE.

### CORRECTED REVOKE.

1. If a player *revokes* and corrects his error by withdrawing the revoke card before the revoke becomes established, he must substitute a correct card, and if the revoke card belongs to—

- (a) a *defender*; declarer may treat it as a penalty card (law 32, section 2), or require him to play his highest or lowest correct card;\*
- (b) declarer; it may be taken up, and, if the defender on declarer's left has played to the trick after declarer, he may require declarer to play his highest or lowest correct card;
- (c) declarer's partner; it is put back without penalty.

A card played by a player of the non-offending side after a revoke and before its correction may be taken back.

### ACTS WHICH ESTABLISH A REVOKE.

2. A revoke, other than one made in leading becomes established when the offending side leads or plays to the next trick except that such a revoke made in the twelfth trick never becomes established. A revoke made in leading becomes established when the offender's partner plays to the revoke trick.

\* This penalty may not be enforced if a defender's hand, when he revoked, was faced in consequence of declarer's trick claim (law 29).

## LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE. (Contract.) 47

### INQUIRIES REGARDING A POSSIBLE REVOKE.

3. A *player* may ask whether a play constitutes a revoke and may demand that an opponent correct his revoke but nothing can alter or postpone the provisions of the previous section.

Declarer's partner may question only declarer, and, if he does so after intentionally looking at a card in a player's hand, declarer may not withdraw his card.

### ESTABLISHED REVOKE.

4. When a revoke has been established the trick stands as played; and, if the revoke is claimed, tricks won in play by the revoking side after its first revoke\* (including the revoke trick) are transferred to the non-offending side at the end of play—two such tricks for a side's first revoke and one such trick for each subsequent revoke by the same side; except that no tricks are transferred—

- (a) if the revoke was made from a hand legally faced at the time (law 26, section 1, and law 29, section 1); or
- (b) if the revoke is claimed or attention drawn to it after the cut for the next deal is completed or, if the revoke occurs in the last hand of a rubber, after the rubber score is agreed.

### SCORING TRANSFERRED TRICKS

5. A transferred trick ranks for all scoring purposes as a trick won in play by the side receiving it.

### SETTLING A REVOKE CLAIM.

6. The tricks and unplayed cards may be inspected at the end of play to settle a revoke claim, and, if, after such claim, an opponent so mixes the cards that the claim cannot be established, it must be allowed.

## 28. TRICKS.

### INFORMATION AS TO CARDS PLAYED.

1. Until a trick has been *quitted*, a *player* may require the players to specify which cards have been played from their respective hands.

\* In certain cases when a trick, in which an established revoke occurred, has been won by the non-offending side, inexperienced players may have difficulty in determining the sequence of tricks. In such a case the decision of a majority of the players, as to the number of tricks transferable, shall govern; failing such decision the number shall be determined by the non-offending side.

## 48 (Contract.) LAWS OF CONTRACT BRIDGE.

### GATHERING TRICKS.

2. Each completed trick must be gathered and turned face down on the table by a *player* of the side winning it. The cards of each *quitted trick* should be kept together so that its identity can be readily established, and the tricks taken by a side should be arranged together in such manner that their number and sequence is apparent.

### INSPECTING QUITTED TRICK.

3. If a *quitted trick* is looked at before the end of the hand, the opponents score 50 points in their premium score unless—

- (a) there is difference of opinion as to which hand won it;
- (b) it is found to contain an incorrect number of cards; or
- (c) it is necessary to turn it in order to substitute a correct card (law 27, section 1).

### TRICK APPROPRIATED BY THE WRONG SIDE.

4. A trick, appropriated in error by the side which did not win it, should be conceded or may be claimed subject to law 38, section 1.

### DIRECTING PARTNER'S ATTENTION TO A TRICK.

5. If a player's attention, before he has played and without a request by him, is directed to the current trick in any way by his partner, as by saying it is his, by naming his card, or drawing the cards towards him; declarer or the defender on the left of declarer's partner, as the case may be, may require the offender's partner (law 26, section 5) to play the highest or lowest card which he holds in the suit led and, should he be unable to follow suit, to play a specified suit.

TRICK POINTS FOR DECLARER	Odd Tricks Bid and Won in		Undoubled	Doubled
	Clubs or Diamonds, each		20	40
	Hearts or Spades, each		30	60
	No-Trump { first each subsequent		40 30	80 60
Redoubling doubles the doubled points for Odd Tricks. Vulnerability does not affect points for Odd Tricks. 100 Trick Points constitute a game.				
PREMIUM POINTS FOR DEFENDERS   DECLARER	Overtricks		Not Vulnerable	Vulnerable
	Undoubled, each		Trick Value	Trick Value
	Doubled, each		100	200
	Undertricks			
	Undoubled, each		50	100
	* Doubled { first each subsequent		100 200	200 300
Redoubling doubles the doubled points for Overtricks and Undertricks.				
PREMIUM POINTS FOR DECLARER   HOLDER	Honors in One Hand		{ All Honors 150 Four Trump Honors 100	
	Slams Bid and Won		{ Little, not vulnerable 500, vulnerable 750 Grand, " " 1000, " 1500	
	Rubber Points		{ Two game 700 Three game 500	
	Unfinished Rubber—Winners of one game score 300 points. Doubling and Redoubling do not affect Honor, Slam, or Rubber points. Vulnerability does not affect points for Honors.			

SCORING TABLE.

## DUPLICATE BRIDGE.

Duplicate bridge is not a distinct game, but is simply the name given to that manner of playing bridge in which a number of cards are played over again with the same cards, but by different persons.

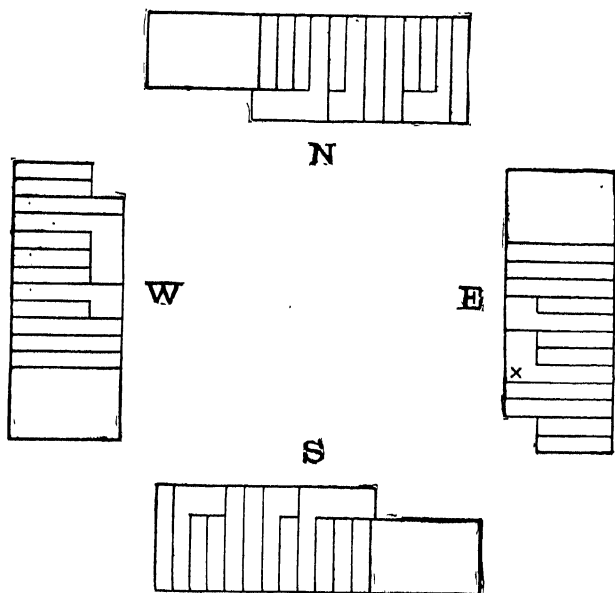
**CARDS.** The cards have the same rank as at bridge; they are dealt in the same manner, and the same rules apply to all irregularities in the deal, except that a misdealer must deal again. The objects of the game are the same, and so are all the suggestions for good play. The only differences that require attention are the positions of the players, the manner of counting the tricks, and the methods of keeping and comparing the scores.

**THEORY.** It may briefly be stated that duplicate proceeds upon the principle that if two partners have made a certain number of tricks with certain cards, under certain conditions with respect to the lead, distribution of the other cards in the adversaries' hands, etc., the only way to decide whether or not two other players could have done better, or cannot do so well, is to let them try it, by giving them the same cards, under exactly similar conditions.

This comparison may be carried out in various ways; but in every instance it depends entirely upon the number and arrangement of the players engaged. The most common forms are: club against club; team against team; pair against pair; or man against man. The reason for the arrangement of the players will be better understood if we first describe the method.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** There is no cutting for partners, and choice of seats and cards as at bridge, because the players take their places and deal according to a prearranged schedule. The contract, trumps or no-trumps, is then settled.

The player to the left of the dealer begins by placing the card he leads face up on the table, and in front of him. The second player follows by placing his card in front of him in the same manner; and so the third, and so the fourth. The four cards are then turned face down, completing the play for that trick. The partners winning the trick place their cards lengthwise, pointing towards each other; the adversaries place theirs across. At the end of the hand, the number of tricks taken by each side can be seen by glancing at any player's cards. If there is any discrepancy, a comparison of the turned cards will show in which trick it occurs, and the cards can be readily faced and examined.



N & S 6; E & W 7. East has made a mistake in turning the fifth trick.

**COUNTERS.** In some places 13 counters are placed on the table, the winner of each trick taking down one. This system often leads to disputes, as there can be no check upon it, and there is nothing to show in which trick the error occurred.

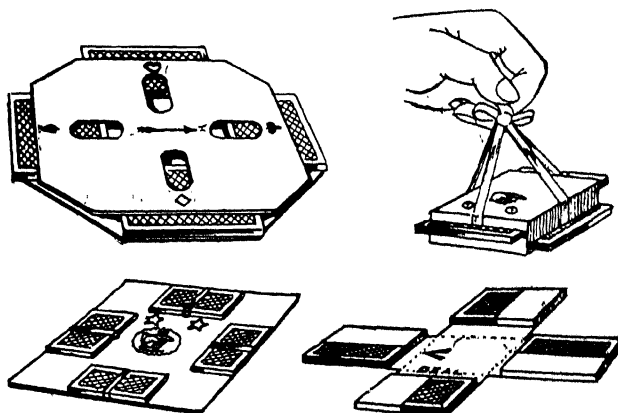
**COUNTING TRICKS.** At the end of each hand, the players sitting North and South score the *total* number of tricks they have taken, in order to check the adversaries' count. Their adversaries, sitting East and West, do the same. Each player then slightly shuffles his 13 cards; so as to conceal the order in which they were played, and the four separate hands of 13 cards each are then placed in the tray, ready to be passed to the next table for the overplay.

**TRAYS.** When any apparatus is used by holding the cards, such as trays, boxes, or envelopes, each player puts his 13 cards in the compartment provided for them. Each tray has a mark upon it, usually an arrow, showing which end of the tray should point

toward a given direction, usually the North. The pocket into which the dealer's cards go is marked "dealer," and it is usual to provide a traveling slip for each tray. When the game is whist, the originally turned trump is recorded, which indicates to the dealer at each succeeding table the card he should select from his hand and place face upward in the pocket opposite him as the trump for that deal. In auction, contract, or plafond, this traveling slip is used to record the various scores made on that deal by the N and S pair only; the slip not being looked at until the play of that hand is finished.

**SCORING.** There should be two score-cards at each table. The various methods of putting down and comparing the scores can best be described in connection with the variety of competition to which they belong.

**POSITION OF THE PLAYERS.** The four players at each table are distinguished by the letters N S E W; North and South being



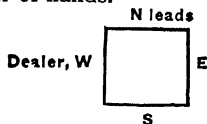
VARIOUS APPARATUS FOR DUPLICATE.

partners against East and West. North should always be the dealer in the first hand, East having the original lead. In all published illustrative hands, East is the leader, unless otherwise specified.

The deal passes in rotation to the left, and the number of hands played should always be some multiple of four, so that each player may have the original lead an equal number of times. 24 hands at each table is the usual number, and is the rule at all League tournaments. The partners and adversaries should be changed after each eight hands. Three changes in 24 hands will bring each



member of a set of four into partnership with every other member for an equal number of hands.



If two teams of four on a side. A B C D, and W X Y Z, play against each other, the arrangement in a League tournament would be as follows:—that A B C D should represent the players of the visiting club, or challengers, and W X Y Z the home club, or holders; and that the positions of the players should be changed after every four hands. It is usual to play 24 hands in the afternoon, and 24 more at night.

W    A X B	Y    A Z B	W    A Y C	X    A Z C	X    A Y D	W    A Z D
1st.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.	5th.	6th.
C    Y D Z	W    Y D X	B    X D Z	W    X D Y	W    X C Z	B    X C Y

If more than four players are engaged on each side, this arrangement must be repeated with every additional four; the tables being always in sets of two each, but in such cases, and in fact in anything but League matches, it is usual to play only the 1st, 3rd and 5th sets.

**CLUB AGAINST CLUB.** The smaller club should put into the field as many multiples of four as it can; the larger club presenting an equal number to play against them. The opposing sides are then so arranged that half the members of each club sit North and South, the other half East and West. If we distinguish the clubs by the marks O and X, and suppose 16 to be engaged on each side, they would be arranged at 8 tables, thus:—

O X 1 X O	O X 3 X O	O X 5 X O	O X 7 X O
1st set	2nd set	3rd set	4th set
X O 2 O X	X O 4 O X	X O 6 O X	X O 8 O X

## 54 (Duplicate.) *ARRANGING PLAYERS.*

If apparatus is used, the players may sit still for four hands, putting the trays aside, and then exchanging them for the four trays played at the other table in their set. If not, the cards are left on the table, as already described, and the fours change places; those at table No. 1 going to table No. 2, while those at No. 2 go to No. 1, the other sets changing in the same manner. This brings them into this position:—

X O 1 O X	X O 3 O X	X O 5 O X	X O 7 O X
O X 2 X O	O X 4 X O	O X 6 X O	O X 8 X O

The two O's that have just played the N & S hands at table No. 1, proceed to play at table No. 2, the N & S hands which have just been played by two X's; while the two O's that played the E & W hands at table No. 2, overplay at table No. 1, the E & W hands just held by the two X's.

It is now evident that the four O's have held between them all the 52 cards dealt at each table; for the first pair have held all the N & S hands dealt at both tables, and the second pair have held all the E & W hands. The same is true of the four X players; and if there is any difference in the number of tricks taken by the opposing fours, it is supposed to be due to a difference in skill, other matters having been equalised as far as the limitations of the game will permit.

**TEAM AGAINST TEAM.** The methods just described for a match of club against club are identical with those which are used in a contest between two teams of four; the only difference being that of proportion. In the latter case there will be only one set, of two tables, and only four score-cards to compare.

The change of partners should be exhaustive in team matches; which will require six sets.

**TEAMS AGAINST TEAMS.** When several quartette teams compete with one another, Howell's system of arrangement will be found the best. There are two methods; for odd and for even numbers of teams.

**Odd Numbers of Teams.** This is the simplest form of contest. Let us suppose five teams to offer for play, which we shall distinguish by the letters, *a, b, c, d, e*, arranging each at its own table thus:—

N	a	b	c	d	e
W + E	a 1 a	b 2 b	c 3 c	d 4 d	e 5 e
S	a	b	c	d	e

The names of the N & S and the E & W members of each team should first be entered on the score-cards; then all the N & S players move to the next table East; those at table 5 going to table 1; and each table dealing and playing four hands, afterwards putting them away in trays.

c a 1 a e	a b 2 b a	b c 3 c b	c d 4 d c	d e 5 e d
Hands:—1 to 4	5 to 8	9 to 12	13 to 16	17 to 20

The peculiarity of this system is in the movement of the trays; those at the middle table always going to the extreme West of the line, the others moving up as many tables at a time as may be necessary to follow them. In this instance the trays at table 3 go to 1, all others moving up two tables. At the same time the N & S players all move one table further East, bringing about this position:—

2nd set. d a 1 a d	e b 2 b e	a c 3 c a	b d 4 d b	c e 5 e c
Hands:—9 to 12	13 to 16	17 to 20	1 to 4	5 to 8

This movement of the trays and players is continued for two more sets, which completes the round:—

3rd set. c a 1 a c	d b 2 b d	e c 3 c e	a d 4 d a	b e 5 e b
Hands:—17 to 20	1 to 4	5 to 8	9 to 12	13 to 16

4th set. b a 1 a b	c b 2 b c	d c 3 c d	e d 4 d e	a e 5 e a
Hands:—5 to 8	9 to 12	13 to 16	17 to 20	1 to 4

If we now take any two of the teams engaged, *a* and *d* for instance, we shall find that the E & W *a* and the N & S *d* pairs of those teams have played hands 9 to 12 at table 1, in the 2nd set; and that N & S *a* and E & W *d* pairs have overplayed the same hands at table 4, in the 3rd set; so that we have really been carrying out a number of matches simultaneously, between five teams of four players each.

If there are 5, 7, 9 or 11 tables in play, the movement of the trays must be 2, 3, 4 or 5 tables at a time; but the movement of

the players remains the same; one table at a time, in the direction opposite to the trays.

***Gilman's System.*** Another method, recommended by Charles F. Gilman, of Boston, which prevents any possibility of players giving hints to their friends as they pass the trays, is to have each team play at its own table first, so as to get an individual score. The E & W players then move to the next table but one, in either direction, going from 11 to 9; from 9 to 7, etc., the N & S players sitting still. This movement is continued until the E & W players have gone *twice* round. The trays move in the *same direction as the players*, but only one table at a time; going from 11 to 10, 9 to 8, etc. This brings about the same result as the Howell's system.

***Even Numbers of Teams.*** The present method of arranging even numbers of teams is also Gilman's; but it requires considerable care in the movement of the trays, because half of them lie idle during each round, which is the same as skipping a table in other methods.

Suppose we have ten tables, arranged in two rows thus, with a team of four players at each :

1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10

Taking 30 deals as the number to be played, we place trays No. 1, 2, 3, to be played and overplayed by tables 1 and 6, which are opposite each other in the rows. Trays 4, 5, 6, we lay aside. Trays 7, 8, 9, are to be played and overplayed by tables 2 and 7; while 10, 11, 12, are laid aside, and so on until we get to tables 5 and 10, which play and overplay trays 25, 26, 27. The easiest way to manage this is to give tray No. 2 to table 6, while tray 1 is at table 1, and then to let table 1 take tray 2, while table 6 plays tray 3. Then table 1 will get tray 3, while table 6 overplays tray 1. This will make all the trays come in numerical order to table 1, and will act as a check.

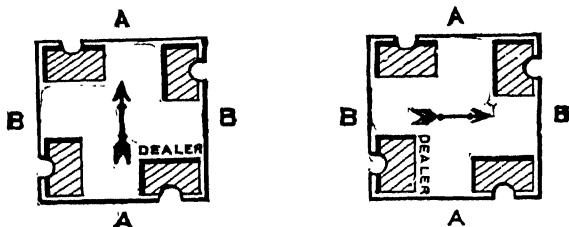
The play of the first round, three deals, finished, the E & W players all move one table, 2 going to 1, 3 to 2, etc. The umpire now brings into play the trays that were idle, giving trays 4, 5, 6, to tables 1 and 6; trays 10, 11, 12, to tables 2 and 7, and so on down the line, all the trays that were used in the first round lying idle.

Again the players move, and now table 1 gets the 7, 8, 9, set of trays to overplay with table 6, and so on; so that all the sets move up a table after each intervening round, and table 1 will get all the trays from 1 to 30 in order.

**PAIR AGAINST PAIR.** This is the most interesting form of competition, especially for domestic parties, as the arrangement of the players will allow of great latitude in the number engaged, table after table being added as long as players offer to fill them.

**Two Pairs.** When only four players are engaged at a single table, the game is called Memory Duplicate; which is forbidden in all first-class clubs. The players retain their seats until they have played an agreed number of hands, which are laid aside one by one in trays. No trump is turned in Memory Duplicate; one suit being declared trumps for the entire sitting.

Instead of the players changing positions for the overplay, the trays are reversed. If the indicators pointed N & S on the original deals, they must lie E & S for the overplay.



ORIGINAL POSITION OF TRAYS.

POSITION FOR OVERPLAY.

**Scoring.** The E & W hands only are scored, the card being laid aside after the original play is completed, and a new card used for the overplay. The difference in the totals of these two sets of score-cards will show which pair gained the most tricks.

**Four Pairs.** These should be arranged at two tables, changing adversaries after every 8 hands. The third set will exhaust the combinations, and it will then be found that each pair has played and overplayed an equal number of hands against every other pair.

1st set	2nd set	3rd set
b	c	d
a a	a a	a a
b	c	d
Hands:—1 to 8	9 to 16	17 to 24
d	b	c
c c	d d	b b
d	b	c

Four hands are dealt at each table in each set, and then exchanged. The trump card is turned for every original deal.

# LAWS OF DUPLICATE CONTRACT BRIDGE 1935 REVISION

## DUPLICATE MOVEMENTS AND SCORING

APPROVED AND ADOPTED BY

AMERICAN BRIDGE LEAGUE, AMERICAN WHIST LEAGUE,  
UNITED STATES BRIDGE ASSOCIATION

COPYRIGHT, 1935, NATIONAL LAWS AND RULES COMMITTEE

(Reprinted by permission courtesy of John C. Winston Company,  
authorized publishers)

### LAW NO. I. DEFINITIONS.

**AUCTION**—The period during which it is open to the players to bid in rotation for the contract. This period begins with the first call made and ends when any player's call has been passed by the other three players in rotation.

**BID**—A call by which a player offers to contract that his side will win at least as many odd tricks as he specifies, provided that the deal is played in the denomination he names, and that his side becomes the contracting side.

**BOARD**—see TRAY.

**CALL**—A comprehensive term applicable to a bid, a double, a redouble, or a pass.

**CARDS**—The game of Contract Bridge is played with a deck of fifty-two cards. The deck is divided into four suits, namely: Spades, Hearts, Diamonds, and Clubs. Each suit contains one of each of the following cards: Ace (highest), King, Queen, Jack, ten, nine, eight, seven, six, five, four, three, and two (lowest). The cards of the suit rank downward in the order named.

**COMPASS POINTS**—Four directions (North, East, South, and West) assigned arbitrarily for the purpose of the game. One direction is designated as North\* and the other compass points assume their relative positions.

\* It need not coincide with the true North.

**CONTRACT**—The final legal bid made during the auction, whether undoubled, doubled, or redoubled.

**DEAL**—1. A complete deck of fifty-two cards divided into four hands of thirteen cards each, after the deck has been shuffled, dealt, and the hands have been placed in the Duplicate tray.

2. The period of time during which a deal is in play. This period begins when the first player withdraws his hand from the Duplicate tray and ends when the agreed score has been recorded. It thus comprises the sub-periods; the auction, the play, and the scoring.

**DECLARATION**—A term popularly used to mean: 1. Call. 2. Denomination.

**DECLARER**—The player who for his side plays both his own and the Dummy hand. Unless the positions are reversed by an irregularity, the player of the contracting side who first made a bid of the denomination named in the contract is Declarer, and his partner's hand is Dummy.

**DEFENDER**—An opponent of Declarer.

**DENOMINATION**—The suit or No Trump named in a bid. There are five denominations, ranking downward in this order: No Trump, Spades, Hearts, Diamonds, and Clubs.

**DOUBLE**—A call which when properly made has the effect of doubling or otherwise increasing certain of the points to be won or lost in the event that the last preceding bid becomes the contract.

**DUMMY**—The hand of Declarer's partner after the opening lead.

**FOLLOW SUIT**—Play a card of the suit led.

**GAME**—A trick score of 100 points or more made in one deal.

**HAND**—The thirteen cards held by one player during a deal, or any part thereof remaining unplayed.

**HONOR**—Any ten or card of higher rank.

**INSUFFICIENT BID**—A bid that fails to name a greater number of odd tricks, or an equal number in a higher denomination, than the last preceding bid.

**IRREGULARITY**—Any departure from a law of correct procedure.

**LEAD**—1. To play the first card to a trick. 2. The card so led.

**MOVEMENT**—The passage of trays from table to table.

**NEUTRAL SCORE**—A score assigned by adjudication of a deal.

**ODD TRICK**—Each trick won by Declarer in excess of six.

**OVERTRICK**—Each odd trick won by Declarer in excess of his contract.

**PAIR**—Two persons playing together as partners for a common score.

**PASS**—A call signifying that the player does not at that time bid, double, or redouble.

**PLAY**—The period during which the cards are played in a series of tricks. This period begins when the auction closes, and ends when the number of tricks won by each side is agreed upon.

**PLAYERS**—The game of Contract Bridge is played by four persons

## 60 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

at a table. The two players opposite each other play as partners against the other two.

**PREMIUM SCORE**—All points scored by either side exclusive of trick points for a made contract.

**PROGRESSION**—The movement of players from table to table.

**QUITTED TRICK**—A trick of which all four cards have been turned face downward, and from which the hands of all four players have been removed.

**REDOUBLE**—A call which when properly made has the effect of doubling the points that have already been doubled or otherwise increased by a double.

**REVOKE**—see Law No. 36.

**ROTATION**—The order or succession of the bidding and play, which is from player to player to the left, in the direction taken by the hands of a watch.

**ROUND**—The period between one progression and the next.

**SECTION**—A group of tables playing as a unit with respect to the progression of players and movement of trays.

**SLAMS**—Small Slam—The fulfillment of a contract of six odd tricks.

Grand Slam—The fulfillment of a contract of seven odd tricks.

**TABLE**—The four persons playing together, two against two, during a round.

**TEAM**—Four or more persons playing as team-mates for a common score.

**TRAY OR BOARD**—A device for holding a deck of cards divided into four hands of thirteen cards each.

**TRICK**—Four cards, one played from each hand. A trick begins with a lead; it is complete when each other hand has played one card to it.

**TRICK SCORE**—The point value of the odd tricks in the contract. Odd trick score points may be scored only by Declarer's side, and only if the contract is fulfilled.

**TRUMP SUIT**—The suit, if any, named in the contract. Each of its cards is a trump, and ranks above any card of any other suit.

**UNDERTRICK**—Each trick by which Declarer falls short of his contract.

**VULNERABILITY**—A term differentiating two sets of scoring values. Each Duplicate tray is marked to show whether each side is "vulnerable" or "not vulnerable." A vulnerable side receives higher game, slam, and doubled overtrick premiums, and is subject to higher undertrick penalties, than a not vulnerable side.



**PRELIMINARIES.**

**LAW NO. 2. PAIRING AND ASSIGNMENT OF SEATS.**

(a) Players shall compete as individuals, pairs, or teams, according to the type of game to be played.

(b) If the players are to compete as pairs or teams, such pairs or teams shall be arranged by agreement among the players, or by lot, or in any manner that the Tournament Committee may designate.

(c) Each player, pair, or team shall be assigned to a position. The players must take their assigned seats promptly upon the signal to commence play.

**LAW NO. 3. THE SHUFFLE AND DEAL.**

(a) Before play begins, each pack shall be shuffled and dealt face down, one card at a time in rotation, into four hands of thirteen cards each. The four hands shall then be placed face down in the four pockets of the tray.

(b) Shuffling and dealing may be done by the players at each table immediately before commencement of play, or it may be done in advance under the direction of the Tournament Committee. If it is done by the players, at least one member of each pair must be present during the shuffling and dealing. The player designated by the tray as Dealer shall be responsible for shuffling the deck.

**LAW NO. 4. BEGINNING PLAY.**

(a) Play shall begin upon signal by the Tournament Director. The trays assigned to each table for the current round shall be placed upon the tables.

(b) Each tray, when put into play, shall be placed and left during the deal in the center of the table with the arrow or indicating device pointing to the designated North for that table.

(c) Each player shall take the hand from the pocket of the tray corresponding to his own compass position, and before looking at the face of any of his cards shall count them to be certain that he holds exactly thirteen.

---

**GENERAL REGULATIONS.**

**LAW NO. 5. BIDDING AND PLAYING CONVENTIONS.**

(a) The Tournament or Card Committee may rule out for cause certain bidding or playing conventions from use at games under

its jurisdiction. Such cause must be that the conventions have not been widely publicized and that in fact they are not known to the majority of the contestants.

(b) A pair employing conventions not generally accepted must at the beginning of each round announce its methods to the opponents. A player must also announce any agreement with his partner regarding special significance of a call or play. If he fails to announce such an agreement and an opponent believes his interests to be damaged thereby, the opponent should apply to the Tournament Director for a Neutral Score.

(c) If, in the opinion of the Tournament Director, the bidding or playing conventions of a pair are so complicated as to place an undue burden upon the opponents, he may bar the use of such conventions for that session.\*

(d) At any time during the auction period either opponent may inquire as to the meaning of a call. Such inquiry must commence with a question as to whether the call has any special significance to partner unknown to the opponents. If the answer is in the negative, the inquiry may not be further pursued. If the answer is in the affirmative, the meaning of the call must be explained by the partner of the player making it. Either opponent may require the player making the call to leave the table while the explanation is given. Either side may request the presence of the Tournament Director during the inquiry, and he may rule on the propriety thereof.

(e) At any time during the play period Declarer may inquire as to the meaning of a lead or play. Such inquiry must commence with a question as to whether the lead or play has any special significance to partner unknown to Declarer. If the answer is in the negative, the inquiry may not be further pursued. If the answer is in the affirmative, the significance of the lead or play must be explained by the partner of defender making it. Declarer may require the defender making the lead or play to leave the table while the explanation is given. Either side may request the presence of the Tournament Director during the inquiry, and he may rule on the propriety thereof.

(f) A player is at liberty to make any legal call or play he chooses, despite any announcement of practice employed by his partnership, provided that no departure from the announced practice depends upon a private understanding between the partners.

#### LAW NO. 6. CLAIM OF PENALTY.

(a) When an irregularity occurs, any player may, and either opponent of the offender should, draw attention to it. The act of drawing partner's attention to an irregularity may not be con-

\* The Tournament Director is advised to make no decision that must be overruled on appeal under section (a) of this law.

strued as illegal consultation under section (d) of this law. (But see Law No. 27.)

(b) An irregularity must be reported to the Tournament Director immediately. Even though the matter is settled amicably among the players, they are liable to disciplinary penalty if they fail to report the incident.

(c) Any player may refuse to pay a penalty or to agree to rectification of error until so instructed by the Tournament Director. No claim, payment, or waiver of penalty among the players themselves is binding until ratified by the Tournament Director.

(d) Where the law permits option among penalties, the right to penalize lapses if the partners consult as to which of alternative penalties to claim, or if an unauthorized player makes the selection.

(e) Even while barred from the auction a player may exercise his right to call attention to an adverse irregularity and otherwise assist to protect the legal rights of his side.

#### **LAW NO. 7. REQUESTING A NEUTRAL SCORE.**

If a player believes his interests to be jeopardized by an illegal or improper act of an opponent, the player may apply to the Tournament Director for Neutral Score on that deal. The Tournament Director may allow or disallow the claim, as provided in Law No. 89.

---

### **THE AUCTION PERIOD.**

#### **LAW NO. 8. THE AUCTION.**

(a) Commencing with the player designated by the tray as Dealer, each player in rotation must make a call. Following the first bid, each player in rotation must make a call until three players pass successively, at which time the auction is closed.

(b) If all four players pass in the first round of the auction, that deal is passed out and so recorded and the hands are returned without play to the correct pocket of the tray from which they were taken. There shall be no new deal in such case.

#### **LAW NO. 9. CALLING.**

(a) Each successive bid must either name a greater number of odd tricks than the last preceding bid or an equal number of a higher denomination. The bids of different denomination rank upward as follows—Clubs, Diamonds, Hearts, Spades, No Trump.

(b) Any player may in rotation double the last preceding bid

## 64 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

if made by an opponent, or may redouble it, if it has been doubled by an opponent. Doubling and redoubling do not affect the number of tricks in the bid nor its value for the purpose of bidding sufficiency.

(c) A bid which has been redoubled may not again be doubled or redoubled.

(d) When a bid has been doubled, or doubled and redoubled, a player in rotation may make a further bid until the auction closes.

(e) A player who does not desire to bid, double or redouble must so signify by passing.

### LAW NO. 10. CONTRACT AND DECLARER.

The final bid in the auction becomes the contract. If the contract is in a suit, each card of that suit becomes a trump. The player who, for the side which made the final bid, first bid the denomination named in the contract, becomes the Declarer; his partner ceases to be a player and becomes Declarer's partner.

### LAW NO. 11. INFORMATION AS TO CALLS MADE.

During the auction a player may ask to have the previous calls restated only when it is his turn to call. (See Laws No. 12 and No. 23.) This right may not be exercised by a player who at his turn to call is barred from the auction.

### LAW NO. 12. MISUNDERSTANDING A CALL.

(a) Any player who does not hear a call distinctly may require that it be repeated.

(b) Misunderstanding a previous call does not grant relief from any penalty resulting therefrom, except that if the players cannot agree as to what call was actually made, the Tournament Director may be asked to adjudicate, and he may direct

(1) That the auction revert to the call in question and proceed without restriction from that point; or

(2) That the auction stand, and that any due penalties be assessed after the questionable call has been decided.

### LAW NO. 13. CHANGING A PROPER CALL.

(a) If a player makes a proper call and immediately corrects it in practically the same breath by changing one denomination for another with the same number of tricks, or by changing "no bid" to "no trump" or vice versa, his first call shall be construed a misnomer and shall be void. The player's left-hand opponent may condone the correction, in which case it stands without penalty, or either opponent may announce the intention to penalize. Upon claim of penalty, the offender may either:

(1) Let his correction stand, whereupon

**PENALTY**—The partner of the offender is barred from the auction at his first turn to call, but may thereafter reënter the auction; or

(2) Substitute any other bid, whereupon

**PENALTY**—The partner of the offender is barred from further participation in the auction.

(b) If a player makes a proper call, he may not change it voluntarily except as provided in section (a) of the law.\* In any other case, a second and different call made by the same player after a proper call may be condoned by the left-hand opponent, in which case there is no penalty, or may be penalized as a call out of rotation. (See Law No. 15.)

**LAW NO. 14. CONDONING AN IMPROPER CALL.**

(a) Condonement of an improper call is the act of accepting it as a proper call without penalty. Such acceptance is signified by a following call made by the left-hand opponent of the offender, either before or after attention is drawn to the irregularity, as provided in the following sections of this law.

(b) The right of condonement is granted as an additional protection to the non-offending side and not as a means of waiving a penalty. It may not be exercised by a player who at his turn is barred from the auction; should a player so barred pass after an improper call by his right-hand opponent, his pass does not stand as condonement nor does it nullify the right to penalize the adverse irregularity.

(c) If, following an improper call or the improper change of a call, the left-hand opponent of the offender calls before attention is drawn to the irregularity, the improper or changed call stands as regular without penalty.

(d) If attention is drawn to an improper call before a legal correction, or to the improper change of a call, the left-hand opponent may condone the initial call or may exact the penalty for the irregularity. (See Laws Nos. 15-19.) If he elects to condone an improper call, any attempted change thereof is void without penalty.

**LAW NO. 15. CALL OUT OF ROTATION.**

(a) Unless condoned (see Law No. 14) a call out of rotation is void and the auction reverts to the proper player.

(b) If a player passes out of rotation before any bid has been made

**PENALTY**—The offender is barred from the auction when it is his first correct turn to call, but may thereafter enter the auction.

(c) If a player passes out of rotation after a bid has been made

\* Partial designations of any character are subject to adjudication by the Tournament Director.

**PENALTY**—The offender's partner is barred from further participation in the auction.

(d) If a player bids, doubles, or redoubles out of rotation

**PENALTY**—The offender's partner is barred from further participation in the auction.

**LAW NO. 16. INSUFFICIENT BID OVER A BID OF LESS THAN SEVEN ODD**

(a) If a player makes an insufficient bid (over a bid of less than seven odd tricks), and immediately corrects the error before attention is drawn to it, by substituting the lowest sufficient bid of the same denomination, the first call is void. The player's left-hand opponent may condone the correction, in which case it stands without penalty, or may announce that he will penalize the error. Upon announcement of penalty, the offender has the options permitted under section (c) of this law, with consequent penalties against him.

(b) Except in the circumstances and form prescribed by section (a) of this law, a player may not voluntarily correct his own insufficient bid. Under other circumstances, the left-hand opponent of the offender may elect to condone the insufficient bid or demand its correction. (See Law No. 14.)

(c) Upon demand for correction or announcement of penalization of an insufficient bid, the offender may substitute either

(1) The lowest sufficient bid in the same denomination, whereupon

**PENALTY**—The partner of the offender is barred from the auction when it is his first correct turn to call, but may thereafter enter the auction; or

(2) Any bid other than the lowest sufficient bid of the same denomination, whereupon

**PENALTY**—The partner of the offender is barred from further participation in the auction.

**LAW NO. 17. INSUFFICIENT BID OVER A BID OF SEVEN ODD.**

(a) If a player makes an insufficient bid (over a bid of seven odd) and immediately corrects his error, before attention is drawn to it, by substituting any sufficient bid, the correction stands.

(b) If attention is drawn to an insufficient bid (over a bid of seven odd) before its correction, the left-hand opponent of the offender may elect to condone it or to demand its correction. (See Law No. 14.)

(c) Upon demand for the correction of an insufficient bid (over a bid of seven odd), the offender may substitute either a sufficient bid or pass.

(d) If a side makes an insufficient bid (over a bid of seven odd) to which attention is drawn

## DUPLICATE LAWS. (Bridge.) 67

**PENALTY**—If the offending side become the Defenders, Declarer may designate the suit to be led for the opening lead. In addition, if the insufficient bid is not condoned, the partner of the offender is barred from further participation in the auction.

### LAW NO. 18. BID OF EIGHT OR MORE ODD TRICKS.

Any bid of eight or more odd tricks stands as a bid of seven odd tricks in the same denomination, and if the bid is then insufficient it is subject to penalty under Law No. 17. In any event, both partners of the offending side are barred from further participation in the auction.

### LAW NO. 19. INFREQUENT IMPROPER CALLS.

(a) If a player in doubling or redoubling names the wrong denomination or the wrong number of tricks in the last preceding bid, the left-hand opponent of the offender may condone the improper call, in which case it stands without penalty as a double or redouble of the actual bid; or either opponent of the offender may elect:

**PENALTY**—(1) To avoid the improper call and bar the partner of the offender from further participation in the auction; or

(2) To apply to the Tournament Director for adjudication as provided in Law No. 7.

(b) If a player makes a call (other than a pass) while barred from the auction, or doubles his partner's bid, or doubles when there has been no bid, or redoubles when there has been no double, or makes any other call not dealt with or recognized by these laws, the improper call is void and

**PENALTY**—Either opponent may elect between the penalties under section (a) of this law.

(c) If a player doubles or redoubles a bid that his partner has already doubled or redoubled, the improper call is void and

**PENALTY**—The left-hand opponent of the offender may cancel the proper double or redouble of the offender's partner, and in addition either opponent may elect between the penalties under section (a) of this law.

For other infrequent improper calls, see Law No. 24.

### LAW NO. 20. ILLEGAL INFORMATION DURING THE AUCTION.

If, during the auction, any player makes a remark, gesture, or through any other act conveys information to his partner as to his cards, his intentions, or desires, except through the legitimate process of calling

**PENALTY**—The partner of the offender may be barred from further participation in the auction.

The Tournament Director must rule whether the alleged act

## 68 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

constitutes illegal conveyance of information, and also whether the information conveyed is of sufficient weight to warrant penalization.

### LAW NO. 21. CARDS FACED, SEEN, OR DISCLOSED.

(a) If, during the auction, a player faces a card on the table, sees the face of a card belonging to his partner, or makes a remark other than a legal call that discloses a card in his hand to his partner, such card or cards must be placed face up on the table during the auction.

(b) If a player so discloses:

(1) A single card of less than honor rank

**PENALTY**—If the owner becomes a Defender, Declarer may elect to prohibit the opening lead from being made in the suit of the disclosed card, or may treat the card as a penalty card in the play period.

(2) A single card of honor rank, or two or more cards

**PENALTY**—The owner's partner is barred from further participation in the auction and if the owner becomes a Defender, Declarer may enforce the penalty under section (1) above.\*

---

## THE PLAY PERIOD.

### LAW NO. 22. PENALTY CARDS.

(a) If, during the play, a Defender faces a card on the table, or sees the face of a card that belongs to his partner, such card becomes a penalty card and must be placed face up on the table. (But adjudication may be asked under Law No. 41.)

(b) Cards disclosed by Declarer are not subject to penalty.

(c) If a Defender has one penalty card

**PENALTY**—He must play it at his first legal opportunity. (See Law No. 42.)

(d) If a Defender has two or more penalty cards

**PENALTY**—He must play one of them at each legal opportunity to do so. Whenever he has choice among penalty cards, he must so inform Declarer, who may designate which is to be played.

### LAW NO. 23. REVIEWING THE AUCTION.

(a) After the auction is closed, but before the opening lead, any player may request a complete review of the auction.

(b) After the opening lead, a player may ask what the contract

\* Declarer may not bar the lead of more than three suits.



is and whether (but not by whom) it is doubled or redoubled; but may not ask any further details of the auction. If a player gives illegal information to his partner about the auction after the opening lead \*

**PENALTY**—Declarer or either Defender (as the case may be) may call a lead of any designated suit when first it is the turn of the offending side to lead.

**LAW NO. 24. CALL AFTER THE AUCTION IS CLOSED.**

(a) Any pass after the auction is closed is void without penalty.

(b) Any call by Declarer or his partner after the auction is closed is void without penalty.

(c) Any bid, double, or redouble by a Defender after the auction is closed is void, and

**PENALTY**—Declarer may require the other Defender to lead a specified suit when first it is his turn to lead.

**LAW NO. 25. OPENING LEAD AND DUMMY.**

After the auction is closed, the Defender on Declarer's left makes the opening lead. Declarer's partner then spreads his cards face up in front of him on the table, and Declarer plays both his own hand and Dummy. (See footnote to Law No. 33 [c].)

**LAW NO. 26. DECLARER'S PARTNER—RIGHTS.**

(a) Declarer's partner does not rank as a player. Nevertheless he may at any time

(1) When requested, discuss questions of facts.

(2) Notify the Tournament Director of any matter in which the legal interests of his side are concerned.

(b) If he has not intentionally seen the face of a card in any player's hand, or looked at the traveling score slip, Declarer's partner may

(1) Play the cards of Dummy as directed by Declarer.

(2) Keep count of the tricks won and lost by each side.

(3) Call attention to the fact that any player has turned down in incorrect direction his card played to the last preceding trick.

(4) Draw attention to a Defender's irregularity and ask Declarer if he knows his rights. But he may call attention to an adverse revoke only after such time as the revoke would have become established. (See Law No. 39 [b].)

(5) Warn any player that he is about to commit an irregu-

\* If information is requested by one side and given by the other, neither may claim penalty. When the penalty is assessed under this law, the offender is entitled to review the entire auction.

## 70 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

larity, except that Dummy must observe the prohibitions of Law No. 27.

(6) Question Declarer regarding his possible revoke.

### LAW NO. 27. DECLARER'S PARTNER—PENALTIES.

(a) Declarer's partner has no rights other than those specified in Law No. 26. If he intentionally sees the face of a card in any player's hand or looks at the traveling score slip, he may not exercise the rights under section (b) of Law No. 26, and in this event, or should he seek to exercise other rights not mentioned in this law, he may be required by either Defender to leave the table until the play of the deal is completed.

(b) If Declarer's partner suggests a lead or play by naming or touching a card or otherwise,

PENALTY—Either Defender may require Declarer

(1) To make the lead or play suggested; or

(2) To refrain from doing so.\*

The Tournament Director may rule whether an act or remark actually constitutes a suggestion.

(c) If Declarer's partner volunteers the information as to which of Declarer's hands is in the lead or warns Declarer that he is about to lead from the wrong hand,

PENALTY—Either Defender may designate from which hand Declarer must lead. (See also Law No. 41.)

### LAW NO. 28. SUBSEQUENT LEADS AND PLAYS.

(a) After a lead, a card must be played from each other hand in rotation, and the four cards thus played constitute a trick.

(b) Unless restricted by a penalty, the leader may lead any card he holds. Each other player in rotation must follow suit if able, but if unable to follow suit he may play any card he holds.

(c) The hand winning a trick leads to the next trick.

### LAW NO. 29. TRICKS WON.

(a) A trick containing a trump or trumps is won by the hand playing the highest trump. A trick containing no trump is won by the hand playing the highest card of the suit led.

(b) After a trick is completed, each player must retain possession of his card and place it face down on the table directly in front of him. Each card as turned down should be pointed lengthwise towards the partners who won the trick.

(c) At the completion of play each player's thirteen cards should

\* Such prohibition applies automatically to cards in sequence with the suggested card, and to cards that have become equal to it by the previous play of the intervening cards of that suit, unless no other legal play is possible.

## DUPLICATE LAWS. (Bridge.) 71

have been arranged in an overlapping row in the order played, the direction of each card indicating which side won the trick. Each player, and also Declarer's partner, should so keep count. In case of disagreement, the play should be reviewed until the ownership of doubtful tricks is established.

### LAW NO. 30. PLAYED CARDS.

(a) A lead or play is completed

(1) By a Defender: when his card is so placed or held that his partner sees its face, or when it touches the table and can be named by Declarer.

(2) From Declarer's hand: when it touches the table and can be named by either Defender.

(3) From Dummy: when Declarer touches or names a card in it, unless for an expressed or manifest purpose other than play.

(b) A player may not voluntarily withdraw a card once played except to correct a revoke. (See Law No. 37.)

### LAW NO. 31. QUITTED TRICKS.

(a) Quitted tricks should be arranged face down in an orderly manner so that any player may ascertain how many tricks have been won by each side, and the order in which they were taken. He must be given this information upon request.

(b) A trick is quitted when, and only when, each player has turned his card face down and removed his hand therefrom. So long as any card of a trick remains unquitted, any player may demand to see the cards so far played to the trick.

(c) A side having led or played to the following trick loses its right to inspect the preceding trick even though unquitted, and may be required to turn all of its played cards face down.

(d) A quitted trick may not again be inspected before the completion of play, except that

(1) A player may inspect the last quitted trick if permission to do so is obtained from an opponent.\*

(2) The Tournament Director may direct the inspection of any quitted trick.

### LAW NO. 32. CONDONING AN IMPROPER PLAY.

If, after a lead or play that is not in accordance with a law of correct procedure or with a properly assessed penalty, the left-hand opponent of the offender plays before attention is drawn to the irregularity, the lead or play stands as regular, except that a penalizable revoke is not thereby condoned. (See Law No. 38.)

\* Permission should be granted when it is manifest that the player has been denied full view of a card played by another, and should be denied if the player or his partner has led or played to the following trick.

## 72 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

### LAW NO. 33. LEAD OUT OF TURN.

(a) If Declarer leads from the wrong hand, he may not voluntarily correct his error, but

PENALTY—Either Defender may require him to lead from the correct hand, in which case he must if able lead a card of the same suit.\*

(b) If Declarer leads from either hand when it is a Defender's turn to lead

PENALTY—Either Defender may require Declarer to retract the lead or to let it stand.

(c) If a Defender leads out of turn.†

PENALTY—Declarer may either

(1) Call a lead of a designated suit when first it is a Defender's turn to lead; or

(2) Treat the card led in error as a penalty card. (See Law No. 22.)

### LAW NO. 34. PREMATURE LEADS AND PLAYS.

(a) If Declarer plays from both hands before either Defender has played to a trick, either Defender may play before his partner without penalty.

(b) If a Defender plays to a trick when it is his partner's turn to play (for a lead out of turn see Law No. 33).

PENALTY—Declarer may require the offender's partner to play his highest or lowest card of the suit led, or, if he has none of the suit led, to play a specified suit.

(c) If a Defender leads to the next trick before his partner has played to the current trick

PENALTY—Declarer may require the offender's partner to play his highest or lowest card of the suit led to the current trick, or, if he has none of the suit led, to play a specified suit. If the enforcement of this penalty causes the offender's partner to win the current trick, the premature lead may be penalized as a lead out of turn.

### LAW NO. 35. ERROR IN PLAY FROM DUMMY.

(a) If Declarer designates for play a card that is not in Dummy, he must if possible play a card of either the suit or the rank named.

\* The compulsion to lead a card of the same suit is statutory: it operates even though not mentioned by the Defender who demands correction. Failure by Declarer to comply with this compulsion is a revoke, but no revoke by Dummy can be penalized. (See Law No. 38 [b].)

† In the case of an opening lead by the wrong Defender, if Declarer's partner has exposed any of his cards Declarer may exact Penalty (c) (2) but not Penalty (c) (1). If, after such an incorrect opening lead, Declarer faces any of his cards, the lead stands as regular, the faced hand becomes Dummy, and the partner becomes Declarer.

(b) If Declarer designates a card in Dummy to be played and his partner plays another, the error must be corrected on demand of any player if it is detected before a Defender plays. (See Law No. 27 (b)). If a Defender plays before the error is noted, the card played from Dummy stands as regular.

(c) If Declarer's designation of a card to be played from Dummy does not clearly identify the card, either Defender or Declarer's partner may require Declarer to name the exact card intended. In this event, Declarer is bound by any partial designation he may have made.\*

#### LAW NO. 36. REVOKE DEFINED.

(a) A player revokes if, when able to play or lead as required by or under these laws, he makes a play or lead that does not fulfill the requirements. This definition includes the act of playing a card of a different suit from that led, when able to follow suit, and the act of playing or leading a card that does not comply with the requirements of a proper penalty, when able to comply.

(b) Every revoke in one of the first eleven tricks is either corrected or established, as defined in Laws Nos. 37 and 38. A revoke in the twelfth trick cannot be established or penalized: it must be corrected if the error is discovered before the four hands are returned to the tray.

#### LAW NO. 37. REVOKE CORRECTED.

(a) If a player revokes, but discovers his error before the revoke becomes established, he must announce the revoke immediately. He must substitute a correct card, but if he is subject to penalty under paragraph (b) or (c) of this law he must wait until a penalty is selected.

(b) Declarer may correct a revoke without penalty, before its establishment, if the left-hand Defender has not played to the trick after Declarer. If the left-hand Defender has played to the trick after Declarer

**PENALTY**—This Defender may require Declarer to play his highest or lowest correct card.

(c) If a Defender desires to correct a revoke as permitted in (a) **PENALTY**—Declarer may either

(1) Require the Defender to play his highest or lowest correct card; or

(2) Treat the card played in error as a penalty card. In this case the offender may substitute any correct card he holds.

\* If he has named a suit, he must if possible play a card of that suit; if he has named a rank, he must if possible play a card of that rank; if he said "high" or "low" or words of like import, he must play the highest or the lowest card of the suit designated. If there is choice of cards fulfilling this requirement, Declarer may exercise unrestricted choice.

## 74 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

(d) Any card played by the non-offending side in the interval between a revoke and its correction may be retracted without penalty.

### LAW NO. 38. REVOKE ESTABLISHED.

(a) A revoke in any of the first eleven tricks becomes established when in proper turn or otherwise

(1) The offender or his partner leads or plays to the following trick (if the revoke was made in playing); or

(2) The offender's partner plays to the trick (if the revoke was made in leading); or

(3) The offender or his partner claims any or all of the remaining tricks, or concedes or disputes an adverse claim.

(b) A revoke by Dummy, whether corrected or established, may not be penalized.

(c) If a revoke is established against a Defender or against Declarer's own hand\*

**PENALTY**—After completion of play, two tricks for the first revoke and one trick for each subsequent revoke by the same side are transferred from the available tricks of the revoking side to its opponents.

(d) The tricks available for payment of penalty are the tricks won in play by the revoking side after its first revoke, including the trick on which that revoke occurred.

(e) A transferred trick ranks for all scoring purposes as a trick won in play by the side receiving it.

(f) If an established revoke is claimed, the tricks may be inspected after completion of play to settle the claim. Penalty for a revoke may not be claimed after all four players have returned their hands to the tray. Any question in this connection shall be referred to the Tournament Director for adjudication.

### LAW NO. 39. INQUIRY REGARDING POSSIBLE REVOKE.

(a) A player may ask any other player whether his play constitutes a revoke, and may demand that a revoke be corrected, but the exercise of these rights cannot alter nor postpone the provisions of Law No. 37 and 38.

(b) Declarer's partner may question only Declarer regarding his possible revoke. If he so questions another player, or if he questions Declarer after he has forfeited his rights under Law No. 26 (b)

**PENALTY**—Declarer may not claim an adverse revoke on that trick; or Declarer may not correct his own revoke on that trick.

\* This penalty may not be assessed against a player if his hand, when he revokes, is faced in consequence of an adverse claim.

LAW NO. 40. DEAL NOT PLAYED OUT.

(a) If Declarer claims the remaining tricks or any number thereof\* he must place his cards face up on the table, and make a complete statement as to how he intends to play the rest of the hand, specifying the order in which he intends to play his cards and the disposition of each card in each of his two hands. If Declarer fails to make a statement, or if his statement is unsatisfactory to the Defenders, or if for any other reason they dispute Declarer's claim, they should notify the Tournament Director immediately. The Tournament Director shall require Declarer to make the statement as required above. Any matter of play then not covered by his statement may be settled as the Defenders direct. (See also Law No. 7.)

(b) Declarer may not treat as penalty cards any cards that have been exposed in consequence of his claim. But if a Defender exposes any of his cards in consequence of a remark or act by Declarer that he construes as a claim, such cards become penalty cards if Declarer's act or remark was not intended as a claim and if the Tournament Director rules that it was not so overt as to constitute a claim.

(c) If a Defender claims any or all of the remaining tricks, Declarer may require him to play out the deal. In that case, all the cards remaining in the hand of the claimant's partner must be placed face up on the table and must be played as Declarer directs. But a claim or concession by one Defender is not binding until the other Defender agrees.†

(d) Declarer's partner may not object to a claim or concession by Declarer or by the Defenders, except in a case covered by section (e) of this law.

(e) If a side concedes a trick which it could not lose by any play of the cards, such concession is void.

LAW NO. 41. ILLEGAL INFORMATION DURING THE PLAY.

(a) If either Defender by word or act improperly locates an unplayed card in his own or his partner's hand, the Tournament Director may

PENALTY—Declare a card so located to be a penalty card under Law No. 22.

(b) If either Defender improperly locates an unplayed card in Declarer's hand, the Tournament Director may

PENALTY—Permit Declarer to designate the suit to be led at the first opportunity of the defending side to lead.

(c) If Declarer's partner improperly locates an unplayed card in the hand of either Defender, the Tournament Director may

\*A concession of less than the total number of tricks remaining is treated as a claim.

†A Defender's act of abandoning his cards must be construed as agreement.

**PENALTY**—Permit the Defender who will play last to the trick to designate the suit to be led at Declarer's first opportunity to lead from either hand.

(d) If either Defender or Declarer's partner makes a remark, gesture, or by any other act conveys information as to his intentions or desires in the play of the cards, the Tournament Director may assess an appropriate penalty, such as permitting the non-offending side to call a lead.

(e) If in the opinion of the Tournament Director the penalty suggested for any case under this law is inadequate, he may instead give Neutral Score, with or without penalty.

#### LAW NO. 42. PRECEDENCE OF OBLIGATIONS.

(a) If a player incurs two or more concurrent obligations, he must fulfill them in the following order of precedence:

(1) He must follow suit to a lead if able;

(2) He must lead or play in a designated manner in response to a proper penalty;

(3) He must play a penalty card if able.

(b) If a player incurs a penalty requiring him to lead or play from a designated suit, and if he has none of the designated suit, the penalty lapses and the player may lead or play any legal card he holds.

(c) The obligation to play a penalty card as provided in Law No. 22 continues until the card is played, even though on occasion another obligation should take precedence under section (a) of this law.

#### LAW NO. 43. COMPLETING PLAY.

(a) When the play of a deal is completed and the tricks won by each side are agreed upon, the score must be recorded. Each player should again count his cards to be certain that he has exactly thirteen, and then place his cards face down in the correct pocket of the tray.

(b) If a player removes from the tray and looks at any hand, unless the Tournament Director or one of his rightful opponents on the tray is present.

**PENALTY**—The Tournament Director shall deduct from the final score of the offender 1 match point (in total point play, 100 points).



## SCORING VALUES.

### LAW NO. 44. TRICK SCORE.

There shall be entered in the trick score of Declarer's side only the value of the tricks of the made contract, undoubled, doubled, or redoubled, as the case may be.

If Declarer fails to fulfil his contract no points shall be entered in the trick score of either side.

### LAW NO. 45. PREMIUM SCORE.

All points won by either Declarer's side or Defenders', except those legally entered in the trick score, shall be entered in the premium score of the side scoring them.

### LAW NO. 46. PREMIUM FOR LESS-THAN-GAME CONTRACT.

When Declarer fulfills his contract, and its value is less than 100 points, his side shall receive a premium of 50 points in addition to the value of the tricks won.

### LAW NO. 47. GAME PREMIUM.

When Declarer fulfills his contract, and its value is 100 points or more; in addition to the value of tricks won, his side shall receive a premium of 300 points if not vulnerable, or a premium of 500 points if vulnerable.

### LAW NO. 48. SLAMS.

Only Declarer's side may score the premium for a small slam or a grand slam. The grand-slam premium shall be awarded to Declarer's side only when a contract of seven odd is made. The small-slam premium shall be awarded to the Declarer's side when a contract of six odd is made; if seven odd are made, the seventh trick shall be scored as an overtrick.

### LAW NO. 49. SCORE TABLE.

(a) The made contract shall be scored in the trick score of Declarer's side at the following point values:

	Each trick of the made contract		
	Undoubled	Doubled	Redoubled
Trump			
Diamonds or Clubs.....	20	40	80
Spades or Hearts.....	30	60	120
No Trump			
1st Trick.....	40	80	160
Each other trick.....	30	60	120

## 78 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

(b) The following point values, when earned, shall be entered in the premium score of Declarer's side.

OVERTRICKS						
Each Trick over Contract	Declarer's side not vulnerable			Declarer's side vulnerable		
	Undoubled	Doubled	Redoubled	Undoubled	Doubled	Redoubled
Trick value	100	200		Trick value	200	400

### PREMIUM FOR MAKING LESS-THAN-GAME CONTRACT

Undoubled .....	50
Doubled .....	50
Redoubled .....	50

### PREMIUM FOR MAKING GAME CONTRACT

Declarer's side not vulnerable.....	300
Declarer's side vulnerable.....	500

### PREMIUMS FOR SLAMS—BID AND MADE

	Declarer's side not vulnerable	Declarer's side vulnerable
Small Slam .....	500	750
Grand Slam .....	1000	1500

(c) The following point values, when earned, shall be entered in the premium score of the Defenders:

### PENALTIES FOR UNDERTRICKS

	Declarer's side not vulnerable			Declarer's side vulnerable		
	Undoubled	Doubled	Redoubled	Undoubled	Doubled	Redoubled
1st under-trick ....	50	100	200	100	200	400
Each other trick ....	50	200	400	100	300	600

(d) If the scoring of the game is by cumulative plus and minus, the following points for honors in a deal not passed out shall be entered in the premium score of the side to whom the honors were dealt:

At a trump contract, for four trump honors in one hand....	100
At a trump contract, for five trump honors in one hand....	150
At a No Trump contract, for four Aces in one hand.....	150

No points for honors shall be scored in match-point play.

## LAWS OF TOURNAMENT PROCEDURE.

### LAW NO. 50. JURISDICTION.

(a) These laws shall govern all games of Duplicate Contract Bridge.

(b) Any club or other organization may appoint a Tournament or Card Committee to administer and interpret these laws.

(c) The Committee shall have the right to refuse entry to any player, pair, or team without assigning cause. It shall have the right to disqualify any player, pair, or team, and to inflict fines of any number of matches or points for flagrant violation of the laws, ethics, or proprieties of the game.

(d) The Committee shall have full power to decide any protest where the question is one of fact.

(e) The Committee shall have the right to decide any protest based on the interpretation of law, but any of its decisions may be appealed on point of law to the National Laws and Rules Committee. The National Laws and Rules Committee will keep a record of its decisions to establish precedents for future guidance.

### LAW NO. 51. TOURNAMENT DIRECTOR.

(a) A Tournament Director shall be appointed to conduct and supervise the game or tournament. He shall be the agent of the Committee and solely responsible thereto. (See Laws Nos. 83 to 91 inclusive for the duties and powers of the Tournament Director.)

(b) The Official Scorer and all other persons concerned in the conduct, supervision, and scoring of a game or tournament shall act under the direction and authority of the Tournament Director.

### LAW NO. 52. OFFICIAL SCORER.

An Official Scorer shall be appointed who shall have the following duties, to be performed in person or by others at his direction:

(a) To enter correctly on the score sheet the results of each round as recorded on the score cards or sheets approved by the players. He shall have the right to challenge and return for correction or verification any scores that appear incorrect.

(b) To tabulate and rate the score of each player, pair or team according to the scoring system used, and unless otherwise instructed by the Committee, to post the results as promptly as possible after completion of play.

LAW NO. 53. POSTING THE SCORE.

(a) The Official Scorer, upon completion of the score for any section or match, shall post it where it is available to the players for inspection, unless otherwise instructed by the Committee.

(b) The Committee shall fix a definite time limit during which the score shall remain posted subject to correction. No correction shall be made unless reported before expiration of the time limit, when the score becomes official. Unless otherwise established, the time limit shall be 30 minutes after posting.

(c) Any player participating may file a claim for correction in the score of his section before or during the time the score is posted for correction. Errors shall be corrected only if proved beyond a reasonable doubt. If the error is in recording the point score of a hand, the parties whose score was incorrectly recorded shall be consulted if possible.

LAW NO. 54. PROTESTS AND APPEALS.

(a) Any protest of law, fact, or ethics should be made to the Tournament Director immediately, and in no case may a protest be considered unless it is presented not later than 15 minutes after the conclusion of the session.

(b) A contestant shall have the right of appeal to the Committee from any decision of the Tournament Director, provided that notice of appeal is given not later than 15 minutes after the conclusion of the session, or within 15 minutes after the Tournament Director's decision if that decision is rendered after conclusion of the session.

LAW NO. 55. SCORING SYSTEMS.

(a) The players shall record the exact score of every deal they play.

(b) In championship pair play, in all individual play, and in all games employing the Howell movement, or a variation thereof, only match-point scoring shall be used.

(c) In club play under the Mitchell movement, either match-point scoring or cumulative plus and minus scoring may be used.

(d) In team play, either the Deal-a-Match system, the Team-Match system, or the cumulative plus and minus system may be used.

---

**MATCH POINT SCORING.**

LAW NO. 56. THE SCORE CARD.

(a) For championship play, score cards or score slips of suitable design shall be provided, and the North or South player at

## DUPLICATE LAWS. (Bridge.) 81

each table shall make out a separate score card for each deal or match played.

(b) Each score card shall show the section number; the individual, pair, or team numbers and positions of all players; the final contract and position of the Declarer; the trick score; the complete premium score of both sides; and the net score, plus or minus, of the North-South pair.

(c) Each score card shall be presented for approval to the East or West player, and if it is correct he shall approve it for his side by entering his initials or other identifying mark on the card.

(d) As soon as completed, each score card shall be turned face down on the corner of the table, marked on the back with an "x" or the word "score" and left there to be collected for the Official Scorer.

### LAW NO. 57. THE TRAVELING SCORE SLIP.

(a) In club play, a traveling score slip of suitable design may be provided for each deal instead of the individual score card. The slip shall travel with the tray throughout the game, and each score made on the deal shall be recorded on the slip.

(b) If the traveling score slip is used, it shall be and remain folded in such manner that no player may see any of the information it contains until he has completed the play of that deal.

### LAW NO. 58. THE SUMMARY SHEET.

(a) A summary sheet of suitable design shall be provided for each section.

(b) The heading of the summary sheet shall show the date and place, the section number, and the name of the event.

(c) Spaces with identifying numbers shall be provided on the summary sheet for the names and positions of all players, pairs or teams.

### LAW NO. 59. MATCH POINTS IN FAIR PLAY.

(a) The Committee shall decide whether each deal or each set of deals shall constitute a pair match; or whether a combination of the two methods (known as group scoring) shall be used.

(b) The score of each pair on each match shall be compared only with scores made on that match by other pairs playing in the same direction.

(c) On each match, a pair shall be awarded 1 match point for each pair their score betters,  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each pair their score ties, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each Neutral or other arbitrary score assigned.

## 82 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

### LAW NO. 60. MATCH POINTS IN INDIVIDUAL PLAY.

(a) In individual play, the two players playing as partners shall be considered as a pair for that match, and pair match points shall be awarded in the regular manner.

(b) Each player shall receive separately the full number of match points awarded to his pair.

### LAW NO. 61. MATCH POINTS IN TEAM-OF-FOUR PLAY.

(a) A team shall win a deal if its North-South pair score is better than the North-South pair score of its opponents.

(b) A team shall halve a deal if its North-South pair score is the same as the North-South pair score of its opponents.

(c) In Deal-a-Match play, each deal shall be considered as a separate match, and a team shall be awarded 1 match point for each deal won, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each deal halved.

(d) In Team-Match play, all the deal-matches played against one team shall constitute one team-match. A team shall win a team-match if it wins the majority of the deal-match points from an opponent. A team shall have a team-match if it wins exactly half of the deal-match points from an opponent.

### LAW NO. 62. MATCH POINTS WITH TEAMS OF MORE THAN FOUR.

In a match among two or more teams of more than four players each, the Committee shall decide the method of scoring to be employed. The following methods of match-point scoring are suggested:

(1) FOR TWO TEAMS: The scores made by all pairs of one team on one deal, in both compass directions, are totaled and netted. If the net is plus, the team wins the deal; if the net is minus, the team loses the deal; if the net is zero, the deal is halved.

(2) FOR MORE THAN TWO TEAMS: Each team is construed as composed of two or more teams-of-four. The matches between each pair of teams are scored as provided in Law No. 61. The final score of each team is the total of matches won by its component teams-of-four.

### LAW NO. 63. DETERMINING WINNERS.

(a) In individual play, the player having the greatest number of match points shall be declared the winner.

(b) In Howell pair play, the pair having the greatest number of match points shall be declared the winner.

(c) In Mitchell pair play, the North-South pair having the greatest number of match points shall be declared the winner in the North-South group; and the East-West pair having the great-

est number of match points shall be declared the winner in the East-West group.

(d) In Deal-a-Match team play, the team winning the greatest number of deals shall be declared the winner.

(e) In Team-Match play, the team winning the greatest number of team-match points shall be declared the winner.

#### LAW NO. 64. TIES.

(a) In championship individual or pair play, if there is a tie for first place all of the tying contestants shall share title and honors equally. The Committee may at its discretion break the tie for purpose of awarding prizes.

(b) Method for breaking a tie in any individual or pair play:

Considering tying contestants only, award a contestant one point for each deal on which his match point score is higher than that of the other contestant. If three contestants are tied, the one having the highest match point score on a given deal receives two points, the intermediate match point score one point, and the lowest match point score zero. The tying contestant having the greatest number of points so awarded is the winner.

(c) Method for breaking a tie in championship team play:

The tie shall be broken by the play-off of any number of deals designated by the Committee. If the tie still exists, the winners shall be determined by the net total of their plus and minus scores on the play-off deals only.

(d) Method for breaking a tie in club or qualifying team play:

(1) In Deal-a-Match play, by computing the net total of the plus and minus scores of each tying team.

(2) In Team-Match play, by computing the number of single deals won by each tying team, and if the tie still exists, by computing the net total of the plus and minus scores of each tying team.

#### LAW NO. 65. NEUTRAL SCORE PENALTIES.

Upon granting a Neutral Score the Tournament Director must ascertain whether it has resulted from a culpable violation of propriety, ethics, or the laws of correct procedure. If circumstantial or direct evidence fixes the blame clearly upon certain pair or pairs, and if the error has required one or more innocent pairs to take Neutral Score, the Tournament Director shall penalize the guilty pairs and indemnify the innocent pairs.\* It is suggested that the penalty or indemnity to a single pair be not less than 10% nor more than 25%.†

\* The penalties and indemnities need not balance.

† Penalties or indemnities given in percentages are applied to the maximum number of match points possible for one pair on one tray, and shall be computed to the nearest half-point; but if a tie in total match points results, the exact fractions shall be substituted if that will break the tie.

## 84 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

### LAW NO. 66. AWARDING A NEUTRAL SCORE.

(a) In individual or pair play, when each deal is a match, a pair required to take Neutral Score on a deal shall receive  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each other pair playing that deal in the same direction, including other pairs who are assigned Neutral or other arbitrary match point scores.

(b) When two or more deals constitute a match, a pair required to take Neutral Score on a deal shall be awarded the average of the net trick and premium points made by other pairs playing that deal in the same direction.

(c) In team play, when one pair of a team is required to take Neutral Score, or when two pairs of a team do not play the identical deal, a new deal shall be substituted to determine the match between the two teams whenever possible. If pair scores are kept also, they are computed as in (a) or (b), no pair scores being awarded on the substituted deal.

(d) When one pair of a team is required to take Neutral Score on a deal, or when two pairs of a team do not play the identical deal, and it is impossible for the teams concerned to play a substitute deal, the deal shall be scored as halved by the teams concerned.

### LAW NO. 67. DISCIPLINARY PENALTIES.

The Tournament Director may penalize a pair or player any number of cumulative or match points for any offense that delays or obstructs the game, inconveniences the other players, impairs his authority, or compels the award of Neutral Scores. The following penalties are suggested:

(1) For excessive delay that inconveniences other players, 1 point.

(2) For comparing scores or discussing results of play except as permitted, 2 points.

(3) For looking at a quitted trick without permission,  $\frac{1}{2}$  point, assessed against the offender and awarded to the opponents.

(4) For failure to comply promptly with any instruction of the Committee or the Tournament Director, 2 points, with repetition of the penalty for continued delay or insubordination.

(5) For passing an incorrect board, 1 point.

(6) For calling attention to vulnerability after the player has looked at his own hand, 1 point or Neutral Score.

### LAW NO. 68. PENALTIES IN INDIVIDUAL PLAY.

The penalties in individual play shall be exactly the same as in pair play except that the penalty shall be assessed only against the offender, and not against his partner, if innocent.



LAW NO. 69. TARDINESS

(a) The Committee shall announce a starting time for each game or session.

(b) Tardy entrants shall be allowed five minutes of grace after the starting time, and thereafter they shall be penalized automatically as follows:

PENALTY—For the first five minutes or fraction thereof, 1 match point; for each subsequent five minutes or fraction thereof, 2 match points.

(c) The Committee may waive the penalty for tardiness for the first session of an event.

LAW NO. 70. PLAYING THE WRONG TRAY.

(a) If two pairs play a tray or trays other than the ones designated for that round, their score on such play is void, and either side not having previously played the deal shall be given Neutral Score on that deal.

(b) The two pairs in question shall play the correct tray or trays against each other if possible. If such play would delay other tables, it may be postponed until the conclusion of the last round.

(c) If it is inconvenient or impossible for the pairs in question to play the trays after the conclusion of the last round, the Tournament Director may permit them to take Neutral Score on the unplayed trays.

LAW NO. 71. WRONG NUMBER OF CARDS.

(a) Upon withdrawing his cards from the tray, each player, before looking at the face of any of them, shall count his cards to make sure that he has exactly thirteen. He shall count them again after the completion of the play, just before returning them to the tray.

(b) If any player finds that he holds more or less than thirteen cards, the tray shall immediately be referred to the Tournament Director. The latter shall correct the tray according to the hand records (if any are kept) or by consulting players who have already played the deal.

(c) If the error is discovered before any player holding more than thirteen cards has looked at his hand, the tray shall be returned to the proper table after correction, to be played and scored in the regular way.

(d) If the error is not discovered until after a player holding more than thirteen cards has looked at his hand, the tray shall be returned to the proper table after correction, but shall not be played. Both pairs at that table shall receive Neutral Score

for that deal and at the end of the round the tray shall progress in the regular way to be played at subsequent tables.

(e) If during the play it is discovered that one player holds less than thirteen cards, and the other three hold exactly thirteen, the deal shall be restored to its original form by replacing the missing cards or by substituting another deck. The player whose hand was short shall be deemed to have held the card or cards continuously and shall be liable for any revokes resulting therefrom.

#### LAW NO. 72. PLAYER LOOKING AT THE WRONG HAND.

(a) In an individual or pair game, if a player withdraws and looks at a hand other than the one he properly should hold, the tray shall be placed on the table and played in such position that he will hold the hand he has seen. The other three players shall take the hand the correspond to their relative positions as regards the player in error, and the deal shall be played and scored as regular.

(b) If to play a tray as described in paragraph (a) would result in any player's having knowledge of any hand other than the one he would hold, both pairs shall instead take Neutral Score on the deal.

#### LAW NO. 73. SCORING A MIXED DEAL.

If the cards of a tray become mixed or interchanged during play, and two or more tables play it in different form than originally dealt, the procedure shall be as follows:

(1) The Tournament Director shall determine as accurately as possible exactly which pairs played the deal as originally dealt, and which after the change.

(2) If it cannot be determined, which way any certain pair played the deal, they shall be given Neutral Score.

(3) As among pairs sitting in the same direction and playing the identical deal, each pair shall be awarded 1 match point for each pair beaten and  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each pair tied.

(4) Each pair shall be awarded  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each pair sitting in the same direction which did not play the identical deal, or which received Neutral Score.

#### LAW NO. 74. SCORING WHEN A CONTESTANT WITHDRAWS.

(a) When a contestant who has started play withdraws from a contest, if an acceptable substitute is found and continues to play until the end of the contest, all scores made by the original contestant or the substitute shall count.

(b) If no acceptable substitute can be found to continue, all scores made by the original contestant shall count, and the scores

on the remaining (unplayed) deals, shall be adjusted as follows:

(1) The number of match points made by the withdrawing contestant on the matches played shall be computed, and divided by the number of matches played, thereby determining his average number of points per match.

(2) On the remaining (unplayed) matches, the withdrawing contestant shall be assumed to have maintained the same average, and shall be awarded that number of match points on each remaining match.

(3) Each opponent shall be awarded, on the matches to have been played against the withdrawing contestant, the maximum possible number of match points less the number awarded to the withdrawing contestant.

(4) If this results in any opponent receiving a smaller number of match points than his own average on the matches actually played, such opponent shall be awarded his own average number of match points.

(5) These adjustments shall be made to the nearest half match point, except that if a tie results, the scores of the tying contestants shall be computed decimally to break the tie.

(6) Arbitrary scores so assigned shall affect the scores of other pairs in accordance with Law No. 59 (c).

#### LAW NO. 75. PLAYING PERCENTAGES.

To determine the playing percentage of any player or pair for a given session, divide the number of actual match points earned by the maximum number of match points possible for that player or pair.

---

### TOTAL POINT SCORING.

#### LAW NO. 76. THE SCORE SHEET.

(a) A score sheet or card of suitable design shall be provided for each North-South pair and each East-West pair, so ruled as to provide a space for the number of each deal, the final contract, the opponents' pair number, and the net plus or minus result of each deal.

#### LAW NO. 77. SCORING LIMIT.

(a) When a contract has been doubled or redoubled, the losing pair shall score the full amount of loss in all cases.

(b) In pair play, the winning pair shall not score more than the prescribed limit on any single deal. If more points are made,

## 88 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

only the allowed number shall be credited to the pair's score, and the excess points shall be entered on the score card in a separate space provided for "excess premiums."

(1) When a small slam or grand slam contract is either made or defeated—no limit.

(2) When a less-than-slam contract is defeated, regardless of whether Declarer's side is vulnerable or not:

Defenders not vulnerable	600 points
Defenders vulnerable	900 points

(3) When a less-than-slam contract is made, whether doubled or redoubled:

Declarer's side not vulnerable	800 points
Declarer's side vulnerable	1,000 points

### LAW NO. 78. TOTAL POINT PAIR SCORING.

(a) At the end of the contest, each pair shall total its plus column and minus column, and subtract the lesser total from the greater. The difference is its net score, plus or minus as the case may be.

(b) The North-South pair having the greatest net plus or the smallest net minus shall be declared the winner in the North-South group; the East-West winner shall be similarly determined.

(c) If there is a tie among two or more pairs playing in the same direction, the tying pair having the greatest number of "excess premium" points shall be declared the winner.

### LAW NO. 79. TOTAL POINT TEAM SCORING.

(a) In total point team scoring all the deals played against one team shall constitute one match.

(b) A team shall win a total point match if the total net plus or minus score of its North-South pair on all the deals of that match is better than that of its opponents. The margin of victory as between two teams is the difference of their final North-South scores. A team shall halve a total point match if its total net plus or minus North-South pair score is the same as that of its opponents.

(c) In team play, the full number of points won or lost in every deal shall be scored.

### LAW NO. 80. NEUTRAL SCORE IN TOTAL POINT PLAY.

(a) In pair play, when a pair receives Neutral Score on a deal it shall be awarded the average of all scores made on that deal by other pairs playing it in the same direction. Excess premium points shall not be considered in computing the average.

(b) In team play, if one or more pairs receive Neutral Score on a deal, a new deal shall be substituted to be played by the teams concerned. The substituted deal, but not the original one, shall be counted in the teams' total scores.

LAW NO. 81. SCORING A MIXED DEAL.

If the cards of a deal become mixed or interchanged during play, and two or more tables play it in different form than originally dealt, the procedure shall be as follows:

(a) The Tournament Director shall determine as accurately as possible exactly which pairs played the deal in its original form and which after the change.

(b) If it cannot be determined which way any certain pair played the deal, that pair shall be awarded zero on it.

(c) An average shall be computed of all scores known to have been made on the deal as originally dealt, and a similar average of all scores known to have been made after the change.

(d) A pair whose score on the deal exceeds the average of scorers made by all pairs playing the deal in the same form in the same direction, shall be awarded a plus score of the amount by which its score exceeds the average. A pair whose score is below the average shall be awarded a minus score of corresponding amount.

LAW NO. 82. PENALTIES IN TOTAL POINT PLAY.

Penalties prescribed or suggested under any and all sections of this Code are intended to be applied so far as they can be to total point play. Where penalties are given in match points or percentages, the following shall be deemed equivalent:

1 match point equivalent to 100 total points:

100% equivalent to 1,000 total points.

---

**DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE  
TOURNAMENT DIRECTOR.**

LAW NO. 83. TECHNICAL DUTIES.

It is the duty of the Tournament Director, in person or through his agents, to arrange and number the tables; to assign positions; to distribute Duplicate trays and scoring equipment; to direct the progression of players and movement of trays; to collect score cards; to score the game; and to make all announcements necessary for the information and guidance of the players.

## LAW NO. 84. DISCIPLINARY POWERS.

It is the duty of the Tournament Director to maintain order and discipline. He is specifically empowered to

- (1) Assess disciplinary penalties when he considers it necessary.
- (2) Suspend contestants for a session, or any part thereof, or to forbid the play of any deals at any tables.
- (3) Disqualify contestants for cause, subject to approval by the tournament committee.
- (4) Permit or forbid the entrance of substitutes or alternate team members during the course of a game.

## LAW NO. 85. RECTIFYING ERRORS OF PROCEDURE.

It is the duty of the Tournament Director to make such rectifications of error in procedure as are necessary for the continuance of play. In so far as possible, he should make these rectifications in such manner as not to inconvenience other players, disrupt the orderly procedure of the game, or require inequitable adjustment in the score. To these ends he may:

- (1) Direct contestants to take a Neutral Score instead of playing a deal, and to sustain or deny a player's request for a Neutral Score in any matter where the law permits his discretion.
- (2) Effect all such rectifications of error in procedure as are not contrary to specific laws.

## LAW NO. 86. RATIFICATION OF PLAYERS' ADJUSTMENTS.

It is the duty of the Tournament Director to administer and interpret the laws of Duplicate Bridge and tournament procedure. The laws do not give players the right to assess or to waive penalties, and no such adjustment made among the players is valid until ratified by the Tournament Director. (See Law No. 6 [c].) If a proper penalty is assessed and paid, he should ratify that action when it comes to his attention. If an incorrect penalty has been claimed, the claimant does not thereby forfeit his right to a correct penalty. If an incorrect penalty has been claimed and paid, the Tournament Director may adjust the score in whatever way he considers necessary to protect the innocent parties. To accomplish this he may:

- (1) Adjust the score to what it would have been if the correct penalty had been assessed and paid, provided such score can be determined.
- (2) Assign a Neutral Score with or without penalty.
- (3) Assign an arbitrary match point score which, in his opinion, equitably represents the interests of the parties concerned.

LAW NO. 87. RULINGS ON AGREED FACTS.

When the Tournament Director is called to rule upon a point of law, procedure, or ethics, he should first determine whether the facts are agreed upon. If so, he should proceed as follows:

(1) If no penalty is provided by law or dictated by his own judgment, he should so advise the players, and instruct them to proceed with the play.

(2) If a case is clearly a case under a law that provides a penalty for the irregularity, he should assess that penalty and see that it is paid.

(3) If the laws provide an option among two or more penalties, he should explain them, indicate which player may make the selection, and see that the proper penalty is selected and paid. Where the laws do not provide otherwise, either member of a pair may make the selection, but they may not consult regarding it.

LAW NO. 88. RULINGS ON DISPUTED FACTS.

Where the facts cannot be agreed upon, the Tournament Director shall proceed as follows:

(1) Ascertain the facts as nearly as possible, noting particularly the points upon which the players disagree.

(2) Instruct the players to proceed under a temporary adjustment based upon the most probable statement of facts, pending appeal or subsequent decision on a protest or dispute.

(3) Ascertain also, if possible, what the results would have been under the other statement of facts.

(4) Inform the contestants of their right to appeal from his decision.

LAW NO. 89. RULINGS INVOLVING NEUTRAL SCORES.

When any contestant applies to the Tournament Director for a Neutral Score, the Tournament Director may

(1) Disallow the claim; if the offense clearly has no effect on the result of the deal, or if there is a legal penalty for the alleged irregularity which is clearly adequate to protect the claimant's rights.

(2) Allow a Neutral Score without further penalty if there is a reasonable doubt as to whether the offense affects the result of the deal, or whether the legal penalty is adequate; or if both sides are partly at fault.

(3) Allow Neutral Score with penalty if the offense clearly affects the result of the deal and no adequate penalty is otherwise prescribed by law.

(4) Instruct the players to continue play and reserve his decision.

## 92 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

To protect the interests of the remaining players, applications for Neutral Score should be allowed only when clearly justified; and in a just claim for Neutral Score, an equitable rectification should first be sought that will permit regular play of the disputed deal.\*

### LAW NO. 90. DISCRETIONARY POWERS.

Where the Tournament Director's procedure is not clearly defined by law, and particularly where he is given discretionary power as to the assessment of a penalty or its magnitude, he should follow these general principles:

(1) Wherever latitude is permitted under the law, penalty or redress should be appropriate in nature and degree to the offense.

(2) In doubtful cases all disputants should be restored to their original rights, or their most probable score, as closely as these can be determined.

(3) No player should be given a material advantage at the expense of another, unless the offense of the one is clearly established, and the other is in no way at fault.

### LAW NO. 91. APPEALS FROM TOURNAMENT DIRECTOR'S DECISIONS.

(a) In all cases where there is a disagreement, it is the duty of the Tournament Director to inform the contestants of their right of appeal.

(b) The Tournament Director may himself appeal his own decision for corroboration or guidance by the Committee. Such appeal may be made by him without the consent of the contestants involved.

(c) In all cases of appeal, the Tournament Director must appear before the Committee to state the case and explain the reasons for his decision. The Committee may exclude all contestants from a hearing, but if it admits any one of the disputants, it must admit all who desire to appear.

(d) If a player submits an appeal which appears groundless or facetious to the Committee, it may assess a disciplinary penalty against such player. The Tournament Director will advise the players whether, in his opinion, an appeal has sufficient merit to warrant the Committee's attention.

(e) If there is no Committee or appellant body, it shall be the duty of the Tournament Director to review his own decision immediately after termination of play, upon the demand of any con-

\* This end can sometimes be accomplished by suggesting to contestants that they waive certain of their legal rights in the interest of smooth procedure of the game. When a Neutral Score impends because of advance information regarding the cards, bidding, or score of a deal, it may frequently be avoided by permitting a temporary substitute for the player having the improper information.



testant. In case of such appeal, he must hear all contestants who desire to be heard. He must at this time inform them of their right to appeal to the National Laws and Rules Committee.

---

## **JURISDICTION OF TOURNAMENT COMMITTEE.**

Laws Nos. 92 to 98 inclusive cover matters over which the Committee may exercise discretionary power. The procedure specified in these laws is recommended as standard, but the Committee is authorized to make its own regulations on the subjects covered, provided that these regulations are announced to the contestants in advance of play.

### **LAW NO. 92. QUALIFYING SESSIONS.**

In championship events, the Committee may hold one or more preliminary sessions to select the players, pairs or teams eligible to play in the final sessions. In such case, the Committee shall publish or announce, before conclusion of the first qualifying session, the exact number of players, pairs, or teams to be qualified, and the method of scoring by which they will be selected.

### **LAW NO. 93. QUALIFYING ALTERNATES.**

(a) After the announced number of qualifying contestants have been selected, all other contestants shall rank as alternates in the order of their scores in the qualifying sessions.

(b) If one or more qualified players, pairs, or teams cannot play in the final session, or are not present when play is called, they shall be disqualified, and the vacancies filled by qualifying alternates in the order of their rank. In filling vacancies, it shall be assumed that the Committee has filled the place of the lowest ranking absentee first.

(c) After a properly selected alternate is qualified by the Committee, the player, pair or team replaced cannot regain its position. The alternate shall be considered a duly qualified contestant, and shall be eligible to win the event.

(d) If, in a pair contest, one member of a qualified pair is unable to play in the final session, that pair shall be disqualified, and the ranking alternate pair qualified in its place.

(e) If, in a team contest, one member of a qualified team is unable to play in the final session, the other members may select as a substitute any player who did not play as a member of a different team in the qualifying sessions. Such team shall be

## 94 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

eligible to win the event. If two or more members of a team are unable to play in the final round, the team shall be disqualified, and the ranking alternate team qualified in its place.

### LAW NO. 94. SUBSTITUTES.

(a) If one or more players are temporarily unable or unwilling to continue play, but it is expected that they will not be absent longer than permitted in this law, the Committee may:

(1) Disqualify the player or his pair or team, as the case may be;

(2) Direct that the unplayed tray or trays be played by the proper contestants after completion of the last round;

(3) Appoint a substitute to play for any absentee, subject to the provisions hereinafter stated;

(4) Award a Neutral Score to both pairs, with or without a penalty.

(b) Scores made by a substitute shall count as though made by the absent player.

(c) In the final session of a championship event, or in a championship event played in only one session, no player shall have a substitute for more than two rounds.

(d) In qualifying sessions, no player shall have a substitute for more than half the total number of deals. If more than one qualifying session is held, a player may have a substitute for one entire session, but no more.

(e) In an even held in more than one session, but without qualifying sessions, no player shall have a substitute for more than one-third of the total number of deals.

(f) If, after the appointment of a substitute, the absent player fails to return before expiration of the time limits prescribed in (c), (d), or (e), he or his pair or team (as the case may be), shall be disqualified.

### LAW NO. 95. CONTESTANTS WITHDRAWING.

(a) After the announced time for closing of entries, no player, pair or team may withdraw from a contest for which entry has been made or qualification won, without permission of the Committee. Withdrawal without permission may be considered grounds for refusal to accept entries in future contests.

(b) If a contestant withdraws after play is started, an effort shall be made to secure an acceptable substitute to play in his place for the remainder of the contest. If the substitute plays more rounds than permitted under Law No. 94 the withdrawing player, pair or team shall be disqualified. The substitute shall continue to play, but shall not be eligible to win the event.

(c) If no acceptable substitute can be found, the withdrawing contestant shall be disqualified, and the score shall be adjusted as explained in Law No. 74.

LAW NO. 96. RESERVE TEAM MEMBERS.

(a) In team events, each team shall be entitled to have one reserve member, provided that the entire personnel of the team is stated at the time of entry.

(b) A reserve member may enter the contest at the beginning of any session, provided that such change in line-up is reported to the Committee.

(c) The members of a team may change partners or positions at the beginning of a session. If the type of movement permits, the Committee may grant permission to change partners or positions during a session.

LAW NO. 97. SPECTATORS.

Spectators are permitted only through the courtesy of the players. Any player may require a tournament official to have all spectators\* removed from his table, and it shall be the duty of such official to order the spectators to leave. The Tournament Director may, at his discretion, require any or all spectators to leave the game.

LAW NO. 98. DISCUSSING RESULTS.

(a) After completing a tray or set of trays, and before the signal is given to start the next round, a player may discuss the results of the deal or deals just played with his partner or his opponents. Such discussion must be conducted in such a way that it cannot be overheard at any other table.

(b) Except as provided in (a), no player shall compare or discuss the results of any hand with any other person, whether a contestant or not, until completion of the final round. (See Law No. 67.)

---

## ETHICS AND PROPRIETIES.

The following rules affecting the proprieties of the game should be adhered to:

(1) A player should maintain at all times a courteous manner toward his partner and opponents, and should refrain from words or actions which would cause them annoyance or embarrassment, or interfere with the enjoyment of the game.

(2) A player should avoid mannerism, expression, hesitation, or emphasis which might convey illegal information to his partner.†

\* This does not apply to tournament officials, referees, press representatives, or other persons authorized to be spectators by the Committee.

† If a player draws inference from any mannerism, expression, hesitation, or emphasis of an opponent, and permits such inferences to influence his play, he does so at his own risk, and should not expect redress if these inferences be incorrect.

(3) A player should not seek information regarding his partner's holding through any mannerism, expression, hesitation, or emphasis of his partner; and if such information is obtained inadvertently, he should not permit it to influence his own declaration or play.

(4) A player should not vary the formulae used in calling.\*

(5) A player should avoid the use of complicated artificial bids, which cannot be readily understood by opponents. He should voluntarily explain his bidding methods clearly and concisely, and should refrain from questioning his opponents unnecessarily.

(6) Any irregularity should be reported to the Tournament Director immediately, and any penalty should be assessed by him. A player may incur embarrassment and criticism by attempting to assess a penalty himself.

(7) A player should not purposely incur a penalty even though willing to pay it.

(8) A player should avoid calling attention to the vulnerability after he has looked at his hand, or volunteering information which should only be given in reply to a question.

For intentional or repeated violations, the Tournament Director may disqualify or bar offenders from further play, or adjust the score in whatever way he considers equitable.

## DUPLICATE MOVEMENTS AND SCORING.

### THE MITCHELL PAIR GAME.

The Mitchell Game is the simplest and most popular of the Duplicate pair movements. The tables are numbered consecutively and each pair is assigned a position, adopting as its pair number the number of its original table. The N-S pairs remain at their original tables throughout the game. The E-W pairs play the first round at their original tables, and after each round they progress to the next higher numbered table (from 1 to 2, 2 to 3, 3 to 4, etc., and from the highest numbered table to Table 1). The progression continues until each E-W pair has played one round against each N-S pair, and vice versa.

An equal number of trays is played at each table, and the num-

\* The recommended calling formulae are "Pass" (avoid "I" or "no bid"); 1 heart (avoid "I bid"); 1 no trump (avoid "without" or "without trump"); "double" (avoid stating the number of tricks or the denomination doubled) "6 spades" (avoid "little slam").

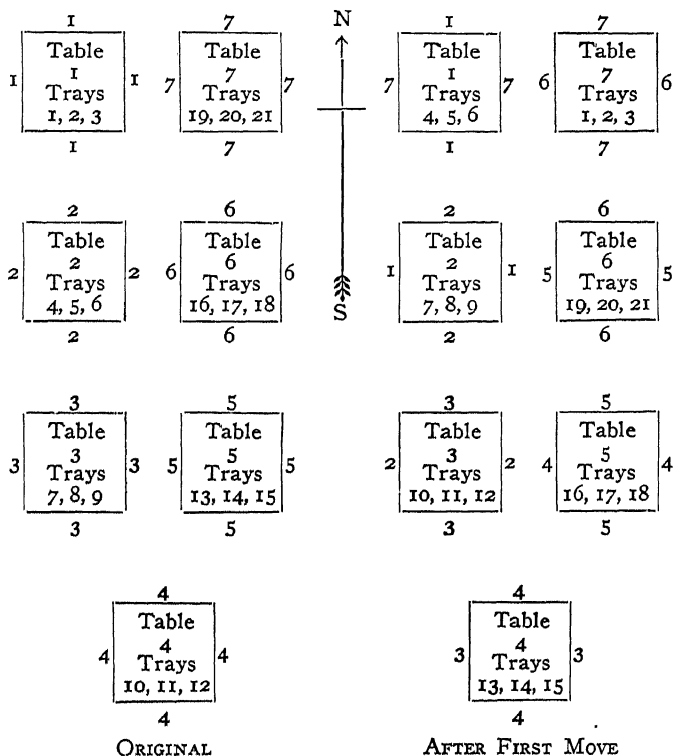
# DUPLICATE LAWS. (Bridge.) 97

ber should be such that the total will be approximately 20 to 25. The average rate of play is 8 trays per hour.

If there are more than 14 tables in play, the game should be divided for convenience into two or more sections each of which is conducted as a separate unit, with separate scoring and prizes.

## PROGRESSION FOR AN ODD NUMBER OF TABLES.

If the number of tables is odd, the trays are distributed in sequence, according to the number to be played at each round. For example, if there are three trays to a round, trays 1, 2 and 3 are placed on the first table; trays 4, 5 and 6 on the second table; trays 7, 8 and 9 on the third table, etc.

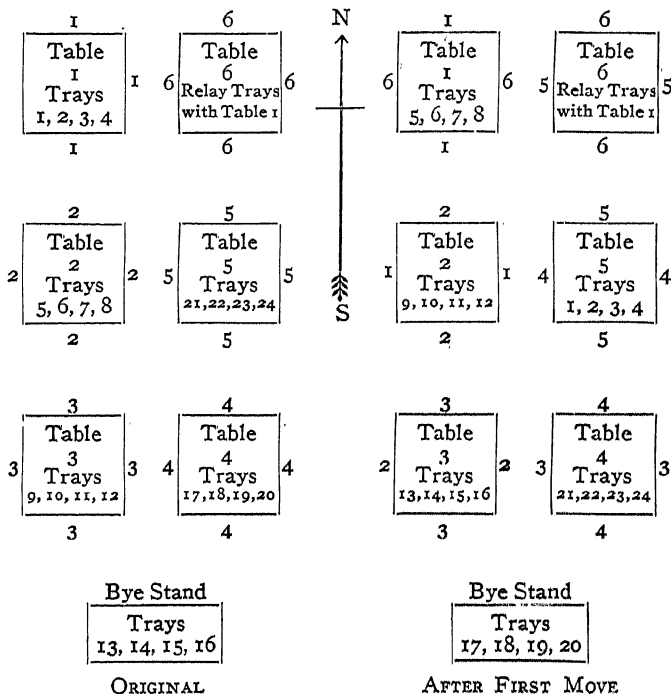


# 98 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

At the completion of a round, the North player at each table moves the trays just played to the next lower numbered table (from 4 to 3, 3 to 2, 2 to 1, and from 1 to the highest numbered table). This progression results in each pair, whether N-S or E-W, playing each tray once, and only once. The following diagram shows the arrangement for a 7 table section (21 trays) as originally placed, and after the first move.

## PROGRESSION FOR AN EVEN NUMBER OF TABLES.

If the number of tables is even, there is an irregularity in the distribution of trays which must be carefully observed. A bye-stand or chair is placed in the exact center of the section; that is, in a 6 table section the stand is placed between tables 3 and 4; in an 8 table section it is placed between tables 4 and 5, etc. The stand receives the set of trays which would otherwise be placed



on the next table above it, and the remaining sets are distributed in numerical order, leaving none for the last table. The following diagram shows the placing of trays for a 6 table section (24 trays) as originally placed, and after the first move.

At each round the highest numbered table (in this case, Table 6) plays the same trays as Table 1. Table 6 should be placed near Table 1 and the trays passed back and forth between them as convenient.

Movement of trays is the same as with an odd number of tables except that from Table 4 (in a 6-table section) the boards go to the bye-stand, where they are out of play for one round. Table 3 receives its trays from the bye-stand, always playing the set which was idle the previous round. The trays which have been relayed between Tables 1 and 6 move to Table 5 at the end of the round.

#### INCOMPLETE TABLE.

If an odd number of pairs enter the game, so that one table is incomplete, the odd pair is seated E-W at the highest numbered table, assuming that table number for its pair number. This pair does not play the first round, but at the completion of the round moves to Table 1 and enters the regular progression. Each E-W pair in its proper turn sits out one round when it comes to the last, or incomplete, table. In distributing the trays and arranging the progression, the odd pair (or half table) is considered a regularly constituted table; for example,  $5\frac{1}{2}$  tables would require the arrangement for 6 tables, and  $8\frac{1}{2}$  tables would require the arrangement for 9 tables.

#### COMPARING SCORES.

In the Mitchell game all N-S pairs play the same hands, and all E-W pairs play the same hands. Therefore each pair can compare scores only with others in its own direction, and there are really two separate contests—one for N-S pairs, and one for E-W pairs. There will be one pair of winners in each group, and they should receive equal prizes or honors.

#### MATCH POINT SCORING FOR THE MITCHELL GAME.

Match point scoring is the most popular and the most equitable method for duplicate play. In this method all scores made by N-S pairs on a given deal are tabulated in a vertical column for purposes of comparison. Each score receives one match point for each other N-S score it beats and  $\frac{1}{2}$  match point for each N-S score it ties. For example, in a section of 9 tables, there would be 9 scores; the highest score would have beaten 8 others and would therefore receive 8 match points; the second highest score would have beaten 7 others and would receive 7 points, etc. The

# 100 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

E-W scores are similarly tabulated and compared among themselves.

Each tray is rated separately, and when all have been rated the total number of match points awarded to each pair is computed. The match-point figure on each tray represents the number of pairs beaten on that tray, and the match point total represents the total number of pairs beaten on all trays. The N-S pair having the greatest number of match points is the winner in the N-S group, and the E-W pair having the greatest number is the winner in the E-W group.

The best method of recording scores is by the use of individual score cards. The North player at each table makes out a separate card for each tray played and the results are transferred to a summary sheet by the scorer. Another method is to provide a traveling score slip for each tray, which remains with the tray throughout the game, and on which all the results for that tray are recorded. This method simplifies the work of the scorer and is satisfactory for informal games, but it is not recommended for championship play or important tournaments.

The following diagram shows several examples of match point rating from a 7 table section; only N-S scores are shown, but the E-W scores would be similarly tabulated and rated.

Pair No.	Total	Deal No. 1	Deal No. 2	Deal No. 3	Deal No. 4	Deal No. 5
1	10	0 - 100	4 + 200	1½ - 620	½ - 300	4 + 600
2	16½	6 + 700	0 - 100	4½ - 170	2 - 100	4 + 600
3	16½	1 - 80	5½ + 600	1½ - 620	5½ + 800	3 N
4	13½	5 + 450	2 + 100	1½ - 620	3½ + 500	1½ - 100
5	17	2 0	2 + 100	6 - 140	3 N	4 + 600
6	19	4 + 200	5½ + 600	4½ - 170	2 - 100	3 N
7	12½	3 + 50	2 + 100	1½ - 620	4½ + 640	1½ - 100

Deal 1 is the simplest case, for all the scores are different, and they are simply rated in descending order from 6 to 0. On Deal 2 Pairs 3 and 6 are tied for the highest score, so they each score 5



points for 5 pairs beaten and  $\frac{1}{2}$  point for 1 pair tied, or  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in all. Pairs 4, 5 and 7 each score 1 point for 1 pair beaten and  $\frac{1}{2}$  point each for 2 pairs tied, or 2 points each in all.

On Deal 3 Pairs 1, 3, 4 and 7 are all tied for the lowest score. They receive no points for pairs beaten, but  $\frac{1}{2}$  point for each of 3 pairs tied, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  points each.

On Deal 4 Pair 5 was awarded a neutral score, which has the effect of a tie as far as all the other pairs are concerned. Pair 3 has the highest score and actually beats 5 other pairs so it receives 5 points plus  $\frac{1}{2}$  for the pair awarded a neutral score. Pair 1 beats no one, but receives its  $\frac{1}{2}$  point for the pair awarded a neutral score. Pair 5 receives  $\frac{1}{2}$  point for each of 6 others, or 3 points in all.

When any pair sits out a tray, as would happen when an odd number of pairs participate, it receives no match point score on that tray. In the odd pair movement, each E-W pair sits out an equal number of trays (which represent an equal number of possible match points), and since their scores are compared only with other E-W pairs, no further adjustment is necessary.

#### BALANCING THE SCORE.

The sum of match points on a deal must be the sum of all whole numbers from the highest possible score down to zero. For example, in a 7 table game, 6 would be the highest number awarded, and the total for any deal would be the sum of 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 and 0, or 21. This total must be the same even when halves occur.

The grand total of all N-S scores must balance against a check-total, which is obtained by multiplying the match point total for one deal by the number of deals.

#### TOTAL POINT SCORING.

The Total Point method of scoring compares the total points made by each pair with the total points made by other pairs on the same series of deals. The pairs are usually permitted to keep their own scores, and one score card or slip of suitable design is provided for each pair. The pair records its score, deal by deal, plus or minus as the case may be. At the end of the game its scores are totaled and the net total, plus or minus, is its score for the entire session.

The pair having the highest plus score in the N-S group is the winner in that group and the pair having the highest plus score in the E-W group is the winner in that group. If all the scores in a group are minus, then the lowest minus score wins.

#### THE HOWELL PAIR GAME.

The Howell pair game is a more complicated type of movement than the Mitchell, in that the pairs change direction from N-S

## 102 (Bridge.) *DUPLICATE LAWS.*

to E-W, and vice versa. However, it has two very important advantages—first, each pair plays directly against every other pair in the game; second, it produces only one winning pair.

To conduct a Howell game, special guide or indicator cards are required, which designate the positions of the players and the tray or trays to be played at each round. These are available for any number of pairs from 4 to 30, but each particular size of game requires a different set of indicator cards, and no two are interchangeable.

The tables are numbered consecutively and the proper indicator cards distributed. This must be done after the entries are closed, as it is necessary to use the correct indicator cards for the exact number of pairs playing. The tournament director distributes the trays as instructed on the indicator cards or the chart which accompanies them.

Each pair adopts the number assigned to it by the indicator card and moves from round to round in accordance with its instructions. The North player at each table takes the tray or trays just played to the next lower numbered table.

### SCORING FOR THE HOWELL GAME.

Match point scoring must be used, and in awarding match points it is necessary to differentiate between N-S and E-W scores on the same deal. On the summary sheet this is usually accomplished by entering the N-S scores in the upper left corner of the square and the E-W scores in the lower right corner, of course rating each group separately. When the rating is completed the match points of each pair are totaled, making no distinction between the trays that are played N-S and the trays played E-W. The grand total of all scores must balance against a check-total determined as follows: Multiply the highest possible match point score on one tray by the number of trays, and multiply the product by the number of tables in play. For example, a 10 table game playing 19 trays gives a check-total of  $9 \times 19 \times 10$  or 1,710.

### THE INDIVIDUAL MOVEMENT.

The individual movement permits each player to play with each other player both as partner and opponent. Special guide cards are required as in the Howell game, and they are accompanied by an instruction chart giving the distribution and the progression of trays, and the details of scoring.

For club or other informal games to be completed in one session, the 20-player movement is the most satisfactory. The 25-player movement is suitable for championship tournaments and for games which are to be conducted in two or more sessions. Guide cards are also available for 8, 12 and 16 players and for larger groups.

MATCH FOR TWO TEAMS.

The Team-of-Four match between two teams has long been recognized as the most accurate test of bridge skill known. Two tables are provided, in different rooms if possible. The captain of Team 1 places one pair of his team N-S at Table 1 and the other pair E-W at Table 2. The captain of Team 2 assigns his players to the remaining positions.

The number of trays to be played should be a multiple of 4. The first fourth of the trays are placed on Table 1 and the second fourth on Table 2, where they are shuffled, dealt and played in the usual manner.

The two tables then exchange trays, each replaying the ones played at the other table. At this point the two pairs of Team 2 exchange places, retaining the same partners but playing against the other pair of opponents. The remaining trays are divided equally between the two tables, to be shuffled, dealt, played, exchanged and replayed as explained above.

MOVEMENT FOR AN ODD NUMBER OF TEAMS.

The tables are numbered consecutively and each team is assigned to a table, taking the table number for its team number. The captain of each team assigns his players to their compass positions, which they retain throughout the contest. The N-S players remain at their original table, while the E-W players progress two tables toward Table No. 1 at the conclusion of each round; for example, the progression is from 9 to 7, 7 to 5, 5 to 3, and 3 to 1. From Table 2, players go to the highest numbered table and from Table 1 to the next highest numbered table. At each round the trays are moved one table toward Table 1 (from 3 to 2, 2 to 1 and from 1 to the highest numbered table).

An equal number of trays is placed on each table, the total number being approximately 25. E-W pairs do not play in their original positions (against their own teammates) and there should be one progression before the play starts. The progression is so arranged that each E-W pair plays against the N-S pair of each other team, and each N-S pair is visited by the E-W pair of each other team. Furthermore, both pairs of a team will play the same trays against the same opposing team. For example, if N-S Pair 1 plays deal 9 against E-W Pair 5, then N-S Pair 5 will also play deal 9 against E-W Pair 1.

MOVEMENT OF AN EVEN NUMBER OF TEAMS.

When an even number of teams play (not to exceed 14) the tables are set up in two parallel rows. For example, in a 12-team movement Tables 1 to 6 are placed in the first row and Tables 7 to 12 are placed in the second row, with Table 7 opposite 1, Table 8

opposite 2, Table 9 opposite 3, etc. In this movement at least 2 deals are played to a round.

A bye-stand or chair is placed behind the South player at each table in the first row. The trays are distributed in numerical order beginning at Table 1. If 2 trays are played to a round, trays 1 and 2 are placed on Table 1, trays 3 and 4 are placed on the stand or chair between Tables 1 and 2, trays 5 and 6 on Table 2, trays 7 and 8 on the stand between Tables 2 and 3, trays 9 and 10 on Table 3, trays 11 and 12 on the stand between 3 and 4. The tables in the second row receive no trays; but play the same trays as the table directly opposite in the first row. For example in a 12-table game, Tables 1 and 7 play the same trays, Tables 2 and 8 play the same trays, etc., exchanging them as convenient.

At the end of each round, all the trays are returned to the first row, Tables 1 to 6 being responsible for their movement. E-W pairs progress one table at a time towards Table 1 (from 3 to 2, 2 to 1 and from 1 to the highest numbered table). Each table in the first row receives its trays from the stand directly behind it and places the trays just played on the stand directly in front of it (toward Table 1). That is, the trays progress from Table 3 to the stand between Tables 3 and 2, from this stand to Table 2, from Table 2 to the stand between Tables 2 and 1, from this stand to Table 1, from Table 1 to the stand behind Table 6. Each N-S pair should check this movement of trays by making sure that it plays the trays in exact numerical sequence.

For an even number of teams above 14, the movement should be converted into an odd number by inserting an imaginary or phantom team, which is assigned to the highest numbered table. The movement progresses exactly as though that team were present, but each E-W pair sits out when it comes to the highest numbered table, and each N-S pair sits out when it would normally play the E-W pair of that number.

#### TEAM SCORING.

In a match between two teams the winner may be determined by the total number of points won, or by the number of match points won. In a game of more than two teams the match point system should be used.

In tabulating the scores it is customary to enter the score made by the N-S pair of a team in the upper left-hand corner of the square, and the score made by its E-W pair on the same tray in the lower right hand corner of the same square. If these two entries give a plus total, the match is won; if a minus total, the match is lost; and if exactly zero, the match is halved. One match point is awarded for each match won and  $\frac{1}{2}$  point for each match halved, and the team with the greatest number of match points is the winner.

## VARIETIES OF AUCTION.

**THREE HAND AUCTION.** This is a game for three active players only, but four may form a table. Each player is for himself, there being no partnerships except the temporary combination against the declarer for each deal. The player who cuts the highest card chooses his seat and cards and the player with the next lower cut sits on his left, the other on his right.

The cards are dealt one at a time into four packets, of thirteen each, just as in the ordinary game of auction, the odd hand remaining untouched until the winning declaration is decided. The dealer makes the first bid which must be in suit and not in no-trump. The penalty for bidding out of turn is 50 points added to the score of each opponent, for doubling out of turn it is 100. If both pass the irregularity there is no penalty, but if only one passes, the third may call attention to it.

The highest bidder takes up the dummy hand, sorts it and lays it on the table opposite him, face up, as soon as the eldest hand leads a card. If there is a player sitting opposite the highest bidder, he moves to the vacant seat.

The game is 30 points, and the winner of a game adds 125 points to his score at once. The first player to win two games not only adds the 125 for the second game, but 250 more for winning the rubber. Honours are scored by each player separately, every honour being worth as much as a trick in that suit. Four or five in one hand count double. At no trump, the aces count for 10 each to the holders, four in one hand 100. The declarer scores his dummy's honours.

At the end of the rubber, each wins from or loses to each of the others. The score is usually made up in this way, the final amounts to the credit of each being shown in the top line:

A, 240	B, 980	C, 456
— 740	+ 740	+ 215
— 215	+ 524	— 524
— 955	+1264	— 309

**DUPLICATE AUCTION.** This game may be played in any of the ways described for the movement of trays and players under the head of duplicate whist. Tricks and honours are scored as usual, but there are no games or rubbers. Should the declarer make 30 or more points on a single hand he gets 125 points bonus in the honour column.

## 106 (Auction.) *AUCTION FOR THREE.*

**AUCTION FOR THREE.** There are two ways of arranging matters for three players, one being a development of the other.

**STOP GAP.** The idea of this game is to allow three persons to play while waiting for a fourth to make up a rubber. Seats, cards and deal are cut for as usual, dummy's cards to the left of the dealer, who has the first bid. If he passes, the bidding goes round as usual; but the first bid made must be in suit, never in no-trumps, and for one trick only. This is to prevent the old fashion of making shut-out bids as a gamble on dummy. After the first bid, there are no restrictions on bids or doubling. The highest bidder sorts dummy's cards and places them between his adversaries, as soon as the first card is led.

Every deal is a game in itself, tricks, honours and penalties being entered in a lump. If 30 or more is made by tricks, 100 bonus is added for a game won. Suppose the bid is four spades, doubled and set for one trick, less four honours. Each of the adversaries takes 60 points, the declarer nothing. The moment a fourth candidate for play appears, the game can be abandoned, and the scores balanced, as on the preceding page.

**DUMMY UP.** This is an improvement on stop gap, removing the limitations on the first bid, and also the gamble on the dummy, by turning dummy's cards face up before a bid is made. Each player then proceeds to bid, dealer first, upon his cards in combination with what he sees will be his dummy, when placed between his two adversaries.

Dummy-up can also be played by four persons, the dealer's cards being the dummy, and the actual dealer taking no part in the bidding or play, but sharing in the fortunes of the winning declaration. This requires four separate scores to be kept.

**AUCTION FOR TWO.** There are three ways of playing, each suitable to the varying abilities of the persons engaged.

**CHINESE AUCTION.** The lower cut deals, giving twenty cards to his adversary and twenty to himself, one at a time, face down. Separately from these he then deals six more to each, one at a time. These six are the "playing hand." Each player then takes up the twenty and lays out any ten of them face down, in two rows of five each. On these he places the remaining ten, face up. The playing hands are then taken up and sorted, so that each sees twenty-six cards on which to bid or double.

The winning declaration, doubled or undoubled, settled, the non-declarer leads a card, either from his hand or the table, and the declarer plays to it, from hand or table. The non-dealer then plays again, and the declarer again, the four cards forming a trick, the winner leading for the next trick. The moment a card

is played from the table, the card under it must be turned face up. Every deal is a game, with 100 added for reaching 30 in tricks.

No card which covers another card can be shifted, but the moment a card which was turned face down is turned up, it becomes playable, either on that trick or the next.

**DRAW AUCTION.** The deal being cut for, thirteen cards are dealt to each player, one at a time, and the twenty-seventh is turned up, being left on the top of the remaining twenty-five, which are all face down. There is no bidding, the hand being played at no-trumps, the non-dealer leading for the first trick. The winner of this trick takes into his hand the turned card; the loser of the trick taking the next card, which he puts into his hand without showing it; but turns up the next card, to be played for as before, the winner of the trick taking it.

When the stock is exhausted, there will be twenty-six cards played away, and thirteen in each hand still to play. Now the dealer can make a bid, and his opponent can overcall or double or pass, just as in auction. The result of the play on these last thirteen tricks is scored as at auction, with 100 added for going game on the deal. The skill in this game is in drawing and holding cards that shall be valuable for the final bidding, and in weakening the opponent by forcing him to give up valuable cards in following suit during the first thirteen tricks of the no-trumper. A strong point is in avoiding the necessity of taking in the worthless exposed cards, by letting your opponent win the tricks.

**PIVOT BRIDGE.** This is simply a movement of the players, very popular in social games, which requires that the four originally seated at a table shall remain at that table until the game is ended, and shall not cut for partners after the first rubber, but change in regular order. The usual way is for the first dealer to sit still all the time, the three other players moving round her in a circle at the end of each rubber. This will compel the player on her left to pass behind her and take the seat on her right. At the end of three rubbers, each will have had each of the others for a partner. When there are a number of tables in play, it will be necessary to have a prize for each, giving the first choice to the player who has the highest score in the room.

When this method is adopted, it is not necessary to deduct the lower score from the higher at the end of each rubber, so that each player can keep what she gets, the comparative result being the same if the players remain at the same table. This method is open to the objection that if two strong players are opposed to weak ones all the time, it is a great advantage. It is also liable to abuse, if four players agree to double everything, so that some one at the table shall be high score.

A method to obviate any possibility of collusion to win a large of special prize was tried out at the Ritz-Carlton, New York, in a charity bridge for the Women's League for Animals, March 28, 1916, when the prizes were automobiles, chow dogs, boxes at the opera, etc. It was based on this idea:

The average score for three rubbers, when the lower score is not deducted, will range between 1,400 and 2,100 points. From these we select 100 numbers, according to the following schedule, which represents the proportionate probability of the various scores:

Every 4th number between 1,400 and 1,500	= 25
Every 4th number between 1,500 and 1,600	= 25
Every 5th number between 1,600 and 1,700	= 20
Every 10th number between 1,700 and 1,800	= 10
Every 10th number between 1,800 and 1,900	= 10
Every 20th number between 1,900 and 2,000	= 5
Every 20th number between 2,000 and 2,100	= 5

Total selected numbers .....100

The manager may start the numbers at any point. If he begins with 1,404, going to 1,408, 1,412, etc., he will end that series of 25 at 1,498 and start the next with 1,502, ending at 1,596. It is advisable to have them at regular intervals after the starting point has been fixed upon.

These 100 numbers are placed in a sealed envelope, each on a slip of paper or a small card. After all the players' scores have been turned in to the committee at the end of the game and sorted out into numerical order, each group in a certain 100 by itself, all the 1500's in one pile, for instance, one number is publicly drawn from the envelope containing the 100 selected scores, and the player whose score most closely approaches that number wins the first prize, the next nearest number, above or below, taking second prize, and so on.

In the game referred to at the Ritz-Carlton, the number drawn was 1,442, and the winning scores in their order were: 1,443, 1,438, 1,447, 1,448, 1,435 and 1,434. In case of ties the equal scores made by the players are turned face down, shuffled, and one is drawn by the committee, the lady to whom it belongs being the winner of the tie.

As no one can have the faintest idea of what number will be drawn, except that the chances are in favor of the average scores, and that no one can expect to win a prize who cannot get at least 1,400 points on three rubbers, this scheme is as fair for one as for another, and its use has practically eliminated the undesirable element in the large semi-public games at which a few valuable prizes are offered.



# CAYENNE,

## OR CAYENNE WHIST.

**CARDS.** Cayenne is played with two full packs of fifty-two cards, which rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing.

**MARKERS** are necessary, and must be suitable for counting to ten points. A sheet of paper is used for scoring the results of the games.

**PLAYERS.** Cayenne is played by four persons. When there are more than four candidates for play the selection of the table must be made as at Whist. Partners and deal are then cut for.

**CUTTING.** One of the packs having been spread on the table, face down, each of the four players draws a card; the two lowest pairing against the two highest. The lowest of the four is the dealer, and has the choice of seats and cards. Ties are decided in the same manner as at Whist.

**POSITION OF THE PLAYERS.** The partners sit opposite each other, and the players are distinguished, as at Whist, by the letters A-B and Y-Z. Z is the dealer, and A has the original lead.

**DEALING.** One pack of cards is shuffled and cut as at Whist. The dealer then gives four cards to each player, beginning on his left; then four more, and finally five, no trump being turned. In many places six cards are first dealt to each player, and then seven; but the 4-4-5 system is better, and is the rule in the very similar game of Boston.

The general rules with regard to irregularities in the deal are the same as at Whist; except that a misdeal does not lose the deal. The misdealer must deal again, and with the same pack.

**CAYENNE.** After the cards are all dealt, the player to the left of the dealer cuts the still pack, which is shuffled and presented to him by the dealer's partner, and the top card of the portion left on the table is turned up for Cayenne. This card is not a trump, but is simply to determine the rank of the suits.

**STAKES.** In Cayenne the stake is a unit, so much a point. The largest number of points possible to win on a rubber is 24, and the smallest, 1. The result of the rubber may be a tie, which we consider a defect in any game. In settling at the end of the rubber it is usual for the losers to pay their right-hand adversaries.

**MAKING THE TRUMP.** The trump suit must be named by the dealer or his partner, after they have examined their cards. The dealer has the first say, and he may either select cayenne or any of the other suits; or he may announce *grand*, playing for the tricks without any trump suit; or he may call *nullo*, playing to take as few tricks as possible, without a trump suit. If the dealer makes the choice, his partner must abide by it; but if he has not a hand to justify him in deciding, he should leave the selection to his partner, who must decide one way or the other.

The considerations which should guide players in their choice are the scoring possibilities of their hands, in tricks and in honours. As in Whist, the first six tricks taken by one side do not count; but each trick above that number counts one, two, etc., *by cards*. There are five honours in the trump suit in Cayenne; A K Q J 10; and the partners holding the majority of them count 1 for each honour that they hold in excess of their opponents, and 1 in addition, for *honours*. For instance: If A-B have three honours dealt them, they must have one more than their adversaries, and 1 for honours; entitling them to score 2. If they have four, they have 3 in excess, and 1 for honours, a total of 4. If they have five, they count 6 by honours.

At the end of the hand the points made by cards and by honours are multiplied by the value of the trump suit. This value varies according to the suit which is cayenne, which is always first preference. If cayenne is also the trump suit the points made by cards and honours are multiplied by 4. If the trump suit is the same colour as cayenne, the multiplier is 3. If it is a different colour the multiplier is 2 or 1, according to the suit. The rank of the suits as multipliers will be readily understood from the following table:—

If Cayenne is	♥	♦	♣	♠	If trumps, multiply by 4.
Second color is	♦	♥	♠	♣	If trumps, multiply by 3.
Third color is	♣	♠	♥	♦	If trumps, multiply by 2.
Fourth color is	♠	♣	♦	♥	If trumps, multiply by 1.

Better to understand the importance of considering this variation in value when making the trump, it should be noticed that although the game is 10 points, several games may be won in a single hand, as everything made is counted, and any points over 10 go to the credit of the second game. If more than 20 points are made, the excess goes on the third game, and so on. Another important point is the great value attached to honours, and the maker of the trump should never forget that he can better afford to risk his adversaries winning 2 by cards with a trump in which he has three honours, than he can to risk a trump in which they may have three honours, and he can probably win only the odd trick.

A further element may enter into his calculations, the state of the score. Tricks count before honours, and if he feels certain of making, by cards, the few points necessary to win the rubber, he may entirely disregard the honours.

With such a hand it would be better to play without a trump, and to announce a *grand*, in which there are neither trumps nor honours, and every trick over the book is multiplied by 8. Two by cards at grand is worth more than two by cards and two by honours with any trump but cayenne.

There is still another resource, to announce *nullo*, in which there is no trump, and the object of the players is to take as few tricks as possible. In nullo, every trick over the book counts for the adversaries, and is multiplied by 8. A peculiarity of nullo is that the Ace of each suit ranks below the deuce, unless the player holding it wishes to declare it higher than the King. In the latter case he must announce it when he plays it, and before his left-hand adversary plays to the trick.

If the dealer transfers the right of making the trump to his partner, he must use the phrase, "You make it, partner." If a player makes the trump out of turn, his adversaries may consult as to the propriety of demanding a new deal.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The trump suit, grand, or nullo having been announced, the player on the dealer's left begins by leading any card he pleases, and the others must all follow suit if they can. The penalty for a revoke is the loss of three tricks; or the value of three tricks in points; or the addition of a like amount to the adversaries' score. The side making a revoke cannot win the game that hand, no matter what they score; but they may play the hand out, and count all they make to within one point of game, or 9. Revoking players cannot count points for slams.

The rules for cards played in error, leading out of turn, and all such irregularities, are the same as in Whist. The last trick turned and quitted may be seen.

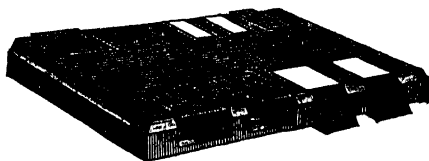
The methods of gathering and stacking the tricks is the same as at Whist.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The chief object in Cayenne, either with a trump or in a grand, is to take tricks; in a nullo it is not to take them. In any case the highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps, if any, win against all other suits. At the end of each hand the side that wins any tricks in excess of the book scores them, after multiplying their number by the unit of value settled upon by the announcement. If a nullo is played the adversaries score them. Honours are then claimed; but the game cannot be won by honours alone, as at Whist; those holding honours must stop at the score of 9, unless they also win the odd trick. As soon as either side reaches or passes 10 points, they win a game; but the hand must be played

out, and all tricks taken must be counted. If one side goes out by cards, the other cannot score honours. Thirteen tricks taken by one side is called a *slam*, and it counts 6 points. Twelve tricks is a *little slam*, and it counts 4. Either of these must be made exclusive of revoke penalties.

**RUBBERS.** The rubber is won by the side that first wins four games of ten points each; and the winning side adds 8 points to its score.

**SCORING.** The game score should be kept on a whist marker, using the four large keys on one side for single points, and the single large key on the opposite side for five points. The three small keys are used to show how many games of the rubber have been won by that side.



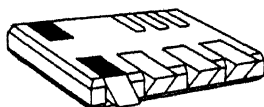
TWO GAMES WON, AND 2 POINTS SCORED ON THE THIRD.

The method of using counters for scoring 10-point games has already been described in connection with Whist.

In addition to either markers or counters, there must be a sheet of paper to keep the final results of the games.

In scoring, the revoke penalty counts first, tricks next, and honours last.

The side first reaching 10 points wins a *quadruple*, or game of 4, if their adversaries have not scored; a *triple*, or game of 3, if their adversaries have not reached 4; a *double*, or game of 2, if the adversaries have not reached 7; and a *single*, or game of 1, if their adversaries are 8 or 9 up. These game points are put down on the score-sheet, and all the points on the *adversaries'* marker are then turned down. If the winners make any points in excess of 10, such points are left to their credit on the marker, and count toward the next game. For instance: The score is A-B, 6; and Y-Z, 8; shown on the markers thus:—



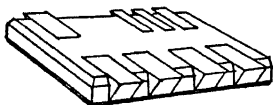
A-B 6 POINTS.



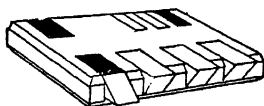
Y-Z 8 POINTS.

Let us suppose that Z announces cayenne, and makes 2 by cards; A-B claiming two by honours. Y-Z multiply by 4, making them 8, and bringing their total score on the marker to 16; that is, a game, and 6 points to their credit on the second game. This must now be put down on the score-sheet. A-B's honours not counting, as Y-Z went out by cards, the game is a double; A-B not having reached 7 points. The score and markers now stand :—

A-B	0							
Score :								
Y-Z	2							



A-B's, NOTHING.



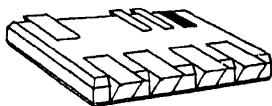
Y-Z's, 1 GAME, 6 POINTS.

Let us suppose A-B to announce grand on their deal, and to make four by cards, which, multiplied by 8, gives them 32 points; that is, three games, and 2 points to their credit on the marker. The first of these games is a double, Y-Z having 6 points up. The two others are quadruples, put down on the score-sheet thus :—

A-B	0	2	4	4				
Score :								
Y-Z	2	0	0	0				



A-B's, 3 GAMES, 2 POINTS.



Y-Z's, 1 GAME, 0 POINTS.

In the next hand let us suppose clubs to be cayenne. Y deals, and plays in colour, spades. Y-Z win 6 by cards, and 4 by honours; 10 points multiplied by 3, = 30. For this they score

three games, the first being a triple, and the others quadruples. These three games win the rubber, for which they add 8 points, and 4 points for the little slam. This is all put down on the score-sheet :—

A-B	0	2	4	4	0	0	0	-10
Score								
Y-Z	2	0	0	0	3	4	4	8 4=25

Both scores being added up, the value of the rubber won by Y-Z is found to be 15, after deducting the 10 points made by A-B.

**CUTTING IN.** If there are more than four persons belonging to the table, those waiting cut in, as at Whist.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** In all games in which the cards are dealt in bulk, four or six at a time, there is more or less temptation for the greek to gather desirable cards in the pack, leaving them undisturbed in the shuffle. If he can pick up two tricks of the previous deal with eight good cards of the same suit in them, by placing any two tricks of other cards between them, and dealing six at a time, he can tell exactly how many of the eight located cards are in his partner's hand. For this reason a player who does not thoroughly shuffle the cards should be carefully watched; and an immediate protest should be made against any disarrangement of the tricks as they are taken in during the play, such as placing the last trick taken under the first. If the player doing this is to be the next dealer, any one observing the movement should insist upon his right to shuffle the cards thoroughly; if not to leave the game.

We are strongly opposed to dealing the cards in bulk at Cayenne, and see no reason why the methods that prevail in the very similar game of Bridge should not be adopted.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** There is little to add to the rules already given for Whist. The principles that should guide in the making of the trump have been given in connection with the more important game of Bridge; and the suggestions for playing nullo will be fully discussed in the games in which it is a prominent characteristic: Solo Whist, and Boston. Grand is practically Whist after the trumps are exhausted.

For the Laws of Cayenne see Whist Family Laws.

## SOLO WHIST, OR WHIST DE GAND.

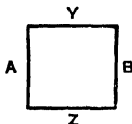
**CARDS.** Solo Whist is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing. Two packs are generally used, the one being shuffled while the other is dealt.

**MARKERS** are not used in Solo Whist, every hand being a complete game in itself, which is immediately settled for in counters representing money. At the beginning of the game each player should be provided with an equal number of these counters. They are usually white and red, the red being worth five times as much as the white. Twenty white and sixteen red is the usual allotment to each player when the game begins. Some one player should be the banker, to sell and redeem all counters.

**PLAYERS.** Solo Whist is played by four persons. If there are five candidates for play, they all sit at the same table, each taking his turn to sit out for one hand while the four others play. The dealer is usually selected to sit out. If there are only three players, one suit must be deleted from the pack, or the 2, 3, and 4 of each suit must be thrown out.

**CUTTING.** The table being formed, the players draw from an outspread for the deal, and choice of seats and cards. The player drawing the lowest card deals the first hand, and it is usual for him to dictate to the other players what seats they shall occupy with relation to himself. Ties are decided in the same manner as at Whist.

**POSITION OF THE PLAYERS.** The four players at Solo Whist are usually distinguished by the letters A B Y Z.



Z is the dealer, and A is known as the *eldest hand*. The position of the players does not imply any partnership; for, as we shall see presently, any player may have any one of the others for a partner, without any change taking place in their positions at the table.

The players having once taken their seats are not allowed to change them without the consent of all the others at the table.

**DEALING.** The cards having been properly shuffled, are presented to the pone to be cut. Beginning on his left, the dealer distributes the cards three at a time, until only four remain. These he deals one at a time, turning up the last for the trump. When two packs are used, the player sitting opposite the dealer shuffles the still pack while the other is dealt. The deal passes in regular rotation to the left.

When three play with a pack of forty cards, the last card is turned up for trumps, but it does not belong to the dealer, and is not used in play.

The general rules with regard to irregularities in the deal are the same as at Whist; except that a misdeal does not pass the deal. The misdealer must deal again, and with the same pack.

The cards dealt, each player sorts and counts his hand to see that he has the correct number of cards, thirteen. If not, he should immediately claim a misdeal; for a player having more or less than his right proportion of cards cannot win anything on that hand, but will have to stand his proportion of all losses incurred by him or his side.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** There are seven distinct objects in the Solo Whist, and before play begins each player has an opportunity of declaring to which of these objects he proposes to attain. They are:—

1st. To win 8 of the 13 tricks, with the assistance of a partner. This is called a *Proposal*; the partner's share is an *Acceptance*.

2nd. To win 5 of the 13 tricks, against the three other players combined. This is called a *Solo*.

3rd. To take no tricks, there being no trump suit, and the three other players being opposed. This is called *Misère*, or *Nullò*.

4th. To win 9 of the 13 tricks against the three other players combined; the single player to name the trump suit. This is called *Abundance*.

5th. To win 9 of the 13 tricks against the three other players combined, with the trump suit that is turned up. This is called *Abundance in Trumps*.

6th. To take no tricks, there being no trump suit, and the three other players being opposed; the single player's cards being exposed face up on the table after the first trick is complete. This is called *Misère sur table*, or *A Spread*.

7th. To win all 13 tricks against the three other players combined; the single player to name the trump suit, and to have the original lead whether eldest hand or not. This is called *Abundance Déclarée*, or *A Slam*.

While the object of the proposing player is to win or lose the declared number of tricks, that of his adversaries is to prevent him from doing so, if possible. There are no honours, and the only



factor in the count is the number of tricks actually taken. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps, if any, win against all other suits.

**METHOD OF DECLARING.** The eldest hand has the first say, and after examining his cards he may make any of the several propositions just enumerated. The smallest proposal he can make is to take 8 tricks with the assistance of a partner. To do this he should have four reasonably sure tricks in his own hand. Some players say he should be strong in trumps; while others claim that the eldest hand should propose only on general strength. The former is the better plan. No other player should propose on trumps alone. This announcement is made by saying: "**I propose.**" If a player thinks he can take five tricks against the combined efforts of the three other players, he announces: "**Solo.**" If he feels equal to a *misère*, he calls: "**Misère;**" and so on, according to the strength of his hand. If he does not feel justified in making a call, he says: "**I pass;**" and the next player on his left has the opportunity; and so on, until some player has proposed to do something, or all have passed.

If any player has proposed for a partner, any of the others, in their proper turn, may accept him by simply saying: "**I accept.**" By so doing, a player intimates that he has four probable tricks also, but in the plain suits, and that he is willing to try for eight tricks with the proposer for a partner. All the other calls are made by a single player with the intention of playing against the three others. Any player except the eldest hand having once said, "I pass," cannot afterwards make or accept any proposal. The eldest hand, after passing once, can accept a proposal, but he cannot make one.

It is the custom in some places, when no one will make a proposal of any sort, to turn down the trump, and play the hands without any trump suit, each man for himself; the winner of the last trick losing to each of the others the value of a solo. This is called a *Grand*.

**RANK OF THE PROPOSALS.** The various calls outrank one another in the order in which we have given them. If one player says, "I propose," and another calls "Solo," the solo call shuts out the proposal, even though it has been accepted by a second player. The call of a *misère* would in turn shut out a solo; abundance would take precedence of *misère*; and abundance in trumps would be a better call than simple abundance. The slam of course outranks all other bids. This making of a better proposition than one already made is known as "**Overcalling.**"

A player who has made a call of any kind, or has accepted a proposal, may amend his proposition to a better one, only in case he is overcalled; or a player who can not get a partner to accept him may amend his call to solo. For instance: A player may

have a hand which he feels sure is good for 8 tricks, perhaps 9. To be safe, he calls solo, and hopes to make three or four over-tricks. If he is outbid by some player overcalling him with a *misère*, he may be tempted to amend his call to abundance.

No call is good until every player who has not already passed does so, by saying distinctly, "I pass."

**STAKES.** The losses and gains of the players are in proportion to the difficulties of the tasks they set themselves.

The most popular method of settling is to pay or take red counters for the various calls, and white counters for the tricks under or over the exact number proposed. If the callers succeed in their undertakings, their adversaries pay them; if they fail, they pay their adversaries. A red counter is worth five white ones.

Proposal and Acceptance wins or loses.....	1 red counter.
Solo wins or loses.....	2 red counters.
Misère, or Nullo, wins or loses.....	3 red counters.
Abundance, of any kind, wins or loses.....	4 red counters.
Open Misère, or Spread, wins or loses.....	6 red counters.
Declared Abundance, or Slam, wins or loses.....	8 red counters.
Each Over or Under-trick wins or loses.....	1 white counter.

In Proposal and Acceptance, each of the partners pays one of his adversaries. In all cases in which a single player is opposed to the three others, he wins or loses the amount shown in the foregoing table with each of them individually; so that a single player calling a solo would win or lose 6 red counters. If he lost it, making only four tricks, he would also have to pay to each of his three adversaries a white counter. If he won it, making seven tricks, each of them would have to pay him two red and two white counters.

Misères, Spreads, and Slams pay no odd tricks. The moment a *Misère* player takes a trick, or a Slam player loses one, the hands are abandoned, and the stakes paid.

The usual value attached to the counters in America is 25 cents for the red, and 5 cents for the white. In England the proportion is sixpence and a penny.

**POOL SOLO.** When players wish to enhance the gambling attractions of the game, a pool is introduced. For this purpose a receptacle is placed upon the table, in which each player puts a red counter at the beginning of the game. Any person playing alone against the three others, wins this pool if he is successful; if he fails, he must double the amount it contains, besides paying each of his adversaries in the regular way. In some places it is the custom for each player to contribute a red counter when he deals. The proposals and acceptances do not touch the pool.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** If a proposal is accepted, and no one overcalls it, the proposer and acceptor are partners; but make no change in their positions at the table. The eldest hand, sitting to the left of the dealer, begins by leading any card he pleases, and the play proceeds exactly as at Whist, the tricks being so stacked that they may be readily counted at any time.

If a single player has called solo, *misère*, or abundance, the eldest hand still has the original lead, and there is no change in the positions of the players. The position of the lead is often a serious consideration with a player calling a solo or a *misère*.

In all calls except *misères* and slams, the hands must be played out, in order to give each side an opportunity to make all the over-tricks they can. The moment a *misère* player takes a trick, or a slam player loses one, the hands are thrown up, and the stakes paid.

When a spread is called, the trump is taken up, and the eldest hand leads. As soon as all have played to the first trick, the caller spreads his remaining twelve cards face upward on the table, so that each of his adversaries may see them; but they have no control of the order in which they shall be played. The adversaries play their hands in the usual manner, with no further guidance than that possible by inference from the play and the exposed hand. The caller plays according to his best judgment.

When a slam is called, the player proposing it has the original lead; but that does not alter the position of the deal for the next hand.

**REVOKES.** A revoke is a serious matter in Solo Whist. The penalty for it is the loss of three tricks, and the revoking players must pay the *red* counters involved in the call whether they win or lose; but they may play the hand out to save over-tricks. For instance: A proposer and acceptor make 11 tricks; their adversaries having claimed a revoke. After deducting the revoke penalty, 3 tricks, the callers still have 8 tricks left, enough to make good the call. They each lose a red counter; but no white ones, having saved their over-tricks. Had they taken only 8 tricks altogether, the penalty for the revoke would have left them only 5, and they would each have had to pay one red and three whites. If either adversary of the callers revokes, the individual player in fault must pay for all the consequences of the error. If the player in fault can show that the callers would have won in spite of the revoke, his partners must pay their share; but the revoking player must settle for the three tricks lost by the revoke. For instance: Z calls solo; A revokes; Z makes 6 tricks, which it can be shown he must have done in spite of the revoke. A, Y, and B each pay Z 1 red and 1 white counter, and then A pays Z 9 white counters in addition for the tricks taken as revoke penalty.

If the single player revokes, either on solo or abundance, he

loses the red counters involved, and must pay whatever white counters are due after three of his tricks have been added to those of the adversaries as penalty for the revoke. For instance: A calls solo, and revokes, but wins 6 tricks in all. He pays two red counters to each adversary. They then take three of his tricks, leaving him three only, and demand two white counters each, for the two under-tricks. If a player revokes who has called a *misère* or a slam, he immediately loses the stakes. If a revoke is made by any adversary of a player who has called *misère* or slam, the player in fault must individually pay all the stakes.

**CARDS PLAYED IN ERROR.** In the simple proposal and acceptance, the rules with regard to cards played in error, or led out of turn, are the same as at Whist. In the case of a single player against three adversaries, the caller is not liable to any penalty for cards played in error, or led out of turn; but his adversaries are subject to the usual whist penalties for all such irregularities, such as having the cards laid on the table as exposed, or a suit called, or the highest or lowest of a suit led demanded from an adversary who has followed suit out of turn.

For the better protection of the single player, who is much more liable to be injured by irregularities than partners would be, he is allowed to prevent the use of an exposed trump for ruffing, and to demand or *to prevent* the play of any exposed card in plain suits. If a suit is led of which an adversary has an exposed card on the table, the single player may call upon him to play his highest or lowest of that suit.

If any adversary of a *misère* player leads out of turn, or exposes a card, or plays before his proper turn in any trick, the caller may immediately claim the stakes, and the individual player in fault must pay for himself, and for his partners.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** While the practice of dealing three cards at a time gives a little more opportunity to the greek than would occur if they were dealt as at Whist, there is little to be feared if two packs are used, unless two greeks are in partnership. When such partners sit next each other, there is more or less danger, if only one pack is used, that one may shuffle so that the other may cut understandingly; or that a good shuffler may run up six cards for a dealer that is not embarrassed by the cards being cut. A shrewd greek can often help a silent partner who is playing under the disguise of a single caller, especially in *misère*. Persons who play in the many public cafés of Europe should be especially careful to avoid this style of partnership, where it is very common.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Apart from the general principles common to all forms of Whist, such as the play of high or low cards, trumps or plain suits, etc..

there are several points peculiar to Solo Whist which require attention.

**Proposing.** It is better to propose on two or three sure tricks, with strong probabilities of several more, than on a certainty of four only. For instance: The two highest trumps, and two suits containing Aces, with no other trick probable, is not such a good hand for a proposal as one containing four average trumps, with one plain suit of K Q J x x, and another of K Q x x. It is not improbable that the latter may be good for seven or eight tricks. Nothing but experience will teach a player what combinations of cards are "probably" good for tricks; but K x x, or Q J 10 x, or K Q, may be counted on.

There should be some intelligible system of proposing, so that the players may understand each other. The eldest hand should not propose except on strong trumps, and this should be a warning to other players not to accept him on trump strength alone.

Four trumps with two or three honours may be called strong; or five trumps, even without an honour. Five trumps with two or more honours is great strength.

Any player other than the eldest hand should propose on general strength, and the player accepting him should do so on trump strength. Some such distinction should be clearly understood, in order that there may be no such contretemps as two players proposing and accepting on trumps alone, and finding themselves without a trick in the plain suits after the trumps are drawn.

If the eldest hand is strong in trumps, but has not four sure tricks, he should pass, which will give him an excellent opportunity to accept a player proposing on general strength in the plain suits. If the proposal should be accepted before it comes to his turn, the eldest hand should be in a good position to defeat it.

If any player, other than the eldest hand, has sufficient trump strength to justify a proposal, he will usually find that he can risk a solo; or by passing, defeat any proposal and acceptance that may be made.

**Accepting.** A proposal by the eldest hand should not be accepted by a player with only one strong suit. The probability of tricks in several suits is better than a certainty in one suit; but if one strong suit is accompanied by a card of re-entry, or by four trumps, it should prove very strong, particularly in partnership with the eldest hand.

When the partners will sit next each other, proposals may be accepted on slightly weaker hands than would be considered safe otherwise.

**Playing Proposals and Acceptances.** If the eldest hand has proposed, and his partner sits next him on the left, the com-

manding trumps should be first led, in order to secure as many rounds as possible. If the eldest hand has no high-card combination in trumps, it is sometimes better to lead a small card from a weak suit, hoping to put the partner in. If successful, the partner will first show his suit, and then lead trumps through the adversaries. If the acceptor sits on the right of the proposing eldest hand, trumps should be led immediately, and the highest of them first, no matter what they are. The Q or J at the head of five trumps may be of great use to a partner with an honour. When the eldest hand has proposed, and his partner sits opposite him, trumps should be led at once, and all combinations played as at Whist.

The foregoing principles equally apply when the eldest hand has accepted a proposal, if the player can be depended on to have proposed on general strength.

When partners sit opposite each other, the general principles of leading, establishing, defending, and bringing in suits, are the same as at Whist, and the usual trump signals and echoes are made use of. The game is practically Whist, with the additional knowledge that both proposer and acceptor have strong hands.

When partners sit next each other, there are many opportunities for leading strengthening cards through the adversaries, especially in the partner's known or inferred strong suit.

***Finesse.*** If neither proposer nor acceptor is the eldest hand, they should make no finesses; but get into the lead as soon as possible, and exhaust the trumps. The greatest danger of defeat for a proposal and acceptance is that the adversaries, with the original lead, may establish a cross-ruff, or get six tricks with their winning cards before the calling players get a lead.

It is a common artifice for the proposer and acceptor, after they have exhausted the adversaries' trumps, each to show a strong suit by leading it once, and then to lead the highest card of a weaker suit; thus offering each other chances for successful finesse.

If a partner sitting on the right leads a suit, there should be no finesse; and, in general, finessing should be avoided until the declaration is assured. It may then be used to secure probable over-tricks.

***Adversaries' Play.*** The players opposed to the call are always designated as the adversaries.

Players opposed to a proposer and acceptor should make no finesses that they are not certain will win more tricks if successful than they will lose if they fail. If the adversaries sit together, and are the last to play on any trick, the third hand should not trust anything to his partner that he can attend to himself, unless he is very anxious to be the last player on the next trick.

When the adversaries sit opposite each other, their play will



but average trumps and winning cards in the plain suits are more advantageous if the caller is not eldest hand. To call a solo on plain suits alone, with only one or two trumps, is extremely dangerous; and a solo called on a single suit must have at least five or six good trumps in order to succeed.

**PLAYING.** When a call has been made entirely upon trump strength, it is much better to make tricks by ruffing, than by leading trumps. There is little use for a solo player to hold a tenace in trumps, hoping it will be led to him. If he has good suits, he should make sure of two rounds of trumps by leading the Ace.

When the solo player is depending on the plain suits for tricks, and has one long suit, he should make what winning cards he has in the other plain suits in preference to leading trumps, for his only danger is that his long suit will be led often enough to give his adversaries discards in the other suits.

If a proposal was made before the solo was called, it is better for the solo player to sit on the left of the player that proposed.

The caller should never play single honours second hand, unless he has only one small card of the suit, or the honour is the Ace.

With A Q x, second or third hand, the Q must be finessed if the caller has counted on both A and Q for tricks. If he can probably win without the finesse, he should play Ace. If he has tricks enough to win without either A or Q, he should play neither of them.

A solo player should be very sure of his call before finessing for over-tricks.

**Adversaries' Play.** The player to the left of the caller should not lead trumps; but if the solo player has had a lead, and has not led trumps himself, the player on his right should take the first opportunity to lead them through him.

The player to the left of the caller should not lead from suits headed only by the King; nor from those containing major or minor tenaces. The best leads are from suits headed by Q J or 10, even if short.

With such high-card combinations as can be used to force the command in one round, such as K Q, or K Q J, the regular whist leads should be used. With suits headed by winning sequences, held by the player on the left, it is often right to lead them once, in order to show them, and then to lead a weaker suit to get rid of the lead. It is sometimes better to play winning sequences as long as it seems probable that the caller can follow suit.

Many persons use the Albany lead to indicate a wish for trumps to be led through the caller. In response to such a signal the best trump should be led, whatever it is.

When the adversary who leads in any trick is not on the left of the solo player, the caller will, of course, not be the last player, as



at least one adversary must play after him. In such cases it is best to lead the longest suits.

**MISÈRE.** The great difficulty in Misère is not in playing it; but in judging what hands justify such an undertaking.

**Calling.** As a general proposition it may be stated that misère should not be called with a long suit not containing the deuce. But the longer the suit the less the danger there is for a player who is determined to risk it; because the deuce is more likely to be found alone in some adversary's hand. Short suits may be risked, even with no card smaller than a 5 or 6, and it is of course a great advantage to have a suit altogether missing.

**Leading.** The lead is a disadvantage to the caller, because he must begin with a small card, and the adversaries can play their highest. The only satisfaction to the caller is that he can usually locate the high cards of the suit under such circumstances. For instance: Suppose he originally leads a 4; second hand playing the 9; third hand the Ace; and fourth hand the 10. The third hand is marked with whatever cards of the sequence K Q J are not in the caller's hand.

Many players fall into the error of leading the highest card of a losing sequence, such as a 6 from 6 5 4 3. This accomplishes nothing, and only discloses to the adversaries the fact that the caller is safe in that suit. The three is the better lead.

**Following Suit.** The caller should usually play a card as little inferior as he can to the highest already on the trick. When he has cards of equal value, such as the 5 and 2, the 3 and 4 being already on the table, he should play the lower card of the fourchette; for although it may be said that the fourth player must take the trick, there is no certainty that he will follow suit.

When second hand, if there is a choice between two cards, such as the 6 and 2, an intermediate card having been led, it is often a nice point to decide whether or not to risk covering, and keeping the deuce. If the deuce is played, it must be remembered that the adversaries will follow with their highest cards, leaving two cards out against the caller, both smaller than the 6.

**Discarding.** The misère player should never discard from his long suits. The high cards of short suits, and single intermediate cards, such as 5's and 6's, should be got rid of at every opportunity.

**Adversaries of the Misère.** In playing against a misère the chief difficulty is to prevent the caller from discarding, and to place the lead with the player who can probably do him the most harm.

It is an axiom with solo-whist players that every misère can be defeated, if the weak spot in it can be found; because if the misère

was absolutely safe, it would be played as a spread, which would pay the caller twice as much. This is not true, however, for it often happens that the cards are so distributed in the other hands that the call cannot be defeated, however risky it may have been.

The weak point in a misère is usually a short suit with one high card in it; or a suit of intermediate length, without the deuce.

As it is probable that the caller is short in suits in which the adversaries are long, and long in those in which they are short, he is less likely to get a discard if they lead their shortest suits first. If the misère player has overcalled a proposal or a solo, he is likely to be short in the trump suit, or at least safe in it. It is not good play to lead a single Ace; but a King may be very effective; for if no one plays the Ace on it, that card may be absolutely marked in the caller's hand. In such a case the adversary with the greatest number of that suit should keep it for the attack. If this player can get into the lead, he is not only sure of preventing the caller from discarding, but of allowing the other adversaries to discard to advantage.

With an honour and one small card, a player on the left should lead the small card first; if on the right, the honour should be led first. A long suit containing the deuce should be avoided as long as possible.

The caller's cards may sometimes be inferred if there has been a previous call on the hand. For instance: A misère may be a forced call; that is, the player first called a proposal, and not being accepted, was forced to amend his call, choosing misère in preference to solo. This would indicate a long weak suit of trumps. If the dealer calls misère, the turn-up trump should be carefully noted.

It is useless to persevere in suits in which the caller is evidently safe. If he plays a very low card to a trick in which there is already a high card, that suit should be stopped.

**Discarding.** An adversary should get rid of some one suit, if possible; for when that suit is afterwards led he will have free choice of his discards in the other suits. Short suits should be discarded in preference to high cards in long suits, unless the cards in the short suit are very low. Discards give great information to the adversaries if the rule is followed to discard the highest of a suit; because all cards higher than those discarded must be between the two other adversaries and the caller, and each adversary is thus furnished with a guide. It is useless to discard a suit of which the caller is void; and it is best to keep discarding from one suit until it is exhausted, or only the deuce remains. The trump signal is frequently used in discarding to indicate that the signaller wishes to get into the lead.

**Returning Suits.** Whether or not to return a partner's lead may often be decided by inferences from the fall of the cards. It

is frequently an easy matter to locate the cards in the various suits, if it is borne in mind that adversaries who play after the caller get rid of their highest cards. For instance: Right leads the 9; caller plays the 5; left the 10; and the last player finds he holds K Q J 6 of the suit. He should know that the caller has nothing between the 5 and the 9, and must have the Ace; so his cards were probably A 5 4 3 2. While it is manifestly impossible to catch him on that suit, it may still be led three times, in order to give the partners discards, as both of them must be short. If this estimate of the caller's cards is wrong in anything, it is not with regard to the Ace, so there is not the slightest danger in continuing the suit.

As a general rule, the suit first led by an adversary should be returned, unless the player winning the trick has a singleton in another suit, when he should lead that.

The suit led by the caller, if he was eldest hand, should not be returned.

Some judgment of character must be used in playing on a caller's own lead. An adventurous player will sometimes call a misère on a hand which contains a singleton 5 or 6, and will lead it at once; trusting that second hand will imagine it to be safe, and cover it. Players should be aware of this trap, and never cover a misère player's own lead if they can help it, unless the card led is below a 4.

**ABUNDANCE.** Very few persons will risk calling an abundance which they are not pretty certain of; but a player may be forced to the call on a doubtful hand, especially if he is overcalled on his original proposal to play a solo. The lead is a great advantage, because trumps can be exhausted immediately, and the suits protected. If the caller has not the lead he must calculate in advance for trumping in, and if his plain suits are not quite established, he will require more trumps than would otherwise be necessary. The greatest danger to an abundance player who has not the original lead, is that his best suit will be led through him, and trumped, either on the first or second round. The caller is often trapped into unnecessarily high trumping when suits are led through him a second or third time.

**The Adversaries** have little chance to defeat an abundance unless they can over-trump the caller, or ruff his good cards before he can exhaust the trumps. It is best for the Right to lead his longest suit, and for the Left to lead his shortest. A guarded King suit should not be led under any circumstances; nor a short suit Ace high. If an adversary has a single trump of medium size, such as a J or 10, it is often good play to trump a partner's winning cards, so as to be sure of preventing the caller from making a small trump. If an adversary has trumped or over-trumped, it is very important to lead that suit to him again as soon as possible.

The rules for discarding that are given in connection with Whist should be carefully observed ; especially in the matter of showing command of suits.

**SPREADS.** These should not be called except with hands in which every suit contains the deuce, and all the cards are low enough to insure the player that nothing short of extraordinary circumstances will defeat him. Open sequences, or Dutch straights, as they are sometimes called, in which the cards are all odd or all even, such as 2 4 6 8 10, are quite as safe as ordinary sequences, provided the deuce is among the cards.

The player calling a spread must remember that it will be impossible for him to get any discards after the first trick without the consent of the adversaries ; for they will not lead a suit of which they see he is void. In order to reduce the caller's chances of a discard on the opening lead, before his cards are exposed, the adversaries should select their shortest suits, unless they have a bottom sequence to the deuce.

**THE SLAM.** This feature of Solo Whist is even rarer than the *grand coup* at Whist. It is not very marvellous for an abundance player to make twelve or thirteen tricks ; but to announce thirteen tricks before a card is played is something phenomenal. All the adversaries can do against such a call is to show each other, by their discards, in which of the suits they have a possible trick. It is very annoying to have a player succeed in making a slam just because two of his adversaries keep the same suit.

#### SOLO WHIST FOR THREE PLAYERS.

The best arrangement is to play with a pack of forty cards, deleting the 2, 3, and 4 of each suit. The last card is turned up to determine the trump, but it is not used in play.

There is no proposal and acceptance, solo being the lowest call. If all three players pass, the trump card is turned down, and each player in turn has the option of calling a six-trick abundance, naming his own trump suit. In some places it is the custom to allow the players to overcall each other, after the trump is turned down, each increasing the number of tricks he proposes to take. A *misère* overcalls eight tricks.

**Kimberly Solo** is for four players, without any proposal and acceptance, solo being the lowest call. If all pass, a six-trick solo with a different trump is allowed.

#### TEXT BOOKS.

Solo Whist, by R. F. Green.

How to Play Solo Whist, by Wilks & Pardon.

For the Laws of Solo Whist, see Whist Family Laws.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SOLO WHIST HANDS.

The dealer, Z, turns up the heart 3 in both hands, and A leads. The underlined card wins the trick, and the card under it is the next one led.

<i>A Solo.</i>				TRICK	<i>A Misère.</i>			
A	Y	B	Z		A	Y	B	Z
10 ♦	8 ♦	Q ♦	<u>K ♦</u>	1	<u>K ♠</u>	7 ♠	J ♠	10 ♠
3 ♦	9 ♦	<u>A ♦</u>	2 ♦	2	<u>Q ♠</u>	5 ♠	9 ♠	8 ♠
♥ 6	♥ 2	♥ <u>A</u>	♥ 3	3	Q ♦	5 ♦	<u>A ♦</u>	J ♦
♣ 8	♥ 4	♥ Q	♥ <u>K</u>	4	9 ♦	4 ♦	<u>K ♦</u>	10 ♦
♣ 9	<u>♣ A</u>	♣ 4	♣ 7	5	♥ 6	3 ♠	<u>6 ♠</u>	8 ♦
<u>♣ K</u>	9 ♠	K ♠	4 ♠	6	♥ 7	2 ♠	<u>4 ♠</u>	♣ A
7 ♠	2 ♠	♣ 6	♣ 5	7	♣ 10	♣ 8	♣ 7	<u>♣ K</u>
5 ♦	♣ 3	♣ Q	6 ♠	8	♣ 9	♣ 6	7 ♦	<u>♣ Q</u>
6 ♦	3 ♠	♥ <u>5</u>	♥ 8	9	♣ 5	♣ 4	6 ♦	<u>♣ J</u>
7 ♦	♥ 10	♥ 9	J ♦	10	♥ 8	♣ 2	♥ K	<u>♥ 3</u>
8 ♠	5 ♠	♥ <u>7</u>	4 ♦	11	<u>♥ A</u>	♥ 2	♥ Q	♥ 3
J ♠	<u>♣ J</u>	<u>♣ 10</u>	10 ♠	12	2 ♦	<u>3 ♦</u>	♥ 9	♥ 4
				13	♥ J	<u>A ♠</u>	♥ 10	♥ 5

*Solo player wins.*

*Misère player loses.*

In the first example, A and Y pass, and B calls Solo. A follows the modern practice of leading the top of his long weak suit, as a card of warning and support for his partners. Z knows Y must have 9 or Ace of diamonds, or no more, and he avoids the error of opening another suit, especially a weak one. B continues with the trump Queen, hoping to drop King and Jack together. At trick 5, Z cannot give up the command of trumps, and as A's lead and discard indicate that he wants spades led up to him, Z's best chance is that Y has some clubs. Y leads to A. At trick 9, Z knows B cannot have 10 and 9 of trumps, or he would have led one of them to prevent the J and 8 both making, so Y must have one of those trumps. At trick 11, if B leads the club, he loses his call. He must again take the chance of bringing the trumps down together.

In the second example A proposes, or calls Solo, and Y over-calls him with Misère. The great point in playing against Misère is to continue leading suits in which he is known to be long, so as to give your partners discards. This B does with the two long spades, the caller being marked with the ace and others on the second trick. Then Z allows B to discard his high diamonds on the clubs.

## BOSTON.

**CARDS.** Boston is played with two packs of fifty-two cards each, Which rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing.

**MARKERS** are not used in Boston, every hand being immediately settled for in counters. These are usually of three colours ; white, red, and blue ; representing cents, dimes, and dollars respectively. At the beginning of the game each player should be provided with an equal number, the general proportion being 20 white, 18 red, and 8 blue for each. Some one player should be selected to act as the banker, selling and redeeming all counters.

**STAKES.** The stakes in Boston depend upon the value of the counters. One cent for a white counter is considered a pretty stiff game ; because it is quite possible for a single player to win or lose a thousand white counters on one hand, and the payments very seldom fall short of fifty.

**THE POOL.** In addition to the counters won and lost on each hand, it is usual for the players to make up a pool at the beginning of the game by each of them depositing one red counter in a small tray provided for the purpose. This pool may be increased from time to time by penalties ; such as one red counter for a misdeal ; four for a revoke, or for not having the proper number of cards, etc. The whole amount in the pool may be won or lost by the players, according to their success or failure in certain undertakings, which will presently be described. When empty, the pool is replenished by contributions from each player, as at first.

The pool proper is usually limited to 25 red counters. When it exceeds that amount, the 25 are set aside, and the surplus used to start a fresh pool. Any player winning a pool is entitled to 25 red counters at the most. It will often happen that several such pools will accumulate, and each must be played for in its turn. At the end of the game any counters remaining in the pool or pools must be divided among the players.

**PLAYERS.** Boston is played by four persons. If more than four candidates offer for play, five or six may form a table ; if there are more than six, the selection of the table must be made by cutting, as at Whist.

**CUTTING.** The four persons who shall play the first game are determined by cutting, and they again cut for the deal, with the choice of seats and cards. The player drawing the lowest card deals, and chooses his seat ; the next lower card sits on his left, and so on, until all are seated. Twelve deals is a

game, at the end of which the players cut to decide which shall go out, as at Whist.

It is usual to count the deals by opening the blade of a pocket-knife, which is placed on the table by the player on the dealer's right. When it comes to his turn to deal, he partly opens one blade. When he deals again he opens it entirely, and the third time he closes it; that being the third round, and the last deal of the game.

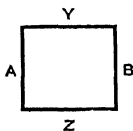


FOURTH DEAL.



EIGHTH DEAL.

**POSITION OF THE PLAYERS.** The four players at Boston are distinguished by the letters A Y B Z.



Z is the dealer, and A is known as the *eldest hand*. There are no partnerships in Boston, except that of three players combined against the fourth, who is always spoken of as *the caller*. The players having once taken their seats are not allowed to change them without the consent of all the others at the table.

**DEALING.** At the beginning of the game the two packs are thoroughly shuffled; after which they must not again be shuffled during the progress of the game. If a hand is dealt and not played, each player must sort his cards into suits and sequences before they are gathered and dealt again.

At the beginning of each deal, one pack is presented to the players to be cut; each having the privilege of cutting once, the dealer last. Beginning on his left, the dealer gives four cards to each player, then four more, and finally five; no trump being turned.

The general rules with regard to irregularities in the deal are the same as at Whist, except that a misdeal does not lose the deal. The misdealer must deal again with the same pack, after the players have sorted their cards into suits. It is a misdeal if the dealer fails to present the pack to the other players to cut, or neg-

lects to cut it himself. Should the dealer expose any of his own cards in dealing, that does not invalidate the deal. The deal passes in regular rotation to the left, each pack being used alternately.

**MAKING THE TRUMP.** The deal being complete, the player opposite the dealer cuts the still pack, and the player on his right turns up the top card for the trump. The suit to which this card belongs is called *First Preference*, and the suit of the same colour is called *Second Preference*, or *Colour*. The two remaining suits are known as *Plain Suits* for that deal.

The cards having been dealt, and the trump turned, each player carefully sorts and counts his cards, to see that he has the correct number, thirteen. A player having more or less than his right proportion should at once claim a misdeal; for if he plays with a defective hand he cannot win anything that deal, but must stand his proportion of all losses incurred, besides paying a forfeit of four red counters to the pool.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** In Boston, each player has an opportunity to announce that he is willing to undertake to win a certain number of tricks, if allowed the privilege of naming the trump suit; or to lose a certain number, there being no trumps. In either case, he proposes to play single-handed against the three other players. The player proposing the undertaking which is most difficult of accomplishment is said to *overcall* the others, and must be allowed to try. If he is successful, he wins the pool, and is paid a certain number of counters by each of his adversaries. If he fails, he must double the amount in the pool, and pay to each of the other players a certain number of counters.

**ANNOUNCEMENTS.** The bids rank in the following order, beginning with the lowest. The full-faced type shows the words used by the players in calling their bids:—

To win five tricks; *Boston*.

To win *Six Tricks*.

To win *Seven Tricks*.

To lose twelve tricks, after having discarded a card which is not to be shown; *Little Misère*.

To win *Eight Tricks*.

To win *Nine Tricks*.

To lose every trick; *Grand Misère*.

To win *Ten Tricks*.

To win *Eleven Tricks*.

To lose twelve tricks, after having discarded a card which is not to be shown; the single player's remaining twelve cards being exposed face up on the table, but not liable to be called, *Little Spread*.

To win *Twelve Tricks*.



To lose every trick; the single player's cards exposed on the table, but not liable to be called; *Grand Spread*.

To win Thirteen Tricks; *Grand Slam*.

The object of the proposing player, if successful in his bid, is to win or lose the proposed number of tricks; while that of his three adversaries is to combine to prevent him from so doing. There are no honours, and the only factor in the count is the number of tricks taken. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick; and trumps, if any, win against all other suits.

**METHOD OF BIDDING.** The eldest hand has the first say, and after examining his cards, and estimating the number of tricks he can probably take, making the trump to suit his hand, he bids accordingly. It is not necessary for him to state which suit he wishes to make the trump; but only the number of tricks he proposes to win. If he has no proposal to make, he says distinctly; "*I pass*," and the other players in turn have an opportunity to bid. If any player makes a bid, such as six tricks, and any other player thinks he can make the same number of tricks with a trump of the same colour as the turn-up, that is, Second Preference, he overcalls the first bidder by saying "*I keep*;" or he may repeat the number bid, saying "*Six here*." This is simply bidding to win the number of tricks *in colour*. The original caller may hold his bid, or a third player may overbid both, by saying; "*I keep over you*," or "*Six here*." This means that he will undertake to win the number of tricks already bid, with the *turn-up* suit for trumps. In order to overcall such a bid as this, any other player would have to announce a greater number of tricks. For instance; Z deals, and turns a heart. A calls six tricks, intending to name hearts trumps; but not saying so. B passes; Y says "*I Keep*." This announces to the table that Y will play with a red trump, and A knows he is bidding on diamonds. Z passes, and A says; "*I keep over you*." B then bids seven tricks, and if A will not risk seven tricks in hearts, B will be the successful bidder. If A should bid seven tricks by keeping over B, the latter must know that it is useless for him to bid again unless he can make more tricks in diamonds than A can in hearts; for A's bid, being in first preference, will always outrank B's for the same number of tricks.

A player once having passed cannot come into the bidding again, except to call one of the *misères*. In the example just given, either Y or Z, after having twice passed, might have outbid the seven tricks by calling a little *misère*. Such a bid can, of course, be entertained only when it outranks any bid already made.

A player is not compelled to bid the full value of his hand; but it is to his interest to go as near to it as he can with safety; because, as we shall see presently, the more he bids the more he is paid. For instance; If he can make ten tricks, but bids seven

only, he will be paid for the three over-tricks, if he makes them; but the payment for seven bid and ten taken, is only 22 counters; while the payment for ten bid and ten taken is 42. As he receives from each adversary, a player who underbid his hand in this manner would lose 60 counters by his timidity.

It sometimes happens that no one will make a proposal of any sort. It is very unusual to pass the deal. The trump is generally turned down, and a *Grand* is played, without any trump suit. This is sometimes called a *Misère Partout*, or "all-round poverty"; and the object of each player is to take as few tricks as possible.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** No matter who is the successful bidder, the eldest hand always leads for the first trick, and the others must follow suit if they can, the play proceeding exactly as at Whist. The tricks should be carefully stacked, so that they can be readily counted by any player without calling attention to them. The laws provide a severe penalty for drawing attention to the score in this manner. Suppose a player has called eight tricks. An adversary hesitates in his play, and another reaches over and counts the tricks in front of the caller, finding he has seven. This is tantamount to saying to the player who hesitates: "If you don't win that trick, the call succeeds." In such a case, the single player may at once demand the play of the highest or lowest of the suit; or that the adversaries trump or refrain from trumping the trick.

In all calls except *misères* and slams, the hands should be played out, in order to allow the players to make what over-tricks they can; but the moment a *misère* player takes a trick, or a slam player loses one, the hands are thrown up, and the stakes paid. It is usual to show the cards to the board, in order to satisfy each player that no revoke has occurred.

When Little *Misère* is called, each player discards one card, which must not be shown, and the hand is then played out with the remaining twelve cards.

When Spreads are called, the caller's cards must be placed face upwards on the table before a card is played. If it is a Little Spread, the discard of each player must remain unknown. The adversaries have no control of the manner of playing the exposed cards, which cannot be called, and may be played in any manner suited to the judgment of the single player, provided he follows suit when able.

**REVOKES.** If a player opposed to the caller revokes, but discovers his mistake in time to save himself, he may be called upon by the single player for his highest or lowest of the suit led; or the card played in error may be claimed as an exposed card. If the highest or lowest of the suit is called, the card played in error is taken up.

If the caller revokes, and discovers his mistake in time, he is not liable to any penalty, unless an adversary has played to the next trick. In that case the revoking card must be left on the table, and is liable to be called. When the single player revokes, he loses the call in any case, and at least one trick besides. He must also double the pool, and add to it a revoke forfeit of four red counters. For instance : A bids eight tricks, and his adversaries detect and claim a revoke. As he is supposed to have lost his bid, and one trick more, he may be said to have bid eight, and taken only seven ; losing 23 white counters to each of his adversaries, doubling the pool, and then paying a forfeit of four red counters. In some places the forfeit is omitted, and in others it takes the place of doubling the pool. It is not usual to play the hand out after a revoke is claimed and proved.

If an adversary of the single player revokes, he and his partners must each pay the caller just as if he had been successful, and must also pay him for three over-tricks as forfeit, provided his bid was not more than nine tricks ; for the bid and the over-tricks together must not exceed thirteen tricks. In addition to this, the individual player in fault must pay four red counters as forfeit to the pool. In some places he is made to double the pool ; but this is manifestly unfair, as he could not win the amount in the pool in any case, and therefore should not lose it.

In a *Misère Partout*, the revoking player pays five red counters to each adversary, and deposits a forfeit of four red counters in the pool. The hands are immediately thrown up if the revoke is claimed and proved.

**CARDS PLAYED IN ERROR.** The single player is not liable to any penalty for cards played in error, or led out of turn, except those taken back to save a revoke ; but his adversaries are liable to the usual whist penalties for all such irregularities. The single player can forbid the use of an exposed trump for ruffing, and can demand or prevent the play of an exposed card in plain suits, provided he does not ask the adversary to revoke. If a suit is led of which an adversary has an exposed card on the table, the single player may call upon him to play his highest or lowest of that suit.

If a player has announced *Little Misère*, and one of the adversaries leads before the others have discarded, the caller may immediately claim the pool and stakes. If any adversary of a *misère* player leads out of turn, or exposes a card, or plays before his proper turn in any trick, the bidder may at once claim the pool and stakes. In all such cases it is usual for the individual in fault to pay a forfeit of four red counters toward the next pool.

In *Misère Partout*, there is no penalty for cards played in error or led out of turn.

**PAYMENTS.** If the caller succeeds in winning the proposed number of tricks, he is paid by each of his adversaries according to the value of his bid, and the number of over-tricks he wins, if any. The various payments are shown in this table :—

Number of tricks bid by player.	Number actually taken by him.								
	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Five.....	12	12	13	13	14	14	14	15	15
Six.....		15	16	16	17	18	19	20	20
Seven.....			18	20	21	22	23	24	26
Eight.....				23	24	26	28	29	31
Nine.....					32	34	36	39	41
Ten.....						42	45	48	52
Eleven.....							63	68	72
Twelve.....								106	114
Thirteen.....									166

The American system is not to pay the successful bidder for any over-tricks. This is to make him bid up his hand, and to save time ; as hands need not be played out when the bidder has made or can show the number of tricks bid.

Tricks bid	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Amount.	10	15	20	25	35	45	65	105	170

If the caller fails in his undertaking, he must pay each adversary according to the number of tricks by which he failed to reach his bid. For instance : A player bidding eight, and taking only seven, is said to be "*put in for*" one trick, and he would have to pay each adversary 23 white counters. These payments are shown in this table :—

Tricks bid by the player.	Number of tricks by which the player falls short of his declaration.												
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Five.....	11	21	31	41	50								
Six.....	15	24	35	45	55	66							
Seven.....	19	29	40	50	60	72	82						
Eight....	23	34	46	56	67	78	89	110					
Nine.....	33	44	57	68	82	92	103	115	127				
Ten.....	44	56	70	82	94	107	119	132	145	157			
Eleven...	67	80	95	109	123	138	151	165	180	194	208		
Twelve..	113	130	148	165	182	200	217	234	252	270	286	304	
Thirteen..	177	198	222	241	262	284	305	326	348	369	390	412	433

We give the same table reduced to the American decimal system, in which form it is commonly found in the clubs. It may be remarked in passing that the table is very illogical and inconsistent, the payments bearing no relation to the probabilities of the events. Some of them provide for impossibilities, unless the player has miscalled the trump suit, and is held to it, but we have no authority to change them.

Tricks bid.	Number of tricks bidder is "put in for."												
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Five.....	10	20	30	40	50								
Six.....	15	25	35	45	55	65							
Seven....	20	30	40	50	60	70	80						
Eight....	25	35	45	55	65	75	85	100	115				
Nine.....	35	45	55	65	75	85	95	110	125	140			
Ten.....	45	55	70	80	95	110	125	140	155	170			
Eleven...	70	80	95	110	125	140	155	170	185	200	220		
Twelve..	120	130	145	160	180	200	220	240	260	280	300	320	
Thirteen..	180	200	220	240	260	280	300	320	340	360	390	420	450

If a *misère* is bid, the caller wins from, or loses to each adversary according to the following table, there being no over-tricks :—

Little <i>Misère</i> ,	20 white counters.
Grand <i>Misère</i> ,	40 white counters.
Little Spread,	80 white counters.
Grand Spread,	160 white counters.

It may be observed that each of these is twice the amount of the next lower.

When *misère partout* is played, the person winning the largest number of tricks is the only loser, and he must pay each of the other players the difference between the number of his tricks and theirs in red counters. The number of red counters lost will always be found to be three times the number of tricks taken, minus the number of tricks not taken. For instance: A wins 4 tricks, three times which is 12; from which he deducts 4, the number he did not take, and finds his loss to be 8 red counters. Again; A wins 7 tricks; three times which is 21; minus 4 tricks not taken, a net loss of 17. No matter in what proportion the other tricks may be divided between the three other players, this total payment will always be found correct. For instance: A wins 6 tricks; Y 2; B 5; and Z none. A loses  $6 \times 3 = 18 - 7 = 11$ , of which he gives 4 to Y: 1 to B, and 6 to Z.

If two players tie for the greatest number of tricks taken, they calculate their losses in the same manner; but each pays only half the total. For instance: A and Y each take 5 tricks; B taking 1, and Z 2. The 7 red counters lost by A and Y being divided, shows a loss of 3½ white counters for each of them. If three players take four tricks apiece, they each pay the fourth man a red counter.

**WINNING THE POOL.** Besides the white counters won and lost by the players individually, the successful caller takes the pool, provided he has made a bid of seven tricks or better, which is called a *pool bid*. Any lower bid does not entitle him to the pool, unless the other players compel him to play the hand out. In order to save the pool, it is usual for the adversaries, before playing to the second trick, to say: "*I pay.*" If all agree to pay, the bidder must accept the amount of his bid without any over-tricks, and the pool is not touched. If a player has made a pool bid, and the adversaries, before playing to the second trick, agree to pay, they cannot prevent the caller from taking the pool; but they save possible over-tricks. The agreement of the adversaries to pay must be unanimous.

Misère Partout does not touch the pool.

If the hand is played out, and the caller fails, he must double the pool, whether he has made a pool bid or not. If there is more than one pool, he must double the first one, which will of course contain the limit. This will simply have the effect of forming an additional pool to be played for.

When there are several pools on the table, a successful caller takes any of those that contain the limit. When there is only one pool on the table, he must be satisfied with its contents, however small.

At the end of the game, after the twelfth hand has been settled for, it is usual to divide the pool or pools equally among the players. But sometimes a grand is played without trumps, making a thirteenth hand, and the pool is given to the player winning the last trick.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** There being no shuffling at Boston, and each player having the right to cut the pack, the greek must be very skilful who can secure himself any advantage by having the last cut, unless he has the courage to use wedges. But Boston is usually played for such high stakes that it naturally attracts those possessing a high degree of skill, and the system adopted is usually that of counting down. The greek will watch for a hand in which there is little changing of suits, and will note the manner of taking up the cards. The next hand does not interest him, as he is busy studying the location of the cards in the still pack. When this comes into play on the next deal, he will follow every cut, and finally cut for himself so that the de-

sired distribution of the suits shall come about. Even if he fails to secure an invincible hand for bidding on himself, he knows so nearly the contents of the other hands that he can bid them up, and afterwards play against them to great advantage.

It is unnecessary to say that if a greek can mark the cards, the game becomes a walkover, even if he can recollect only the hand on his left.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Boston so closely resembles Solo Whist in such matters as bidding, and playing single-handed against three others, that the reader may be referred to that game for the outlines of the principles that should guide him in estimating the probable value of his hand, playing for tricks or for *misères*, and combining forces with his partners for the purpose of defeating the single player.

For laws, see Whist Family Laws.

## BOSTON DE FONTAINEBLEAU.

This game is sometimes, but incorrectly, called French Boston. The latter will be described in its proper place.

**CARDS.** Boston de Fontainebleau is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards. Two packs are generally used. The cards rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing.

**MARKERS** are not used, counters taking their place. These are usually of the colours and values, and are distributed among the players as already described in Boston.

**STAKES.** As a guide in settling upon the unit value, it may be noted that the largest amount possible to win or lose on a single hand is 2,400 white counters; the smallest amount being 30. The average is about 300.

**THE POOL.** In addition to the counters won or lost on each hand, a pool is formed by each dealer in his turn placing five counters in a small tray provided for the purpose. This pool may be increased by penalties, etc., and the whole amount may be won under certain conditions, as at Boston. There is no limit to the amount of a single pool.

**PLAYERS.** The number of players, methods of *Cutting*, *Dealing*, etc., are the same as those already described in connection with Boston, except that no trump is turned for first preference, the suits always having a determined rank; diamonds being first, hearts next, then clubs, and last spades. No-trump, or "grand," outranks diamonds.

Twelve deals is a game; after which the players cut out if there

are more than four belonging to the table, or if other candidates are waiting to play.

**PENALTIES**, for playing with more or less than the proper number of cards, etc., are the same as at Boston.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** These are identical with Boston, but instead of doubling the pool, the player who is unsuccessful in his undertaking pays into the pool the same amount that he loses to each of the other players.

**ANNOUNCEMENTS.** The bids rank in the order following; beginning with the lowest. The full-faced type show the words used by the players in calling their bids. It will be noticed that the order is not the same as in Boston, and that an additional bid is introduced, called Piccolissimo.

To win 5 tricks, *Boston*.

To win *Six Tricks*.

To lose 12 tricks, after having discarded a card which is not to be shown; *Little Misère*.

To win *Seven Tricks*.

To win one trick, neither more nor less, after having discarded a card which is not to be shown, there being no trump suit; *Piccolissimo*.

To win *Eight Tricks*.

To lose every trick, no trump suit, *Grand Misère*.

To win *Nine Tricks*.

To lose 12 tricks, after having discarded a card which is not to be shown; the single player's remaining twelve cards being exposed face up on the table, but not liable to be called; *Little Spread*.

To win *Ten Tricks*.

To lose every trick, no trump suit, the single player's cards being exposed on the table, but not liable to be called; *Grand Spread*.

To win *Eleven Tricks*.

To win *Twelve Tricks*.

To win 13 tricks; *Slam*.

To win 13 tricks, the single player's cards exposed face up on the table, but not liable to be called; *Spread Slam*.

The object of the bidder, if successful in securing the privilege of playing, is to win or lose the proposed number of tricks, against the combined efforts of his adversaries. Having once made a bid, he must play it unless he is over-called.

**METHOD OF BIDDING.** The eldest hand has the first say, and after examining his hand, and deciding on the bid most appropriate to it, if any, he makes his announcement. If his proposal is to win a certain number of tricks with a certain



suit for trumps, he must name the suit, saying, "Eight Spades," or "Seven Diamonds," as the case may be. If he proposes to play without any trump suit, he announces, "Seven Grand," or whatever the number may be. Such a bid overcalls one of the same number in diamonds. If the eldest hand has no proposal to make, he says, "I pass," and the others in turn have an opportunity to bid. The bids outrank one another according to their order in the foregoing table, and the rank of the suits in which they are made. The players bid against one another, until all but one declare to pass, he then becomes the single player against the three others.

A player having once passed cannot come into the bidding again, even to call a *misère*. In this respect the game differs from Boston. A player is not compelled to bid the full value of his hand, but it is to his interest to do so, and he should make the full announcement the first time he bids; because if he has had a good hand for ten tricks, and begins with a bid of seven, he cannot increase his proposal unless some player bids over him.

**PARTNERS.** Before playing, the successful bidder may call for a partner if he chooses to do so. The player accepting him undertakes that the two together shall win three tricks more than the number bid. For instance: A has successfully bid seven in diamonds, and asks for a partner. If Y accepts him, they make no change in their positions at the table, but play into each other's hands, just as at Solo Whist, B and Z being partners against them. A and Y together must win ten tricks, with diamonds for trumps.

If no one makes a proposal of any sort, *Misère Partout* is played; there being no trump suit. The player or players taking the least number of tricks win or divide the pool. There are no other losses or gains in *Misère Partout*.

**HONOURS.** In any call in which there is a trump suit, the A K Q and J of trumps are honours, and may be counted by the successful bidder if he carries out his proposal. If the single player, or a caller and his partner have all four honours dealt them, they score as for four over-tricks; if three, as for two over-tricks. Honours do not count for the adversaries under any circumstances.

In bidding on a hand, it must be remembered that although honours will count as over-tricks in payments, they cannot be bid on. If a player has nine tricks and two by honours in his hand, he cannot bid eleven. If he bids nine and fails to make so many, he cannot count the honours at all. It is growing less and less the custom to count honours in America.

A player making a bid can be compelled to play it; but it is usual to allow him to pay instead of playing, if he proposes to do so, either because he has overbid his hand or for any other reason.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** No matter who is the successful bidder, the eldest hand always leads for the first trick, and the others must follow suit if they can, the play proceeding exactly as in Whist. Tricks should be carefully stacked, there being the same penalties as in Boston for calling attention to the score. The methods of playing *misères* and *spreads* have already been described in connection with Boston. When *piccolissimo* is played, the moment the single player takes more than one trick the hands are thrown up, and the stakes paid.

**REVOKES.** The rules governing these and cards played in error, are the same as at Boston. In *piccolissimo*, the penalties are the same as in *misère*.

**PAYMENTS.** If the caller succeeds in winning the proposed number of tricks, he is paid by each of his adversaries according to the value of his bid, as shown in Table No. 1. Overtricks, if any, and honours, if played, are always paid at the uniform rate of five white counters each. If the caller fails, he must pay each adversary the amount he would have won if successful, with the addition of five white counters for every trick that he falls short of his proposal. For instance: He bids nine hearts, and wins six tricks only. He must pay each adversary 115 white counters.

TABLE No. 1.

	No trump.	The trump being			Extra tricks.
		♣ ♣	♥	♦	
Boston, five tricks. ....		10	20	30	5
Six tricks. ....		30	40	50	5
Little <i>misère</i> . ....	75				
Seven tricks. ....		50	60	70	5
<i>Piccolissimo</i> . ....	100				
Eight tricks. ....		70	80	90	5
Grand <i>misère</i> . ....	150				
Nine tricks. ....		90	100	110	5
Little spread. ....	200				
Ten tricks. ....		110	120	130	5
Grand spread. ....	250				
Eleven tricks. ....		130	140	150	5
Twelve tricks. ....		150	160	170	5
Slam, thirteen tricks. ....		400	450	500	
Spread slam. ....		600	700	800	

TABLE No. 2.

In America, the last two items are usually reduced, and are given as follows:—

		♠ ♣	♥	♦	
Slam, thirteen tricks.....	.....	250	300	350	
Spread slam.....	.....	350	400	450	

Why a player should be paid more for spreads than for eleven or twelve tricks while the trick bid outranks the spreads, is difficult to understand; but we have no authority to change the tables.

Misère Partout wins nothing but the pool.

If partners play, it is usual for the losers to pay the adversaries on their right; or, if partners sit together, to pay the adversary sitting next.

**THE POOL.** Besides the white counters won and lost by the players individually, the successful player takes the pool. Successful partners divide it equally, regardless of the number of tricks bid or taken by each. If the partners fail, they must contribute to the pool an amount equal to that which they pay to one adversary. For instance: A calls seven diamonds, and asks for a partner. Y accepts him, and the pair win only nine tricks. Each pays 135 counters to the adversary sitting next him, and then they make up 135 more between them for the pool.

Asking for a partner is not a popular variation of the game, and is seldom resorted to unless the successful bid is very low, or has been made on a black suit.

If the adversaries of the caller declare to pay, before playing to the second trick, they can save nothing but possible overtricks. The pool goes with every successful play.

If the single player is unsuccessful, he does not double the pool, as in Boston, but pays into it the same amount that he loses to each adversary, overtricks and all; so that he really loses four times the amount shown in the table.

At the end of the game, or on the twelfth hand, if the caller does not succeed, he pays the pool as usual, and his adversaries then divide it amongst themselves.

The *Suggestions for Good Play*, etc., are given in connection with Solo Whist and need no further amplification for Boston de Fontainebleau.

The *Laws* vary so little from those used in the regular game of Boston that it is not necessary to give an additional code, either for Fontainebleau or for French Boston, which follows.

## FRENCH BOSTON.

**CARDS.** French Boston is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing; except that the diamond Jack is always the best trump unless diamonds are turned up, in which case the heart Jack becomes the best trump, and the diamond Jack ranks next below the diamond Queen.

**COUNTERS** are used as in Boston, their value being a matter of agreement before play begins.

**THE POOL** is made up by the dealer's contributing ten counters for the first eight rounds, and twenty for the last two. It is increased from time to time by penalties, and is won or lost by the players, just as in Boston. There is no limit to the pool. If any player objects to dividing it at the end of the game, it must be played for until some player wins it.

**PLAYERS.** The number of players, their arrangement at the table, etc., is precisely the same as at Boston.

**CUTTING.** Instead of cutting for the first deal, any one of the players takes a pack of cards, and gives thirteen to each player in succession, face up. The player to whom he gives the diamond Jack deals the first hand, and has the choice of seats and cards. The others sit as they please.

**DEALING.** The cards are shuffled before every deal. The player on the left of the dealer cuts, and cards are given first to the player on the dealer's right, dealing from right to left. The cards may be dealt one at a time, or three at a time, or four at a time, always dealing the last round singly, and turning up the last card. A misdeal loses the deal. Other irregularities are governed by the same laws as in Boston.

The deal passes to the right, and the next dealer is indicated by the position of the tray containing the pool, which the dealer always passes to the player on his right, after putting in his ten or twenty counters.

Forty deals is a game; the first thirty-two of which are called "simples," and the last eight "doubles." In the doubles, all stakes and contributions to the pool are doubled. If anything remains in the pool at the end, it is divided equally, unless a player demands that it shall be played for until won. Such extra deals are simples.

**RANK OF THE SUITS.** The suit turned on the first deal is called "belle" for that game. The suit turned on each succeeding deal is called "petite." If belle turns up again, there is no petite for that deal. The suits are not first and second preference, as in Boston, but are used only to determine the value of the payments, and to settle which suits partners must name for trumps. The rank of the suits is permanent, as in Boston de For

tainbleau, but the order is, hearts, diamonds, clubs, and spades; hearts being highest. In France, the suits rank in this order in Boston de Fontainbleau, but in America diamonds outrank hearts.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** Each player in turn has an opportunity to announce that he is willing to undertake to win a certain number of tricks, if allowed the privilege of naming the trump suit; or to lose a certain number, there being no trump suit. If he proposes to play alone, he may select any suit for trumps; but if he takes a partner the trump suit must be *belle* or *petite*. The announcements outrank each other in certain order, and the player making the highest must be allowed to play. If he succeeds in his undertaking, he wins the pool, and is also paid a certain number of counters by each of his adversaries. If he fails, he must double the pool, and pay each of his adversaries. The table of payments will be given later.

**ANNOUNCEMENTS.** The proposals rank in the order following, beginning with the lowest. The French terms are given in *italics* :—

Five tricks; or eight with a partner, in *petite*. *Simple in petite.*

Five tricks; or eight with a partner, in *belle*. *Simple in belle.*

Six tricks solo, in any suit. *Petite independence.*

Little *misère*. *Petite misère.*

Eight tricks solo in any suit. *Grand independence.*

Grand *misère*. *Grand misère*, or *misère sans écart*.

*Misère* with four aces. *Misère des quatre as.*

Nine tricks in any suit. *Neuf.*

Nine tricks in *petite*. *Neuf en petite.*

Nine tricks in *belle*. *Neuf en belle.*

Little spread. *Petite misère sur table.*

Grand spread. *Grand misère sur table.*

**METHOD OF BIDDING.** The player to the right of the dealer has the first say. If he proposes to take a partner as in Solo Whist, he says, "Je demande," at the same time placing one of his cards face downward on the table. This card must not be shown or named, but must be of the suit which he proposes to make the trump. He is not allowed to announce the suit, so that any player accepting him as a partner does so in ignorance as to whether he will play in *belle* or in *petite*. If the demand is accepted, the proposer and his partner make no change in their positions at the table, but must make eight tricks, just as in Solo Whist.

If a player cannot propose, he says: "Je passe," and each of the others in turn from right to left have the opportunity to make a proposal. When any player proposes, any player in turn after him may accept, although such a one may have already passed. If the fourth player proposes, the three others having passed, and no one will accept him he is bound to play solo against three such.

weak adversaries, and must make five tricks, either in belle or in petite. He is not allowed to play in a plain suit if he has made a simple "demand."

The only solo bids allowed are those for six, eight, or nine tricks, which outrank one another. A player cannot bid seven to overcall six; he must go to eight; and a player cannot *bid* five tricks without a partner, although, as we have just seen, he may be forced to *play* in that manner.

When six, eight, or nine tricks are bid, the suits outrank one another for equal numbers of tricks; but as the suit called need not be the bidder's true intention, nor the same as the card laid on the table, the proposer must be careful that his play will be as good as his bid. For instance: He intends nine tricks in spades, but proposes eight in diamonds. He cannot bid nine in diamonds, for that would be a better bid than he intends to play; but the ruse may succeed in inducing a player not to bid against him, hoping diamonds is the true suit. It is a common artifice to bid the true suit, because few will believe it to be such.

If clubs are belle, and diamonds petite, and a player who "demands" is over-called by a demand in belle, or a call of six tricks, the first caller cannot advance his bid to six tricks except in the suit which he has already laid on the table; but he may accept the player over-calling him, instead of bidding against him. After a player has once accepted or passed, he cannot bid *misère*.

If no one makes a proposition of any kind, the hands are thrown up; the next dealer contributes to the pool, and a fresh hand is dealt.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** As in Boston, the eldest hand has the first lead, and the others must follow suit if they can, except in the *misère des quatre as*. When this is played, the bidder may renounce at pleasure for the first ten tricks.

**GATHERING TRICKS.** When a partnership is formed, each gathers the tricks he takes. If the partnership loses, the one who has not his complement of tricks must pay the adversaries and double the pool. If the demander has not five, and the acceptor has three, the demander pays. If the proposer has five, and the acceptor has not three, the acceptor pays; but they both win if they have eight tricks between them, no matter in what proportion. If neither has taken his proper share, they must both pay. When they are successful, they divide the pool.

**SLAMS.** If a player has demanded, and not been accepted, and has been forced to play alone for five tricks, but wins eight, it is called a slam. But as he did not wish to play alone, his only payment, besides the pool, is 24 counters from each player if he played in petite; 48 if in belle; double those amounts if the deal was one of the last eight in the game.

If two partners make a slam, thirteen tricks, they take the pool, and receive from each adversary 24 counters if they played in

petite ; 48 if in belle ; double if in one of the last eight hands in the game.

**EXPOSED CARDS.** The laws governing these are almost identical with those in Boston, with the additional rule that a player allowing a card to fall upon the table face up before play begins, can be forced to play independence in that suit.

**REVOKES.** The individual player who is detected in a revoke must double the pool, and pay both adversaries.

**PAYMENTS.** Payments are made according to the table. The player holding diamond Jack receives two counters from each of the other players in a simple ; four in a double ; except in misères, in which the card has no value.

Misères are paid for according to the trump turned in the deal in which they are played. If a heart is turned, and little misère is played, the payment is 64 counters to or from each player. If a spade was turned, the payment would be 16 only.

Three honours between partners count as three ; four as four. Being all in one hand does not increase their value.

The Bid.	♠	♣	◇	♥
{ Five tricks alone, } { or partners' 8. } .....	4	8	12	16
Three honours.....	3	6	9	12
Four honours.....	4	8	12	16
Each extra trick.....	1	2	3	4
{ Six tricks, or petite } { independence. } .....	6	12	18	24
Three honours.....	4	8	12	16
Four honours.....	6	12	18	24
Each extra trick.....	2	4	6	8
{ Eight tricks, or grand } { independence. } .....	8	16	24	32
Three honours.....	6	12	18	24
Four honours.....	8	16	24	32
Each extra trick.....	4	8	12	16
Petite misère .....	16	32	48	64
Grand misère.....	32	64	96	128
Misère de quatre as.....	32	64	96	128
Misère sur table .....	64	128	192	256
Slam à deux (partners)...	50	100	150	200
Slam seul (alone).....	100	200	300	400
Slam sur table.....	200	400	600	800

## RUSSIAN BOSTON.

This is a variation of Boston de Fontainbleau. A player holding *carte blanche* declares it before playing, and receives ten counters from each of the other players. *Carte blanche* is the same thing as *chicane* in Bridge, no trump in the hand. But in Bridge the player is penalized for announcing it until after the hand is played.

The order of the suits is the same as in American Boston de Fontainbleau: diamonds, hearts, clubs, and spades.

When a player bids six, seven, or eight tricks, he is supposed to be still willing to take a partner, unless he specifies solo. When a partner accepts him, the combination must make four tricks more than the original proposal.

Four honours are paid for as four over-tricks; three honours as two over-tricks.

Piccolissimo is played, and comes between the bids of seven and eight tricks.

## GERMAN WHIST.

**CARDS.** German Whist is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing.

**PLAYERS.** Two persons play. They cut for the first deal, and the choice of seats.

**DEALING.** The dealer presents the pack to his adversary to be cut, and then gives thirteen cards to each player, one at a time, turning up the twenty-seventh card for the trump, and laying it on the talon, or remainder of the pack.

**PLAYING.** The non-dealer begins by leading any card he pleases, and his adversary must follow suit if he can. The winner of the first trick takes the trump card into his hand, and his adversary takes the card immediately under it, but without showing or naming it. Each player thus restores the number of cards in his hand to thirteen. The card which is now on the top of the talon is turned up, and the winner of the next trick must take it, his adversary taking the one under it, as before, and turning up the next. In this manner it will be seen that the winner of each trick must always get a card which is known to his adversary, while the loser of the trick gets one which remains unknown.

When the talon is exhausted, the thirteen cards in each hand should be known to both players if they have been observant, and the end game becomes a problem, in double dummy.



**STAKES.** The game is usually played for so much a point the player having won the majority of the tricks receiving the difference between the number of his tricks and those of his adversary. Each game is complete in one hand.

In many respects the game resembles single-handed Hearts, except that in Hearts none of the cards drawn are shown.

## CHINESE WHIST.

**CARDS.** Chinese Whist is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank as at Whist, both for cutting and playing.

**MARKERS.** Ordinary whist markers are used for scoring the points.

**PLAYERS.** Two, three or four persons can play Chinese Whist. When three play, the spade deuce is thrown out of the pack. Partners and deal are cut for from an outspread pack, as at Whist.

**POSITION OF THE PLAYERS.** When four play, the partners sit opposite each other. When three play, the one cutting the lowest card chooses his seat, and dictates the positions of the two other players.

**DEALING.** When four play, the pack is shuffled and cut as at Whist. The dealer then gives six cards to each player, one at a time, beginning on his left. These six cards are then spread face down on the table in front of the players to whom they have been dealt, but without being looked at. Six more are then dealt to each, one at a time, and these are turned face up, and sorted into suits. They are then laid face up on the top of the six cards which are lying on the table face down, so as to cover them. The last four cards are then dealt, one to each player. These last are retained in the hand, and must not be shown or named; they are usually called the "*down cards*."

**MAKING THE TRUMP.** After examining the cards exposed on the table, and the down card in his own hand, the dealer has the privilege of naming any suit he pleases for trumps. No consultation with partner is allowed.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The player to the left of the dealer begins by leading any one of his exposed cards, and the others must follow suit if they can; either with one of their exposed cards, or with their down cards. A player having none of the suit led may either discard or trump. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps win all other

suits. The side winning the trick takes it in and arranges it just as at Whist. Before leading for the next trick all cards which have been uncovered are turned face up. If any person has played his down card he will have no card to turn up, none having been uncovered. The cards cannot under any circumstances be shifted from their original positions. If a player has five cards face up, covering five cards face down, he cannot shift one of the exposed cards to the empty sixth place, and uncover another card. All covering cards must be got rid of in the course of play.

**PENALTIES** for revokes, cards led out of turn, etc., are the same as at Whist.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** As in Whist, the object is to win tricks, all above six counting one point toward game. Five, seven, or ten points may be made the game, at the option of the players, but ten is the usual number. Honours are not counted except by agreement.

**STAKES.** It is usual to play for so much a point or a game. If points are played, the loser's score must be deducted from the winner's, and the difference is the value of the game won.

**WHEN THREE PLAY,** eight cards are dealt to each person, and arranged face down; then eight more, arranged face up, and then one to each for down cards. There are no partnerships; each plays for himself against the others.

**WHEN TWO PLAY,** twelve cards are dealt to each player, and arranged face down; then twelve more, arranged face up, and then two down cards to each. It is usual to deal all the cards two at a time.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Chinese Whist very closely resembles Dummy, and the chief element of success is the skilful use of tenace. Memory also plays an important part, it being especially necessary to remember what cards are still unplayed in each suit. While the down cards are held a player cannot be sure of taking a trick by leading a card higher than any his adversary has exposed, because one of the down cards may be better. If a player is short of trumps, but has as many and better than those of his adversary, it is often good play to lead and draw the weaker trumps before the adversary turns up higher ones to protect them. For instance: One player may have 10 8, and his adversary the 9 alone. If the 10 is led the 9 will probably be caught, unless one of the adverse down cards is better. If the 10 is not led the adversary may turn up an honour, and will then have major tenace over the 10 and 8.

The end game always offers some interesting problems for solution by the expert in tenace position, and in placing the lead.

## WHIST FAMILY LAWS.

While the code of laws drawn up by the American Whist League, and finally approved and adopted at the Third Congress, [in Chicago, June 20th to 24th, 1893,] refers exclusively to the parent game of Whist, its general provisions equally apply to all members of the whist family of games. The author believes it will save much repetition and confusion to interlineate the exceptions which are necessary in order to cover the special features of such important variations as Boston, Cayenne, and Solo Whist. Where no exceptions are made, the law applies equally to these games and to Whist. The unnumbered paragraphs show the inserted laws.

It is a common practice for the framers of laws to insert rules which are simply descriptive of the manner of play. The author believes in adhering to the proper definition of a law, which is a rule carrying with it some penalty for its infraction, or defining the rights of individual players. Such a statement as that the Dummy player may not overlook his adversary's hand is not a law, because there is no penalty if he does so.

The author is not responsible for the peculiar grammar employed in both the American and English Laws.

### THE GAME.

1. A game consists of seven points, each trick above six counting one. The value of the game is determined by deducting the losers' score from seven.

In *Boston*, the game is finished in twelve deals.

In *Cayenne*, a game consists of ten points, each trick above six counting towards game according to the table of values. Honours and Slams also count towards game. Every hand must be played out, and all points made in excess of the ten required to win the game are counted on the next game: so that it is possible to win two or three games in one hand. In *Nullo*, every trick over the book is counted by the adversaries. Players cannot count out by honours alone; they must win the odd trick or stop at the score of nine. If one side goes out by cards, the other cannot score honours. The rubber is won by the side that first wins four games of ten points each. The value of the rubber is determined by adding 8 points to the winners' score for tricks, honours, and slams, and then deducting the score of the losers.

In *Solo Whist*, the game is complete in one deal, and the value of it is determined by the player's success or failure in his undertaking, and must be settled for at the end of the hand, according to the table of payments.

## FORMING THE TABLE.

2. Those first in the room have the preference. If, by reason of two or more arriving at the same time, more than four assemble, the preference among the last comers is determined by cutting, a lower cut giving the preference over all cutting higher. A complete table consists of six; the four having the preference play. Partners are determined by cutting; the highest two play against the lowest two; the lowest deals and has the choice of seats and cards.

In *Boston* and in *Solo Whist*, a table is complete with four players. In cutting for positions at the table, the lowest has the choice of seats and cards, and the two highest sit opposite each other.

3. If two players cut intermediate cards of equal value, they cut again; the lower of the new cut plays with the original lowest.

4. If three players cut cards of equal value, they cut again. If the fourth has cut the highest card, the two lowest of the new cut are partners, and the lowest deals. If the fourth has cut the lowest card, he deals, and the two highest of the new cut are partners.

5. At the end of a game, if there are more than four belonging to the table, a sufficient number of the players retire to admit those awaiting their turn to play. In determining which players remain in, those who have played a less number of consecutive games have the preference over all who have played a greater number; between two or more who have played an equal number, the preference is determined by cutting, a lower cut giving the preference over all cutting higher.

In *Boston*, *Cayenne*, and *Solo Whist*, at the end of a game a new table must be formed, those already in having no preference over fresh candidates.

6. To entitle one to enter a table, he must declare his intention to do so before any one of the players has cut for the purpose of commencing a new game or of cutting out.

In *Boston*, *Cayenne*, and *Solo Whist*, this rule does not apply.

## CUTTING.

7. In cutting, the ace is the lowest card. All must cut from the same pack. If a player exposes more than one card, he must cut again. Drawing cards from the outspread pack may be resorted to in place of cutting.

## SHUFFLING.

8. Before every deal, the cards must be shuffled. When two packs are used, the dealer's partner must collect and shuffle the cards for the ensuing deal and place them at his right hand. In all cases the dealer may shuffle last.

In *Boston* and in *Cayenne*, two packs must be used; and in *Boston* there must be no shuffling of either pack after the first deal.

9. A pack must not be shuffled during the play of a hand, nor so as to expose the face of any card.

#### CUTTING TO THE DEALER.

10. The dealer must present the pack to his right hand adversary to be cut; the adversary must take a portion from the top of the pack and place it toward the dealer; at least four cards must be left in each packet; the dealer must reunite the packets by placing the one not removed in cutting upon the other.

11. If, in cutting or reuniting the separate packets, a card is exposed, the pack must be reshuffled by the dealer, and cut again; if there is any confusion of the cards, or doubt as to the place where the pack was separated, there must be a new cut.

In *Boston*, the pack must be cut again; but not shuffled.

12. If the dealer reshuffles the pack after it has been properly cut, he loses his deal.

In *Boston*, *Cayenne*, and *Solo Whist*, the misdealer must deal again.

#### DEALING.

13. When the pack has been properly cut and reunited, the dealer must distribute the cards, one at a time, to each player in regular rotation, beginning at his left. The last, which is the trump card, must be turned up before the dealer. At the end of the hand, or when the deal is lost, the deal passes to the player next to the dealer on his left, and so on to each in turn.

In *Solo Whist*, the cards are distributed three at a time until only four remain in the pack. These are dealt one at a time, and the last turned up for trump.

In *Boston* and in *Cayenne*, the cards are dealt four at a time for two rounds, and then five at a time. No trump is turned. After the cards have been dealt the player opposite the dealer presents the still pack to be cut by the player on the dealer's left, and the top card of the portion left on the table is turned up.

In *Boston*, *Cayenne*, or *Solo Whist*, the deal is never lost. The same dealer deals again with the same pack.

14. There must be a new deal by the same dealer:—

I. If any card except the last is faced in the pack.

II. If, during the deal or during the play of the hand, the pack is proved incorrect or imperfect; but any prior score made with that pack shall stand.

15. If, during the deal, a card is exposed, the side not in fault may demand a new deal, provided neither of that side has touched a card. If a new deal does not take place, the exposed card is not liable to be called.

16. Any one dealing out of turn, or with his adversaries' pack, may be stopped before the trump card is turned, after which the deal is valid, and the packs, if changed, so remain.

In *Boston* and *Cayenne*, the dealer must be stopped before the last card is dealt.

#### MISDEALING.

17. It is a misdeal:—

- I. If the dealer omits to have the pack cut, and his adversaries discover the error before the trump card is turned, and before looking at any of their cards.
- II. If he deals a card incorrectly, and fails to correct the error before dealing another.
- III. If he counts the cards on the table or in the remainder of the pack.
- IV. If, having a perfect pack, he does not deal to each player the proper number of cards, and the error is discovered before all have played to the first trick.
- V. If he looks at the trump card before the deal is completed.
- VI. If he places the trump card face downward upon his own or any other player's cards.

A misdeal loses the deal, unless, during the deal, either of the adversaries touches a card or in any other manner interrupts the dealer.

In *Boston*, *Cayenne*, and *Solo Whist*, the misdealer deals again with the same cards. In *Boston* he forfeits a red counter to the pool for his error.

#### THE TRUMP CARD.

18. The dealer must leave the trump card face upward on the table until it is his turn to play to the first trick; if it is left on the table until after the second trick has been turned and quitted, it is liable to be called. After it has been lawfully taken up, it must not be named, and any player naming it is liable to have his highest or his lowest trump called by either adversary. A player may, however, ask what the trump suit is.

This law does not apply to *Boston*, or *Cayenne*.

In *Boston* and in *Cayenne*, no trump is turned, but a card is cut from the still pack to determine the rank of the suits. See Law 13.

In *Cayenne*, the trump suit must be named by the dealer or his partner after they have examined their cards. The

dealer has the first say, and he may select any of the four suits, or he may announce "grand," playing for the tricks without any trump suit. In Cayenne, he may announce "nullo," playing to take as few tricks as possible, there being no trump suit. If the dealer makes his choice, his partner must abide by it; but if the dealer has not a hand to justify him in deciding, he may leave the choice to his partner, who must decide. A declaration once made cannot be changed.

#### IRREGULARITIES IN THE HANDS.

19. If, at any time after all have played to the first trick, the pack being perfect, a player is found to have either more or less than his correct number of cards and his adversaries have their right number, the latter, upon the discovery of such surplus or deficiency, may consult and shall have the choice:—

- I. To have a new deal; or
- II. To have the hand played out, in which case the surplus or missing card or cards are not taken into account.

If either of the adversaries also has more or less than his correct number, there must be a new deal.

If any player has a surplus card by reason of an omission to play to a trick, his adversaries can exercise the foregoing privilege only after he has played to the trick following the one in which such omission occurred.

In *Boston*, if at any time it is discovered that a player opposed to the bidder has *less* than his proper number of cards, whether through the fault of the dealer, or through having played more than one card to a trick, he and his partners must each pay the bidder for his bid and all over-tricks. If the bidder has *less* than his proper number of cards, he is put in for one trick at least, and his adversaries may demand the hand to be played out to put him in for over-tricks. In *Misère Partout*, any player having *less* than his proper number of cards forfeits five red counters to each of the other players, and the hands are abandoned. If any player has *more* than the proper number of cards, it is a misdeal, and the misdealer deals again, after forfeiting one red counter to the pool.

In *Solo Whist*, the deal stands good. Should the player with the incorrect number of cards be the caller or his partner, the hand must be played out. Should the caller make good his proposition, he neither receives nor pays on that hand. If he fails, he must pay. Should the player with the defective hand be the adversary of the caller, he and his partners must pay the stakes on that hand, which may then be abandoned.

Should two players have an incorrect number of cards, one of them being the caller, there must be a new deal.

#### CARDS LIABLE TO BE CALLED.

20. The following cards are liable to be called by either adversary :—

- I. Every card faced upon the table otherwise than in the regular course of play, but not including a card led out of turn.
- II. Every card thrown with the one led or played to the current trick. The player must indicate the one led or played.
- III. Every card so held by a player that his partner sees any portion of its face.
- IV. All the cards in a hand lowered or shown by a player so that his partner sees more than one card of it.
- V. Every card named by the player holding it.

In *Boston* and *Solo Whist* there are no penalties for cards exposed by the single player, because he has no partner to take advantage of the information.

21. All cards liable to be called must be placed and left face upwards on the table. A player must lead or play them when called, provided he can do so without revoking. The call may be repeated at each trick until the card is played. A player cannot be prevented from leading or playing a card liable to be called ; if he can get rid of it in the course of play, no penalty remains.

In *Boston* and in *Solo Whist*, if the exposed card is a trump, the owner may be called upon by his adversary not to use it for ruffing. If the suit of the exposed card is led, whether trump or not, the adversary may demand that the card be played or not played ; or that the highest or lowest of the suit be played. If the owner of the exposed card has no other of the suit, the penalty is paid.

Penalties must be exacted by players in their proper turn, or the right to exact them is lost. For instance : In *Solo Whist*, A is the proposer, B the acceptor, and B has an exposed card in front of him. When Y plays he should say whether or not he wishes to call the exposed card. If he says nothing, B must await Z's decision.

22. If a player leads a card better than any his adversaries hold of the suit, and then leads one or more other cards without waiting for his partner to play, the latter may be called upon by either adversary to take the first trick, and the other cards thus improperly played are liable to be called ; it makes no difference whether he plays them one after the other, or throws them all on the table



together, after the first card is played, the others are liable to be called.

23. A player having a card liable to be called must not play another until the adversaries have stated whether or not they wish to call the card liable to the penalty. If he plays another card without awaiting the decision of the adversaries, such other card also is liable to be called.

#### LEADING OUT OF TURN.

24. If any player leads out of turn, a suit may be called from him or his partner, the first time it is the turn of either of them to lead. The penalty can be enforced only by the adversary on the right of the player from whom a suit can be lawfully called,

If a player, so called on to lead a suit, has none of it, or if all have played to the false lead, no penalty can be enforced. If all have not played to the trick, the cards erroneously played to such false lead are not liable to be called and must be taken back.

In *Boston*, if the adversary of the bidder leads out of turn, and the bidder has not played to the trick, the latter may call a suit from the player whose proper turn it is to lead: or, if it is the bidder's own lead, he may call a suit when next the adversaries obtain the lead; or he may claim the card played in error as an exposed card. If the bidder has played to the trick the error cannot be rectified. Should the bidder lead out of turn, and the player on his left follow the erroneous lead, the error cannot be corrected.

In *Misères*, a lead out of turn by the bidder's adversary immediately loses the game, but there is no penalty for leading out of turn in *Misère Partout*.

#### PLAYING OUT OF TURN.

25. If the third hand plays before the second, the fourth hand also may play before the second.

26. If the third hand has not played, and the fourth hand plays before the second, the latter may be called upon by the third hand to play his highest or lowest card of the suit led or, if he has none, to trump or not to trump the trick.

In *Boston*, and in *Solo Whist*, should an adversary of the single player play out of turn, the bidder may call upon the adversary who has not played to play his highest or lowest of the suit led, or to win or not to win the trick. If the adversary of a *Misère* player leads or plays out of turn, the bidder may immediately claim the stakes. In *Solo Whist*, the individual player in fault must pay for himself and for his partners.

#### ABANDONED HANDS.

27. If all four players throw their cards on the table, face upwards, no further play of that hand is permitted. The result of

the hand, as then claimed or admitted, is established, provided that, if a revoke is discovered, the revoke penalty attaches.

In *Solo Whist*, should the bidder abandon his hand, he and his partner, if any, must pay the stakes and settle for all over-tricks as if they had lost all the remaining tricks. If a player, not the bidder, abandons his hand, his partner or partners may demand the hand to be played out with the abandoned hand exposed, and liable to be called by the adversary. If they defeat the call they win nothing, but the player who abandoned his hand must pay the caller just as if he had been successful. If the partner or partners of the exposed hand lose, they must pay their share of the losses.

#### REVOKING,

28. A revoke is a renounce in error, not corrected in time. A player renounces in error, when, holding one or more cards of the suit led, he plays a card of a different suit.

A renounce in error may be corrected by the player making it, before the trick in which it occurs has been turned and quitted, unless either he or his partner, whether in his right turn or otherwise, has led or played to the following trick.

29. If a player corrects his mistake in time to save a revoke, the card improperly played by him is liable to be called; any player or players, who have played after him, may withdraw their cards and substitute others; the cards so withdrawn are not liable to be called.

In *Boston*, if the bidder revokes and corrects himself in time, there is no penalty unless an adversary has played after him, in which case the bidder's card may be claimed as exposed. The player who followed him may then amend his play. If a player opposed to the bidder discovers and corrects a revoke made by himself or any of his partners, the bidder may either claim the card played in error as exposed, or may call on the revoking player for his highest or lowest of the suit led.

30. The penalty for revoking is the transfer of two tricks from the revoking side to their adversaries; it can be enforced for as many revokes as occur during the hand. The revoking side cannot win the game in that hand; if both sides revoke, neither can win the game in that hand.

In *Cayenne* and *Solo Whist*, as a penalty for a revoke, the adversaries of the revoking player may take from him three tricks; or may deduct the value of three tricks from his score; or may add the value of three tricks to their own score. The revoking players cannot score slams or game that hand. All slams must be made independently of the revoke penalty.

In *Boston*, the penalty for a revoke on the part of the bidder is that he is put in for one trick, and must pay four red counters into the next pool. Should an adversary of the bidder revoke, he must pay four red counters into the next pool, and he and his partners must pay the bidder as if he had been successful. On the discovery of a revoke in Boston the hands are usually abandoned; but the cards should be shown to the table, in order that each player may be satisfied that no other revoke has been made. A player revoking in *Misère Partout* pays five red counters to each of his adversaries and the hands are then abandoned.

31. The revoking player and his partner may require the hand in which the revoke has been made, to be played out, and score all points made by them up to the score of six.

In *Boston*, the hands are abandoned after the revoke is claimed and proved.

In *Cayenne*, the revoking players must stop at nine.

In *Solo Whist*, the revoking players must pay all the red counters involved in the call, whether they win or lose, but they may play the hand out to save over-tricks. If the caller or his partner revokes they must jointly pay the losses involved; but if an adversary of the caller revokes, he must individually pay the entire loss unless he can show that the callers would have won in spite of the revoke. Should he be able to do this, his partners must stand their share of the losses, but the revoking player must individually pay for the three tricks taken as the revoke penalty. If the single player revokes, either on solo or abundance, he loses the red counters involved in any case, but may play the hand out to save over-tricks. If the single player in a *misère* or a slam revokes, the hand is abandoned and he must pay the stakes. If an adversary of a *misère* or a slam revokes, he must individually pay the whole stakes.

32. At the end of a hand, the claimants of a revoke may search all the tricks. If the cards have been mixed, the claim may be urged and proved, if possible; but no proof is necessary and the revoke is established, if, after it has been claimed, the accused player or his partner mixes the cards before they have been examined to the satisfaction of the adversaries.

33. The revoke can be claimed at any time before the cards have been presented and cut for the following deal, but not thereafter.

#### MISCELLANEOUS.

34. Any one, during the play of a trick and before the cards have been touched for the purpose of gathering them together, may demand that the players draw their cards.

35. If any one, prior to his partner playing, calls attention in any manner to the trick or to the score, the adversary last to play to

the trick may require the offender's partner to play his highest or lowest of the suit led or, if he has none, to trump or not to trump the trick.

36. If any player says "I can win the rest," "The rest are ours," "We have the game," or words to that effect, his partner's cards must be laid upon the table and are liable to be called.

37. When a trick has been turned and quitted, it must not again be seen until after the hand has been played. A violation of this law subjects the offender's side to the same penalty as in case of a lead out of turn.

In *Boston*, *Cayenne*, and *Solo Whist*, it is still the custom to permit looking at the last trick, except in *Misères*.

The penalty in a *misère* game is the same as for a lead out of turn.

38. If a player is lawfully called upon to play the highest or lowest of a suit, or to trump or not to trump a trick, or to lead a suit, and unnecessarily fails to comply, he is liable to the same penalty as if he had revoked.

39. In all cases where a penalty has been incurred, the offender must await the decision of the adversaries. If either of them, with or without his partner's consent, demands a penalty to which they are entitled, such decision is final. If the wrong adversary demands a penalty, or a wrong penalty is demanded, none can be enforced.

---

The following rules belong to the established code of Whist Etiquette. They are formulated with a view to discourage and repress certain improprieties of conduct, therein pointed out, which are not reached by the laws. The courtesy which marks the intercourse of gentlemen will regulate other more obvious cases.

1. No conversation should be indulged in during the play, except such as is allowed by the laws of the game.

2. No player should in any manner whatsoever give any intimation as to the state of his hand or of the game, or of approval or disapproval of a play.

3. No player should lead until the preceding trick is turned and quitted.

4. No player should, after having led a winning card, draw a card from his hand for another lead until his partner has played to the current trick.

5. No player should play a card in any manner so as to call particular attention to it, nor should he demand that the cards be placed in order to attract the attention of his partner.

6. No player should purposely incur a penalty because he is willing to pay it, nor should he make a second revoke in order to conceal one previously made

7. No player should take advantage of information imparted by his partner through a breach of etiquette.

8. No player should object to referring a disputed question of fact to a bystander who professes himself uninterested in the result of the game, and able to decide the question.

9. Bystanders should not in any manner call attention to, or give any intimation concerning the play or the state of the game, during the play of a hand. They should not look over the hand of a player without his permission; nor should they walk round the table to look at the different hands.

#### ERRONEOUS SCORES.

Any error in the trick score may be corrected before the last card has been dealt in the following deal; or if the error occurs in the last hand of a game or rubber, it may be corrected before the score is agreed to. Errors in other scores may be corrected at any time before the final score of the game or rubber is agreed to.

#### BIDDING.

In *Boston*, or *Solo Whist*, any player making a bid must stand by it, and either play or pay. Should he make a bid in error and correct himself, he must stand by the first bid unless he is overcalled, when he may either amend his bid or pass.

---



# THE POKER FAMILY.

---

Properly speaking, Poker is not the founder, but simply the most famous representative of a very ancient and always very popular family of games, all of which can be traced to one source, the old French game of Gilet, which was undoubtedly of Italian origin, perhaps a variety of Primero. Gilet we find changed to Brehan in the time of Charles IX., and although Brehan is no longer played, the word is still used in all French games to signify triplets, and "brehan-carré" is the common French term for four of a kind in *le poker Americain*. From Brehan we trace the French games of Bouillotte, and Ambigu, and the English game of Brag; but the game of poker, as first played in the United States, five cards to each player from a twenty-card pack, is undoubtedly the Persian game of *as nas*.

The peculiar and distinguishing characteristic of Poker we find well described by Seymour, in his chapter on "Brag," in the "Court Gamester," 1719: "The endeavour to impose on the judgment of the rest who play, and particularly on the person who chiefly offers to oppose you, by boasting or bragging of the cards in your hand. Those who by fashioning their looks and gestures, can give a proper air to their actions, as will so deceive an unskilful antagonist, that sometimes a pair of fives, trays or deuces, in such a hand, with the advantage of his composed countenance, and subtle manner of over-awing the other, shall out-brag a much greater hand, and win the stakes, with great applause and laughter on his side from the whole company."

Quite a number of card games retain the feature of pairs, triplets, sequences, and flushes, but omit the element of brag or bluff, and can therefore hardly be considered full-blooded members of the poker family. Whiskey Poker, for instance, has really little or nothing in common with the true spirit of poker, and is simply the very ancient game of Commerce, played with five cards instead of three. The descriptions of this game in the earliest Hoyles betray its French origin; particularly in the use of the piquet pack; the French custom of cutting to the left and dealing to the right; and the use of the words "brehan," and "tricon." In later descriptions of the "new form" of Commerce, about 1835, we find 52 cards are used, and dealt from left to right, and the names of the combinations are changed to "pairs-royal," "sequences," and "flushes."

There appears to be little or nothing modern in the game of

Poker but the increased number of cards dealt to each player, which makes it possible for one to hold double combinations, such as two pairs, triplets with a pair, etc. The old games were all played with three cards only, and the "brelan-carré," or four of a kind, could be made only by combining the three cards held by the player with the card which was sometimes turned up on the talon, or remainder of the pack. The blind, the straddle, the raise, the bluff, table stakes, and freeze-out, are all to be found in Bouillotte, which flourished in the time of the French Revolution, and the "draw" from the remainder of the pack existed in the old French game of Ambigu.

The first mention we have of poker in print is in Green's Reformed Gambler, which contains a description of a game of poker played on a river steamer in June, 1834. The author undertook a series of investigations with a view to discovering the origin of poker, the results of which were published in the N. Y. Sun, May 22, 1904. It would seem that poker came from Persia to this country by way of New Orleans. The French settlers in Louisiana, recognizing the similarity between the combinations held in the newcomer from the East, *as nas*, and those with which they were already familiar in their own game of poque, called the Persian game poque, instead of *as nas*, and our present word, "poker," seems to be nothing but a mispronunciation of the French term, dividing it into two syllables, as if it were "po-que."

There is no authoritative code of laws for the game of Poker, simply because the best clubs do not admit the game to their card rooms, and consequently decry the necessity for adopting any laws for its government. In the absence of any official code, the daily press is called upon for hundreds of decisions every week. The author has gathered and compared a great number of these newspaper rulings, and has drawn from them and other sources to form a brief code of poker laws, which will be found amply sufficient to cover all irregularities for which any penalty can be enforced, or which interfere with the rights of any individual player.

## DRAW POKER.

**CARDS.** Poker is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, ranking: A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2; the ace being the highest or lowest in play, according to the wish of the holder, but ranking below the deuce in cutting. In some localities a special pack of sixty cards is used, the eight extra cards being elevens and twelves in each suit, which rank above the ten, and below the Jack. It is very unusual to play



Poker with two packs.



**COUNTERS, or CHIPS.** Although not absolutely necessary, counters are much more convenient than money. The most common are red, white, and blue circular chips, which should "stack up" accurately, so that equal numbers may be measured without counting them. The red are usually worth five whites, and the blue worth five reds, or twenty-five whites. At the beginning of the game one player should act as banker, and be responsible for all counters at the table. It is usual for each player to purchase, at the beginning of the game, the equivalent of 100 white counters in white, red, and blue.

**PLAYERS.** Poker may be played by any number of persons from two to seven. When there are more than seven candidates for play, two tables should be formed, unless the majority vote against it. In some localities it is the custom for the dealer to take no cards when there are eight players, which is thought to make a better game than two tables of only four players each. When the sixty-card pack is used, eight players may take cards.

**CUTTING.** The players who shall form the table, and their positions at the beginning of the game, must be decided by throwing round a card to each candidate, face up, or by drawing cards from an outspread pack. If there are more than eight candidates, the four cutting the highest cards should play together at one table, and the others at another table. If there are an even number of candidates, the tables divide evenly, but if the number is odd, the smaller table is formed by those cutting the highest cards.

The table formed, the pack must be shuffled and spread, and positions drawn for. The player cutting the lowest card has the choice of seats, and must deal the first hand. The player cutting the next lowest has the next choice, and so on, until all are seated.

**TIES.** If the first cut does not decide, those tying must cut again. Should two or more players cut cards of equal value, the new cut will decide nothing but the tie; for even should one of those cutting to decide a tie draw a card lower than one previously cut by another player, the original low cannot be deprived of his right. For instance: there are six players.

First cut is :—



Second cut is :—



The 5 and 7 have the first and second choice of seats; the 2 and 4 the third and fourth choice.

**PLAYERS' POSITIONS.** There are only three distinctive positions at the poker table: the *dealer*; the *pone*; and the *age*. The pone is the player on the dealer's right, and the age is the one on his left.

**STAKES.** Before play begins, or a card is dealt, the value of the counters must be decided, and a *limit* must be agreed upon. There are four limitations in Draw Poker, and they govern or fix the maximum of the four principal stakes: the blind; the straddle; the ante; and the bet or raise.

The *blind* is the amount put up by the age before he sees anything, and should be limited to one white counter, as the blind is the smallest stake in the game. In some places it is permissible for the age to make the blind any amount he pleases within half the betting limit; but such a practice is a direct violation of the principles of the game, which require that the amount of the blind shall bear a fixed proportion to the limit of the betting.

The *straddle* is a double blind, sometimes put up by the player to the left of the age, and like the blind, without seeing anything. This allows the player on the left of the straddler to double again, or put up four times the amount of the original blind. This straddling process is usually limited to one-fourth of the betting limit; that is, if the betting limit is fifty counters, the doubling of the blind must cease when a player puts up sixteen, for another double would carry it to thirty-two, which would be more than half the limit for a bet or raise.

The *ante* is the amount put up by each player after he has seen his cards, but before he draws to improve his hand. The terms "ante" and "blind" are often confused. The blind is a compulsory stake, and must be put up before the player has seen anything. He does not even know whether or not he will be dealt a foul hand, or whether it will be a misdeal. He has not even seen the cards cut. The ante, on the other hand, is a voluntary bet, and is a sort of entrance fee, which is paid before the hand is complete, but after the first part of it has been seen. The ante is always twice the amount of the blind, whatever that may be. If the blind has been increased by the process of straddling, the ante must be twice the amount of the last straddle, but must not exceed the betting limit. This is why the straddles are limited.

The largest *bet*, or *raise*, which a player is allowed to make is generally known as *the limit*. This limit is not the greatest amount that may be bet on one hand, but is the maximum amount by which one player may increase his bet over that of another player. For instance: If no one has bet, A may bet the limit on his hand; B may then put up a similar amount, which is called *seeing* him, and may then *raise* him any further sum within the limit fixed for betting. If B raises the limit, it is obvious that he has placed in the pool twice the amount of the betting limit; but

his *raise* over A's bet is within the betting limit. If another player should raise B again, he would be putting up three times the limit; A's bet, B's raise, and his own raise.

In the absence of any definite arrangement, it is usual to make the betting limit fifty times the amount of the blind. That is, if the value of the blind, or one white counter, is five cents, the limit of a bet or raise will be two dollars and a half, or two blue counters. This fixes the ante at two white counters, or ten cents, in the absence of straddles, and limits the straddling to the fourth player from the age, or sixteen white counters. This proportion makes a very fair game, and gives a player some opportunity to vary his betting according to his estimate of the value of his hand. Where the blind is five cents, the ante ten, and the limit twenty-five, the game ceases to be Poker, and becomes a species of *show-down*. It is universally admitted by good judges that a player can lose more money at twenty-five cent show-down than he will at two-and-a-half Poker.

There are several other variations in the manner of arranging the stakes and the betting limits, but they will be better understood after the game itself has been described.

**DEALING.** The age having put up the amount of the blind, and the cards having been shuffled by any player who chooses to avail himself of the privilege, the dealer last, they are presented to the pone to be cut. The pone may either cut them, or signify that he does not wish to do so by tapping the pack with his knuckles. Should the pone decline to cut, no other player can insist on his so doing, nor do it for him. Beginning on his left, the dealer distributes the cards face down one at a time in rotation until each player has received five cards. The deal passes to the left, and each player deals in turn.

**IRREGULARITIES IN THE DEAL.** The following rules regarding the deal should be strictly observed:—

If any card is found faced in the pack the dealer must deal again. Should the dealer, or the wind, turn over any card, the player to whom it is dealt must take it; but the same player cannot be compelled to take two exposed cards. Should such a combination occur, there must be a fresh deal by the same dealer. If the player exposes his cards himself, he has no remedy.

Should any player receive more or less than his correct number of cards, and discover the error before he looks at any card in his hand, or lifts it from the table, he may demand a fresh deal if no bet has been made; or he may ask the dealer to give him another from the pack if he has too few; or to draw a card if he has too many. Cards so drawn must not be exposed, but should be placed on the bottom of the pack.

If the number of the hands dealt does not agree with the number of players, there must be a new deal.

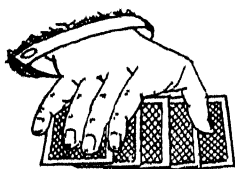
If two or more cards are dealt at a time, the dealer may take back the card or cards improperly dealt if he discovers the error before dealing to the next player; otherwise there must be a new deal.

A misdeal does not lose the deal. The misdealer must deal again.

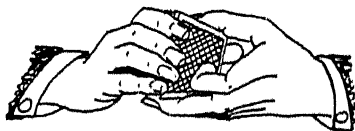
Should a player take up his hand, or look at any card in it, he is not entitled to any remedy. If he has more or less than the proper number of cards, his hand is foul, and must be abandoned, the player forfeiting any interest he may have in that deal, and any stake he may have put up on that hand. In all gambling houses, the invariable rule is to call a short hand foul; although there should be no objection to playing against a man with only four cards, which cannot be increased to five, even by the draw.

**STRADDLING.** During the deal, or at any time before he looks at any card in his hand, the player to the left of the age may *straddle the blind* by putting up double the amount put up by the age. The only privilege this secures to the straddler is that of having the last *say* as to whether or not he will make good his ante and draw cards. Should he refuse to straddle, no other player can do so; but if he straddles, the player on his left can straddle him again by doubling the amount he puts up, which will be four times the amount of the blind. This will open the privilege to the next player on the left again, and so on until the limit of straddling is reached; but if one player refuses to straddle, no other following him can do so. Good players seldom or never straddle, as the only effect of it is to increase the amount of the ante.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The cards dealt, the players take up and examine their hands. The careful poker player always "spreads" his cards before taking them up, to be sure that he has neither more nor less than five, and he lifts them in



Spreading.



Squeezing.

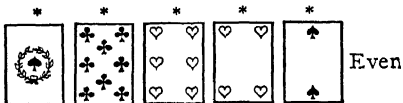
such a way that the palm and fingers of his right hand conceal the face of the first card, while the thumb of the left hand separates the others just sufficiently to allow him to read the index or "squeezer" marks on the edges.

The object of this examination is to ascertain the value of the hand dealt to him, and to see whether or not it is worth while trying to improve it by discarding certain cards and drawing others in their place. The player should not only be thoroughly familiar with the relative value of the various combinations which may be held at Poker, but should have some idea of the chances for and against better combinations being held by other players, and should also know the odds against improving any given combination by drawing to it.

The value of this technical knowledge will be obvious when it is remembered that a player may have a hand dealt to him which he knows is comparatively worthless as it is, and the chances for improving which are only one in twelve, but which he must bet on at odds of one in three, or abandon it. Such a proceeding would evidently be a losing game, for if the experiment were tried twelve times the player would win once only, and would lose eleven times. This would be paying eleven dollars to win three; yet poker players are continually doing this.

**RANK OF THE HANDS.** The various combinations at Poker outrank one another in the following order, beginning with the lowest. Cards with a star over them add nothing to the value of the hand, and may be discarded. The figures on the right are the odds against such a hand being dealt to any individual player.

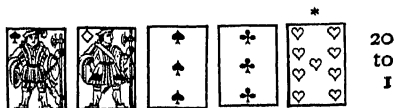
Five cards of various suits; not in sequence, and without a pair.



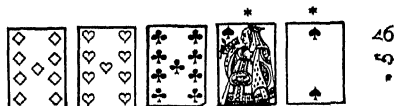
**One Pair.** Two cards of one kind and three useless cards.



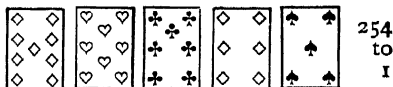
**Two Pairs.** Two of one kind; two of another kind; and one useless card.



**Threes.** Three of one kind, and two useless cards.



**Straight.** All five cards in sequence, but of various suits.



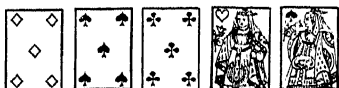
254  
to  
I

**Flush.** All five cards of one suit, but not in sequence.



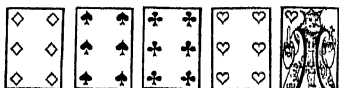
508  
to  
I

**Full Hand.** Three of one kind, and two of another kind; no useless cards.



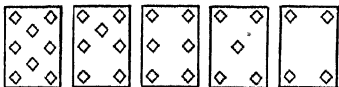
693  
to  
I

**Fours.** Four cards of one kind, and one useless card.



4164  
to  
I

**Straight Flush.** Five cards of the same suit, in sequence with one another.



72102  
to  
I

**Royal Flush.** A straight flush which is ace high.



649739  
to  
I

When hands are of the same rank, their relative value is determined by the denomination of the cards they contain. For instance: A hand without a pair, sequence, or flush is called by its highest card; "ace high," or "Jack high," as the case may be. As between two such hands, the one containing the highest card would be the better, but either would be outclassed by a hand with a pair in it, however small. A hand with a pair of nines in it would outrank one with a pair of sevens, even though the cards accompanying the nines were only a deuce, three and four, while those with the sevens were an ace, King and Queen. But should the pairs be alike in both hands; such as tens, the highest card outside the pair would decide the rank of the hands, and if those were also alike, the next card, or perhaps the fifth would have to be considered. Should the three odd cards in each hand be identical, the hands would be a tie, and would divide any pool to which each had a claim. Two flushes would decide their rank in the same manner. If both were ace and Jack high, the third card in one being a nine, and in the other an eight, the nine would win. In full hands the rank of the triplets decides the value of the hand. Three Queens and a pair of deuces will

beat three Jacks and a pair of aces. In straights, the highest card of the sequence wins; not necessarily the highest card in the hand, for a player may have a sequence of A 2 3 4 5, which is only five high, and would be beaten by a sequence of 2 3 4 5 6. The ace must either begin or end a sequence, for a player is not allowed to call such a combination as Q K A 2 3 a straight.

It was evidently the intention of those who invented Poker that the hands most difficult to obtain should be the best, and should outrank hands that occurred more frequently. A glance at the table of odds will show that this principle has been carried out as far as the various denominations of hands go; but when we come to the members of the groups the principle is violated. In hands not containing a pair, for instance, ace high will beat Jack high, but it is much more common to hold ace high than Jack high. The exact proportion is 503 to 127. A hand of five cards only seven high but not containing a pair, is rarer than a flush; the proportion being 408 to 510. When we come to two pairs, we find the same inversion of probability and value. A player will hold "aces up," that is, a pair of aces and another pair inferior to aces, twelve times as often as he will hold "threes up." In the opinion of the author, in all hands that do not contain a pair, "seven high" should be the best instead of the lowest, and ace high should be the lowest. In hands containing two pairs, "threes up" should be the highest, and "aces up" the lowest.

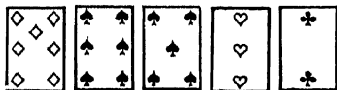
**ECCENTRIC HANDS.** In addition to the regular poker hands, which are those already given, there are a few combinations which are played in some parts of the country, especially in the South, either as matter of local custom or by agreement. When any of these are played, it would be well for the person who is not accustomed to them to have a distinct understanding in advance, just what combinations shall be allowed and what hands they will beat. There are four of these eccentric hands, and the figures on the right are the odds against their being dealt to any individual player:

**Blaze.** Five picture cards. Beat two pairs; but lose to three of a kind.



3008  
to  
1

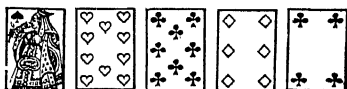
**Tiger.** Must be seven high and deuce low; without a pair, sequence or flush. It beats a straight; but loses to a flush.



636  
to  
1

**Skip, or Dutch Straight.**

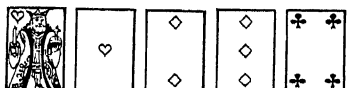
Any sequence of alternate cards, of various suits. Beats two pairs and a blaze.



423  
to  
1

**Round-the-Corner.**

Any straight in which the ace connects the top and bottom. Beats threes; but any regular straight will beat it.



848  
to  
1

The rank of these extra hands has evidently been assigned by guess-work. The absurdity of their appraised value will be evident if we look at the first of them, the blaze, which is usually played to beat two pairs. As it is impossible to have a blaze which does not contain two pairs of court cards, all that they beat is aces up or kings up. If it were ranked, like other poker hands, by the difficulty of getting it, a blaze should beat a full hand.

All these hands are improperly placed in the scale of poker values, as will be seen by comparing the odds against them. In any games to which these eccentric hands are admitted, the rank of all the combinations would be as follows, if poker principles were followed throughout:—

DENOMINATION.	ODDS AGAINST.
One pair . . . . .	1 1/4 to 1
Two pairs . . . . .	20 to 1
Three of a kind . . . . .	46 to 1
Sequence or straight . . . . .	254 to 1
Skip or Dutch straight . . . . .	423 to 1
Flush . . . . .	508 to 1
Tiger [Big or Little Dog] . . . . .	636 to 1
Full hand . . . . .	693 to 1
Round-the-corner straight . . . . .	848 to 1
Blaze . . . . .	3008 to 1
Four of a kind . . . . .	4164 to 1
Straight flush . . . . .	72192 to 1
Royal Flush [Ace high] . . . . .	649739 to 1

When the true rank of these eccentric hands is not allowed, local custom must decide what they will beat.

**JOKER POKER, or MISTIGRIS.** It is not uncommon to leave the joker, or blank card, in the pack. The player to whom this card is dealt may call it anything he pleases. If he has a pair of aces, and the joker, he may call them three aces. If he has four clubs, and the joker, he may call it a flush; or he may make



the joker fill out a straight. If he has four of a kind, and the joker, he can beat a royal flush by calling his hand five of a kind. In case of ties, the hand with the mistigris wins; that is to say, an ace and the joker will beat two aces.

A player holding the joker may even call it a duplicate of a card already in his hand. For instance; he might hold the A J 8 5 of hearts and the joker against the A K Q 7 3 of clubs. If he calls the joker the king of hearts, the club flush still beats him as it is queen next. He must call it the ace, which makes his flush ace-ace high.

**PROBABILITIES.** In estimating the value of his hand as compared to that of any other player, before the draw, the theory of probabilities is of little or no use, and the calculations will vary with the number of players engaged. For instance: If five are playing, some one should have two pairs every fourth deal, because in four deals twenty hands will be given out. If seven are playing, it is probable that five of them will hold a pair of some kind before the draw. Unfortunately, these calculations are not of the slightest practical use to a poker player, because although three of a kind may not be dealt to a player more than once in forty-five times on the average, it is quite a common occurrence for two players to have threes dealt to each of them at the same time. The considerations which must guide the player in judging the comparative value of his hand, both before and after the draw, must be left until we come to the suggestions for good play.

**THE ANTE.** The player to the left of the age is the one who must make the first announcement of his opinion of his hand, unless he has straddled, in which case the player on the left of the last straddler has the first "*say*." If he considers his hand good enough to draw to, let us say a pair of Kings, he must place in the pool, or toward the centre of the table, double the amount of the blind, or of the last straddle, if any. This is called the ante, because it is made before playing the hand, whereas the blind is made before seeing it. The player is not restricted to double the amount of the blind or straddle; he may bet as much more as he pleases within the limit fixed at the beginning of the game. For instance: If there has been only one straddle he must put up four white counters or pass out of the game for that deal. But if he puts up the four, he may put up as many more as he pleases within the limit, which is two blues, or fifty whites. This is called *raising the ante*. If he does not care to pay twice the amount of the blind or straddle for the privilege of drawing cards to improve his hand, he must throw his cards face downward on the table in front of the player whose turn it will be to deal next. Reasonable time must be allowed for a player to make his decision; but having made it, he must abide by it; a hand once

thrown down cannot be taken up again, and counters once placed in the pool, and the hand removed from them, cannot be taken out again, even though placed in the pool by mistake.

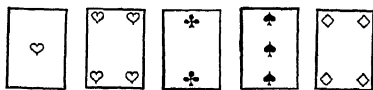
The player who has the first say having made his decision, the player next him on the left must then decide. He must put into the pool an amount equal to that deposited by the first player, or abandon his hand. Suppose there has been no straddle, and that all conclude to *stay*, as it is called. They each in turn put up two white counters until it comes to the age. The one white counter he has already put up as a blind belongs to the pool, but by adding one to it he can make his ante good, and draw cards, always provided no player has raised the ante. If any player has put more counters into the pool than the amount of the ante, all the other players must put up a like amount, or throw down their hands. Suppose five play, and A has the age. B antes two counters, and C puts up seven, the ante and a raise of five. If D and E come in, they must put up seven counters also; and the age, A, must put up six to make his ante good. It now comes to B, who must either lose the two he has already put up, or add five more to them. Let us suppose that D puts up the seven, and that E, the dealer, puts up twelve. This will force the age to put up eleven; B to put up ten; and C to put up five more. This will make each player's ante an equal amount, twelve counters, and they will then be ready to draw cards. No one can now raise the ante any further, because it is no one's turn to "say."

It will thus be seen that every player in his turn can do one of three things, which are sometimes called the *a b c* of Poker: He can *Abdicate*; by throwing down his hand, and abandoning whatever money he has already placed in the pool. He can *Better*; by putting up more money than any player before him, which is sometimes called "going better." Or, he can *Call*, by making his amount in the pool equal to the highest bet already made.

Should any player increase the ante to such an extent that none of the others care to call him, they must of course throw down their hands, and as there is no one to play against him, the one who made the last increase in the ante takes down all the counters in the pool. This is called *taking the pot*, and the cards are gathered, shuffled, and dealt again, the deal passing to the player who was the age.

**DRAWING CARDS.** All those who have made the ante good have the privilege of discarding, face downward, as many cards as they please, in the place of which they may draw others. The age has the first draw, and can take any number of cards from one to five, or he may *stand pat*, refusing to draw any. A player cannot receive from the dealer more or less cards than he discards; so that if a person is allowed to play with a short hand, of four cards only, he will still have only four cards after

the draw. If his hand was foul, it will remain so after the draw. In drawing, a player may keep or discard what cards he pleases. There is no rule to prevent his throwing away a pair of aces and keeping three clubs if he is so inclined; but the general practice is for the player to retain whatever pairs or triplets he may have, and to draw to them. Four cards of a straight or a flush may be drawn to in the same way, and some make a practice of drawing to one or two high cards, such as an ace and a king, when they have no other chance. Some hands offer opportunities to vary the draw. For instance: A player has dealt to him a small pair; but finds he has also four cards of a straight. He can discard three cards and draw to the pair; or one card, and draw to the straight; or two cards, keeping his ace in the hope of making two good pairs, aces up. The details of the best methods of drawing to various combinations will be discussed when we come to suggestions for good play.



In drawing cards, each player in turn who has made good his ante, beginning with the ace, must ask the dealer for the number of cards he wants. The demand must be made so that every player can hear, because after the cards have been delivered by the dealer no one has the right to be informed how many cards any player drew. When the dealer comes to his own hand, he must distinctly announce the number of cards he takes. He must also inform any player asking him how many cards he took, provided the question is put before the player asking it has made a bet, and it is put by a player who has made good his ante to draw cards.

In dealing the cards for the draw, the pack is not cut again, the cards being dealt from the top, beginning where the deal before the draw left off. As each player asks for his cards he must discard those he wants replaced, and he must receive the entire number he asks for before the next player is helped. In some places it is the custom for all those who have made good the ante to discard before any cards are given out. This is not good poker, as it prevents the dealer from seeing that the number discarded is equal to the number asked for. Should any card be found faced in the pack, it must be placed on the table among the discards. Should any card be exposed by the dealer in giving out the cards, or be blown over by the wind before the player has touched it, such card must not be taken by the player under any circumstances, but must be placed with the discards on the table. A player whose card is exposed in this manner does not receive a card to take its place until all the other players have been helped. [The object of this rule is to prevent a dealer from altering the run of the cards in the draw.]

Should a player ask for an incorrect number of cards and they be given him, he must take them if the next player has been helped. If too many, he must discard before seeing them. If too few, he must play them. If he has taken them up and has too many, his hand is foul, and shuts him out of that pool. If the dealer gives himself more cards than he needs he is compelled to take them. For instance: He draws three cards to a pair; but on taking up his hand he finds he had triplets, and really wanted only two cards. He cannot change his draw, and must take the three cards he has dealt off. There is a penalty for not following the strict rule of the game, which is for each player, including the dealer, to discard before he draws.

Should the dealer give any player more cards than he asked for, and the player discover the error before taking them up or looking at any of them, the dealer must withdraw the surplus card, and place it on the top of the pack. Should the dealer give a player fewer cards than he asks for, he must supply the deficiency when his attention is called to it, without waiting to supply the other players. If a player has more or less than five cards after the draw, his hand is foul, and he must abandon it, together with all he may have already staked in the pool.

The dealer may be asked how many cards he drew; but he is not allowed to say how many cards he gave to any other player. Each player must watch the draw for himself.

The last card of the pack must not be dealt. When only two cards remain, the discards and abandoned hands must be gathered, shuffled, and presented to the pone to be cut, and the deal then completed.

**BETTING UP THE HANDS.** All those who made good the ante having been supplied with cards, the next player who holds cards on the left of the age must make the first bet. Should the age have declined to make good his ante, or have passed out before the draw, that does not transfer the privilege of having the last say to any other player; because the peculiar privilege of the age,—having the last say,—is given in consideration of the blind, which he is *compelled* to pay, and no other player can have that privilege, because no other player is obliged to play. Even if a player has straddled the blind, he must still make the first bet after the draw, because he straddled of his own free will, and knew at the time that the only advantage the straddle would give him was the last say as to whether or not he would make good his ante and draw cards.

If the player next to the age has passed out before the draw, the next player to the left who still holds cards must make the first bet. The player whose turn it is to bet must either do so, or throw his hand face downward in front of the player whose turn it will be to deal next. If he bets, he can put up any amount from

one white counter to the limit, two blues. It then becomes the turn of the player next on his left who still holds cards to abdicate, better, or call. If he calls, he does so by placing in the pool an amount equal to that staked by the last player, and it then becomes the turn of the next player on the left to say what he will do. But if he goes better, he adds to the amount staked by the player on his right any further sum he sees fit, within the limit of two blues. Each player in turn has the same privilege, the age having the last say.

Suppose five play, and that A has the age. B has straddled, and all but the dealer have made good the ante and drawn cards. There are sixteen white counters in the pool, B's straddle having made the ante four instead of two. Suppose B bets a red counter, and C then throws down his hand. D *sees* B, by putting up a red counter; and he then *raises* him, by putting up two blues, increasing his bet as much as the limit will allow him. The age must now abandon his hand or put up one red and two blues to call D, without knowing what B proposes to do. Let us suppose he sees D, and raises another two blues. B must now retire, or put up four blues to call A, without knowing what D will do. He can raise the bet another two blues, or one blue, or a red, or a white even, if he is so minded. If he declines to raise, he cannot prevent D from so doing, because D still has the privilege of replying to A's raise, and as long as a player has any *say* about anything, whether it is to abdicate, better, or call, he can do any one of the three. It is only when there is no bet made, or when his own bet is either not called or not raised, that a player has nothing to say. Let us suppose B puts up the four blues to call A. It is now D's turn. If he puts up two blues, each will have an equal amount in the pool, and as no one will have anything more to say, the betting must stop, and the hands must be shown. But if D raises A again, by putting up four blues instead of two, he gives A another say, and perhaps A will raise D in turn. Although B may have had quite enough of this, he must either put up four more blues, the two raised by D and the further raise by A, or he must abandon his hand. If B throws down his cards he loses all claim to what he has already staked in the pool, four blues and a red, besides his straddle and ante. Let us suppose he drops out, and that D just calls A, by putting up two blues only, making the amount he has in the pool exactly equal to A's, eight blues and a red, besides the antes. This prevents A from going any further, because it is not his turn to say anything. He is not asked to meet any one's raise, nor to make any bet himself, but simply to show his hand, in order to see whether or not it is better than D's.

**SHOWING HANDS.** It is the general usage that the hand *called* must be shown first. In this case A's hand is called, for D was the one who called a halt on A in the betting, and

stopped him from going any further. The strict laws of the game require that both hands must be shown, and if there are more than two in the final call, all must be shown to the table. The excuse generally made for not showing the losing hand is that the man with the worse hand paid to see the better hand; but it must not be forgotten that the man with the better hand has paid exactly the same amount, and is equally entitled to see the worse hand. There is an excellent rule in some clubs that a player refusing to show his hand in a call shall refund the amount of the antes to all the other players, or pay all the antes in the next jack pot. The rule of showing both hands is a safeguard against collusion between two players, one of whom might have a fairly good hand, and the other nothing; but by mutually raising each other back and forth they could force any other player out of the pool. The good hand could then be called and shown, the confederate simply saying, "That is good," and throwing down his hand. Professionals call this system of cheating, "raising out."

When the hands are called and shown, the best poker hand wins, their rank being determined by the table of values already given. In the example just given suppose that A, on being called by D, had shown three fours, and that D had three deuces. A would take the entire pool, including all the antes, and the four blues and one red staked by B after the draw. It might be that B would now discover that he had *laid down* the best hand, having held three sixes. This discovery would be of no benefit to him, for he abandoned his hand when he declined to meet the raises of A and D.

If the hands are exactly a tie, the pool must be divided among those who are in at the call. For instance: Two players show aces up, and each finds his opponent's second pair to be eights. The odd card must decide the pool; and if that card is also a tie the pool must be divided.

If no bet is made after the draw, each player in turn throwing down his cards, the antes are won by the last player who holds his hand. This is usually the age, because he has the last say. If the age has not made good his ante, it will be the dealer, and so on to the right. There is no necessity for the fortunate player to show his hand; the mere fact that he is the only one holding any cards is prima facie evidence that his hand is the best. On the same principle, the player who has made a bet or raise which no other player will see, wins the pool without showing his hand, as he must be the only one with cards in his hand; for when a player refuses to see a bet he must abandon his hand, and with it all pretensions to the pool. If he wishes to call, but has not money enough, he must borrow it. He cannot demand a show of hands for what counters he has, except in table stakes.

During the betting, players are at liberty to make any remarks

they see fit, and to tell as many cheerful lies about their hands as they please. A player may even miscall his hand when he shows it; the cards speak for themselves, just as the counters do, and what a player says does not affect either in the slightest. If a player says: "I raise you two blues," the statement amounts to nothing until the blues have been placed in the pool, and the owner's hand removed from them. There is no penalty if a player, during the betting, tells his adversaries exactly what he holds; nor is he likely to lose anything by it, for no one will believe him.

**JACK POTS.** The addition of jack pots has probably done more to injure Poker than the trump signal has injured Whist. In the early days, when poker parties were small, four players being a common number, it was frequently the case that no one had a pair strong enough to draw to, and such a deal was regarded as simply a waste of time. To remedy this, it was proposed that whenever no player came in, each should be obliged to ante an equal amount for the next deal, and just to demonstrate that there were some good hands left in the pack no one was allowed to draw cards until some one had *Jacks or better* to draw to.

The result of this practice was to make jack pots larger than the other pools, because every one was compelled to ante, and this seems to have prompted those who were always wanting to increase the stakes to devise excuses for increasing the number of jack pots. This has been carried so far that the whole system has become a nuisance, and has destroyed one of the finest points in the game of Poker,—the liberty of personal judgment as to every counter put into the pool, except the blind. The following excuses for making jack pots are now in common use:

*After a Misdeal* some parties make it a jack; but the practice should be condemned, because it puts it in the power of any individual player to make it a jack when he deals.

*The Buck* is some article, such as a penknife, which is placed in the pool at the beginning of the game, and is taken down with the rest of the pool by whichever player wins it. When it comes to his deal, it is a jack pot, and the buck is placed in the pool with the dealer's ante, to be won, taken down, and make another jack in the same way.

The usual custom is to fix the amount of the ante in jack pots, a red, or five whites, being the common stake. In some places it is at the option of the holder of the buck to make the ante any amount he pleases within the betting limit. Whichever system is adopted, every player at the table must deposit a like amount in the pool. Players are sometimes permitted to *pass a jack*; that is, not to ante nor to take any part in the game until the jack is decided. If this is to be allowed, it should be so understood at the beginning of the game.

**The High Hand** jack pot is played whenever a hand of an agreed value, such as a flush or a full, is shown to the board; that is, called. In some places four of a kind calls for *a round of jacks*, every player in turn making it a jack on his deal.

**Only Two In.** It is a common custom in large parties, say six or seven players, to make it a jack when no one but the dealer will ante. Instead of allowing the blind to make his ante good, and draw cards against the dealer, each player contributes two white counters, the age adding one to his blind, and the cards are redealt for a jack pot. Another variety of this custom is when the blind is opposed by only one ante, to allow the age to make this player take down his two counters, and to pay two counters for him, to make it a jack. For instance: Five play, and A has the age. B and C pass, and D antes two counters. The dealer, E, says: "I pass for a jack." A then puts up three counters, one of which is added to his blind, the other two paying D's ante in the ensuing jack. D takes down his two counters, and the cards are redealt. This cannot be done if more than one player has anted, nor if the ante has been raised or the blind straddled. In the example just given, had D raised the ante to five counters and E passed, the age would have had to put up four more white counters and draw cards, or allow D to win his blind.

**Progressive Jacks.** In some localities it is the custom to make the pair necessary to open a jack pot progress in value; Jacks or better to open the first round; Queens the next; then Kings; then Aces; and then back to Kings, Queens, and Jacks again. This is very confusing, and is not popular.

**Fattening Jacks.** When the original ante is two counters only, and no one holds Jacks or better on the first deal, each player must contribute another white counter to "fatten," and the cards are dealt again. This continues until the pot is opened; that is, until some player holds a hand as good or better than a pair of Jacks. The fattening process is followed when the dealer can make the original ante what he pleases; but if the ante for jacks is a fixed sum, such as a red counter, it is not usual to fatten the pot at all. This saves all disputes as to *who is shy*, one of the greatest nuisances in Poker.

**Opening Jacks.** As there is no age or straddle in any form of jack pot, the player to the left of the dealer has the first say, and must examine his hand to see if he has Jacks or better; that is to say, either an actual pair of Jacks, or some hand that would beat a pair of Jacks if called upon to do so, such as two pairs, a straight, or triplets. In some localities it is allowed to open jacks with a *bobtail*; that is, four cards of a flush or straight. If the player on the dealer's left has not openers, or does not care to open the pot if he has, he says: "I pass;" but he does not aban-



don his hand. The next player on his left must then declare. In some places players are allowed to throw down their cards when they pass; but in first-class games a penalty of five white counters must be paid into the pool by any player abandoning his hand before the second round of declarations, as it gives an undue advantage to players with medium hands to know that they have only a limited number of possible opponents. For instance: If six play, and the first three not only pass, but throw down and abandon their cards, a player with a pair of Jacks will know that, he has only two possible adversaries to draw against him, which will so increase his chances that it may materially alter his betting.

If no one acknowledges to holding Jacks or better, the pot is fattened, and the cards are re-shuffled and dealt. The best practice is for the same dealer to deal again until some one gets Jacks or better. This is called *dealing off the jack*. If any player has forfeited his right in one deal, such as by having a foul hand, that does not prevent him coming into the pot again on the next deal with rights equal to the other players.

If any player holds Jacks or better, he can open the pot, or "the jack," for any amount he pleases within the betting limit. The expression "open" is used because after one player has declared that he holds Jacks or better, all restrictions are removed, and the pool is then open to any player to come in and play for it, regardless of what he may hold. Each player in turn, beginning on the left of the opener, must declare whether or not he will *stay*. If he stays, he must put up an amount equal to that bet by the opener, and has the privilege of raising him if he sees fit. If he passes, he throws his cards face downward on the table in front of the player whose turn it will be to deal next. Should the opener be raised, and not care to see that raise, he must show his hand to the table before abandoning it, in order to demonstrate that he had openers. Some players show only the cards necessary to open, but the strict rules require the whole hand to be shown before the draw. When once the jack is opened, the betting before the draw proceeds exactly as in the ordinary pool. Any player on the right of the opener, who passed on the first round, may come in after the pot is opened. For instance: E deals. A and B pass, but hold their hands. C opens, and D throws down his hand. E sees the opener's bet, and it then becomes the turn of A and B, who have passed once, to say whether or not they will play, now that the pot is opened.

When all those who have declared to stay have deposited an equal amount in the pool, they draw cards to improve their hands, just as in the ordinary pool, the player on the dealer's left being helped first. All those who draw cards, except the opener, throw their discards into the centre of the table as usual; but the opener is obliged always to place his discard under the chips in the pool.

This is in order that he may be able to show what he held originally, in case he should conclude to *split his openers* in order to try for a better hand. For instance: He has opened with a pair of Jacks, but has four of one suit in his hand. Four other players have stayed, perhaps the bet has been raised, and he knows that his Jacks will probably be worthless, even if he gets a third. So he breaks the pair, and draws for a flush. As the opener always places his discard under the chips in the pool, it is not necessary for him to betray his game by telling the whole table that he is drawing to a bobtail.

**False Openers.** Should a player open a jack without the hand to justify it, and discover his error before he draws, the best usage demands that his hand is foul, and that he forfeits to the pool whatever amount he may have opened for, and any raises that he may have stood. There are then three ways to play: **First.** Those who have come in under the impression that the pot had been legitimately opened but who have not openers themselves, can withdraw their money, and allow any one to open it who has openers. This is very unfair to those on the left of the false opener who have abandoned their hands. **Second.** Those who have come into the pot after the false opening are allowed to stay in, and play for it, no matter what their hands are. **Third.** On discovery of the false opening, each player is allowed to take down whatever amount he may have paid into the pool, including his original ante and all fatteners, and the false opener must then make the entire amount good. The cards are then dealt afresh. This is a very harsh punishment for a very trifling and common error.

The second method is the most popular, and probably the fairest, and is now the universal rule.

If the false opener does not discover his mistake until he has drawn cards, his action is at least suspicious, and he should be compelled to put up the total amount in the pool, as in case three. In some localities such a player is barred from playing the next two jacks, but compelled to ante his share in each.

**Betting Jacks.** When a jack pot has been properly opened, and all have declared whether or not they will stay, and have drawn cards, the players proceed to bet on their hands. As there is no age in jack pots, the rule is for the opener to make the first bet; or, if he has been raised out before the draw, the player next on his left who still holds cards. The opener may decline to bet if he pleases; but if he does so, he must show his openers, and then abandon his hand. If no bet is made, the last player holding cards takes the pool without showing his hand. If a bet is made, each player in turn on the left must abdicate, better, or call, just as in the ordinary pool. At the conclusion of the betting, if there is a call, the best poker hand wins, of course. If there is no

call, the player making the last bet or raise takes the pool without showing his hand, unless he is the opener, when the whole hand need not be shown, as it is no one's business what the opener got in the draw, no one having paid to see it. All he need show is openers. But should the opener be one of those in the final call, he must show his whole hand. Should it then be discovered that he has not openers, the false opener is compelled to ante for all the players at the table for another Jack. This is usually called giving them a "free ride."

*The Kitty* is now an almost universal adjunct to the pool. In clubs, it pays for the cards, and for an occasional round of refreshments; in small poker parties it defrays the expense of the weekly supper. When the amount is excessive, or accumulates too rapidly, it is often used to give the players a "free ride" by paying all their antes in a "kitty jack pot."

The kitty is usually kept by the banker, who takes a white counter out of every pool in which triplets or better are shown to the board, and a red counter out of every jack pot. These counters must be kept apart from the other chips, and must be accounted for at the end of the game by paying the kitty so much in cash, just as if it was one of the players.

Gambling houses and poker rooms are supposed to derive their entire revenue from this source, and those of the lowest class invent endless excuses for taking out for the kitty. In many houses there is a sliding scale for various hands; one counter being taken for two pairs; two counters for triplets; three for straights or flushes; and a red for fours, jack pots, and misdeals. It is not uncommon for the proprietors of such games to find thirty or forty dollars in the kitty after a night's play with five-cent chips.

**TABLE STAKES.** This is one of several variations in arranging the stakes and the betting limit. In some localities it is the custom to allow each player to purchase as many counters as he pleases; in others it is the rule to compel each to buy an equal number at the start, usually two hundred times the amount of the blind. In table stakes the betting limit is always the amount that the player has in front of him; but no player is allowed either to increase or diminish that amount while he has any cards in front of him. Before the cards are dealt for any pool he may announce that he wishes to buy counters, or that he has some to sell to any other player wishing to purchase; but for either transaction the consent of all the other players must be obtained. No player is allowed under any circumstances to borrow from another, nor to be "shy" in any pot; that is, to say, "I owe so many." If he has any counters in front of him, his betting is limited to what he has; if he has none, he is out of the game, for that hand at least. As a player cannot increase the amount he has in front of him during the play of a hand, it is best to keep on the table at all times as much as one is likely to want to bet on any one hand.

It is the usual custom, and an excellent one, to fix upon a definite hour for closing a game of table stakes, and to allow no player to retire from the game before that hour unless he is *decavé*, (has lost all his capital). Should he insist on retiring, whatever counters he has must be divided among the other players, and if there are any odd ones after the division, they must be put into the current pool.

In table stakes, any player may *call a sight* for what money or counters he has in front of him, even should another player have bet a much larger amount. For instance: A has bet three dollars, and B has only two dollars in front of him, but wishes to call A. B calls for a sight by putting his two dollars in the pool, and A must then withdraw his third dollar from the pool, but leave it on the table to be called or raised by any other player. Should C wish to call A, or even to raise him, A and C may continue the betting independently of B's part of the pool. Should C have even less money than B, say one dollar, he may still further reduce the original pool, leaving the two dollars aside for settlement between A and B, and A's third dollar still aside from that again for the decision of any other player.

Let us suppose that A and C continue the betting until one calls. When the hands are shown, if either A's or C's is better than B's, B loses his interest; but if B's hand is better than either A's hand or C's hand, he takes the part of the pool for which he called a sight, while A and C decide the remainder between them. For instance: A calls C, and C shows three tens. Neither A nor B can beat it, and C takes everything. But if B had three Jacks, and A only three fives, B would take the part of the pool for which he called a sight, and C would take the remainder.

Should C have raised and bluffed A out, or have bet so much that A finally refused to call, A would have no interest in either pool, and C would take all the money outside the pool for which B called a sight. Should it then transpire, on the show of hands between B and C, that A had laid down a better hand than either of them, that would not entitle A to claim the sight pool from B, because in laying down his hand he has practically acknowledged that C's hand is better, and has retired from the game. If B's hand is better than C's, B takes the sight pool.

**FREEZE OUT.** This might be called a variety of table stakes. At the start, each player is supplied with an equal number of counters; but no one is allowed to replenish his stock, or to withdraw or loan any part of it. As soon as any player has lost his capital he is *decavé*, or *frozen out*, and must permanently retire from the game. The other players continue until only one remains, who must of course win everything on the table. This is not a popular form of Poker, because it is sometimes a long time before a player who is frozen out can get into a game again.

**SHOW-DOWN POKER.** This is a variety of draw poker, in which each player takes the five cards dealt to him and turns them face up so that all the other players can see them. Each player discards and draws in turn, eldest hand first. As soon as a hand is beaten it is thrown into the deadwood, all the cards drawn being dealt face up.

**FLAT POKER.** In this variety of the game, before the cards are dealt, the age puts up, for a blind, any amount he pleases within the limit. Those who are willing to bet a similar amount on the possibilities of their hands put up a similar amount. Those who decline are not given any cards. There are no straddles, raises, or antes. Immediately after the deal each player who is in the pool draws cards, the age first. There are then two ways to play: The hands are shown and the best wins; or, beginning with the age, each player may say if he will back his hand against the field; *i. e.*, all the others in the pool. If he will, he must put up as much as their combined stakes. He cannot be raised; but if any one player or combination of players call him, and one of them can beat his hand, the field divide the pool. For instance: Age makes it a blue, and three others stay with him. After the draw C puts up three blues against the field. D and A call it, and all show hands. If any of the three, A, B or D can beat C they divide the pool, B getting his third, although he did not contribute to the call. This game is a pure gamble; except that a bold player may occasionally bluff the field off.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** Poker and its congeners have received more attention from the greeks than any other family of card games. In fact it is generally believed that the term greek, as applied to a card sharper, had its origin in the Adam of the poker family, which was a gambling game introduced by the Greeks in Italy.

So numerous and so varied are the methods of cheating at Poker that it is an axiom among gamblers that if a pigeon will not stand one thing he will another. The best informed make it a rule never to play Poker with strangers, because they realize that it is impossible for any but a professional gambler to know half the tricks employed by the poker sharp. It is a notorious fact that even the shrewdest gamblers are continually being taken in by others more expert than themselves. What chance then has the honest card player?

There are black sheep in all flocks, and it may be well to give a few hints to those who are in the habit of playing in mixed companies.

Never play with a man who looks attentively at the faces of the cards as he gathers them for his deal; or who stands the pack on edge, with the faces of the cards towards him, and evens up the bunch by picking out certain cards, apparently because they are

sticking up. Any pack can be straightened by pushing the cards down with the hand. The man who lifts them up is more than probably a cheat.

Never play with a man who looks intently at the pack and shuffles the cards slowly. If he is not locating the cards for the ensuing deal he is wasting time, and should be hurried a little.

Never play with a person who leaves the cut portion of the pack on the table, and deals off the other part. In small parties this is a very common way of working what is known as *the top stock*. If such a dealer is carefully watched it will usually be found that he seizes the first opportunity to place the part cut off on the top of the part dealt from. The top stock is then ready for the draw, and the judicious player should at once cash his chips and retire from the game.

Never play with a man who continually holds his cards very close to his body, or who completely conceals his hand before the draw, or who takes great care to put his discard among previous discards, so that the exact number of cards put out cannot be counted. He is probably working a vest or sleeve hold-out. Some clumsy or audacious sharpers will go so far as to hold out cards in their lap, or stick them in a "bug" under the table. One of the most successful poker sharps ever known, "Eat-um-up Jake" Blackburn, who had a hand like a ham, could hold out five cards in his palm while he carried on all the operations of shuffling, dealing, and playing his hand. Such men require great dexterity and nerve to get rid of their "deadwood," or surplus cards, without detection. *Hold-ing out* is regarded by the professional as a most dangerous experiment, but it is very common.

Never play with a man who keeps his eyes rivetted on the cards as he deals, and who deals comparatively slowly. He is probably using marked cards, or has marked the important ones himself during the play. Poker sharps who mark cards by scratching them with a sharp point concealed in a ring are obliged to hold the cards at a certain angle to the light in order to see the scratches. Those who dig points in the cards with the thumb nail depend on touch instead of sight. If you find such points on the cards, either dig other points on other cards, or retire from the game.

Against the hold-out or marked cards there is no protection, because the dealer does not care how much the cards in the pack are shuffled or cut; but every method of running up hands, or stocking cards, can be made ineffective if the pone will not only cut the cards, but carefully re-unite the packets. If the two parts are straightened after the cut, it will be impossible for the dealer to shift the cut, and bring the cards back to their original position. The dealer will sometimes bend the top or bottom card so as to form a *bridge*, which will enable him to find the place where the cards were cut. This can only be overcome by shuffling the cards

instead of cutting them, which every player has the right to do. If you insist on shuffling, the greek will do the same in his turn, and will run up hands to be dealt to himself. It is perfectly useless to endeavour to protect yourself against a poker sharp; the only remedy is to leave the game.

Many persons have a strong prejudice against playing with a man who shuffles his chips. The mere fact of his being an expert at chip shuffling has nothing to do with the game of poker, the accomplishment usually being the result of long experience at the faro table. The reason for the prejudice is that a chip shuffler is usually cold blooded, courageous, and seldom a loser at any game that requires nerve.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Volumes might be written for the guidance of the poker player without improving his game a particle, unless he possesses at least one of four qualifications: Control over his features and actions; judgment of human nature; courage; and patience. The man whose face or manner betrays the nature of his hand, or the effect of an opponent's bet or raise, will find everyone to beat his weak hands, and no one to call his strong ones. Unless he is a fair judge of human nature he will never be able to estimate the strength or peculiarities of the players to whom he is opposed, and will fail to distinguish a bluff from an ambushade. Without courage he cannot reap the full benefit of his good hands; and without patience he cannot save his money in the time of adversity.

Of one thing every player may rest assured, and that is that Poker cannot be played by mathematical formulas. Beyond the most elementary calculations of the chances in favour of certain events the theory of probabilities is of no assistance. It is not necessary to call in a mathematician to prove that a player who habitually discards a pair of aces to draw to three cards of a suit will lose by the operation in the long run. Nor will any amount of calculation convince some players that they are wasting their money to stay in a jack pot in order to draw to a pair of tens, although such is the fact.

The various positions occupied by the player at the poker table may be briefly examined, and some general suggestions offered for his guidance in each of them. In the first place he should look out for his counters. It is always best for each player to place the amount of his ante or his bet immediately in front of him, so that there need be no dispute as to who is up, or who is shy. Above all it should be insisted that any player who has once put counters in the pool, and taken his hand from them, should not again take them down.

*The Age* is the most valuable position at the table, but it is seldom fully taken advantage of. The age should never look at

his hand until it is his turn to make good his blind. He may pick up his cards, but he should use his eyes in following the manner and facial expression of the other players as they sort their cards. One of the greatest errors made by the age is in thinking that he must save his blind. The player who draws to nothing because he can do so cheaply, will usually have nothing to draw at the end of the game. The age can usually afford to draw to four-card flushes, and to straights open at both ends, but should not do so when there are less than three who have paid to draw cards, or when the ante has been raised.

If the age holds Kings or better before the draw, he should invariably raise the ante unless there are five players in the pool besides himself, or unless some other player has already raised. If he holds two pairs, he should do all his betting before the draw. If any other player has raised, or his own raise is re-raised, the age must use his judgment of the player and the circumstances. It is useless for the age to disguise his hand by such manoeuvres as holding up an odd card to a pair, unless he raises the blind at the same time. If he draws one or two cards only, and has not raised the blind, every one will credit him for a small pair and an ace, or for a bobtail, and will inevitably call any bluff he may make. The age is the poorest position at the table for a bluff, but it is decidedly the best in which to win large pots with moderate hands.

**The Dealer** has the next best position to the age, and in large parties there is very little difference in the way in which the two positions should be played.

The **first bettor** has the worst position at the table and he should seldom come in on less than Queens. He should seldom raise the ante, even with two pairs, as he will only drive others out. In this position very little can be made out of good hands, because every one expects to find them there; but it offers many excellent opportunities for successful bluffing. A player in this position should never straddle. Many players endeavour to force their luck in this way, but it is a losing game, and the best players seldom or never straddle. Having to make the first bet after the draw, it is usual for the player in this position, if he has an average hand, to *chip along*, by simply betting a single counter, and waiting for developments. With a strong hand, it is best to bet its full value at once, on the chance that the bet may be taken for a bluff, and called.

**Other Positions.** As the positions go round the table from the first bettor to the age, they become more desirable, and little need be said of them beyond the consideration of the average strength necessary for a player to *go in* on.

**GOING IN.** There is a great difference of opinion as to the minimum value of a hand which should justify a player in draw-



ing cards if he can do so for the usual ante. In close games many players make it a rule not to go in on less than tens, while in more liberal circles the players will draw to any pair. In determining which course to follow, the individual must be guided by his observation and judgment. Suppose five play, and A observes that B and C constantly draw to small pairs, while D and E never come in on less than tens. If A has the ace, B, D, and E having anted, A may be sure that there are at least two good hands against him, and will guide himself accordingly. But if B and C are the only players in, A may safely draw to a small pair. It can be mathematically demonstrated that what is called an *average go-in hand* should be at least a pair of tens; but a player who waits for tens in a liberal game, in which others are drawing to ace high, will ante himself away if there are many jack pots, and will get no calls when he gets a hand.

**BETTING.** Good players are guided by the general character of the game in which they take part. Some parties play a very liberal game, and the players bet high on medium hands, and give every one a good fight. It is best to have liberal or lucky players on your right; because if they sit behind you, they will continually raise you, and you will be forced either to overbid your hand on the same liberal scale that they adopt, or lose what you have already put up. If a liberal player sits on your right you will often be able to make large winnings on moderate hands. In a close game, when the players bet in a niggardly manner, the liberal player is at a great disadvantage; for he can win little or nothing on his good hands, but will lose large amounts when he runs up the betting on a good hand which is opposed to one that is better. When a liberal player finds a close player following him freely, he may be sure there is a very strong hand against him.

**VARIETY.** Above all things a player should avoid regularity in his play, because observant adversaries will soon learn his methods. The best players usually play two pairs pat, without drawing, about half the time. This gives them the reputation of betting on pat hands which are not genuine, and when they get one that is real, they will often succeed in getting a good bet, or even a raise, from those holding triplets or two large pairs, who have noticed them play two pairs pat. In the same way it is advisable to hold up an odd card occasionally, without raising the ante; so that when you do hold triplets, and draw two cards, you will not frighten every one at the table. The chances of improving a pair by drawing three cards, are one in three; and by drawing two cards only, one in four. The difference is worth the moral effect of the variation in the play.

**PROBABILITIES.** The endless poker statistics that have been published are of little or no value to the practical player,

and there are only a few figures that are worth remembering. It is a general law in all games of chance that you should never do a thing which you would not be willing to repeat under the same circumstances a hundred times. The best example of the application of this law is in drawing to bobtails. If you have a four-card flush to draw to, the odds against getting it are about four to one; and unless you can obtain the privilege of drawing to it by paying not more than one-fifth of the amount in the pool, you will lose by it in the long run. The best players never draw to four-card flushes except when they have the ace, and the ante has not been raised.

There are some players who pretend to be so guided by probabilities that they never go into a pool unless the chances in favour of their having a good hand after the draw are at least equal to the odds they have to bet by going into the pool. This is all nonsense; for no player knows when he goes into a pool how much it will cost him to get out, and the value of his individual hand is an unknown quantity at the best, because it cannot be compared to the others. One thing only is certain, and that is that in the long run the player who goes in with the strongest hand will still have the strongest hand after the draw. This is an important thing to remember in jack pots, in which the value of at least one hand is known. If you draw to a pair smaller than Jacks, you do so with the full knowledge that the pair itself is not strong enough to win. Now what are the odds against your winning the pool? Suppose you hold tens, and draw three cards. Your chance of improving your hand is a little better than one in five. The opener of the jack pot has exactly the same chance, and if both of you draw cards a hundred times under those circumstances, he will beat you in the long run, to say nothing of the other players who may come in and beat both of you. It is therefore evident that in backing tens against openers, it is four to one against your beating the openers to begin with, and if you do beat them the odds are still against your winning the pot. If there were five players, and the jack pots were all equal in amount, you would have to win one pot out of five to make your investment pay. Can you make this average when your original pair will not beat openers?

There are three principles with regard to the draw that should never be lost sight of:

(1) An average go-in hand is a hand which will win its proportion of the pools, according to the number playing, taking all improvements and opposition into account. This can be demonstrated to be a pair of tens.

(2) The draw is much more valuable to a weak hand than to a strong one, and weak hands will improve in much greater proportion than strong ones will. For instance: The chances for a

player to improve by drawing to a pair of Queens are one in three and a half. He may make two pairs, or triplets, or a full hand, or four of a kind. The chances of improvement for a player drawing to two pairs, say Eights up, are only one in thirteen. This consideration leads players to adopt two lines of play: To bet all they intend to on two pairs before the draw, in order to prevent weaker hands drawing cards and improving; or, to discard the smaller pair in order to increase their chances of improvement.

(3) The smaller the number of players, the greater the value of the hands; and the larger the number of players, the greater the chance that any given hand will be beaten. When only two play, you can safely bet the limit on a pair of Eights; but in a party of eight players they are hardly worth drawing to. For this reason average hands should force the weaker out, and reduce the number of players *before the draw*.

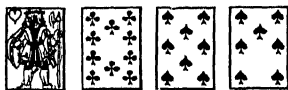
For the benefit of those interested in such matters *the probable improvement by the draw* may be briefly given.

It is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 against improving *a pair* by drawing three cards; the chances against making triplets or two pairs being 8 to 1; against a full hand, 61 to 1; and against four of a kind, 364 to 1. It is 4 to 1 against improving a pair by drawing two cards; the chances against triplets being 12 to 1, and 8 to 1 against two pairs.

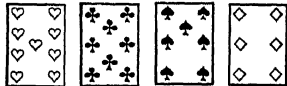
It is 12 to 1 against making a full hand by drawing to *two pairs*.

It is 8 to 1 against improving *triplets* by drawing two cards;  $14\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 against a full hand, and 23 to 1 against four of a kind. It is 12 to 1 against improving if one card is drawn; 16 to 1 against the full, and 46 to 1 against four of a kind.

It is 11 to 1 against making a straight out of a sequence of four cards which is open in the middle, or at one end only. It is 5 to 1 against making a straight out of a sequence of four which is open at both ends.



IN-BETWEEN STRAIGHT.



OPEN-END STRAIGHT.

It is  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 against filling a four-card flush. It is 23 to 1 against filling a three-card flush. It is 95 to 1 against filling a two-card flush.

It is 3 to 1 against improving a four-card straight flush which is open at both ends. The chances against getting the straight or the flush have been given; the odds against getting the straight flush are 24 to 1. The chance for getting a pair exists; but the pair would probably be worthless.

It is 4 to 1 against improving a four-card straight flush open in the middle, or at one end only; the odds against getting the straight flush being 46 to 1.

There are several minor or speculative draws which may be of interest. Drawing to an ace and a King, it is 3 to 1 against making a pair of either. It is 4 to 1 against making a pair of aces by drawing four cards to an ace; and 12 to 1 against making aces up, or better. It is 24 to 1 against making a straight by drawing to three cards of it, open at both ends. It is 12 to 1 against making either a straight or a flush by drawing to three cards of a straight flush, open at both ends.

**HOW TO WIN AT POKER.** There have been many alleged infallible receipts for winning at Poker. Proctor thought that refusing to go in on less than triplets would prove a certainty; but in the same paragraph he acknowledges that the adversaries would soon learn the peculiarity, and avoid betting against the player. Triplets before the draw occur about once in every 45 hands. If five were playing, a person following Proctor's advice would have to blind 9 times, and ante in at least 12 jack pots in every 45 hands, to say nothing of fattening. This means an outlay of at least 75 counters. When the triplets come, will he get back 75 counters on them? He will probably win the blind, and one or two antes; but the moment he makes his own ante good, every player who cannot beat triplets, knowing his system, will lay down his hand.

An extensive observation of the methods of the best players has led the author to the conclusion that the great secret of success in Poker, apart from natural aptitude for the game, and being a good actor, is to *avoid calling*. If you think you have the best hand, raise. If you think you have not the best, lay it down. Although you may sometimes lay down a better hand than the one that takes the pool, the system will prove of immense advantage to you in two ways: In the first place, you will find it a great educator of the judgment; and in the second place, it will take almost any opponent's nerve. Once an adversary has learned your method, it is not a question of his betting a red chip on his hand; but of his willingness to stand a raise of two blues, which he will regard as inevitable if you come in against him at all. The fear of this raise will prompt many a player to lay down a moderately good hand without a bet; so that you have all the advantage of having made a strong bluff without having put up a chip. The system will also drive all but the most courageous to calling your hand on every occasion, being afraid of a further and inevitable raise; and it is an old saying that a good caller is a sure loser.

The theory of calling is to get an opportunity to compare your hand with your adversary's. Now, if you think that after the comparison yours will prove the better hand, why not increase the

value of the pool? If, on the contrary, you fear that his hand will beat yours, why throw good money after bad? If you don't think at all about it, and have no means of forming an opinion as to the respective merits of your hands, you are not a poker player, and have no business in the game.

**BLUFFING.** There is nothing connected with Poker on which persons have such confused ideas as on the subject of bluffing. The popular impression seems to be that a stiff upper lip, and a cheerful expression of countenance, accompanied by a bet of five dollars, will make most people lay down three aces; and that this result will be brought about by the five-dollar bet, without any regard to the player's position at the table, the number of cards he drew, his manner of seeing or raising the ante, or the play of his adversaries before the draw. The truth of the matter is that for a bluff to be either sound in principle or successful in practice, the player must carefully select his opportunity. The bluff must be planned from the start, and consistently played from the ante to the end. To use a common expression: "The play must be right for it, or the bluff will be wrong."

There are many cases in which a bluff of fifty cents would be much stronger than one of five dollars; the difference depending on the player's position at the table, his treatment of the ante, and the number of cards he had drawn. As an example of the play being right for a bluff, take the following case: Five play in a jack pot. A and B have passed when C opens it for the limit. D and E pass out, but A and B both stay, and each draws one card. C takes two cards, and as it is his first bet he puts up the limit on his three aces. A drops out, but B raises C the limit in return. Now, if C is a good player he will lay down his three aces, even if he faintly suspects B is bluffing, because B's play is sound in any case. He either could not, or pretended he could not open the jack; but he could afford to pay the limit to draw one card against openers, and he could afford to raise the limit against an opener's evidently honest two-card draw. As a matter of fact the whole play was a bluff; for B not only had nothing, but had nothing to draw to originally.

Another variety of the bluff, which is the author's own invention, will often prove successful with strangers, but it can seldom be repeated in the same company. Suppose six play in a jack pot. A passes, and B opens it by quietly putting up his counters. C and D pass, and E, pretending not to know that B has opened it, announces that he will open it for the limit, although he has not a pair in his hand. He is of course immediately informed that it has been opened, upon which he unhesitatingly raises it for the limit. Whatever the others do, E stands pat, and looks cheerful. The author has never known this bluff to be called.

Holding a strong hand, a player may often coax another to raise him, by offering to divide the pool.

The successful bluffer should never show his hand. Even if he starts the game by bluffing for advertising purposes, hoping to get called on good hands later, he should not show anything or tell anything that the others do not pay to see or know. Bluffing is usually more successful when a player is in a lucky vein than when he has been unfortunate.

---

## POKER LAWS.

**1. Formation of Table.** A poker table is complete with seven players. If eight play the dealer must take no cards, or a sixty-card pack must be used. If there are more than seven candidates for play, two tables must be formed unless the majority decide against it.

**2. Cutting.** The players who shall form the table, and their positions at the beginning of the game may be decided by drawing from an outspread pack, or by throwing round a card to each candidate, face up. If there are eight or more candidates, the tables shall divide evenly if the number is even, those cutting the highest cards playing together. If the number is odd, the smaller table shall be formed by those cutting the highest cards. In cutting, the ace is low. Any player exposing more than one card must cut again.

**3.** The table formed, the players draw from the outspread pack for positions. The lowest cut has the first choice, and deals the first hand. The player cutting the next lowest has the next choice, and so on until all are seated.

**4. Ties.** If players cut cards of equal value they must cut again; but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

**5. Stakes.** Any player may be the banker, and keep the kitty, if any. In Draw, Straight, or Stud Poker, each player may purchase as many counters as he pleases. In Freeze-out, Table Stakes, Whiskey Poker, and Progressive Poker, each player must begin with an equal amount.

**6. Betting Limits.** Before play begins limits must be agreed upon for the amount of the blind, the straddle, the ante in jack pots, and for betting or raising.

**7. Shuffling.** Before the first deal the pack must be counted to see that it contains the proper number of cards. Should the first dealer neglect this he forfeits five counters to the pool. Before each deal the cards must be shuffled. Any player may shuffle, the dealer last.

**8. *Cutting to the Dealer.*** The dealer must present the pack to the pone, [the player on his right,] to be cut. The pone may either cut, or signify that he does not wish to do so, by tapping the pack with his knuckles. Should the pone decline to cut, no other player can insist on his doing so, nor do it for him. If he cuts, he must leave at least four cards in each packet, and the dealer or the pone must re-unite the packets by placing the one not removed in cutting upon the other.

**9.** If in cutting, or in re-uniting the packets, a card is exposed, the pack must be re-shuffled and cut.

**10.** If the dealer re-shuffles the pack after it has been properly cut, he forfeits five counters to the current pool

**11. *Dealing Before the Draw.*** After the age, [the player on the dealer's left,] has put up the amount of the blind, the dealer distributes the cards face down, one at a time, in rotation, until each player has received five cards.

**12.** The deal passes to the left, except in jack pots, when it may be agreed that the same dealer shall deal until the pot is opened.

**13. *Misdealing.*** A misdeal does not lose the deal; the same dealer must deal again. It is a misdeal: If the dealer fails to present the pack to the pone; or if any card is found faced in the pack; or if the pack is found imperfect; or if the dealer gives six or more cards to more than one player; or if he deals more or fewer hands than there are players; or if he omits a player in dealing; or if he deals a card incorrectly, and fails to correct the error before dealing another.

**14. *Irregularities in the Hands.*** Should the dealer, or the wind, turn over any card, the player to whom it is dealt must take it; but the same player cannot be compelled to take two exposed cards. Should such a combination occur there must be a new deal. If the player exposes cards himself, he has no remedy,

**15.** Should any player receive more or less than his proper number of cards, and discover the error before he looks at any card in his hand, or lifts it from the table, he may demand a new deal if no bet has been made; or he may ask the dealer to give him another card from the pack if he has too few, or to draw a card if he has too many. Cards so drawn must not be exposed, but should be placed on the top of the pack. If a bet has been made, there must be a new deal. Should the player take up his hand, or look at any card in it, he has no remedy.

**16.** Should a player take up a hand containing more or less than five cards, or look at any card in it, such a hand is foul, and he must abandon it, forfeiting any interest he may have in that pool. If one player has six cards and his neighbour four, neither

having lifted or looked at any card, the dealer may be called upon to draw a card from the six hand and give it to the four hand.

**17. Straddling.** During the deal, or at any time before he looks at any card in his hand, the player to the left of the age may straddle the blind by putting up double the amount put up by the age. Should he straddle, the player on his left may double the amount again, provided he has not seen any of his cards; and so on, until the limit of the straddling is reached. This limit must not exceed one-fourth of the betting limit. Should any player in his turn refuse to straddle, no other player on his left can straddle.

**18. The Ante.** After the cards are dealt, each player in turn, beginning with the one to the left of the age, or to the left of the last straddler, if any, must either abandon his hand or put into the pool twice the amount of the blind, or of the last straddle. When it comes to the turn of the age, and the straddlers, if any, they must either abandon their hands, or make the amount they have in the pool equal to twice the amount of the blind, or of the last straddle, if any.

**19. Raising the Ante.** Each player, when it is his turn to come in, may add to the amount of the ante any sum within the betting limit. This will compel any player coming in after him to equal the total of the ante and the raise, or to abandon his hand; and it will also give such following player the privilege of raising again by any further amount within the betting limit. Should any player decline to equal the amount put up by any previous player, he must abandon his hand, together with all his interest in that pool. Any player who has been raised in this manner may raise again in his turn; and not until each player holding cards has anted an equal amount will the game proceed.

**20. Winning the Antes.** Should any player have put up an amount which no other player will equal, he takes whatever counters are then in the pool, without showing his hand, and the deal passes to the next player on the dealer's left. Should only one player come in, and the age decline to make good his ante, the player who has come in wins the blind, unless jack pots are played. Should any player have straddled the blind, or raised the ante, there can be no jack pot.

**21. Making Jacks.** If no player will come in, it is a Natural Jack, and all the hands must be abandoned, each player putting up for the ensuing deal the amount agreed upon. If no one has straddled the blind, or raised the ante, and only one player has come in, the age may do one of four things: He may forfeit his blind; or he may make the ante good; or he may raise it; or he may demand that the single player who has come in shall take down his ante, the age putting up twice the amount agreed upon for jack pots; once for himself, and once for the player who came



**in.** All the other players must then put up for the ensuing deal. This is an Only-Two-In Jack.

**22. Drawing Cards.** When two or more players have come in for an equal amount, the others having abandoned their hands, each of them in turn, beginning with the one on the dealer's left, may discard any or all of the cards originally dealt him, and draw others in their place. The number discarded and drawn, if any, must be distinctly announced by each player, including the dealer; and the fresh cards must be given face down from the top of the pack, without any further shuffling or cutting. Each player must receive the entire number he asks for before the next player is helped. No player shall receive from the dealer more or fewer than he discards; so that if he is playing with a short hand, such as four cards only, he will still have four cards after the draw; and if his hand was originally foul, it will so remain.

**23. Exposed Cards.** In dealing for the draw, should any card be found faced in the pack, or should any card be exposed by the dealer in giving out the cards, or be blown over by the wind before the player has touched it, such cards must be placed on the table with the discards. The player whose card has been exposed does not receive another in its place until all the other players, including the dealer, have been helped.

**24. Incorrect Draws.** Should any player ask for an incorrect number of cards, he must take them; unless he discovers the error before the next player has been helped. If too many have been asked for, he must discard before seeing them. If too few, and he lifts any of them, he holds a foul hand. No player is allowed to take back into his hand any card that has once been discarded. If he has taken up the cards, or has seen any of them, and has too many, his hand is foul, and must be abandoned. If the dealer gives himself more cards than he needs, he must take them; but if less, he can supply the deficiency, provided he has not looked at any of the drawn cards.

**25. Incorrect Dealing.** Should the dealer give any player more or fewer cards than he asks for, and the player discover the error before taking them up or seeing any of them, the dealer must withdraw the surplus card, and place it on the top of the pack. Should the dealer give a player fewer cards than he asks for, he must supply the deficiency when his attention is called to it, without waiting to supply the other players. Should the dealer give cards to any player out of his proper turn, he may correct the error if none of the cards have been seen; not otherwise.

**26. The Last Card** of the pack must not be dealt. When only two cards remain, and more than one is asked for, they must be mixed with the discards and abandoned hands, and the whole shuffled together, and presented to the pone to be cut. Discards of those who have yet to draw must not be gathered.

**27.** After the cards have been delivered by the dealer, no player has the right to be informed how many cards any player drew; and any person, bystander or player, volunteering the information, except the player himself, may be called upon to pay to the player against whom he informs an amount equal to that then in the pool. Any player who has made good the ante and drawn cards may, before making a bet, ask how many cards the dealer drew, and the dealer must inform him.

**28. Betting After the Draw.** The first player who holds cards on the left of the age must make the first bet, whether he has straddled or not. If he declines to bet he must abandon his hand. The fact that the age is not playing makes no difference, as his privilege cannot be transferred to any other player. Bets may vary in amount from one counter to the betting limit. If no player will bet, the age takes the pool without showing his hand; or, if he has passed out before the draw, the last player on his right who holds cards wins the pool.

**29. Raising the Bets.** Should any player make a bet, each player in turn on his left must either bet an equal amount or abandon his hand. Should any player bet an equal amount, he has the privilege of increasing the bet to any further sum within the betting limit. The players on his left must then either meet the total amount of the original bet and the raise, or abandon their hands. Any player meeting the amount already bet has the privilege of increasing it to any further amount within the limit, and so on, until no further raises take place. Any player whose bet has been raised must abandon his hand or meet the raise, with the privilege of raising again in return. Should one player make a bet or raise which no other player will see, he takes the pool without showing his hand, and the cards are shuffled and cut for the next deal.

**30. Calling the Bets.** As long as one player raises another's bets, he gives that player the privilege of raising him again; but if a player who has made a bet is not raised, the others simply betting an equal amount, the first bettor is called, and all betting must cease. The players must then show their hands to the table, in order to decide which wins the pool.

**31.** Bets must be actually made by placing the counters in the pool, and no bet is made until the player's hand has been withdrawn from the counters. Any counters once placed in the pool, and the owner's hand withdrawn, cannot be taken down again, except by the winner of the pool.

**32. Betting Out of Turn.** Should any player bet out of his turn, he cannot take down his counters again if he has removed his hand from them. Should the player whose proper turn it was

raise the bet, the player who bet out of turn must either meet the raise or abandon his hand, and all interest in that pool.

**33. Mouth Bets.** Any player stating that he bets a certain amount, but failing to put up the actual counters in the pool, cannot be called upon to make the amount good after the hands are shown, or the pool is won. If the players opposed to him choose to accept a mouth bet against the counters they have already put up, they have no remedy, as no value is attached to what a player says; his cards and his counters speak for themselves. Any player wishing to raise a mouth bet has the privilege of raising by mouth, instead of by counters; but he cannot be called upon to make the amount good after the hands are shown, or the pool has been won.

**34. Showing Hands.** When a call is made, all the hands must be shown to the table, and the best poker hand wins the pool. Any player declining to show his hand, even though he admits that it is not good, must pay an amount equal to the ante to each of the players at the table; or, if jack pots are played, he must put up for all of them in the next jack pot. When the hands are called, there is no penalty for mis-calling a hand; the cards, like the counters, speak for themselves.

**35. Rank of the Hands.** The best poker hand is a *Royal Flush*; A K Q J 10 of the same suit, which beats a

*Straight Flush*; any sequence of five cards of the same suit.

*Four of a Kind*; such as four 10's and an odd card.

*Full Hand*; three of a kind and a pair, such as three 8's and a pair of Q's, which beats a

*Flush*; five cards of the same suit, but not in sequence.

*Straight*; five cards in sequence, but of various suits. In straights, the Ace cannot be used to form such combinations as Q K A 2 3; but it may be used as the bottom of 5 4 3 2, or the top of 10 J Q K. Straights beat

*Three of a Kind*; such as three K's and two odd cards.

*Two Pairs*; such as two 9's and two 7's, with an odd card.

*A Pair*; such as two Aces and three odd cards.

If no pair is shown, the *Highest Card* wins.

A short hand, such as four cards, cannot be claimed as either a straight or a flush.

**36. Ties.** In case of ties, the highest of the odd cards decides it. Ultimate ties must divide the pool. When combinations of equal rank are shown, the one containing the highest cards wins, the rank of the cards being, A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2; so that two pairs, K's and 4's, will beat two pairs, Q's and J's. Three 2's and a pair of 2's, will beat three 4's and a pair of aces.

## JACK POT LAWS.

**37. The Antes.** There is neither age nor straddle in jack pots. Every one at the table must ante an equal amount. Any player may decline to ante, by saying: "I pass this jack;" and the dealer will give him no cards.

**38. Opening.** After the cards are dealt, each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, may open the pot for any amount he pleases within the betting limit, provided he holds a pair of Jacks, or some hand better than a pair of Jacks. If he does not hold openers, or does not wish to open the pot with them, he must say: "I pass;" but must not abandon his hand, under penalty of paying five counters to the pool.

**39. False Openers.** Should a player open a jack without the hand to justify it, and discover his error before he draws, his hand is foul, and he forfeits whatever amount he may have already placed in the pool. Those who have come into the pool after the false opening, stay in and play for the pot, regardless of the value of the hands dealt them.

**40. Fattening.** If no player will open, the cards are reshuffled, cut, and dealt, usually by the same dealer, and each player adds one counter to the pool.

**41. Coming In.** If any player opens the pot for a certain amount, each player in turn, on his left, can come in by putting up a similar amount, regardless of the value of his hand. Any player on the right of the opener who passed on the first round may now come in. Any player declining to put up the amount for which the pot is opened must abandon his hand, and all his interest in the pool.

**42. Raising the Opener.** Any player coming into the pool has the privilege of raising the original opener any amount within the betting limit, and he may in turn be raised again, just as in the ordinary pools. Should the opener decline to meet such a raise, he must show his entire hand before abandoning it. If he declines to do so, he must pay the antes for all the other players for another jack. It is not enough to show openers before the draw, the whole hand must be shown.

**43. Drawing Cards.** Each player in turn who has come in, beginning on the left of the dealer, may discard and draw, to improve his hand. The opener is allowed to split his openers, provided it is the rule of the game that the opener shall *always* put his discard under the chips in the pool, whether he is going to split or not. The opener's discard must never be gathered in with other discards when the pack runs short for the draw.

**44. False Hands.** If a false opener does not discover his mistake until after he has drawn cards, his hand is foul, and must be abandoned. As a penalty he must put up an ante for each of the other players at the table for another Jack.

**45. Betting the Hands.** The opener makes the first bet; or, if he has withdrawn, the player next on his left. Should the opener decline to bet after the draw, he must show his openers before abandoning his hand. He need not show the cards he has drawn. If no bet is made, the last player holding cards takes the pool without showing his hand. If a bet is made, the game proceeds as in the ordinary pools. Should the opener retire during the betting, he must show his openers; if he is in the final call he must show his entire hand, whether it is the best or not. If he or any other player declines to show his hand when a call is made, he must ante for all the other players for another jack.

**46. Shy Bets.** If any player is shy in a jack pot, whether from failure to put up his ante, to fatten, or to substantiate his mouth bets with counters, nothing can be collected from him after a call has been made, or the pot has been won.

---

## STRAIGHT POKER.

Straight Poker or *Bluff* is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, and any number of players from one to eight. The arrangements for counters, seats, and deal are exactly the same as in Draw Poker, but the method of anteing and betting up the hands is slightly different. There is no draw to improve the hand, and no such combination as a straight flush is recognized, four of a kind being the highest hand possible.

The ante and betting limit must be decided before play begins. The first dealer is provided with a *buck*, which should be a pen-knife, or some similar article. Before dealing, he puts up the amount of the ante for all the players, and then *passes the buck* to the player on his left, who must ante for all the players in the next pool. There is no variation of the amount of the ante under any circumstances, and the buck is passed round the table in this manner irrespective of the deal, which is taken by the player winning the pool. The laws for the deal and its irregularities are the same as in Draw Poker, except that it does not pass to the left.

The cards dealt, each in turn, beginning with the player to the left of the dealer, may either bet or pass. Should all pass, the

holder of the buck antes, making a double pool, and passes the buck. The deal then passes to the left. Should any player make a bet, each in turn, beginning with the one on his left, must call it, raise it, or abandon his hand. Players who have passed the first time, must now decide. The rules for seeing, raising, calling, and showing hands are precisely the same as at Draw Poker.

Owing to the absence of the draw, there is no clue to the strength of an opponent's hand, except his manner, and the amount of his bet. The hands shown are much weaker than the average of those at Draw Poker, being about equal to hands that a player in that game would come in on. Triplets are very strong at Straight Poker, and two pairs will win three out of four pools in a five-handed game. The great element of success is bluff.

---

## STUD POKER.

The arrangements for the cards, seats, antes, buck, etc., are precisely as at Straight Poker; but in dealing, only the first card is dealt face down, the remaining four being turned up by the dealer as he gives them out. Each player in turn then looks at his *down card*, and the betting proceeds as in Straight Poker, each player having the privilege of passing once before a bet is made.

A much more popular method is to stop the deal at two cards, each player having received one face down, and another face up. The best card showing then makes the first bet, and each player in turn must meet it, raise it, or pass out of that pool. If no one will call, the player making the bet takes the pool, and the next deal. If a bet is made and called, those in the call do not show their down cards, but are each given another card, face up, and the same betting process is gone through, the best hand showing face up making the first bet in each round. As long as two or more players remain in the pool they are given more cards until they have five. Then the final betting is done, and if a call is made, the down cards are shown, and the best poker hand wins the pool. Straight flushes do not count.

**HIGH-LOW STUD.** The modern style of playing either stud or Peek Poker (page 204), is to divide the pot equally between the best and the worst hand shown for the pool in the call. This is to keep players in. Instead of their throwing up their cards after one or two draws when they see a very strong hand showing, they stay in and draw for the low hand.

## WHISKEY POKER.

The arrangements for the cards, seats, etc., are the same as in Draw Poker. Each player is provided with an equal number of white counters, which may have a value attached to them, or which may simply represent markers. If the counters represent money, each player should have at least twenty; if they are only markers, five is the usual number.

If the game is played for money, each player puts one counter in the pool before the cards are dealt. There is no raising or betting of any kind.

An extra hand, called *the widow*, is dealt face down at Whiskey Poker. The dealer gives each player and the widow five cards, one at a time, beginning on his left, and dealing to the widow just before he deals to himself. Each player in turn, beginning with the ace, then examines his hand, and has the option of exchanging it for the widow; keeping it for the purpose of drawing to it; or risking his chances of winning the pool with it as it is.

If he wishes to exchange, he must place his five cards face upward on the table, and take up the widow, but without showing it to any other player. The hand he abandons then becomes the widow. If he prefers to draw to his hand, he says: "*I pass*," which transfers to the next player the option of taking the widow. If he wishes to stand on the merits of the hand dealt to him, without drawing to it, he *knocks* on the table, which also passes the option of taking the widow to the next player on his left.

If any player takes the widow, the next player on his left can do any one of three things: He may discard from his own hand any card he pleases, taking one from the widow in its stead; the card which he discards being placed on the table face upward, and becoming part of the widow; or he may exchange his entire hand for the widow; or he may stand on the hand dealt him, and knock. Whether he draws one card, exchanges his entire hand, or knocks, the next player on his left has the option of drawing, exchanging, or knocking; and so on, until some player does knock.

Should no player take the widow until it comes to the dealer's turn, he must either take it, or turn it face upward on the table. Even if the dealer knocks, he must turn up the widow, and allow each player an opportunity to draw from it, or to exchange his entire hand for it.

When a player knocks, he signifies that no matter what the players following him may do, when it comes to his turn again the hands must be shown. A player cannot draw and knock at the same time; but a player can refuse to draw or exchange after an-

other player has knocked, not before. In some localities it is the rule to turn the widow face up at once if any player knocks before it is taken; allowing all those after the knock an opportunity to draw or exchange; but this is not the usual custom.

Suppose five play. E deals, and A passes; B takes the widow; C and D draw from B's abandoned hand, and E knocks; without drawing, of course. A, who passed the first time, now has an opportunity to draw or exchange. So have each of the others in turn, up to D; but after D draws or exchanges, the hands must be shown, because the next player, E, has knocked.

When the hands are shown, there are two ways to settle: If the counters have a money value, the best poker hand wins the pool, and the deal passes to the left. If the counters have no money value, there is no pool; but the player who has the worst hand shown puts one of his counters in the middle of the table. This continues until some player has lost all five of his counters, and he is then called upon to pay for the whiskey, or whatever refreshments may be at stake upon the game. Hence the name: Whiskey Poker.

---

## PEEK POKER.

This is a variety of Stud Poker, of which there are two forms, seven cards being dealt to each player, or eight. In the first and original form of the game, two cards are dealt to each player, face down. Then five face up. With eight cards, the last is also face down. The players draw, one card at a time, as in stud; and at the end each player must reduce his hand to five cards if he wants to show for the pool.

---

## DEUCES WILD.

This is an improvement on Joker Poker, or Mistigris. It may be played with the full pack of 52 cards, or the deleted pack of 44 only; but if only 44, the cards taken out must be the threes and fours, leaving the deuces in.

The holder of one or more deuces may call those cards anything he likes, even if he has the duplicate of that card in his own hand. Two kings and a deuce may be called three kings. The king, jack, ten of clubs and two deuces may be called a straight flush, king high, or a royal flush, ace high.

Every pot is a jack, but there are no openers required. When the usual betting, drawing and calling is over, the hands are shown, and the best combination that can be made out of the cards and deuces, if any, wins. Five of a kind is a legitimate hand.



Sometimes the joker is added, in which case the four deuces and the joker would be the best possible hand. Any legitimate hand will win a tie with a hand made up of deuces or the joker, so that a pair of kings will beat king and deuce.

---

## THE WILD WIDOW.

This is a variation of deuces wild. The game is practically draw poker, except that after each player has received four cards one card is dealt to the table face up. Each player then gets his fifth card. The three cards of the same denomination as the widow, which is face up, are then "running wild," and any player holding one or more of those cards may call it what he pleases, just as in deuces wild. The joker is sometimes added, so that there are four cards running wild.

---

## SPIT IN THE OCEAN

In this variation, which is on the same order as the Wild Widow in which four cards are dealt to each player, all face down. The next card is turned face up in the center of the table and no more cards are dealt until the betting before the draw is finished. Those who are left discard and draw to their hands, but still have only four cards.

They then proceed to bet just as they would in draw poker with five cards, each player having the privilege of considering the card in the center of the table as part of his hand, but running wild. This is practically the same thing as giving each player who stays in the pool a joker for his fifth card.

---

## THE STRIPPED PACK

It is sometimes agreed to take out the deuces and treys and play with only 44 cards. This is to alter in some degree the established probabilities of the game.

---

## TEXT-BOOKS ON POKER

- Draw Poker, by John W. Keller, 1887.  
Round Games, by Baxter-Wray, 1891.  
Complete Poker Player, by John Blackbridge, 1875.  
Proctor on Draw Poker, 1883.  
Schenck's Rules for Draw Poker, 1872.  
The Poker Book, by Richard Guerndale, 1888.  
The Gentlemen's Handbook of Poker, by J. W. Florence, 1892.  
Poker Rules in Rhyme, by Geo. W. Allen, 1895.  
Science of Draw Poker, by David A. Curtis, 1901.  
Poker, Brentano's Pocket Library Series, by R. F. Foster, 1897.  
Practical Poker, with complete laws, by R. F. Foster, 1905.  
Treatise on Poker, by E. P. Philpots, 1904.  
Poker probabilities, by Alleyne Reynolds, 1901.  
The Game of Draw Poker, Mathematically Illustrated, by H. T. Winterblossom, 1875.



## THE EUCHRE FAMILY.

---

This family embraces four of the best known and most popular games in the world, each of which has been considered the national game in its own country : Écarté in France ; Napoleon in England ; Spoil Five in Ireland ; and Euchre in America.

It has always been the custom to trace the origin of Euchre to a variety of Triomphe, or French Ruff, probably introduced to America by the French of Louisiana ; and to claim Écarté as its cousin, and the French survivor of the parent game. In the opinion of the author, both the game and its name go to show that Euchre is of mixed stock, and probably originated in an attempt to play the ancient Irish game of Spoil Five with a piquet pack. "Euchre" is not a French word, but the meaning of it is identical with "Spoil Five" ; both names signifying that the object of the game is to prevent the maker of the trump from getting three tricks. In the one game he is "spoiled ;" in the other he is "euchred." In the old game of Triomphe, in Écarté, and in the black suits in Spoil Five, the order of the court cards in plain suits is the same, the ace ranking below the Jack, But in Euchre the Jack ranks above the ace when the suit is trumps, exactly as it does in Spoil Five. In the latter game the five is the best trump ; but as there is no five in a piquet pack, that trump was probably disregarded, leaving the Jack the best. Taking up, or "robbing" the turn-up trump, is another trait common to both Spoil Five and Euchre.

Spoil Five and Triomphe are mentioned in the earliest works on card games. Triomphe can be traced to 1520, when it was popular in Spain ; and the origin of Maw, the parent of Spoil Five, is lost in the mists of Irish antiquity. It was the fashionable game during the reign of James I.

The old Spanish game of Triomphe, now obsolete, seems to have undergone several changes after its introduction to France. At first it was played either by two persons, or by two pairs of partners. If one side had bad cards, they could offer to abandon the hand, and allow the adversaries to count a point without play-

ing. If the adversaries refused, they were obliged to win all five tricks or lose two points. It was compulsory to win the trick if possible, and to trump, overtrump, or undertrump if the player had none of the suit led. This peculiarity survives in the games of Rams and Loo, which also belong to the euchre family.

After a time we find a variation introduced in which any number from two to six could play, each for himself, and the player first winning two tricks out of the five marked the point. Later still we find the ace ranking above the King, thus becoming the best trump. If the ace was turned up, the dealer had the privilege of robbing it, or the holder of the ace of trumps could rob the turn-up, discarding any card he pleased, just as in Spoil Five. But in Triomphe the dealer turned up another card, and if that was of the trump suit the holder of the ace could rob that also, and so on until he turned a card of a different suit. This did not alter the trump, but merely stopped the robbing process. Whether or not Triomphe borrowed this feature from Spoil Five or Maw, it is now impossible to say.

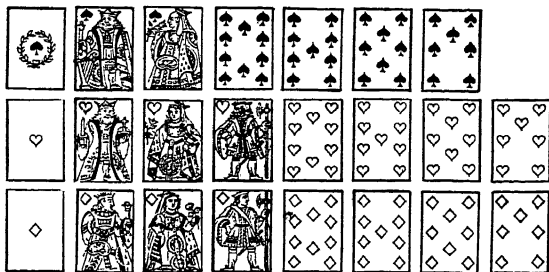
Whatever its origin, Euchre has always been the most respectable member of the family, and the game of all others that has best served the card-playing interest in social life. Spoil Five probably comes next in point of respectability; but Écarté has often fallen into evil hands, and the very name is in some places regarded as synonymous for gambling. The same is true of Napoleon, but in less degree. Euchre, unlike the other members of the family, is not essentially a gambling game, but belongs rather to the intellectual group of card games; a position which we hope it may long maintain.

## EUCHRE.

**CARDS.** Euchre is played with what is commonly known as the piquet pack, 32 cards, all below the 7 being deleted. In plain suits the cards rank as at Whist; but in the trump suit the Jack is the best, and it is called the *Right Bower*. The Jack of the same colour as the trump suit, red or black, is the second-best trump, and it is called the *Left Bower*; so that if clubs were trumps the rank of the nine cards in the trump suit would be as follows:—



The rank of the cards in the other suits would be :—



When the *Joker*, or blank card is used, it is always the best trump, ranking above the right bower. In cutting, the ace is low, the other cards ranking as in plain suits. A player cutting the *Joker* must cut again.

**COUNTERS** or whist markers may be used for keeping the score, but it is much more common to use the small cards from the deleted portion of the pack. The game is five points, and the best method of scoring is to use the 4 and 3 of any suit. When the 3 is face up, but covered by the 4 face down, it counts *one*. When the 4 is face up, covered by the 3 face down, it counts *two*. When the 4 is face down, covered by the 3 face up, it counts *three*. When the 3 is face down, covered by the 4 face up, it counts *four*.



ONE.



TWO.



THREE.



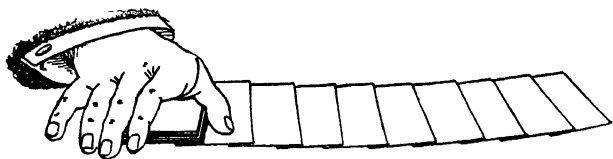
FOUR.

The number of pips exposed on the card which is face up is immaterial ; the relative position of the two cards will always determine the score.

Rubber or game scores must be kept on a whist marker, or on a sheet of paper.

**PLAYERS.** *Euchre* may be played by any number of persons from two to seven ; but in the seven-handed game the full pack of fifty-three cards is used. Whatever the number of players, they cut for positions at the table, for partners, and for the deal.

**CUTTING.** The cards are usually spread, face down, and each candidate for play draws a card.



SPREADING THE PACK.

When *two* or *three* play, the lowest cut has the choice of seats, and takes the first deal. When *four* play, they cut for partners; the two highest pairing against the two lowest. The lowest has the choice of seats, and deals the first hand. When *five* or *seven* play, they have the choice of seats in their order, the lowest first, and the lowest cut deals. When *six* play, the three lowest are partners against the three highest, the lowest cut having the choice of seats, and the first deal.

**TIES.** Players cutting cards of equal value cut again; but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

**PLAYER'S POSITIONS.** The *eldest hand*, or age, sits on the left of the dealer, and the *pone* sits on the dealer's right. There are no distinctive names for the other positions.

When *two* play, they sit opposite each other. When *three* play, each for himself, the game is known as *Cut Throat*, and the position of the players is immaterial. When *four* play, the partners sit opposite each other. When *five* or *seven* play, the maker of the trump in each deal selects his partners, and they play against the others without any change in their positions at the table. When *six* play, three are partners against the other three, and the opposing players sit alternately round the table.

**STAKES.** If there is any stake upon the game, its amount must be settled before play begins. When *rubbers* are played, it is usual to make the stake so much a rubber point. If the winners of the game are five points to their adversaries' nothing, they win a *treble*, and count three rubber points. If the losers have scored one or two points only, the winners mark two points for a *double*. If the losers have reached three or four, the winners mark one for a *single*. The side winning the rubber adds two points to its score for so doing; so that the largest rubber possible is one of eight points;—two triples to nothing, and two added for the rubber. The smallest possible is one point;—two singles and the rubber, against a triple. If the first two games are won by the same partners, the third is not played.

**DEALING.** Any player has the right to shuffle the cards, the dealer last. The pack must be presented to the pone to be cut, and he must leave at least four cards in each packet. Beginning on his left, the dealer distributes the cards either two at a time and then three, or three and then two to each player in rotation, until all have five cards. Whichever number, two or three, the dealer begins with, he must continue giving the same number to every player, including himself, for the first round. After the cards are dealt, the next card is turned face up on the remainder of the pack, except in five and seven-handed Euchre, in which no trump is turned. Each player deals in turn to the left, until the conclusion of the game or rubber.

**Irregularities in the Deal.** If any card is found faced in the pack, the dealer must deal again. Should the dealer expose any card but the trump while dealing, the adversaries may demand a new deal by the same dealer. Should any adversary of the dealer expose a card, the dealer may elect to deal again. A player dealing out of turn may be stopped before the trump card is turned; but after that the deal must stand, afterward passing to the left in regular order. On the completion of the deal, if any player has more or less than five cards, it is a misdeal, and the deal passes to the player on the misdealer's left.

The dealer loses his deal if he neglects to have the pack cut; if he deals a card incorrectly, and fails to remedy the error before dealing another; if he counts the cards on the table, or those remaining in the pack; or if he deals two cards to one player and three to another in the same round.

If the pack is found to be imperfect, the deal in which the error is discovered is void; but all previous scores stand good.

**MAKING THE TRUMP.** Although a card is turned up at the end of the deal, the suit to which it belongs is not necessarily the trump for that hand. Each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, whether he be an adversary or a partner of the dealer's, may insist on the turn-up suit remaining the trump; or he may declare that he is indifferent as to which suit is the trump, the one turned up or some other. But should one player in his proper turn decide in favour of the turn-up, no player after him can alter the decision. When it comes to the dealer's turn, if no other player has decided to retain the suit turned up, he must either let the trump remain as it is, or insist on its being changed.

As the individual or side that settles which suit shall be the trump is said to *make the trump*, it will be necessary to describe the method of scoring in order to understand the principle; that guide the players in deciding on the trump suit.

**SCORING.** Euchre is played for tricks. If the side that makes the trump takes three or four tricks out of the five possible,

it scores one point. If the side wins all five tricks, it scores two points for a *march*. If the player that makes the trump fails to win three tricks, he is *euchred*, and his adversaries score two points for the euchre. *When four play*, if the player who makes the trump declares to play *alone*, that is, without any assistance from his partner, who must lay down his cards, the maker of the trump scores four points if he succeeds in winning all five tricks, and one point if he wins three or four tricks. But if he fails to win three tricks, he is *euchred*, and the adversaries score two points. *When three play*, a lone hand counts three if the player wins all five tricks. *When two play*, five tricks is simply a *march*, and counts two points. *When five or seven play*, there are special scores for lone hands. When all five tricks are taken by one side, but not by an individual playing a lone hand, it is simply a *march*, and counts two points, no matter how many are playing. When two or three are playing, a *march* must of course be a lone hand, as there are no partnerships. As we shall see later, there are some varieties of *Euchre* in which a lone hand may play against a lone hand, but this is not permitted in the ordinary game.

No one but the individual player who makes the trump can play alone.

Except in five and seven-handed *Euchre*, the player or side first reaching five points wins the game. If three are playing, and two of them reach five points simultaneously by *euchreing* the third, they both win a game. If they are playing for stakes, they divide the pool.

**TAKING UP THE TRUMP.** After the trump is turned up, each player in turn examines his cards, and if he does not care whether the trump suit remains unchanged or not, he says: "*I pass.*" If all pass, the dealer must decide. The dealer has the advantage of being allowed to take the trump card into his own hand, discarding one of his worthless cards in its place. If he thinks he can make three tricks with the turn-up suit for trumps, and his partner's probable assistance, or can win five tricks by playing alone, he discards any card he pleases, placing it under the remainder of the pack, face down, and without showing or naming it. If the dealer decides to play alone, it is usual for him to pass his discard across the table to his partner, face down, so that there may be no misunderstanding his intention.

The dealer may take up the trump card at any time during the play of the hand; but it is usual to leave it on the pack until it is played to a trick. No one but the dealer can take the trump into his hand.

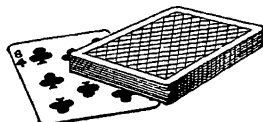
**TURNING DOWN THE TRUMP.** If the dealer fears that he and his partner cannot make three tricks with the turn-up



suit for trumps, or would prefer to have the suit changed, he can pass. If he passes, he takes the trump card from the top of the pack, and places it face upward, and partly under the pack, in such a manner that it can be distinctly seen.



TAKEN UP.



TURNED DOWN.

**CHANGING THE TRUMP.** It then becomes the turn of the other players, each in succession to the left of the dealer, to name some other suit for the trump, or to pass a second time. If the suit of the same colour as the turn-up is named for the new trump, it is usual to say: "*I make it next.*" If a suit of a different colour is named, it is called *crossing the suit*, and some players, if a red suit is turned, will say: "I *cross* to clubs."

Any player naming a new suit may announce to play alone at the same time. The side that makes the new trump must make at least three tricks, or it will be euchred, and the adversaries will count two points. If a player names the suit that has just been turned down, he loses his right to make the trump; and if he corrects himself, and names another suit, he debars not only himself but his partner from making the trump. One player having named a new trump suit in his proper turn, his decision is binding on all the others; but should a player name a suit out of his proper turn, both he and his partner are debarred from making that suit the trump. If no one will name a new trump, the deal is void, and passes to the next player on the dealer's left.

**ORDERING UP THE TRUMP.** Instead of passing the turn-up trump on the first round, any player who thinks it would be to his advantage to have the turn-up remain the trump, may order the dealer to take it up. In doing so he says: "*I order it,*" if he is an adversary; or: "*I assist,*" if he is the dealer's partner. In either case the player making the trump may announce a lone hand at the same time. His side must make at least three tricks, whether he plays alone or not, or it is a euchre, and the adversaries will count two points. In case an adversary of the dealer plays alone, he must distinctly announce it when he orders up the trump. The usual expression is: "*I order it alone.*" His partner then lays his cards face downward on the table and takes no further part in the play of that hand. If he exposes any card of the abandoned hand, the adversaries can call upon him to take up the hand and play it, leaving the exposed card

on the table as liable to be called. This of course prevents the lone hand.

If the dealer's partner wishes to play alone, instead of assisting, he says: "*I play this alone,*" and the dealer lays down his cards, leaving the trump on the pack.

**PLAYING ALONE.** No player but the one that takes up, orders up, or makes the trump can play a lone hand. If the dealer takes up the trump card of his own accord, he can play alone. If any player orders up or assists, that player can play alone. Any player making a new trump after the first has been turned down, can play alone. If one player orders up the trump, neither his partner nor his adversary can play alone; and if the dealer's partner assists, that prevents the dealer from playing a lone hand. In many clubs the mistake is made of allowing the dealer to play alone on his partner's assist; or letting the lone play alone after the dealer has been assisted; or letting the partner of the player who makes the new trump play alone. This is not good *Euchre*, because it gives an unfair advantage to one side, as we shall see when we come to the suggestions for good play, especially in connection with ordering up at what is called the "bridge;" that is, when the score is 4 to 1, or 4 to 0.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The trump settled, the eldest hand, or the player next him on the left, if the partner of the eldest hand is playing alone, begins by leading any card he pleases, and the others must follow suit if they can. Failure to follow suit when able is a *revoke*, if the error is not discovered and corrected before the trick in which it occurs is turned and quitted. If the player discovers his mistake in time, the card played in error must be left on the table, and is liable to be called. When a revoke is discovered and claimed by the adversaries, it is usual to abandon the hand, and the adversaries of the revoking player can either deduct two points from his score, or add two to their own score, for every revoke made during the hand. The penalty cannot be divided. If both sides revoke, the deal is void, and the same dealer must deal again.

Any player having none of the suit led may either trump, or throw away a card of another suit. The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, trumps winning against all other suits, and a higher trump winning a lower. The winner of the trick may lead any card he pleases for the next trick, and so on, until all five tricks have been played. If the dealer takes the trump into his hand, any player naming it is liable to have his highest or lowest trump called; but a player may ask and must be informed what the trump suit is.

**Cards Played in Error.** All cards led out of turn, played in error, or two or more played to a trick, or dropped face upward

on the table, are called *exposed cards*, and must be left face up on the table. These must be played when called by the adversaries, unless compliance with the demand would make the player revoke; but the fact of their being exposed does not prevent their being got rid of in the course of play if the opportunity offers. Some persons imagine that the adversaries can prevent an exposed card from being played; but such is not the case in Euchre. A person playing a lone hand is not liable to any penalty for exposing his cards, nor for leading out of turn, for he has no partner to derive any benefit from the information conveyed.

**Leading Out of Turn.** Should any person, not playing alone, lead out of turn, the adversaries may call a suit from the player in error, or from his partner, when it is next the turn of either of them to lead. The demand must be made by the person who will be the last player on the trick in which the suit is called. If all have played to the lead before discovering the error, it cannot be rectified; but if all have not played, those who have followed the false lead must take back their cards, which are not liable to be called.

Any player may ask the others to *draw cards* in any trick, provided he does so before the cards are touched for the purpose of gathering them. In answer to this demand, each player should indicate which card of those on the table he played. No one is allowed to see any trick that has been turned and quitted.

**Taking Tricks.** As the tricks are taken they should be neatly laid one upon the other in such a manner that any player at the table can count them. All tricks belonging to one side should be kept together. At the end of each hand the score should be claimed and marked. Revokes must be detected and claimed before the cards are cut for the following deal.

**CUTTING OUT.** When the play is confined to four players, rubbers are usually played, and the table is complete with six persons, two looking on, and awaiting their turn. At the end of a rubber, if there are more than four players belonging to the table, those who have just played cut to decide which shall give place to those waiting, the players cutting the highest cards going out. If six belong to the table, there will be no further cutting out, as those who are out for one rubber re-enter for the next, taking the places of those who have played two consecutive rubbers. If five belong to the table, the three who remained in for the second rubber must cut to allow the fifth player to re-enter. At the end of the third rubber, the two cut that have not yet been out; and at the end of the fourth rubber the one who has played every rubber goes out without cutting. Partners and deal are cut for at the beginning of each new rubber.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** All the *Euchre* family of games, especially *Écarté* and *Napoleon*, offer numerous opportunities to the greek. So well is this known in Europe that it is considered extremely foolish for any person to play *Écarté* in mixed companies. The small number of cards in the pack, and the custom of dealing two and three at a time, gives the dealer an opportunity to bunch four valuable cards, of which he can give himself three, and turn up the fourth. False shuffles, shifted cuts, and marked cards are formidable weapons. The telegraph between partners, and the variation in tone or words in passing are frequently used by card-sharpers. One of the commonest devices in America is the use of what are known as "jack strippers." These are two Jacks, usually both of the same colour, which can be withdrawn from any portion of the pack by the fingers of an expert, and placed on the top. When the sharp deals, he places cards enough on these to supply the other players on the first round, so that the strippers will come to him. When only two are playing, he strips them out and leaves them on the top when he cuts the cards, so that they shall be dealt to him. Never play *Euchre* or *Écarté* with a man who cuts the pack with both hands.

Any person who is tempted to bet on any game in the *Euchre* family should remember the advice of the worldly-wise Parisian to his son: "Until you have four eyes in your head, risk not your gold at *Écarté*."

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** The chief points for the beginner to understand are. When to order up; when to assist; when to take up; when to play alone; and what to make the trump if it is turned down. His decision in each case will be governed largely by his position at the table, and by the score. The following suggestions are for four players, two being partners against the other two, and playing without the Joker; that being the most common form of the game. The general principles underlying these suggestions for the four-handed game will be found equally valuable in any form of *Euchre*.

**ORDERING UP.** Although probabilities are of little practical value in *Euchre*, it may be well to remember that there are nine cards in the trump suit; but as only two-thirds of the pack is dealt out, the average number of trumps among four players will be six. Of these, the dealer always has the advantage of being sure of one more than his share, and it is safe to reckon upon the dealer to hold at least two trumps. He may also be counted for a missing suit, for he will discard any losing card of an odd suit when he takes up the trump.

**The Eldest Hand** should not order up the trump unless he has such cards that he is reasonably certain of three tricks without any assistance from his partner, and cannot be sure of two tricks if

the trump is turned down. When he holds one or two bowers, especially if he has cards of the next suit; that is, the suit of the same colour as the turn-up, he should always pass; because if the dealer takes it up he will probably be euchred, and if he turns it down, the eldest hand will have the first say, and can make it next. It is seldom right to order up a bower, because the dealer will rarely turn down such a card.

There are exceptional cases in which the eldest hand may order up with little or nothing. One of the most common is when the adversaries of the dealer are at the *bridge*; that is, when their score is 4, and the dealer's side has only 1 or 2 marked. It is obvious that if the dealer or his partner plays alone, he will win the game; but if the trump is ordered up the most he can score is 2 points for a euchre, and the player who orders up will then have a chance to go out on his own deal. For this reason it has come to be regarded as imperative for the eldest hand to order up at the bridge, unless he holds the right bower, or the left bower guarded, or the ace twice guarded, any one of which combinations is certain to win a trick against a lone hand if the eldest hand does not lead trumps himself. Another case is when the score is 4 to 4, and the eldest hand has average trump strength, good side cards, but nothing in the next suit. It is better to order it up, and risk the game on such a hand than to take the chance of the dealer's turning it down.

*The Pone*, who is the partner of the eldest hand, orders up at the bridge on exactly opposite principles. The fact that the eldest hand did not order up shows that the dealer cannot make a lone hand. This should indicate to the pone that his partner has a certain trick in trumps, and if the pone holds any good trumps himself, he can often guess what his partner's trumps are. For instance: The ace is turned, and the pone holds the left bower guarded. The eldest hand must have the right bower, or four trumps to the King. If the eldest hand has passed at the bridge, and the pone has strong trumps himself, especially the ace or left bower and two small trumps, he should order up the trump; not to save the game, but to be sure of winning it by preventing the dealer from turning it down. If the pone does not order up at the bridge, the eldest hand may infer that he is weak in trumps.

When it is not a bridge, the pone should be guided by the same principles as those given for the eldest hand, because he may be sure that his partner will make it next if it is turned down, unless he has a certainty of three tricks by crossing.

If a player calls his partner's attention to the fact that they are at the bridge, both lose their right to order up.

*ASSISTING.* The dealer's partner usually assists on plain-suit cards, such as two aces, rather than on trumps. The score

and the turn-up trump will often be a guide as to whether or not to assist. For instance: If the score is 1 all, or to 2 to 1, and a bower is turned, it is rarely right to assist, because it prevents the dealer from playing alone. If the partner has good suit cards, they may be useful to make a march; if he has strong trumps, especially if sure of three tricks, he should play alone, instead of assisting. If the score is 3 in the dealer's favour, he does not need a lone hand to win the game, and with two reasonably certain tricks in his own hand the dealer's partner should assist, as they may win the game by a march.

If the dealer's side is at the bridge, the score being 4 to 1 or 4 to 0 in their favour, and the eldest hand passes, the dealer's partner must be on the alert to prevent the pone from playing a lone hand. He should assist unless a bower is turned, or he has it himself, or holds such cards that, combined with the turn-up, he is sure of a trick. For instance: The dealer's partner has the King and two other trumps, and the ace is turned. It is impossible for the pone to make a lone hand, even if he has both bowers, and the ace is bare; for he cannot catch the King, even if his partner leads the trump through it. But if a small trump was turned, the pone might easily make a lone hand with both bowers and the ace.

**TAKING UP.** The average expectation of the dealer is something over two trumps, including the turn-up. With more than two trumps, or with two strong trumps, and a reasonably certain trick in a plain suit, the dealer should take up the trump. Three trumps of any size and an ace in plain suits is a strong take-up hand. It is better to take up the trump with only one plain suit in the hand, and small trumps, than with two strong trumps and two weak plain suits. The score will often decide the dealer in taking up the trump. For instance: At 4 all, it is useless to turn anything down unless you have a certain euchre in the next suit, and nothing in the turn-up. Even then, the adversaries are almost certain to cross the suit and go out. With the score 3 all, the dealer should be very careful about taking up on a weak hand, because a euchre loses the game. If he is weak, but has a chance in the next suit, or a bower in the cross suits, he should turn it down. It is a common stratagem to turn it down for a euchre when the dealer is better in the next suit, and has only 2 to go.

**PLAYING ALONE.** The dealer has the best chance to get a lone hand; but the eldest hand is more likely to succeed with one, on account of the advantage of the lead. It is an invariable rule for any player to go alone when he has three certain tricks, unless he is 3 up, and can win the game with a march. A lone hand should be played with both bowers and the ace, no matter how worthless the other cards; or with five trumps to the ace without either bower; or two high trumps and three aces in

plain suits; or three good trumps and two aces. The theory of this is that while the march might possibly be made with partner's assistance, if partner has the cards necessary to make a march, the adversaries have little or nothing, and there is a very good chance to make a lone hand if three tricks of it are certain. Both bowers and the ace, with only the seven and eight of a plain suit have made many a lone hand. If the lone player is not caught on the plain suit at the first trick, the adversaries may discard it to keep higher cards in the other suit; or they may have none of it from the first. There is always a chance, and it should be taken.

The dealer's partner, and the pone, should be very careful in playing lone hands, and should never risk them except with three certain tricks, no matter what suit is led first.

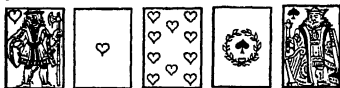
With three sure tricks, some players make it a rule to play alone, provided the two other cards are both of the same suit.

**MAKING THE TRUMP.** When the trump is turned down, the general rule is for the eldest hand to make it next. The exceptions are when he has nothing in the next suit, but has at least two certain tricks in the cross suit, and a probable trick in a plain suit. It is safer to make it next with a weak hand than to cross it on moderate strength, for the presumption is that neither the dealer nor his partner had a bower in the turn-down suit, and therefore have none in the next suit. Such being the case, it is very likely that one or both may be strong in the cross suits, and it is not considered good policy to cross the suit unless so strong in it as to be reasonably certain of three tricks. Some players invariably make it next, regardless of their hands, unless they can play alone in the cross suit. Such a habit exposes them to the common artifice of the dealer's turning it down for a euchre. A dealer holding a bower and three cards of the next suit, will often turn it down, and trust to the eldest hand making it next, which will give the dealer four trumps instead of two. The eldest hand should be on his guard against this when the dealer's side has 3 scored.

The dealer's partner, on the other hand, should cross the suit almost as invariably as the eldest hand should make it next; for if his partner cannot take up the trump, and the eldest hand cannot make it next, their hands must be weak, and if it is passed to the pone, he will probably turn out to have a lone hand. The best chance is to cross the suit, unless the player has three certain tricks in his own hand by making it next, such as five trumps to the ace, or four trumps and a plain-suit ace. With such cards he should play alone.

The pone should never make the trump unless he has three certain tricks, and is willing to play a lone hand. If the dealer turns it down, and both the eldest hand and the dealer's partner pass a second time, there must be a nigger in the woodpile somewhere.

**LEADING.** The general principle of leading is to make tricks while you can. It is useless to save up tenaces in plain suits, because there are only five tricks to play, two of which are certain to fall to the trumps, and it is very improbable that any player will lead up to you a small card of a plain suit that will go round twice. It is seldom right to lead small cards of a plain suit. There is a better chance to make a trick with the King by leading it than by keeping it guarded. In the trump suit, tenaces are very strong, and should be preserved, especially if the tenace is over the turn-up trump. There is a familiar example of the importance of tenace when only two play, in which one person holds the major tenace in trumps, hearts, and must win three tricks, no matter which player leads. The cards in one hand are :—



and those in the other hand are ;—



If the player with the major tenace has to lead first, all he has to do is to force his adversary with the plain suit, spades. Whatever the adversary leads, the player with the major tenace simply wins it, and forces again. If the player with the four trumps has the first lead, it does not matter what card he plays ; the player with the major tenace wins it, and forces with the plain suit. As long as the major tenace in trumps is not led away from, it must win three tricks in trumps.

**Leading Trumps.** With strong cards in plain suits, the eldest hand may often lead trumps to advantage if the dealer's partner has assisted, especially if the turn-up trump is small. It is seldom right to lead trumps if the dealer has taken up the trump of his own accord ; but an exception is usually made when the eldest hand holds three trumps, and two aces in plain suits. The best chance for a euchre is to exhaust the trumps, so as to make the aces good for tricks. If the pone has ordered up the trump, the eldest hand should lead trumps to him immediately ; but the pone should not lead trumps to his partner if the eldest hand has ordered up at the bridge. If a bower is turned, the dealer's partner should lead a small trump at the first opportunity.

In playing against a lone hand the best cards in plain suits should always be led, trumps never. In playing alone, it is best to lead winning trumps as long as they last, so as to force discards, which will often leave intermediate cards in plain suits good for tricks.



**Second Hand.** Play the best card you have second hand, and cover everything led if you can. With King and another or Queen and another, it is usually best to put up the honour second hand, on a small card led.

**Trumping.** It is seldom right to trump partner's winning cards, unless he has ordered up the trump, and you think you can lead through the dealer to advantage. In playing against a lone hand, it is sometimes good play to trump your partner's ace with an unguarded left bower or ace of trumps, as it may prevent the dealer from getting into the lead with a small trump, and may save a King or Queen of trumps in your partner's hand. If you don't trump, the dealer will probably get in and swing the right bower, and your trump will be lost.

If your partner has ordered, made, or taken up the trump, and you have only one trump, even a bower, trump with it at the first opportunity. Trump everything second hand, unless it takes the right bower for a doubtful trick, or breaks into the major tenace in trumps.

**Discarding.** It is best to throw away singletons, unless they are aces. If you have two cards of equal value, but of different colours, one of which must be discarded, it is usual to keep the one of the same colour as the turn-up when playing against the dealer. Discard suits that the adversaries are trumping. If your partner discards a suit in which you have a high card, keep that suit, and discard another. If you have both ace and King of a plain suit, discard the ace, to show partner that you can win a trick in the suit. It is very often important to discard correctly when playing against a lone hand, especially if the lone player leads trumps for the fourth trick. It is a common practice for modern players to signal in the discard if they have a certain trick in a suit. This is done by discarding two cards in another suit, the higher before the lower. For instance: You have two aces, spades and diamonds. The dealer plays alone on hearts, and trumps your spade ace the first time. If you have two clubs, such as King and ten, discard the King first, and then the ten, and your partner will know you can stop the diamond suit. This should advise him to keep his clubs.

---

## CUT-THROAT EUCHRE.

The chief element in the three-handed game is playing to the score. The player with the strong hand must always be kind to the under dog, and partnerships are always formed against the man with the high score. Suppose *A*, *B*, and *C* are playing, and

that *A* has 3 points to his adversaries' nothing on *B's* deal. It is to the interest of *A* to euchre *B*; but it is to the interest of *C* to let *B* make his point, because if *B* is euchred, *A* wins the game. *B* having made his point, *C* deals, and it is then to the interest of *B* to let *C* make his point. Suppose *C* makes a march, 3 points, which puts him on a level with *A*. On *A's* deal it is *C's* game to euchre him, but *B* must let *A* make his point; so that instead of being opposed by both *B* and *C*, as he was a moment ago, *A* finds a friend in *B*, and the two who were helping each other to beat *A*, are now cutting each other's throats. On *B's* deal, *A* does not want to euchre him, for although that would win the game for both *A* and *C*, *A*, who now has 4 points up, does not wish to divide the pool with *C* while he has such a good chance to win it all himself. Suppose *B* makes his point. *A* will do all he can to euchre *C*, but *B* will oppose the scheme, because his only chance for the game is that *A* will not be able to take up the trump on his own deal, and that *B* will make a march.

---

## SET-BACK EUCHRE.

This is simply a reversal of the ordinary method of scoring, the players starting with a certain number of points, usually ten, and deducting what they make on each deal. The peculiarity which gives the game its name is that if a player is euchred he is *set back* two points, his adversaries counting nothing. The revoke penalty is settled in the same way. The game is usually counted with chips, each player starting with ten, and placing in the centre of the table those that he is entitled to score.

---

## BLIND EUCHRE.

Each player is for himself and a widow of two cards is dealt. The player who takes the widow practically orders up the trump and must play against all the others after discarding two cards. If no one will take the widow, the deal is void.

## PENALTY EUCHRE.

Five players are each provided with twelve counters. An extra hand of five cards is dealt face down, for a widow. Each player in turn can exchange the hand dealt him for the widow, or for the hand abandoned by anyone who has taken the widow, the cards being always face down. The turned trump is not taken up by the dealer, but is left on the pack. The eldest hand leads for the first trick and every man is for himself, each holding his own tricks.

At the end of the hand, each player that has not taken a trick receives a counter from each of the others, whether they have taken tricks or not. Then all those that have won tricks put back into the pool a counter for each trick they have taken. The first player to get rid of his twelve counters wins the game.

## AUCTION EUCHRE.

This form of the game is sometimes erroneously called *French Euchre*. The French know nothing about Euchre in any form. Auction Euchre is exactly the same as the ordinary four or six-handed game, except that the trump is not turned up, the players bidding in turn for the privilege of naming the trump suit. The bidder names the number of tricks he proposes to take. There is no second bid, and the player who has made the highest bid names the trump suit. No matter who is the successful bidder, the eldest hand leads for the first trick. The number of points won or lost on the deal are the number of points bid, even if the bidder accomplishes more. If a player has bid 3, and he and his partner take 4 or 5 tricks, they count 3 only. If they are euchred, failing to make the number of tricks bid, the adversaries count the number of points bid. Fifteen points is usually the game.

This is probably the root of the much better games of five and seven-handed Euchre, which will be described further on.

## PROGRESSIVE EUCHRE.

This form of Euchre is particularly well suited to social gatherings. Its peculiarity consists in the arrangement and progression of a large number of players originally divided into sets of four, and playing, at separate tables, the ordinary four-handed game.

**Apparatus.** A sufficient number of tables to accommodate the assembled players are arranged in order, and numbered consecutively; No. 1 being called *the head table*, and the lowest of the series *the booby table*. Each player is provided with a blank card, to which the various coloured stars may be attached as they accrue in the course of play. These stars are usually of three colours; red, green, and gold. The head table is provided with a bell, and each table is supplied with one pack of cards only. It is usual to sort out the thirty-two cards used in play, and the four small cards for markers, before the arrival of the guests.

**Drawing for Positions.** Two packs of differently coloured cards are used, and from the two black suits in each a sequence of cards is sorted out, equal in length to the number of tables in play. For instance: If there are sixteen ladies and sixteen gentlemen, or thirty-two players in all, they will fill eight tables, and all the clubs and spades from the ace to the eight inclusive should be sorted out. These are then thoroughly shuffled and presented, face down, to the players to draw from. The ladies take only the red-back cards, and the gentlemen only the blue. The number of pips on the card drawn indicates the number of the table at which the player is to sit, and those drawing cards of the same suit are partners for the first game.

**Playing.** All being seated, the deal is cut for at each table, and play begins. There is no cutting for partners, that being settled in the original drawing. Five points is a game, and after that number is reached by either side at the head table, the bell is struck. Lone hands are usually barred at the head table, so as to give the other tables time to make a certain number of points, and so to avoid ties. Upon the tap of the bell all play immediately ceases, even if in the middle of a deal. If the players at any but the head table have reached five points before the bell rings, they play on, counting all points made until the bell taps.

**Progressing.** The partners winning the game at the head table each receive a gold star, and retain their seats for the next game. The losing players at the head table go down to the booby table. All the winning players at the other tables receive red

stars, and go to the table next in order above, those at table No. 2, going to No. 1. Those losing and remaining at the booby table each receive a green star.

**Changing Partners.** At all but the head table the partners that progress to the next table divide, the lady who has just lost at each table retains her seat, and takes for her partner the gentleman who has just arrived from the table below. At the head table the newly arrived pair remain as partners; but at the booby table the players who have just arrived from the head table divide. All being seated, they cut for the deal, and play is resumed until the next bell tap.

**Ties.** In case of ties in points at any table when the bell taps, those having won the most tricks on the next hand are declared the winners. If that is also a tie, the ladies cut to decide it, the lowest cut going up. In cutting, the ace is low, and the Jack ranks below the Queen.

**Prizes.** Six prizes are usually provided for large companies. The lady and gentleman having the largest number of gold stars taking the first prizes; the largest number of red stars winning the second prizes; and the largest number of green stars the booby prizes. One player cannot win two prizes. In case of ties for the gold stars, the accompanying red stars decide it; if that is also a tie, the player with the fewest number of green stars wins; and if that is still a tie, the players must cut for it.

The hostess decides the hour at which play shall cease, and is the referee in all disputes.

## MILITARY EUCHRE.

The hostess arranges each table as a fort, with a distinguishing flag and a number of small duplicate flags. The partners who sit East and West progress round the room from table to table, and play one game of five points at each, no lone hands allowed. The winners of each game get a little flag from the losers as a trophy. By the time the E and W pairs have made the circuit of all the tables and got home again, the game is ended, the victors being the fort that has captured the greatest number of flags.

## RAILROAD EUCHRE.

Railroad Euchre is the name given to any form of the four-handed game in which every expedient is used to make points rapidly.

**Cards.** A pack of twenty-five cards is used, all below the 9 being deleted, and the Joker added. The Joker is always the best trump.

**Players.** There are four players, two being partners against the other two. Partners, deal, and seats are cut for as in the ordinary game.

**Dealing.** The cards are distributed as in the ordinary game; but it is usual to agree beforehand upon a suit which shall be the trump if the Joker is turned up.

**Playing Alone.** The chief peculiarity in Railroad Euchre is in playing alone. Any player announcing to play alone, whether the dealer or not, has the privilege of passing a card, face down, to his partner. In exchange for this, but without seeing it, the partner gives the best card in his hand to the lone player, passing it to him face down. If he has not a trump to give him, he can pass him an ace, or even a King. Even if this card is no better than the one discarded, the lone player cannot refuse it. If the dealer plays alone, he has two discards; the first in exchange for his partner's best card, and then another, in exchange for the trump card, after seeing what his partner can give him. In this second discard he may get rid of the card passed to him by his partner. If the dealer's partner plays alone, the dealer may pass him the turn-up trump, or any better card he may have in his hand.

Any person having announced to play alone, either of his adversaries may play alone against him; discarding and taking partner's best card in the same manner. Should the lone player who makes the trump be euchred by the lone player opposing him, the euchre counts four points. It is considered imperative for a player holding the Joker, or the right bower guarded, to play alone against the lone hand, taking his partner's best; for as it is evident that the lone hand cannot succeed, there is a better chance to euchre it with all the strength in one hand than divided.

If any player, in his proper turn, announces to play alone, and asks for his partner's best, the partner cannot refuse; neither can he propose to play alone instead.

**Scoring.** With the exception of the four points for euchreing lone hand, the scoring is exactly the same as in the ordinary

four-handed game ; but there are one or two variations which are sometimes agreed upon beforehand in order to make points still more rapidly.

**Laps.** If a player makes more points than are necessary to win the game, the additional points are counted on the next game, so that there is always an inducement to play lone hands, even with 4 points up.

**Slams.** If one side reaches five points before the other has scored, it is a slam, and counts *two games*.

When laps and slams are played, it is sometimes agreed that if a person plays alone without taking his partner's best card, or the dealer plays alone without taking up the trump or asking for his partner's best, and such a player succeeds in winning all five tricks with a pat hand, it counts *five* points. If he fails to win all five tricks, the adversaries count *one*. If he is euchred, they count *three* ; but they are not permitted to play alone against him.

**Jambone.** Any person playing a lone hand may announce Jambone, and expose his cards face up on the table. The adversaries then have the right to call any card they please, either for the lead, or in following suit ; but they cannot make the player revoke, nor can they consult, or in any way expose their hands. If a lead is required, it must be called by the person on the jambone player's left. If a card is called on a trick, it must be called by the person on the jambone player's right. If in spite of these difficulties the jambone player succeeds in winning five tricks, he scores *eight* points. If he wins three or four only, he counts *one* point. If he is euchred he loses *two*. It is not allowable to play alone against a jambone.

**Jamboree.** This is the combination of the five highest trumps in one hand, and need only be announced and shown to entitle the holder to score *sixteen* points. If held by the dealer, it may be made with the assistance of the turn-up trump ; and any player may make it with the assistance of his partner's best ; but it does not count unless the holder of it has made the trump. If a player with a pat Jamboree is ordered up, all he can score is a euchre.

As in other forms of Euchre, no one but the maker of the trump can play alone, or announce Jambone or Jamboree. Lone hands are very common in Railroad Euchre, and ordering up to prevent lone hands is commoner still.

## SEVEN-HANDED EUCHRE.

**Cards.** Seven-handed Euchre is played with a full pack of fifty-three cards, including the Joker. The cards in plain suits rank as at Whist; but the Joker is always the best trump, the right and left bowers being the second and third-best respectively.

**Counters.** One white and four red counters are necessary. The white counter is passed to the left from player to player in turn, to indicate the position of the next deal. The red counters are placed in front of the maker of the trump and his partners, to distinguish them from their opponents. Markers are not used, the score being kept on a sheet of paper. The score is usually kept by a person who is not playing, in order that none of those in the game may know how the various scores stand. Should an outsider not be available for scoring, there are two methods: One is for one player to keep the score for the whole table, who must inform any player of the state of the score if asked to do so. The other is to have a dish of counters on the table, each player being given the number he wins from time to time. These should be placed in some covered receptacle, so that they cannot be counted by their owner, and no other player will know how many he has. As it is very seldom that a successful bid is less than five, and never less than four, counters marked as being worth 4, 5, 6 and 7 each will answer every purpose, and will pay every bid made.

**Cutting.** The players draw cards from an outspread pack for the choice of seats, those cutting the lowest cards having the first choice. The lowest cut of all deals the first hand, passing the white counter to the player on his left, whose turn it will be to deal next. Ties are decided in the usual way.

**Dealing.** The cards are dealt from left to right, two being given to each player for the first round, then three, and then two again, until each player has received seven cards. The four remaining in the pack are then placed in the centre of the table, face down, and form the *widow*. No trump is turned.

The rules governing all irregularities in the deal are the same as in ordinary Euchre.

**Making the Trump.** The cards dealt, each player in turn, beginning with the eldest hand, bids a certain number of points, at the same time naming the suit which he wishes to make the trump. There is no second bid, and the suit named by the highest bidder must be the trump for that deal. The successful bidder takes the widow, selecting from it what cards he pleases, and discarding others in their stead, so as to restore the number of his cards to seven. He then places a red counter in front of him, and chooses



his partners, passing a red counter to each of them. These counters must be placed in front of the players to distinguish them as belonging to the bidder's side; but the players make no changes in their respective positions at the table. Each player should bid on the possibilities of his hand, however small, so as to guide the others in their selection of partners.

**Partners.** If the bidder has proposed to take not more than *five* tricks out of the seven possible, he chooses two partners, and these three play against the remaining four. If he has bid to make *six* or *seven* tricks he chooses three partners, and these four play against the remaining three. Partners cannot refuse to play.

**Playing Alone.** Should a player think he can take all seven tricks without any partners, he may bid *ten*, which would outrank a bid of seven; but such a bid must be made before seeing the widow. If a player thinks he can win all seven tricks without either widow or partners, he may bid *twenty*, which is the highest bid possible. When twenty is bid the cards in the widow must remain untouched.

**Playing.** The successful bidder has the lead for the first trick. The general rules for following suit, etc., are the same as in ordinary Euchre. The bidder takes in all the tricks won by himself and his partners, and one of the adversaries should gather for that side. If a player on either side *revokes*, the adversaries score the number bid, and the hand is abandoned.

**Scoring.** If the bidder is successful in his undertaking, he and his partners, if any, are credited by the scorer with the number of points bid, but no more. Should a player bid five, and his side take seven, it would count them only five points. If the player making the trump fails to reach his bid, he is euchred, and the adversaries are credited with the number of points bid.

**Prizes.** It is usual to give two prizes for each table in play; one for the highest number of points won during the evening, and one for the smallest number; the latter being usually called the "booby" prize.

**Suggestions for Good Play.** It is very risky to bid seven without the Joker, the odds being 11 to 1 against finding it in the widow. A bid of ten should not be made without both Joker and Right Bower, and all the other cards winners and trumps. To bid twenty, a player should have a practically invincible hand, with at least five winning leads of trumps.

The first bidders are always at a disadvantage, because they know nothing of the contents of the other hands; but after one or two players have made a bid, those following them can judge pretty well how the cards lie. For instance: The seven players are *A B C D E F G*. *A* deals, and *B* bids 2 in hearts. *C* and *D* pass. *E* bids 3 in clubs; and *F* says 4 in hearts. It is evident that *F*

is bidding on **B's** offer in hearts, and intends to choose him for a partner. **G** finds in his hand four good spades and the Joker, but neither Bower. He may safely bid 5 or 6, taking **E** for a partner if successful, as **E** very probably has one or both the black Bowers. If he bids 5 only, the dealer, **A**, would have an excellent chance to bid 6 in hearts, and to take **B** and **F** for two of his partners, and **G** for the third, trusting to find him with the Joker, or at least protection in one or both black suits.

If the successful bidder has had no previous bids to guide him in his choice of partners, he should take those who have the lowest scores, if the scores are known; because it is to his advantage to avoid advancing those who are perhaps already ahead. When the scores are not known, there is nothing but luck to guide one, unless a person has a very good memory, and knows which players are probably behind.

**Leading.** If the successful bidder wants 6 or 7 tricks, and holds the Joker, he should lead it at once. If he has not the Joker, he should begin with a low trump, and give his partners a chance to play the Joker on the first round. If the leader cannot exhaust the trumps with one or two rounds, it will sometimes be to his advantage to lead any losing card he may have in the plain suits, in order to let his partners win the trick if they can. In playing alone, it is absolutely necessary to exhaust the trumps before opening a plain suit.

Partners should avail themselves of the methods common to four-handed Euchre to support one another in trumps and plain suits. The discard should invariably be from weakness if the player is the bidder's partner; and from strength, if opposed to him.

**EUCHRE FOR FIVE PLAYERS.** This is practically the same as the seven-handed game, but the pack is reduced to 28 cards, all below the Eight in each suit being deleted. The Joker is not used. Five cards are dealt to each player, by two and three at a time, and the three remaining form the widow. The player bidding *three* tricks takes one partner only. The player bidding *four* or *five* tricks, takes two partners. A player who intends to take the widow, but no partners, can bid *eight* and one who intends to take neither widow nor partners can bid *fifteen*. In this form of Euchre the scores are generally known, and 100 points is game.

In some clubs it is the practice for the successful bidder to select one of his partners by asking for the holder of a certain card. For instance: B has the lead, and has bid five in hearts, holding the three best trumps, the club ace, and a losing spade. Instead of selecting his partners at random, he asks for the spade ace, and the player holding that card must say, "Here"; upon which the bidder will pass him a counter, marking him as one of his partners.

## CALL-ACE EUCHRE.

In this variety of euchre, each player is for himself so far as the final score goes. The one who takes up the trump or orders it up, or who makes it after it is turned down, may call upon the best card of any suit but the trump. The player holding the best card of that suit must be his partner, but he does not declare himself. When the highest card of the suit asked for falls in play, the partner is disclosed.

As the whole pack is not dealt out, it often happens that the ace, or even both ace and king, of the suit called for are in the talon. Should it turn out that the caller has the highest card of the suit himself, he has no partner.

When six play, 32 cards are used, and only one remains unknown. When five play, the sevens are thrown out. When four play, the eights are also discarded.

If the maker of the trump does not want a partner, he may either say "alone" or he may ask for a suit of which he holds the ace himself.

If the maker of the trump and his partner get three tricks, they score 1 point each. If they win all the tricks, they score 3 points each if there are five or six in the game; 2 points if there are not more than four players. If the partnership is euchred, each of the others at the table scores 2 points.

For a lone hand, winning all five tricks, the player scores a point for as many players as there are at the table, including himself. Euchres score 2 for every other player but the lone hand. A lone hand making three or four tricks only, scores 1.

## 500, OR BID EUCHRE.

In this variety of euchre, the joker is always used. When there is a trump suit, it is the best trump; but when there are no trumps, it is a suit by itself, but still a trump. The player holding it cannot trump with it as long as he can follow suit; but when he has none of the suit led, he can trump with the joker if he likes. When the joker is led in a no-trump hand, the leader must name the suit that he wishes played to it.

Five hundred is supposed to be a game for three players, but sometimes two play against two as partners.

The dealer gives ten cards to each player, three and then two at a time as in the ordinary game of euchre; but after dealing the first three cards to each he lays off three cards face down for a widow. This widow is taken in hand by the successful bidder, who discards three cards in its place.

The players bid for the privilege of naming the trump suit, or of playing without any trump but the joker. The number of tricks bid must not be less than six, and the suit must be named at the same time. The player having the most valuable game, regardless of the number of tricks or the suit, is the successful bidder, because a bid of seven in hearts, for instance, is worth more in points than a bid of eight in clubs, as will be seen from the following table. If values tie, the greater number of tricks counts.

If trumps are:	6 tricks.	7 tricks.	8 tricks.	9 tricks.	10 tricks.
Spades .....	40	80	120	160	200
Clubs .....	60	120	180	240	300
Diamonds .....	80	160	240	320	400
Hearts .....	100	200	300	400	500
No-trumps .....	120	240	360	480	600

The successful bidder always leads for the first trick, after he has taken the widow and discarded, and after the hand is played, he has the first count. If he has made as many as he bid, he scores it; but he cannot score more than he bid unless he succeeds in winning every trick. In that case he scores 250 if his bid was less than 250; but if his bid was more than 250, he gets nothing extra for winning every trick.

Any player but the bidder winning a trick scores ten points for it, so it is necessary for each player to keep separate the tricks he individually wins.

If the bidder fails, he loses, or is set back, as many points as he bid, and he scores nothing for the tricks he takes, but he may play the hand out to prevent the others from scoring, as his adversaries still get ten points for each trick they win.

Five hundred points is game, and as the bidder has the first count he may go out first, even if an adversary has won tricks enough to reach 500 also.

## EUCHRE LAWS.

**1. SCORING.** A game consists of five points. If the players making the trump win all five tricks, they count *two* points towards game; if they win three or four tricks, they count *one* point; if they fail to win three tricks, their adversaries count *two* points.

**2.** If the player making the trump plays *alone*, and makes five tricks, he counts as many points as there are players in the

game: Two, if two play; three if three play; four if four play, etc. If he wins three or four tricks only, he counts one; if he fails to win three tricks, his adversaries count two.

**3. The Rubber** is the best of three games. If the first two are won by the same players, the third game is not played. The winners gain a *triple*, or three points, if their adversaries have not scored; a *double*, or two points, if their adversaries are less than three scored; a *single*, or one point, if their adversaries have scored three or four. The winners of the rubber add two points to the value of their games, and deduct the points made by the losers, if any; the remainder being the value of the rubber.

**4. FORMING THE TABLE.** A Euchre table is complete with six players. If more than four assemble, they cut for the preference, the four lowest playing the first rubber. Partners and deal are then cut for, the two lowest pairing against the two highest. The lowest deals, and has the choice of seats and cards.

**5. Ties.** Players cutting cards of equal value cut again, but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

**6. Cutting Out.** At the end of a rubber the players cut to decide which shall give way to those awaiting their turn to play. After the second rubber, those who have played the greatest number of consecutive games give way; ties being decided by cutting.

**7. Cutting.** In cutting, the ace is low, the other cards ranking, K Q J 10 9 8 7, the King being the highest. A player exposing more than one card, or cutting the Joker, must cut again.

**8. SHUFFLING.** Every player has a right to shuffle the cards, the dealer last.

**9. DEALING.** The dealer must present the pack to the pone to be cut. At least four cards must be left in each packet. If a card is exposed in cutting, the pack must be re-shuffled, and cut again. If the dealer re-shuffles the pack after it has been properly cut, he loses his deal.

**10.** Beginning on his left, the dealer must give to each player in rotation *two* cards on the first round, and *three* on the second; or three to each on the first round, and two on the second. Five cards having been given to each player in this manner, the next card is turned up for the trump. The deal passes to the left.

**11.** There must be a new deal by the same dealer if any card but the trump is found faced in the pack, or if the pack is proved incorrect or imperfect; but any previous scores made with the imperfect pack stand good.

**12.** The adversaries may demand a new deal if any card but the trump is exposed during the deal, provided they have not touched a card. If an adversary exposes a card, the dealer may

elect to deal again. If a new deal is not demanded, cards exposed in dealing cannot be called.

**13.** The adversaries may stop a player dealing out of turn, or with the wrong pack, provided they do so before the trump card is turned, after which the deal stands good.

**14. MISDEALING.** A misdeal loses the deal. It is a misdeal: If the cards have not been properly cut; if the dealer gives two cards to one player and three to another in the same round; if he gives too many or too few cards to any player; if he counts the cards on the table, or those remaining in the pack; or if he deals a card incorrectly, and fails to correct the error before dealing another. If the dealer is interrupted in any manner by an adversary, he does not lose his deal.

**15. THE TRUMP CARD.** After the trump card is turned, each player in turn, beginning with the eldest hand, has the privilege of passing, assisting, or ordering up the trump. Should a player pass, and afterward correct himself by ordering up or assisting, both he and his partner may be prevented by the adversaries from exercising their privilege. If a player calls his partner's attention to the fact that they are at the bridge, both lose their right to order up the trump.

**16.** The dealer may leave the trump card on the pack until it is got rid of in the course of play. If the trump card has been taken up or played, any player may ask, and must be informed by the dealer, what the trump suit is; but any player naming the trump card may be called upon by an adversary to play his highest or lowest trump.

**17.** If the dealer takes up, or is ordered up, he must *discard* a card from his own hand, placing it under the remainder of the pack. Having quitted such discard, it cannot be taken back. If the dealer has not discarded until he has played to the first trick, he and his partner cannot score any points for that hand.

**18.** If the eldest hand leads before the dealer has quitted his discard, the dealer may amend his discard, but the eldest hand cannot take back the card led.

**19.** If the dealer takes up the trump to play alone, he must pass his discard across the table to his partner. If he fails to do so, the adversaries may insist that his partner play with him, preventing the lone hand.

**20. MAKING THE TRUMP.** If the dealer does not take up the trump, he must place it under the remainder of the pack, face upward, so that it can be distinctly seen. Each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, then has the privilege of naming a new trump suit.

**21.** If any player names the suit already turned down, he loses his right to name a suit; and if he corrects himself, and names another, neither he nor his partner is allowed to make that suit the trump. If a player names a new trump suit out of his proper turn, both he and his partner are forbidden to make that suit the trump.

**22.** If no one will name a new trump, the deal is void, and passes to the next player on the dealer's left.

**23. IRREGULARITIES IN THE HANDS.** If any player is found not to have his correct number of cards, it is a misdeal; but if he has played to the first trick the deal stands good, and he cannot score anything that hand.

**24. EXPOSED CARDS.** The following are exposed cards, and must be left face up on the table, and are liable to be called by the adversaries:

- I. Every card faced upon the table otherwise than in the regular course of play.
- II. Two or more cards played to a trick. The adversaries may elect which shall be played.
- III. Any card named by the player holding it.

**25.** If an adversary of a person playing alone exposes a card, the lone player may abandon the hand, and score the points. Should the partner of the lone player expose a card, the adversaries may prevent the lone hand by compelling the player in error to play with his partner, leaving the exposed card on the table.

**26. CALLING EXPOSED CARDS.** The adversary on the right of an exposed card must call it before he plays himself. If it will be the turn of the player holding the exposed card to lead for the next trick, the card, if wanted, must be called before the current trick is turned and quitted. Should a player having an exposed card and the lead, play from his hand before the previous trick is turned and quitted, the card so led may also be claimed as exposed.

**27. LEADING AND PLAYING OUT OF TURN.** If a player leads when it was his partner's turn, a suit may be called from his partner. The demand must be made by the last player to the trick in which the suit is called. If it was the turn of neither to lead, the card played in error is exposed. If all have played to the false lead, the error cannot be rectified. If all have not followed, the cards erroneously played must be taken back, but are not liable to be called.

**28.** If an adversary of a lone player leads out of turn, the lone player may abandon the hand, and score the points.

**29.** If the third hand plays before the second, the fourth hand may play before his partner, either of his own volition, or at the

direction of the second hand, who may say: "Play, partner." If the fourth hand plays before the second, the third hand may call upon the second hand to play his highest or lowest of the suit led, or to trump or not to trump the trick.

**30. REVOKING.** A revoke is a renounce in error, not corrected in time; or non-compliance with a performable penalty. If a revoke is claimed and proved, the hand in which it occurs is immediately abandoned. The adversaries of the revoking player then have the option of adding two points to their own score, or deducting two points from his score. If both sides revoke, the deal is void. If one person is playing alone, the penalty for a revoke is as many points as would have been scored if the lone hand had succeeded.

**31.** A revoke may be corrected by the player making it before the trick in which it occurs has been turned and quitted, unless the revoking player or his partner, whether in his right turn or otherwise, has led or played to the following trick.

**32.** If a player corrects his mistake in time to save a revoke, the card played in error is exposed; but any cards subsequently played by others may be taken back without penalty.

**33. PLAYING ALONE.** No one but the individual maker of the trump can play alone.

**34.** The dealer must announce his intention to play alone by passing his discard over to his partner. Any other player intending to play alone must use the expression "alone" in connection with his ordering up or making the trump; as, "I order it, alone;" or "I make it hearts, alone."

**35.** The partner of a player who has announced to play alone must lay his cards on the table, face down. Should he expose any of his cards, the adversaries may prevent the lone hand, and compel him to play with his partner, the exposed card being left on the table and liable to be called.

**36.** The lone player is not liable to any penalty for exposed cards, nor for a lead out of turn.

**37.** Should either adversary lead or play out of turn, the lone player may abandon the hand, and score the points.

**38. MISCELLANEOUS.** No player is allowed to see any trick that has once been turned and quitted, under penalty of having a suit called from him or his partner.

**39.** Any player may ask the others to indicate the cards played by them to the current trick.

**40.** A player calling attention in any manner to the trick or to the score, may be called upon to play his highest or lowest of the suit led; or to trump or not to trump the trick during the play of which the remark was made.



## ÉCARTÉ.

**Écarté** is usually described as a very simple game, but unfortunately the rules governing it are very complicated, and as no authoritative code of law exists, disputes about trifling irregularities are very common. In the following directions the author has selected what appears to be the best French usage. The code of laws adopted by some of the English clubs is unfortunately very defective, and in many respects quite out of touch with the true spirit of the French game. The English are very fond of penalties; the French try to establish the status quo.

**CARDS.** Écarté is played with a pack of thirty-two cards, which rank, K Q J A 10 9 8 7. When two packs are used, the adversary shuffles one while the other is dealt.

**MARKERS.** In France, the game is always marked with the ordinary round chips or counters, never with a marker. As five points is the game, four of these counters are necessary for each player.

**PLAYERS.** Écarté is played by two persons, who sit opposite each other. One is known as the dealer, and the other as the pone, the adversary, the elder hand, the non-dealer, the leader, or the player.

**THE GALLERY.** In clubs that make a feature of Écarté, and in which there is a great deal of betting on the outside by the spectators, it is not usual to allow more than one game between the same players, the loser giving place to one of those who have been backing him, and who is called a *rentrant*. This is known as playing the *cul-levé*. Any person in the gallery is allowed to draw attention to errors in the score, and may advise the player he is backing, or even play out the game for him, if he resigns. The player need not take the advice given him, which must be offered without discussion, and by pointing only, not naming the suit or cards. If a player will not allow the gallery to back him, taking all bets himself, no one may overlook his hand nor advise him without his permission, and he need not retire if he loses the game.

**CUTTING.** The player cutting the highest écarté card deals the first hand, and has the choice of seats and cards. If a person exposes more than one card in cutting, the lowest is taken to be his cut. If he does not cut, or will not show his cut, he loses the first deal.

**STAKES.** Écarté is played for so much a game. If the gallery is betting, all money offered must be placed on the table, and if the bets are not taken by the players, they may be covered by the opposing gallery.

**DEALING.** It is usual for the dealer to invite his adversary to shuffle the cards, but if two packs are used this is not necessary. The dealer must shuffle the pack and present it to his adversary to be cut. At least two cards must be left in each packet, and the upper part of the pack must be placed nearer the dealer. Five cards are given to each player, and the eleventh is turned up for the trump. The cards are distributed two and three at a time, or three and then two, and in whichever manner the dealer begins he must continue during the game. If he intends to change his manner of dealing in the following game, he must so advise his adversary when presenting the cards to be cut.

**MISDEALING.** A player dealing out of turn, or with the wrong cards, may be stopped before the trump is turned. But if the trump has been turned, and neither player has discarded or played to the first trick, the pack must be set aside, with the cards as dealt, and the trump turned, to be used for the ensuing deal. The other pack is then taken up and dealt by the player whose proper turn it was to deal. If a discard has been made, or a trick played to, the deal stands good, and the packs, if changed, must so remain.

There must be a new deal if any card but the eleventh is found faced in the pack. If the dealer exposes any of his own cards, the deal stands good. If he exposes any of his adversary's cards, the non-dealer may claim a fresh deal, provided he has not seen any of his cards.

It is a misdeal if the dealer gives too many or too few cards to his adversary or to himself. If the hands have not been seen, and the pone discovers that he has received more than five cards, he has the choice to discard the superfluous cards at hazard, or to claim a misdeal, which loses the deal. If the pone has received less than the proper number, he may supply the deficiency from the remainder of the pack, without changing the trump card, or he may claim a misdeal. If the dealer has given himself too many or too few cards, the pone may claim a misdeal, or he may draw the superfluous cards from the dealer's hand, face downward, or allow him to supply the deficiency from the remainder of the pack, without changing the trump.

If the cards have been seen, the pone, having an incorrect number, may supply or discard to correct the error, or he may claim a misdeal. If he discards, he must show the cards to the dealer. If the dealer has an incorrect number, the pone may draw from his hand, face downward, looking at the cards he has drawn, (as the dealer has seen them,) or allow him to supply the deficiency, or claim a misdeal.

When any irregularity is remedied in this manner, the trump card remains unchanged.

If the dealer turns up more than one card for the trump, his

adversary has a right to select which card shall be the trump, or he may claim a new deal by the same dealer, provided he has not seen his hand. If he has seen his hand, he must either claim a misdeal, or the eleventh card must be the trump, the other exposed card being set aside.

If the pack is found to be imperfect, all scores previously made with it stand good.

**TURNING THE KING.** If the King is turned up, the dealer marks one point for it immediately. If a wrong number of cards has been dealt, and a King is turned, it cannot be scored, because it was not the eleventh card.

**PROPOSING AND REFUSING.** The cards dealt, the pone examines his hand, and if he thinks it strong enough to win three or more tricks, he stands; that is, plays without proposing, and says to the dealer: "*I play.*" If he thinks he can improve his chances by drawing cards, allowing the dealer the same privilege of course, he says: "*I propose;*" or simply: "*Cards.*" In reply the dealer may either accept the proposal by asking: "*How many?*" or he may refuse, by saying: "*Play.*" If he gives cards, he may also take cards himself, after having helped his adversary. If he refuses, he must win at least three tricks or lose two points; and if the pone plays without proposing, he must make three tricks, or lose two points. The hands on which a player should stand, and those on which the dealer should refuse are known as *jeux de règle*, and will be found in the suggestions for good play.

A proposal, acceptance, or refusal once made cannot be changed or taken back, and the number of cards asked for cannot be corrected.

**DISCARDING.** If the pone proposes, and the dealer asks: "How many?" the elder hand discards any number of cards from one to five, placing them on his right. These discards, once quitted, must not again be looked at. A player looking at his own or his adversary's discards can be called upon to play with his cards exposed face upward on the table, but not liable to be called. The number of cards discarded must be distinctly announced, and the trump is then laid aside, and the cards given from the top of the pack, without further shuffling. It is considered imperative that the player who has proposed should take at least one card, even if he proposed with five trumps in his hand. The pone helped, the dealer then announces how many cards he takes, placing his discards on his left. The dealer, if asked, must inform his adversary how many cards he took, provided the question is put before he plays a card.

After receiving his cards, the pone may either stand or propose again, and the dealer may either give or refuse; but such subse-

quent stands or refusals do not carry with them any penalty for failure to make three tricks. Should these repeated discards exhaust the pack, so that there are not enough cards left to supply the number asked for, the players must take back a sufficient number from their discards. If the dealer has accepted a proposal, and finds there are no cards left for himself, that is his own fault; he should have counted the pack before accepting. The trump card cannot be taken into the hand under any circumstances.

**MISDEALING AFTER DISCARDING.** If the dealer gives the pone more or less cards than he asks for, he loses the point and the right to mark the King, unless it was turned up.

If the dealer gives himself more cards than he wants, he loses the point and the right to mark the King, unless he turned it up. If he gives himself less cards than he wants, he may make the deficiency good without penalty; but if he does not discover the error until he has played a card, all tricks for which he has no card to play must be considered as won by his adversary.

If the pone asks for more cards than he wants, the dealer can play the hand or not, as he pleases. If he plays, he may draw the superfluous card or cards given to the pone, and look at them if the pone has seen them. If the dealer decides not to play, he marks the point. In either case the pone cannot mark the King, even if he holds it.

If the pone asks for less cards than he wants, he must play the hand as it is, and can mark the King if he holds it; but all tricks for which he has no card to play must be considered as won by his adversary.

If a player plays without discarding, or discards for the purpose of exchanging, without advising his adversary of the fact that he has too many or too few cards, he loses two points, and the right of marking the King, even if turned up.

If either player, after discarding and drawing, plays with more than five cards, he loses the point and the privilege of marking the King.

Should the dealer forget himself in dealing for the discard, and turn up another trump, he cannot refuse his adversary another discard, if he demands it, and the exposed card must be put aside with the discards.

If any cards are found faced in the pack when dealing for the discard, the deal stands good if they will fall to the dealer. But if the exposed card will go to the pone, he has the option of taking it, or claiming a fresh deal by the same dealer.

During all the discards the trump card remains the same.

**MARKING THE KING.** The discards settled, the first and most important thing before play begins is to mark the King. If the King is turned up, the dealer marks one point for it im-

mediately. If the pone holds it, he must *announce* and mark it before he plays a card. If he leads the King for the first trick, he must still announce it by saying distinctly: "I mark the King;" and unless this announcement is made before the King touches the table, it cannot be marked. So important is this rule that in some European Casinos it is found printed on the card tables. Having properly announced the King, it may be actually marked with the counters at any time before the trump is turned for the following game.

If the dealer holds the King he must announce it before his adversary leads for the first trick. It is in order that there may be no surprises in this respect that the elder hand is required to say distinctly: "I play," before he leads a card. The dealer must then reply: "I mark the King," if he has it; if not, he should say: "Play." A player is not compelled to announce or mark the King if he does not choose to do so.

If a player announces and marks the King when he does not hold it, his adversary can take down the point erroneously marked, and mark one himself, for penalty. This does not prevent him from marking an additional point for the King if he holds it himself. For instance: The pone announces King, and marks it, at the same time leading a card. Not having notified the dealer that he was about to play, the dealer cannot be deprived of his right to mark the King himself, if he holds it. The dealer marks the King, marks another point for penalty, and takes down the pone's point, erroneously marked. If the player announcing the King without holding it, discovers his error before a card is played, he simply amends the score and apologizes, and there is no penalty. If any cards have been played after an erroneous announcement of the King, such cards can be taken back by the adversary of the player in error, and the hand played over again.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The elder hand begins by leading any card he pleases, at the same time announcing the suit; "hearts;" "spades;" or whatever it may be. This announcement must be continued at every trick. If a player announces one suit and leads another, his adversary may demand that he take back the card played, and lead the suit announced. If he has none of the announced suit, the adversary may call a suit. If the adversary is satisfied with the card led, but improperly announced, he may demand that it remain as played.

**RENOUNCING.** When a card is led the adversary must not only follow suit, but must win the trick if he can. If he can neither follow suit nor trump, he may discard any card he pleases. Should a player not follow suit, or should he decline to win the trick, when able to do so, it is a renounce, and if he makes the odd trick he counts nothing; if he makes all five tricks, he counts one

point only, instead of two. Should he trump the trick when he can follow suit, he is subject to the same penalty. There is no such thing as a *revoke* in *Écarté*. When it is discovered that a player has not followed suit when able, or has lost a trick that he could have won, the cards are taken back, and the hand played over again, with the foregoing penalty for the renounce.

The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits.

**Leading Out of Turn.** Should a player lead out of turn, he may take back the card without penalty. If the adversary has played to the erroneous lead, the trick stands good.

**Gathering Tricks.** The tricks must be turned down as taken in, and any player looking at a trick once turned and quitted may be called upon to play with the remainder of his hand exposed, but not liable to be called.

**Abandoned Hands.** If, after taking one or more tricks, a player throws his cards upon the table, he loses the point; if he has not taken a trick, he loses two points. But if the cards are thrown down claiming the point or the game, and the claim is good, there is no penalty. If the cards are abandoned with the admission that the adversary wins the point or the game, and the adversary cannot win more than is admitted, there is no penalty.

**SCORING.** A game consists of five points, which are made by tricks, by penalties, and by marking the King. A player winning three tricks out of the five possible, counts one point toward game; winning all five tricks, which is called *the vole*, counts two points. The player holding or turning up the King of trumps may mark one point for it, but he is not compelled to do so.

If the pone plays without proposing, and makes three or four tricks, he counts one point; if he makes the vole he counts two points; but if he fails to make three tricks the dealer counts two.

If the dealer refuses the first proposal, he must make three tricks to count one point; if he makes the vole he counts two points; but if he fails to win three tricks the player who was refused counts two points.

If the dealer accepts the first proposal, and gives cards, subsequent proposals and refusals do not affect the score; the winner of the odd trick scoring one point, and the winner of the vole two points.

In no case can a player make more than two points in one hand by tricks. If the dealer refuses the first proposal, and the pone makes the vole, it counts two points only. If the pone should play without proposing, and the dealer should mark the King and win the vole, it would count him only three points altogether.

The player first reaching five points wins the game. If a player has four scored, and turns the King, that wins the game,

provided the King was the eleventh card. Rubbers are seldom played.

**CHEATING.** The methods of cheating at Écarté would fill a volume. There are many tricks which, while not exactly fraudulent, are certainly questionable. For instance: A player asks the gallery whether or not he should stand, and finally concludes to propose, fully intending all the time to draw five cards. Another will handle his counters as if about to mark the King; will then affect to hesitate, and finally re-adjust them, and ask for cards, probably taking four or five, having absolutely nothing in his hand. The pone will ask the dealer how many points he has marked, knowing perfectly well that the number is three. On being so informed, he concludes to ask for cards, as if he were not quite strong enough to risk the game by standing; when as a matter of fact he wants five cards, and is afraid of the vole being made against him.

There are many simple little tricks practiced by the would-be sharper, such as watching how many cards a player habitually cuts, and then getting the four Kings close together in such a position in the pack that one of them is almost certain to be turned. Telegraphic signals between persons on opposite sides of the gallery who are nevertheless in partnership, are often translated into advice to the player, to his great benefit. Besides these, all the machinery of marked cards, reflectors, shifted cuts, wedges, strippers, and false shuffles are at the command of the philosopher, who can always handle a small pack of cards with greater freedom, and to whom the fashion of dealing in twos and threes is always welcome. The honest card-player has not one chance in a thousand against the professional at Écarté.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** The French claim that any person may become an expert at a game like Piquet, simply by dint of long practice; but that the master of Écarté must be a born card-player, as no game requires in such degree the exercise of individual intelligence and finesse. While this may be true, there are many points about the game which may be learned by the novice, and which will greatly improve his play.

There are two things which the beginner should master before sitting down to the table for actual play: the hands on which it is right to stand, or play without proposing, and those with which it is right to refuse, or play without giving cards. These are called stand hands, or *jeux de règle*, and the player should be able to recognize them on sight.

In the following paragraphs the words *dealer* and *player* will be used to distinguish the adversaries at Écarté.

The principle underlying the *jeux de règle* is the probable distribution of the cards in the trump suit, and the fact that the odds

are always against the dealer's holding two or more. There are thirty-two cards in the *Écarté* pack, of which eight are trumps, and one of these is always turned up. The turn-up and the player's hand give us six cards which are known, and leave twenty-six unknown. Of these unknown cards the dealer holds five, and he may get these five in 65,780 different ways. The theory of the *jeux de règle* is that there are only a certain number of those ways which will give him two or more trumps. If the player holds one trump, the odds against the dealer's holding two or more are 44,574 to 21,206; or a little more than 2 to 1. If the player holds two trumps, the odds against the dealer's holding two or more are 50,274 to 15,506; or more than 3 to 1. It is therefore evident that any hand which is certain to win three tricks if the dealer has not two trumps, has odds of two to one in its favour, and all such hands are called *jeux de règle*. The natural inference from this is that such hands should always be played without proposing, unless they contain the King of trumps.

The exception in case of holding the King is made because there is no danger of the dealer's getting the King, no matter how many cards he draws, and if the player's cards are not strong enough to make it probable that he can win the vole, it is better for him to ask for cards, in hope of improving his chances. If he is refused, he stands an excellent chance to make two points by winning the odd trick.

While it is the rule for the player to stand when the odds are two to one in his favour for making the odd trick, and to ask for cards when the odds are less, there are exceptions. The chances of improving by taking in cards must not be forgotten, and it must be remembered that the player who proposes runs no risk of penalty. He has also the advantage of scoring two for the vole if he can get cards enough to win every trick, whereas the dealer gets no more for the vole than for the odd trick if the player does not propose. Some beginners have a bad habit of asking for cards if they are pretty certain of the point. Unless they hold the King this is not wise, for the player cannot discard more than one or two cards, but the dealer may take five, and then stands a fair chance of getting the King, which would not only count a point for him, but would effectually stop the vole for which the player was drawing cards.

The most obvious example of a *jeux de règle* is one trump, a winning sequence of three cards in one suit, and a small card in another. For instance: Hearts trumps—























44,724 to 21,056.





















































If the dealer does not hold two trumps, it is impossible to prevent the player from winning the point with these cards ; because he need only lead his winning sequence until it is trumped, and then trump himself in again. With this hand the player will win 44,724 times out of 65,780.

There are about twenty hands which are generally known as jeux de règle, and every écarté player should be familiar with them. In the following examples the weakest hands are given, and the trumps are always the smallest possible. If the player has more strength in plain suits than is shown in these examples, or higher trumps, there is so much more reason for him to stand. But if he has not the strength indicated in plain suits, he should propose, even if his trumps are higher, because it must be remembered that strong trumps do not compensate for weakness in plain suits. The reason for this is that from stand hands trumps should never be led unless there are three of them ; they are to be kept for ruffing, and when you have to ruff it does not matter whether you use a seven or a Queen. The King of trumps is of course led ; but a player does not stand on a hand containing the King.

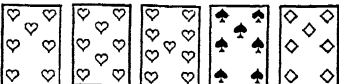
The first suit given is always the trump, and the next suit is always the one that should be led, beginning with the best card of it if there is more than one. The figures on the right show the number of hands in which the player or the dealer will win out of the 65,780 possible distributions of the twenty-six unknown cards. These calculations are taken, by permission of Mr. Charles Mossop, from the eighth volume of the "*Westminster Papers*," in which all the variations and their results are given in full.

					PLAYER WINS.	DEALER WINS.	
2						47,768	18,012
3						46,039	19,741
4						43,764	22,016
5						45,374	20,406

					PLAYER WINS. 44,169	DEALER WINS. 21,611
<b>6</b>						
<b>7</b>						43,478 22,302
<b>8</b>						44,243 21,537
<b>9</b>						44,766 21,014
<b>10</b>						44,459 21,321
<b>11</b>						44,034 21,746
<b>12</b>						43,434 22,346
<b>13</b>						44,766 21,014
<b>14</b>						46,779 19,001
<b>15</b>						45,929 19,851

The player should always stand on a hand containing three trumps, not including the King, and should lead the trump :—

16



42,014 to 23,766

An example of a hand containing only one trump has already been given, and some hands are jeux de règle which contain no trumps. The strongest of these is the King of each plain suit, and any queen. Lead the K Q suit :—

17



48,042 to 17,738

The odds in favour of this hand are greater than in any other jeux de règle. Another which is recommended by Bohn is this, the odds in favour of which have not been calculated ; the player to begin with the guarded King :—

18



Another is any four court cards, not all Jacks ; unless one is the trump Jack guarded. From the example the Queen should be led :—

19

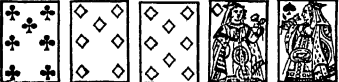


There are two hands which are usually played with only one trump, from both of which the best card of the long suit is led :—

20



21



**THE LEADER.** There are a great many more opportunities to make the vole than most players are aware of ; especially with jeux de règle. Where the vole is improbable or impossible, tenace is very important, and all tenace positions should be made the most of. In No. 5, for instance, if the clubs were the Queen and ace, it would be better to begin with the heart King, instead of leading away from the minor tenace in clubs. Observe the lead in No. 4. Many tenace positions cannot be taken advantage of because the player must win the trick if he can. For instance : Several discards have been made, and each player suspects the other holds three trumps, with three tricks to play. The Queen is led, and the adversary holds K A 7. If he could pass this trick, he must lie tenace ; but as he has to win it with the King, he gives tenace to his adversary, who evidently has J and another.

When the dealer is four, the player may stand on much weaker hands.

































It is usually best to lead from guarded suits, in preference to single cards. Lead the best of a suit if you have it. If the third trick is the first you win, and you have a trump and another card, lead the trump ; but if you have won two tricks, lead the plain suit.

**THE DEALER.** When the player asks for cards, the dealer knows that his adversary probably does not hold a jeux de règle. The dealer must not be too sure of this, however, for proposals are sometimes made on very strong hands in order to try for the vole, or to make two points on the refusal. The dealer should assume that he is opposed by the best play until he finds the contrary to be the case, and it is safest to play on the assumption that a player who proposes has not a jeux de règle.

For all practical purposes it may be said that the dealer can refuse to give cards with hands a trifle less strong than those on which the player would stand. The general rule is for the dealer to give cards unless he is guarded in three suits ; or has a trump, and is safe in two suits ; or has two trumps, and is safe in one suit. If the dealer has only one suit guarded, and one trump, he must take into account the risk of being forced, and having to lead away from his guarded suit.

There are eight recognized hands on which the dealer should refuse. The full details of the calculations can be found in the ninth volume of the "*Westminster Papers*." As in the case of the player, the weakest trumps have been taken for the examples, and the weakest holdings in plain suits. If the dealer has better plain suits, or stronger trumps, he has of course so much more in his favour if he refuses. The first column of figures gives the number of times in 65,780 that there will be no proposal, so that the dealer has no choice but to play. The other columns give the number of times the dealer or the player will win if the player proposes and the dealer refuses.

The first suit given in each instance is the trump.

					NO PROPOSAL.	DEALER WINS.	PLAYER WINS.
22					6,034	36,974	22,772
23					9,826	38,469	17,485
24					8,736	41,699	15,345
25					9,256	40,524	16,000
26					10,336	37,484	17,960
27					9,776	37,439	18,565
28					9,776	36,909	19,095
29					9,776	36,733	19,271

In giving cards, some judgment of human nature is necessary. Some players habitually propose on strong hands, and it is best to give to such pretty freely.

**DISCARDING.** The general principle of discarding is to keep trumps and Kings, and let everything else go. If you hold the trump King you may discard freely in order to strengthen your hand for a possible vole. If you have proposed once, and

hold the King, and feel pretty sure of the point, you may propose again on the chance of getting strength enough to make the vole.

When only two cards can be discarded, it is a safe rule to stand on the hand; either to play without proposing, or to refuse cards; unless you hold the King.

There are no authoritative laws for *Écarté*, and the various French and English codes do not agree. The code adopted by the English clubs is not in accord with the best usage, and fails to provide for many contingencies. All that is essential in the laws will be found embodied in the foregoing description of the game.

**TEXT BOOKS.** The best works on the subject of *Écarté* are usually to be found in conjunction with other games. The student will find the following useful:—

- The Westminster Papers, Vols. IV to XI, inclusive.
- Bohn's Handbook of Games; any edition.
- Écarté and Euchre*, by Berkeley, 1890.
- Cavendish on *Écarté*, 1886.
- Jeux de Cartes*, (Fr.), by Jean Boussac.
- Règles de Tous les Jeux*, (Fr.), M. Dreyfous, Edit.
- Académie des Jeux*, (Fr.), by Van Tenac.
- Académie des Jeux*, (Fr.), by Richard.
- Short Whist, by Major A. (*Écarté Laws in appendix*.)

---

## POOL ÉCARTÉ.

Pool *Écarté* is played by three persons, each of whom contributes an agreed sum, which is called a *stake*, to form a pool. They then cut to decide which shall play the first game, the lowest *écarté* card going out. The players then cut for the first deal, choice of seats and cards, etc., exactly as in the ordinary game.

The winner of the first game retains his seat; the loser pays into the pool another stake, equal to the first, and retires in favour of the third player, who is called the *rentrant*. The *rentrant* takes the loser's seat and cards, and cuts with the successful player for the first deal. The loser of the second game adds another stake to the pool, and retires in favour of the waiting player.

The pool is won by any player winning two games in succession. If the winner of the first game won the second also, he would take the pool, which would then contain five stakes; the three originally deposited, and the two added by the losers of the two games. A new pool would then be formed by each of the three depositing another stake, and all cutting to decide which should sit out for the first game.

In some places only the two players actually engaged contribute to the pool, the loser retiring without paying anything further, and the reentrant contributing his stake when he takes the loser's place.

The outsider is not allowed to advise either player during the first game, nor to call attention to the score; but on the second game he is allowed to advise the player who has taken his seat and cards. This is on the principle that he has no right to choose sides on the first game; but that after that he has an interest in preventing his former adversary from winning the second game, so as to preserve the pool until he can play for it again himself.

---

## NAPOLEON,

### OR NAP.

This is one of the simplest, and at the same time most popular of the euchre family. Few games have become so widely known in such a short time, or have had such a vogue among all classes of society. So far as the mere winning and losing goes, the result depends largely upon luck, and skill is of small importance. Except in a long series of games the average player has little to fear from the most expert.

**CARDS.** Napoleon is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2; the ace being highest in play; but ranking below the deuce in cutting.

**COUNTERS.** As each deal is a complete game in itself it must be settled for in counters, to which some value is usually attached. One player is selected for the banker, and before play begins each of the others purchases from him a certain number of counters, usually fifty. When any player's supply is exhausted, he can purchase more, either from the banker or from another player.

In many places counters are not used, and the value of the game is designated by the coins that take their place. In "penny nap," English coppers are used in settling; sixpences in "sixpenny nap," and so on. In America, nickel and quarter nap are the usual forms.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from two to six can play; but four is the best game. If five or six play it is usual for the dealer to give himself no cards.

**CUTTING.** The players draw from an outspread pack to

form the table, and for choice of seats. A lower cut gives preference over all higher; the lowest cut has the first choice of seats, and deals the first hand. Ties cut again, but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

In some places the players take their seats at random, and a card is then dealt to each face upward; the lowest card or the first Jack taking the deal.

**DEALING.** Any player has a right to shuffle the cards, the dealer last. They are then presented to the pone to be cut, and at least four cards must be left in each packet. Beginning at his left, the dealer gives each player in rotation two cards on the first round, and three on the next; or three on the first and two on the next. No trump is turned. In some places the cards are distributed one at a time until each player has five; but the plan is not popular, as the hands run better and the bidding is livelier when the cards are dealt in twos and threes. The deal passes to the left, each player dealing in turn.

**MISDEALING.** A misdeal does not lose the deal in Napoleon, because the deal is a disadvantage. For this reason, if any player begins to deal out of turn, he must finish, and the deal stands good. If any card is found faced in the pack, or is exposed by the dealer; or if too many or too few cards are given to any player; or if the dealer does not give the same number of cards to each player in the same round; or if he fails to have the pack cut, it is a misdeal, and the misdealer must deal again with the same pack.

**BIDDING.** Beginning on the dealer's left, each player in turn bids for the privilege of naming the trump suit, stating the number of tricks he proposes to win, playing single-handed against the three other players, and leading a trump for the first trick. In bidding, the trump suit is not named, only the number of tricks. If a player proposes to win all five tricks he bids *nap*, which is the highest bid possible, and precludes any further bidding, except in some of the variations which will be described later on. If a player will not make a bid, he says "*I pass.*" A bid having been made, any following player must either increase it or pass. If all pass until it comes to the dealer, he is bound to bid at least one trick, and either play or pay. The hands are never abandoned except in case of a misdeal.

In some places a *misère* bid is allowed, which outranks a bid of three tricks, and is beaten by one of four. There is no trump suit in *misère*, but the bidder, if successful, must lead for the first trick.

Any bid once made can neither be amended nor recalled, and there is no second bid.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The player bidding the highest number of tricks has the first lead, and the first card he plays



must be one of the trump suit. The players must follow suit if able, but need not win the trick unless they choose to do so. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits. The winner of the trick leads again for the next trick, and so on, until all five tricks have been played. After the first trick any suit may be led.

The bidder gathers all tricks he wins, stacking them so that they may be readily counted by any player at the table. One of the other side should gather all tricks won by the adversaries of the bidder. A trick once turned and quitted cannot again be seen. In some places they have a very bad habit of gathering tricks with the cards face up, turning down one card only. This always results in numerous misdeals, on account of cards being continually found faced in the pack.

The hands are usually abandoned when the bidder succeeds in his undertaking, or shows cards which are good for his bid against any play. If it is impossible for him to succeed, as when he bids four and the adversaries have won two tricks, the hands are thrown up, because nothing is paid for under or over-tricks. Players should show the remainder of their hands to the board, as evidence that no revoke has been made.

**IRREGULARITIES IN HANDS.** If a player, before he makes a bid or passes, discovers that he holds too many or too few cards, he must immediately claim a misdeal. If he has either made a bid or passed, the deal stands good, and the hand must be played out. If the bidder has his right number of cards and succeeds, he must be paid. If he fails, he neither wins nor loses; because he is playing against a foul hand. If the bidder has more than his right number of cards he must pay if he loses; but wins nothing if he succeeds. If he has less than his right number of cards, he is simply supposed to have lost the trick for which he has no card to play.

**PLAYING OUT OF TURN.** If any adversary of the bidder leads or plays out of turn, he forfeits three counters to the bidder, independently of the result of the hand, and receives nothing if the bid is defeated. If the bidder leads out of turn, the card must be taken back, unless all have followed the erroneous lead, in which case the trick is good. There is no penalty if he plays out of turn.

**REVOKES.** When a revoke is detected and claimed, the hands are immediately abandoned, and the individual player in fault must pay all the counters depending on the result. If he is the bidder, he pays each adversary; if he is opposed to the bidder, he pays for himself and for each of his partners. In England it is the rule to take back the cards and play the hand over again, as at Écarté, the revoking player paying all the stakes according to the result. This is often very unfair to the bidder, and leads to

endless disputes as to who held certain cards which have been gathered into tricks. Sometimes the difference between a seven and an eight in a certain player's hand will change the entire result.

**PAYMENTS.** If the bidder succeeds in winning the specified number of tricks, each adversary pays him a counter for every trick bid. If he bid three tricks, they pay him three counters each; four counters each for four tricks bid; and the value of three tricks for a *misère*. If he fails to win the specified number of tricks, he pays each adversary; three counters if he bid three tricks, or a *misère*; four if he bid four. Any player bidding nap, and succeeding in winning all five tricks, receives ten counters from each adversary; but if he fails, he pays only five to each.

When penny nap is played, the settlement being in coin, it is usual to make naps win a shilling or lose sixpence, in order to avoid handling so much copper.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** In calculating his chances for success in winning a certain number of tricks, the player will often have to take into consideration the probability of certain cards being out against him. This will vary according to the number of players engaged. For instance: If four are playing, and the bidder holds K Q of a plain suit, the odds against the ace of that suit being out against him are about 2 to 1. As it would be impossible for any person to remember all the *jeux de règle* for three tricks at Napoleon, each must learn from experience the trick-taking value of certain hands. Trump strength is, of course, the great factor, and the bidder should count on finding at least two trumps in one hand against him. Nap should never be bid on a hand which is not pretty sure of winning two rounds of trumps, with all other cards but one winners. One trick may always be risked in a nap hand, such as A Q of trumps, or a King, or even a Queen or Jack in a plain suit; the odds against the adversaries having a better card being slightly increased by the odds against their knowing enough to keep it for the last trick.

If the bid is for three tricks only, tenaces, or guarded minor honours in plain suits should be preserved. After the first trick it will sometimes be advantageous for the player to get rid of any losing card he may have in plain suits. It is seldom right to continue the trumps if the bidder held only two originally, unless he has winning cards in two plain suits, in which case it may be better to lead even a losing trump to prevent a possibility of adverse trumps making separately.

In playing against the bidder, leave no trick to your partners that you can win yourself, unless a small card is led, and you have the ace. In opening fresh suits do not lead guarded honours, but prefer aces or singletons. If the caller needs only one more trick, it is usually best to lead a trump. If you have three trumps, including the major tenace, pass the first trick if a small

trump is led; or if you remain with the tenace after the first trick, be careful to avoid the lead.

Discards should indicate weakness, unless you can show command of such a suit as A K, or K Q, by discarding the best of it. This will direct your partners to let that suit go, and keep the others. It is usually better to keep a guarded King than a single ace. The player on the right of the bidder should get into the lead if possible, especially if he holds one or two winning cards. These will either give his partners discards, or allow them to over-trump the bidder.

In playing *misères*, it is better to begin with a singleton, or the lowest of a safe suit. An ace or King two or three times guarded is very safe for a *misère*, as it is very improbable that any player will be able to lead the suit more than twice; and if the bidder's missing suit is led, the high card can be got rid of at once.

In playing against a *misère*, discards are important, and the first should be from the shortest suit, and always the highest card of it. A suit in which the bidder is long should be continued, in order to give partners discards. More money is lost at Napoleon by playing imperfect *misères* than in any other way.

**Variations.** The foregoing description applies to the regular four-handed game; but there are several variations in common use.

Better bids than "nap" are sometimes allowed, on the understanding that the bidder will pay double or treble stakes if he fails, but will receive only the usual amount if successful. For instance: One player bids *Nap*, and another holds what he considers a certainty for five tricks. In order not to lose such an opportunity the latter bids *Wellington*, which binds him to pay ten counters to each player if he fails. Another may outbid this again by bidding *Blucher*, which binds him to pay twenty to each if he loses, but to receive only ten if he wins. In England, the bidder, if successful, receives double or treble stakes for a *Wellington* or a *Blucher*, which is simply another way of allowing any person with a nap hand to increase the stakes at pleasure, for a player with a certain five tricks would of course bid a *Blucher* at once, trebling his gains and shutting off all competition at the same time. This variation is not to be recommended, and benefits no one but the gambler.

**Pools.** Napoleon is sometimes played with a pool, each player contributing a certain amount, usually two counters, on the first deal. Each dealer in turn adds two more; revokes pay five, and leads out of turn three. The player who first succeeds in winning five tricks on a nap bid takes the pool, and a fresh one is formed. If a player bids nap and fails, he is usually called upon to double the amount then in the pool, besides paying his adversaries.

**Purchase Nap**; sometimes called *Écarté Nap*, is a variation of the pool game. After the cards are dealt, and before any

bids are made, each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, may discard as many cards as he pleases, the dealer giving him others in their place. For each card so exchanged, the player pays one counter to the pool. Only one round of exchanges is allowed, and bids are then in order. A player having once refused to buy, or having named the number of cards he wishes to exchange, cannot amend his decision. Any player winning five tricks on a nap bid takes the entire pool. This is a very good game, and increases both the bids and the play against them.

**Widows.** Another variation is to deal five cards in the centre of the table, face downward, the dealer giving the cards to the widow just before helping himself in each round. Any player in his proper turn to bid may take the widow, and from the total of ten cards so obtained select five on which he must bid nap, discarding the others face downward.

**Peep Nap.** In this variety of the pool game one card only is dealt to the widow, usually on the first round. Each player in turn, before bidding or passing, has the privilege of taking a private peep at this down card, on paying one counter to the pool. The card is left on the table until the highest bidder is known, and he then takes it into his hand, whether he has paid to peep at it or not. He must then discard to reduce his hand to five cards. If a player bids nap it usually pays those following him to have a peep at the down card in case the bidder should retain it in his hand.

---

## SPOIL FIVE.

Spoil Five is one of the oldest of card games, and is generally conceded to be the national game of Ireland. It is derived from the still older game of Maw, which was the favourite recreation of James the First. The connecting link seems to have been a game called Five Fingers, which is described in the "*Compleat Gamester*," first published in 1674. The Five Fingers was the five of trumps, and also the best, the ace of hearts coming next. In Spoil Five, the Jack of trumps comes between these two.

**CARDS.** Spoil Five is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards. The rank of the cards varies according to the colour of the suit, and the trump suit undergoes still further changes, the heart ace being always the third best trump. In the plain suits, the K Q J retain their usual order, the King being the best. The rank of the spot cards, including the aces of diamonds, clubs, and spades, is generally expressed by the phrase: *Highest in red; lowest in black.* That is to say, if several cards of a suit, not including a King, Queen or Jack, are played to a trick, the highest card will win if the suit is red; and the lowest if the suit is black.

This will give us the following order for the plain suits, beginning with the highest card in each :—

No change.				Highest in red.									
♥	K	Q	J	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	
♦	K	Q	J	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	A
				Lowest in black.									
♣	K	Q	J	A	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
♠	K	Q	J	A	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

In the trump suit the same order of cards is retained, except that four cards are always the best trumps. These are the Five, Jack, and ace of the suit itself, and the ace of hearts, the latter being always the third best. This gives us the rank of the cards as follows, when the suit is trump :—

No change,				Highest in red.									
♥ 5 J		♥ A	♥ A K Q	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	
♦ 5 J	♥ A	♦ A	♦ A K Q	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	
				Lowest in black.									
♣ 5 J	♥ A	♣ A	♣ A K Q	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
♠ 5 J	♥ A	♠ A	♠ A K Q	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	

**COUNTERS.** Spoil Five is played with a pool, for which counters are necessary. One player should act as banker, and the others should purchase from him, each beginning with 20 counters. Coins may take the place of counters, shillings being the usual points.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from 2 to 10 may play; but 5 or 6 is the usual game.

**CUTTING.** This is unknown at Spoil Five. The players take their seats at random, and one of them deals a card face up to each in succession. The first Jack takes the first deal. Some note should be made of the player who gets the first deal, as the rules require that when the game is brought to an end the last deal shall be made by the player on the right of the first dealer.

**THE POOL.** Before play begins each player deposits one counter in the pool, and to this amount each successive dealer adds a counter until the pool is won, when all contribute equally to form a new one. In some places it is the practice for each successive dealer to put up for all the players, whether the pool is won or not. This simply makes larger pools.

**DEALING.** Any player has the right to shuffle the pack, the dealer last. The cards are then presented to the pone to be

cut, and as many cards as there are players must be left in each packet. Beginning on his left, the dealer gives five cards to each player; two on the first round and three on the next, or three and then two. After all are helped, the next card is turned up on the remainder of the pack, and the suit to which it belongs is the trump for that deal.

**MISDEALING.** If there is any irregularity in the deal which is not the dealer's fault, such as any card except the trump found faced in the pack, or the pack found imperfect, the same person deals again. But if the dealer neglects to have the pack cut, or deals too many or too few cards to any player, or exposes a card in dealing, or does not give the same number of cards to each player on the same round, or counts the cards on the table or those remaining in the pack, it is a misdeal, and the deal passes to the next player on the misdealer's left. In some places the misdealer is allowed to deal again if he forfeits two counters to the pool.

**ROBBING THE TRUMP CARD.** If the trump card is an ace, the dealer may discard any card he pleases in exchange for it. He may take up the ace when he plays to the first trick, or may leave it on the pack until got rid of in the course of play. When an ace is turned, the eldest hand, before leading, should call upon the dealer to discard if he has not already done so. If the dealer does not want the trump, he answers: "I play these."

If the trump card is not an ace, any player at the table holding the ace of trumps is bound to announce the fact when it comes to his turn to play to the first trick. The usual plan is for him to pass a card to the dealer face downward, and in return the dealer will give him the turn-up trump. If the holder of the ace does not want the turn-up, he must tell the dealer to turn the trump down, which shows that he could rob, but does not wish to. If the holder of the ace of trumps plays without announcing it, he not only loses his right to rob, but his ace of trumps becomes of less value than any other trump for that deal, and even if it is the ace of hearts he loses the privileges attached to that card.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The eldest hand begins by leading any card he pleases. It is not necessary to follow suit except in trumps; but if a player does not follow suit when he is able to do so, he must trump the trick, or it is a revoke. If he cannot follow suit, he may trump or discard at his pleasure. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits. The winner of the first trick leads any card he pleases for the next, and so on, until all five tricks have been played. Each player gathers his own tricks, as there are no partnerships.

**RENEGING.** The three highest trumps have special privileges in the matter of not following suit. Any player holding the Five or Jack of the trump suit: or the ace of hearts, but having

no smaller trump with them, may refuse to follow suit if any inferior trump is led; but if he has also a smaller trump, he must play one or the other. If a superior trump is led, the player must follow suit in any case. For instance: If the Five of trumps is led, no one can refuse to follow suit, no matter what trumps he holds; but if the Jack is led, and any player holds the Five alone, he need not play it to the inferior trump lead. If the heart ace is led, and one player holds the Jack alone, and another the Five alone, neither of these cards need be played, because the trump led is inferior to both of them. If a superior trump is played in following suit, such as the Five played on an Eight led, the holder of the lone Jack of trumps or ace of hearts, need not play it, because the lead was inferior. This privilege of reneging is confined to the three highest trumps.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** In Spoil Five there are three things to play for. If any one person can win three tricks he takes the pool. If he can win all five tricks he not only gets the pool, but receives an extra counter from each of the other players. If he has no chance to win three tricks, he must bend all his energies to scattering the tricks among the other players, so that no one of them shall be able to get the three tricks necessary to win the pool. When this is done, the game is said to be *spoiled*, and as that is the object of the majority in every deal it gives the game its name. In the older forms of the game the winner of three tricks counted five points, and if he could be prevented from getting three tricks his five points were spoiled.

**JINK GAME.** When a player has won three tricks, he should immediately abandon his hand and claim the pool, for if he continues playing he must *jink it*, and get all five tricks or lose what he has already won, the game being spoiled just as if no one had won three tricks: It is sometimes a matter for nice judgment whether or not to go on, and, for the sake of an extra counter from each player, to risk a pool already won. The best trump is often held up for three rounds to coax a player to go on in this manner.

**IRREGULARITIES IN THE HANDS.** If, during the play of a hand, it is discovered that any one holds too many or too few cards, that hand is foul, and must be abandoned, the holder forfeiting all right to the pool for that deal. Those who have their right number of cards finish the play without the foul hand, but any tricks already won by the holder of the foul hand remain his property.

**IRREGULARITIES IN PLAY.** If any player robs when he does not hold the ace; leads or plays out of turn; reneges to the lead of a higher trump; renounces in the trump suit; revokes in a plain suit; or exposes a card after any player has won two tricks, he loses all his right and interest in the cur-

rent pool, which he cannot win, either on that or any subsequent deal, but to which he must continue to contribute when it comes to his turn to deal. After the pool has been won, and a fresh one formed, the penalty is removed.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Observation, quickness, and good judgment of character are the essentials for success at Spoil Five, the last being probably the most important. The peculiar order of the cards; the privilege of renouncing when holding a card of the suit led; and the right of passing inferior trump leads, are very confusing to the beginner; but with practice the routine and strategy of the game soon become familiar.

The player should first make up his mind whether he is going to try to win the pool or to spoil it. Particular attention should be paid to the player who robs, because he must have at least the ace and the turn-up in trumps, and is more likely to need spoiling than any other player. When a player wins a trick, some judgment will be necessary to decide whether he is trying for the pool himself, or simply spoiling it for some one else. When he wins two tricks, every other player at the table must combine against him.

With only one small or medium trump, it is better to use it at the first opportunity. Unless the player has some hopes of winning the pool himself, he should trump all doubtful cards; that is, cards that may win the trick if not trumped. With two good trumps, it is better to wait for developments; even if you cannot win the last three tricks yourself, you may effectually spoil any other player. Do anything you can to prevent the possibility of a third trick being won by a player who has already won two.

---

## FORTY-FIVE, OR FIVE AND TEN.

These names are given to Spoil Five when it is played by two persons only, or by four or six divided into two equal partnerships. There is no pool, as one side or the other must win three tricks every deal. The side winning the odd trick counts five points towards game, or ten points if it wins all five tricks. Forty-five points is game. In another variation, each trick counts five points, and the winners' score is deducted from the losers', so that if one side wins four tricks it counts fifteen towards game. When this manner of counting is adopted, the players count out; that is, if each side is 35 up, the first to win two tricks counts out.

Minor variations are sometimes introduced; such as robbing with the King, if the ace is not in play; counting five for the dealer's side if the ace or King is turned up, etc.

There are no *Text Books* on Spoil Five; but descriptions and laws of the game are to be found in the "Westminster Papers," Vol II., and in "Round Games," by Berkeley.



## RAMS, OR RAMMES

This game seems to be the connecting link between the more strongly marked members of the Euchre family and Division Loo.

**CARDS.** Rams is played with the euchre pack, thirty-two cards, which rank as at Écarté, K Q J A 10 9 8 7. It has lately become the fashion, however, to adopt the rank of the cards in the piquet pack, A K Q J 10 9 8 7.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from three to six may play; but when six play the dealer takes no cards. The general arrangements for the players, first deal, counters, etc., are exactly the same as at Spoil Five.

**THE POOL.** Each successive dealer puts up five counters, to form or to augment the pool.

**DEALING.** The cards having been properly shuffled and cut, five are given to each player; two the first round and three the next, or three the first round and two the next. An extra hand, known as the *widow*, is dealt face downward in the centre of the table. The dealer gives cards to the widow just before dealing to himself in each round. When all are helped, the next card is turned up for the trump. Irregularities in the deal are governed by the same rules as in Spoil Five.

**DECLARING TO PLAY.** Each player in turn, beginning with the eldest hand, may either play or pass. If he passes, he lays his cards face downward in front of him, and takes no further part in that deal unless a general rams is announced. If he plays, he engages himself to take at least one trick, or forfeit five counters to the pool. He may play with the hand originally dealt him, or he may risk getting a better by taking the widow in exchange. If he exchanges, his original hand is dead, and must not be seen by any player. If any player takes the widow, those following him must play the hand dealt them or pass out. In some clubs the eldest hand is obliged to play, either with his own hand or with the widow.

If all pass except the pone, he must play against the dealer, either with the cards dealt him, or with the widow. If he declines to play, he must pay the dealer five counters, and the pool remains. The dealer must play if he is opposed by only one player; but if two others have announced to play, the dealer may play or pass as he pleases. If he plays, he may discard and take up the trump card. No other player may rob the trump.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The eldest hand of those who have declared to play begins by leading any card he pleases. Each player in turn must head the trick; that is, play a higher card if he can. If he has two higher, he may play either. If he

has none of the suit led, he must trump if he can, even if the trick is already trumped by another player. For instance: Hearts are trumps, and A leads a club. B follows suit, but neither C nor D has a club. Suppose C trumps with the King, and that the only trump D has is the Queen, he must play it on the trick, losing it to C's King. When a player can neither follow suit nor trump, he may discard any card he pleases. The winner of the trick leads for the next trick, and so on until all five tricks have been played.

**PENALTIES.** There is only one penalty in Rams; to win nothing on the deal, and to forfeit five counters to the next pool. This is inflicted for playing with more or less than five cards; for exposing any card; for leading or playing out of turn; for renouncing; and for refusing to head or trump a trick when able to do so.

**DIVIDING THE POOL.** Pools may be simple or double. The usual custom is to compel every one to play when the pool is a simple, containing nothing but the five counters put up by the dealer. When there are more than five counters in the pool they must be some multiple of five, and the pool is called a double. In double pools the players may play or pass as they please. No matter how many counters are already in the pool, the dealer must add five.

Each player gathers in the tricks he wins, and at the end of the hand he is entitled to take one-fifth of the contents of the pool for every trick he has won. If he has played his hand, and failed to get a trick, he is ramsed, and forfeits five counters to form the next pool, in addition to those which will be put up by the next dealer. If two or more players fail to win a trick, they must each pay five counters, and if the player whose turn it will be to deal next is ramsed, he will have to put up ten; five for his deal, and five for the rams.

**GENERAL RAMS.** If any player thinks he can win all five tricks, with the advantage of the first lead, he may announce a general rams, when it comes to his turn to pass or play. This announcement may be made either before or after taking the widow. When a general rams is announced, all at the table must play, and those who have passed and laid down their hands, must take them up again. If the widow has not been taken, any player who has not already refused it may take it. The player who announced general rams has the first lead. If he succeeds in getting all five tricks, he not only gets the pool but receives five counters in addition from each player. If he fails, he must double the amount then in the pool, and pay five counters to each of his adversaries. Any player taking a trick that spoils a general rams gets nothing from the pool, and it is usual to abandon the hands the moment the announcing player loses a trick.

## ROUNCE.

This is an American corruption of Rams. It is played with the full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank as at Whist, and any number of players from three to nine. Six cards are dealt to the widow, one of which must be discarded by the player taking it. All pools are alike, there being no difference between simples and doubles, and there is no such announcement as general rounce. There is no obligation to head the trick, nor to trump or under-trump; but the winner of the first trick must lead a trump if he has one.

---

## BIERSPIEL.

This is a popular form of Rams among German students. Three crosses are chalked on the table in front of each player, representing five points each. When a trick is won, a beer-soaked finger wipes out the centre of a cross, and reduces its value to four. Successive cancellings of the remaining arms of the cross as tricks are taken gradually reduce it to nothing, and the player who is last to wipe out his third cross pays for the beer. No player is allowed to look at his cards until the trump is turned, and the dealer gives the word of command: "Auf." The seven of diamonds is always the second-best card of the trump suit, ranking next below the ace. If it is turned up, the dealer turns up the next card for a trump, and when it comes to his turn, he can take both cards into his hand, discarding others in their place. If the dealer passes, the eldest hand may take up the trump. If only two declare to play, a trump must be led for the first trick; if three play, trumps must be led twice; if four play, three times. If the leader has no trump, he must lead his smallest card, face downward, which calls for a trump from such of the other players as have one. All penalties are made by adding fresh crosses to the delinquent's score.

---

## LOO,

### OR DIVISION LOO.

This was at one time the most popular of all round games at cards; but its cousin Napoleon seems to have usurped its place in England, while Poker has eclipsed it in America. There are several varieties of the game, but the most common form is Three-card Limited Loo, which will be first described.

**CARDS.** Loo is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank, A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2; the ace being the highest.

**COUNTERS.** Loo being a pool game, counters are necessary. They should be of two colours, white and red, one red being worth three whites. The object of this is to provide for an equal division of the pool at all times. One person should act as

banker, to sell and redeem all counters. Each player should begin with 18 red and 6 white, which is equal to 20 reds.

**PLAYERS.** Any number of persons from three to seventeen may play, but eight is the usual limit, and five or six makes the best game. The players take their seats at random.

**CUTTING.** A card is dealt round to each player, face up, and the first Jack takes the first deal.

**THE POOL.** Each successive dealer places three red counters in the pool. The pool is added to from time to time by penalties for infractions of the rules, and by forfeitures from players who have failed in their undertakings. Such payments are always made in red counters, the number being always three or six. When the pool is divided, it sometimes happens that a player is not allowed to withdraw his share. In such cases the red counters representing it should be changed for their value in white ones, so that the forfeited share may be divided in three parts.

The difference between *Limited Loo*, and *Unlimited Loo*, is in the amounts paid into the pool. In Limited Loo the penalty is always three or six red counters. In Unlimited Loo, it is the same for irregularities, and for infraction of the rules; but any player failing in his undertaking must put up for the next pool an amount equal to that in the current pool. When two or more fail on successive deals the pool increases with surprising rapidity. A player at twenty-five cent Loo has been known to lose \$320 in three consecutive deals.

**DEALING.** The pack having been properly shuffled and cut, the dealer gives three cards to each player, one at a time in rotation, beginning on his left. The first deal, and every deal in which the pool contains only the three red counters put up by the dealer, is known as a *simple*, and no trump card is turned up until one or two tricks have been played to. If there are more than three red counters in the pool, it is known as a *double*, and an extra hand must be dealt for the *widow*, and after all have been helped, the next card in the pack is turned up for a trump. The dealer gives cards to the widow just before helping himself in each round.

**Irregularities in the Deal.** If the pack is found to be imperfect, or any card except the trump is found faced in the pack, the same dealer must deal again without penalty. If the dealer neglects to have the pack cut; re-shuffles it after it has been properly cut; deals a card incorrectly and fails to correct the error before dealing another; exposes a card in dealing; gives any player too many or too few cards; or deals a wrong number of hands, it is a misdeal, and he loses his deal, and forfeits three red counters to the current pool. The new dealer adds his three counters as usual, and the pool becomes a double.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** A description of the method of playing will be better understood if it is divided into two parts, as it varies in simple and in double pools.

**In Simple Pools,** no trump is turned, and no widow dealt. Should the dealer inadvertently turn a trump, he forfeits three red counters to the current pool, but it remains a simple. If he deals a card for a widow, and fails to correct himself before dealing another card, it is a misdeal.

The eldest hand leads any card he pleases, and the others must not only follow suit, but must head the trick if they can. This does not necessarily mean that they shall play the best card they hold of the suit led, but that they shall play a better one than any already played. The cards are left in front of the players. If all follow suit the winner of the trick leads any card he pleases for the next trick. If all follow suit to that again, the winner leads for the next, and if all follow suit again, that ends it, and the winners of the several tricks divide the pool. All those who have not won a trick are *loosed*, and must contribute three red counters each for the next pool, which, added to the three to be deposited by the next dealer, will make the ensuing pool a double. But if in any trick any player is unable to follow suit, as soon as the trick is complete the dealer turns up the top card on the remainder of the pack, and the suit to which it belongs is the trump. If any trump has been played, the highest trump wins the trick. In any case, the winner of the trick must lead a trump for the next trick if he has one. When all three tricks have been played, the winner of each is entitled to one-third of the contents of the pool. Those who have not won a trick are *loosed*, and must contribute three red counters each for the next pool. This is called a **Bold Stand**.

**In Double Pools,** an extra hand is dealt for the widow, and a trump is turned. No player is allowed to look at his cards until it comes to his turn to declare. The dealer, beginning on his left, asks each in turn to announce his intentions. The player may *stand* with the cards dealt him; or may *take the widow* in exchange; or may *pass*. If he passes or takes the widow, he gives his original hand to the dealer, who places it on the bottom of the pack. If he takes the widow or stands, he must win at least one trick, or he is *loosed*, and will forfeit three red counters to the next pool.

If all pass but the player who has taken the widow, he wins the pool without playing, and the next deal must be a simple. If only one player stands, and he has not taken the widow, the dealer, if he will not play for himself, must take the widow and play to defend the pool. If he fails to take a trick, he is not *loosed*; but the payment for any tricks he wins must be left in the pool, and the red counters for them should be changed for white ones, so that the amount may be easily divided at the end of the next pool.

**Flushes.** If any player in a double pool holds three trumps, whether dealt him or found in the widow, he must announce it as soon as all have declared whether or not they will play. The usual custom is to wait until the dealer declares, and then to ask him: "How many play?" The dealer replies: "Two in;" "Three in;" or: "Widow and one;" as the case may be. The player with the flush then shows it, and claims the pool without playing, each of those who are "in" being looted three red counters. If two players hold a flush in trumps, the elder hand wins, whether his trumps are better or not; but the younger hand, holding another flush, is not looted.

**Leading.** In all double pools, the eldest hand of those playing must lead a trump if he has one. If he has the ace of trumps he must lead that; or if he has the King and the ace is turned up. The old rule was that a player must lead the higher of two trumps, but this is obsolete. The winner of a trick must lead a trump if he has one. Each player in turn must head the trick if he can; if he has none of the suit led he must trump or over-trump if he can; but he need not under-trump a trick already trumped.

**Irregularities and Penalties.** There is only one penalty in Loo, to win nothing from the current pool, and to pay either three or six reds to the next pool. If the offender has won any tricks, the payment for them must be left in the pool in white counters, to be divided among the winners of the next pool.

The offences are divided, some being paid for to the current pool, such as those for errors in the deal, while others are not paid until the current pool has been divided. If any player looks at his hand before his turn to declare, or the dealer does so before asking the others whether or not they will play, or if any player announces his intention out of his proper turn; the offender in each case forfeits three red counters to the current pool, and cannot win anything that deal, but he may play his hand in order to keep counters in the pool. If he plays and is looted, he must pay.

**Revokes.** If a player, when able to do so, fails to follow suit, or to head the trick, or to lead trumps, or to lead the ace of trumps, (or King when ace is turned,) or to trump a suit of which he is void, the hands are abandoned on discovery of the error, and the pool is divided as equally as possible among those who declared to play, with the exception of the offender. Any odd white counters must be left for the next pool. The player in fault is then held guilty of a revoke, and must pay a forfeit of six red counters to the next pool. The reason for the division of the pool is that there is no satisfactory way to determine how the play would have resulted had the revoke not occurred. It is impossible to take back the cards and replay them, because no one would have a right to judge how much a person's play was altered by his knowledge of the cards in the other hands.

If a player, having already won a trick, renders himself liable to

any penalty, as for exposing a card, leading or following suit out of turn, or abandoning his hand, he is looted for three red counters, payable to the next pool, and the payment for the tricks he has won must be left in the pool in white counters.

---

## IRISH LOO.

In this variation, no widow is dealt, and there is no distinction between simple and double pools. A trump is always turned up, and the dealer asks each in turn, beginning on his left, whether or not he will play, taking up the cards of those who decline to stand. He then announces his own decision, and proceeds to ask those who have declared to play whether or not they wish to exchange any of the cards originally dealt them. The usual question is simply: "How many?" and the player names the number of cards he wishes to exchange, if any; at the same time discarding others in their places. The number first asked for cannot be amended or recalled. The trump is laid aside, and the cards called for are dealt from the remainder of the pack, without further shuffling. In all other respects, the game is Three-card Loo.

---

## FIVE-CARD LOO.

This is Irish Loo with some additional variations. Each red counter should be worth five white ones, and the players will require about fifty red counters each at starting. The dealer puts up five red counters. Any player holding a flush of five cards in any suit may immediately claim the pool, and every person at the table, whether playing or not, is supposed to be looted, and pays five red counters to the next pool. If two players hold flushes, the elder hand wins, even if the younger hand holds a flush in trumps.

Another variation is to make the club Jack, which is known as *Pam*, always the best trump. Combined with four cards of any suit, this card will make a flush. If any player leads the trump ace, the holder of *Pam* must pass the trick if he can do so without revoking. The old usage was for the holder of the trump ace to notify any player holding *Pam* to pass, if he wished him to do so; but that is quite superfluous, as no player wants to lose his ace of trumps, and it goes without saying that he wants *Pam* to pass it.

---

Interesting articles on Loo will be found in "Bell's Life," the "Field," the "Sportsman," and the "Westminster Papers." Vol. II. of the latter especially.

## ALL FOURS FAMILY.

---

All Fours is to be found amongst the oldest games of cards, and is the parent of a large family of variations, all of which are of American birth. The youngest member of the family, Cinch, seems to have a bright future before it, and bids fair to become one of our most popular games. The chief defect in Cinch has been the method of scoring, which left too much to luck. In the following pages the author has attempted to remedy this.

The name, "All Fours," seems to have been varied at times to "All Four," and was derived from four of the five points which counted towards game; the fifth point, for "gift" having been apparently quite overlooked. The game was originally ten points up, and the cards were dealt one at a time. According to the descriptions in some of the older Hoyles, the honours and Tens of the plain suits did not count towards game; but this is evidently an error, for we find in the same editions the advice to trump or win the adversary's best cards in plain suits. This would obviously be a mere waste of trumps if these plain-suit cards did not count for anything.

All Fours seems to have been popular with all classes of society at one time or another. Cotton's "Compleat Gamester" gives it among the principal games in his day, 1674. Daines Barrington, writing a hundred years later, speaks of All Fours in connection with Whist. "Whist," he says, "seems never to have been played on principles until about fifty years ago; before that time [1735] it was confined chiefly to the servants' hall, with All Fours and Put." Another writer tells us that Ombre was the favourite game of the ladies, and Piquet of the gentlemen *par excellence*; clergymen and country squires preferring Whist, "while the lower orders shuffled away at All Fours, Put, Cribbage, and Lanterloo." In 1754 a pamphlet was published containing: "Serious Reflections on the dangerous tendency of the common practice of Card-playing; especially the game of All Four." For many years All Fours was looked upon as the American gambler's game *par excellence*, and it is still the great standby of our coloured brother; who would sooner swallow a Jack than have it caught.



## ALL FOURS,

### SEVEN-UP, OR OLD SLEDGE.

**CARDS.** Seven-up is played with the full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2; the ace being the highest, both in cutting and in play.

**COUNTERS.** Each player or side should be provided with seven counters. As the points accrue, these counters are got rid of by placing them in a pool in the centre of the table. By this method a glance will show how many each side or player has "to go," that is, how many will put him out.

**PLAYERS.** Two, three or four persons may play. When three play, the game resembles Cut-throat Euchre, each for himself. When four play, two are partners against the other two, and the partners sit opposite each other. The player on the dealer's left, or his adversary if only two play, is always spoken of as the eldest or elder hand. The one on the dealer's right is the pone.

**CUTTING.** If there are four players, they cut for partners, deal, and choice of seats. The two lowest are partners against the two highest; the highest cut has the choice of seats, and deals the first hand. When two or three play, they cut for seats and deal. In cutting, the ace is high. Ties cut again; but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

**STAKES.** If there is any stake, it is for so much a game. Rubbers are never played.

**DEALING.** Each player has the right to shuffle the pack, the dealer last, and the cards are then presented to the pone to be cut. At least four cards must be left in each packet. Beginning on his left, the dealer gives six cards to each player, three on the first round, and three more on the second round, turning up the next card for the trump, and leaving it on the remainder of the pack. If this card is a Jack, the dealer counts one point for it immediately; but if any player is found to have an incorrect number of cards, and announces it before he plays to the first trick, the Jack cannot be counted, as it could not have been the proper trump.

In *Pitch, or Blind All Fours*, no trump is turned. The first card led or "pitched" by the eldest hand is the trump suit for that deal.

**MISDEALING.** If any card is found faced in the pack, or the pack is proved to be imperfect, the same dealer deals again. If he deals without having the cards cut, or gives too many or too

few cards to any player, it is a misdeal, and the deal passes to the next player on the misdealer's left. If the dealer exposes a card, the adversaries may elect to have the deal stand, or to have a new deal by the same dealer. In *Pitch*, a misdeal does not lose the deal, because the deal is no advantage.

**BEGGING.** The deal completed, and the trump turned, the eldest hand looks at his cards, the other players leaving theirs untouched. If the eldest hand is not satisfied, he says : *I beg* ; and the dealer, after examining his own hand, has the option of giving him a point or *running the cards*. If he decides to give the point, he says : *Take it*, and the eldest hand immediately scores one for the *gift*. If the dealer will not give, he lays the trump card aside, and deals three more cards to each player, including himself ; turning up another trump. Should this be a Jack of another suit, the dealer scores a point for it at once. Should it be of the same suit as that first turned up, the Jack cannot be scored, as the dealer has declined to have that suit for the trump. When the same suit is turned up a second time, the card is laid aside ; three more cards are given to each player, another trump is turned, and so on until a different suit comes up for the trump. If the pack is exhausted before another suit turns up, the cards must be *bunched*, and the same dealer deals again.

The dealer's partner and the pone are not permitted to look at their cards until the eldest hand and the dealer have decided whether to stand or run the cards. Among strict players, if a person looks at his hand before the proper time, the adversaries score a point. The object of this rule is to prevent the possibility of any expression of satisfaction or disapproval of the turn-up trump.

No second beg is allowed, but when only two play, if either player is dissatisfied with the new trump he may propose to *bunch the cards*. If the proposition is agreed to, the cards are re-shuffled and dealt again by the same dealer. If three play, the dealer must give a point to both adversaries if he refuses to run the cards, although only one begs. The dealer cannot give a player enough to put him out.

**DISCARDING.** When the cards have been run, the usual practice is to discard all superfluous cards, each player reducing his hand to six, with which he plays. In some clubs it is the rule to keep all the cards if only nine are in each hand, but to discard down to six if two or more rounds were dealt after turning the first trump.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The object in Seven-up is to secure certain points which count towards game. As its name implies, the game is won when a player has put up seven of his counters, each of which represents a point. There are six different ways of making these points, and it is possible for one player

to make five of them in one deal; but he cannot by any possibility make seven. The following count one point each:

- 1st. Turning up the *Jack* of trumps.
- 2nd. Being *given* a point by the dealer.
- 3rd. Holding the *Highest* trump.
- 4th. Holding the *Lowest* trump.
- 5th. Winning a trick with the *Jack* of trumps in it.
- 6th. Making the majority of the pips that count for what is called *Game*.

*Turning the Jack* is entirely a matter of chance, and should not occur more than once in thirteen deals. If a Jack is turned every few deals, you may be sure that unfair methods are being used. Nothing is more common among advantage players than turning up Jacks every few deals.

*Begging* is resorted to by a player who holds no trumps, or such indifferent ones that it is very unlikely they will be either High or Low. If he has anything better, such as very high or low cards in other suits, such a hand is called, "a good hand to run to," and the player begs, hoping the new trump will better fit his hand. If he has nothing better in other suits than in the turn-up, it will still be slightly in his favour to beg, unless he has trumps enough to give him some hopes of making the point for Game. It is a fatal error to beg on good cards, and gamblers have a saying that he who begs a point to-day, will beg a stake to-morrow.

*High* and *Low* count to the player to whom those cards are dealt, and there is no chance to alter the fortunes of the deal except by begging and running the cards. These two points may both be made by the same card, if it is the only trump in play; because High is counted for the best trump out during the deal, and Low for the lowest, no matter what the cards are.

*Catching the Jack*, or saving it, is one of the principal objects of the game, and as a rule a player holding the Jack should lose no opportunity to save such a valuable counting card. On the other hand, a player holding higher trumps will often have to use good judgment as to whether to lead them to catch the Jack, if it happens to be out; or to keep quiet until the last few tricks, when if the Jack is not out, such trumps may be useful to win cards that count for Game.

*The Game* is generally known as *the gambler's point*, because it is the only point that must be played for in every hand, and its management requires more skill than all the others put together. The cards that count for Game are the four honours and the Ten of each suit. Every ace counts 4; every King 3; every Queen 2; every Jack 1; and every Ten 10. After the last card has been played, each player turns over the tricks he has won, and counts up the pip value of the court cards and Tens that he has

won. Whoever has the highest number counts the point for Game. For instance: Two are playing. The elder hand has taken in an ace, two Kings and a Jack, which are collectively worth 11. The dealer has taken in a Queen and a Ten, which are worth 12; so the dealer marks the point for Game. If both players have the same number, or if there is no Game out, which rarely happens, the non-dealer scores Game. If three play, and Game is a tie between the two non-dealers, neither scores. The non-dealer is given the benefit of counting a tie for Game as an offset to the dealer's advantage in turning Jacks. When no trump is turned, as in Pitch, no one can count Game if it is a tie.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The eldest hand begins by leading any card he pleases. If a trump is led, each player must follow suit if able. When a plain suit is led he need not follow suit if he prefers to trump; but if he does not trump, he must follow suit if he can. If he has none of the suit led he may either trump or discard. This rule is commonly expressed by saying that a player may *follow suit or trump*. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits. The winner of the trick takes it in, and leads for the next one, and so on until all the cards have been played. The tricks themselves have no value except for the court cards and Tens they contain.

As High, Jack, and Game are always counted by the player holding those points at the end of the play, there can be no question about them; but serious disputes sometimes arise as to who played Low. The best method of avoiding this is for each player, as the game proceeds, to announce and claim the lowest trump which has so far appeared, and instead of giving it to the current trick, to leave it turned face up in front of him if it is of no counting value. For instance: Four are playing, and a round of trumps comes out, the six being the lowest. The player holding it announces: "Six for Low," and keeps the card face up in front of him until some smaller trump appears. It often happens that a player holds a 7 or 8, and having no idea that it will be Low, takes no notice of it. At the end of the hand it is found that both the 7 and 8 are out, the 7 being Low, and the holders of those two cards get into an argument as to which card each of them held.

**SCORING.** The last card played, the various points for High, Low, Jack, (if in play), and the Game are claimed, and the player or side holding them puts a counter in the pool for each. The side first getting rid of its seven counters wins the game. If both sides make points enough to win the game on the same deal, High goes out first, then Low, then Jack, and then Game. As already noticed, one card may be both High and Low; the Jack may be High, Low, Jack; and it is even possible, if there is no other trump or counting card in play, for the Jack to be High, Low, Jack, and the Game.

In the variety known as *All Fives*, the score is kept on a cribbage board, and part of it is pegged as the hand progresses. A player winning a trick containing any of the following cards in the trump suit pegs them immediately :—For the trump ace, 4 points ; for the King 3 ; for the Queen 2 ; for the Jack 1 ; for the Ten 10, and for the Five 5. After the hand is over, all these cards are counted over again in reckoning the point for Game, the Five of trumps counting 5. Sixty-one points is game.

**IRREGULARITIES IN PLAY.** The most serious error in Seven-up is the *revoke*. If a player does not follow suit when able, it is a revoke unless he trumps the trick. A player holding two small trumps and the Ten of a plain suit, may trump both the ace and King of that suit instead of giving up his Ten. But if on the third round the Queen is led, and he cannot trump it, he must play his Ten if he has no other card of the suit.

The only points affected by the revoke are Jack and Game. *If the Jack is not in play*, there is only one point that can be affected by the revoke, the score for Game ; and the revoke penalty is one point, which the adversary may add to his own score, or deduct from the score of the revoking player. The adversary may also score the point for Game if he makes it ; but it cannot be scored by the revoking player ; who may mark only High or Low if he holds either or both of those points.

*If the Jack is in play*, two points may be affected by a revoke. The player in fault cannot score either Jack or Game, and the penalty for the revoke is two points ; in addition to which the adversary of the revoking player may score either or both Jack and Game if he makes them.

The revoking player cannot win the game that hand, no matter what he scores, but must stop at six. A revoke is established as soon as the trick in which it occurs has been turned and quitted, or a card has been led or played to the next trick.

**Exposed Cards.** When four play, all exposed cards must be left on the table, and are liable to be called by the adversaries if they cannot be previously got rid of in the course of play. All cards led or played out of turn are exposed, and liable to be called. If two or more cards are played to a trick, the adversaries may select which shall remain ; the other is exposed.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** Few games lend themselves more readily to the operations of the greek than Seven-up. Turning Jacks from the bottom of the pack ; setting up the half-stock for the beg ; dealing oneself more than six cards, and dropping on the tricks already won those counting for Game ; getting the A J 10 and 2 of a suit together during the play of a hand, and then shifting the cut to get them on the next deal, turning up the Jack ; marked cards ; strippers ; wedges ; reflectors :

these and many other tricks are in common use. Those who are not expert enough to deal seconds or shift cuts will sometimes resort to such trifling advantages as abstracting one of the Tens from the pack, so that they may know a suit from which a small card can always be led without any danger of the adversary's making the Ten. One very common swindle in Seven-up is known as *the high hand*, which consists in giving the intended victim the A K J 10 9 2 of trumps, and then inducing him to bet that he will make four points. No matter how skilful the player may be, he will find it impossible to save both Jack and Game.

---

## CALIFORNIA JACK.

This is a variety of Seven-up for two players, in which the number of cards in the hand is constantly restored to six by drawing from the remainder of the pack.

The trump suit is cut for before the cards are shuffled and dealt. The usual method is to cut for seats and deal, and the highest cut determines the trump suit at the same time. After each player has been given six cards, three at a time, the remainder of the pack is turned face up on the table, and the winner of each trick takes the top card, his adversary taking the next one. When the stock is exhausted, the last six cards are played as in the ordinary game of Seven-up.

Seven points is game, the points being the same as in Seven-up; but everything, including Low, counts to the player winning it.

*Shasta Sam* is California Jack with the remainder of the pack turned face down, and is a much better game on that account.

---

## AUCTION PITCH,

### SELL OUT, OR COMMERCIAL PITCH.

This very popular round game derives its name from the fact that the first card led or "pitched" is the trump suit, and that the privilege of pitching it belongs to the eldest hand, who may sell it out to the highest bidder.

The number of *cards* and their rank is the same as at Seven-up; A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2, the ace being the highest in cutting and in play.

**Players.** Any number from four to seven may play, each for himself; five is considered the best game. The players cut for choice of seats, the highest cut taking the first choice and the deal.

**Counters.** Each player should be provided with seven white counters to mark the game. If stakes are played for, red counters are used to make up the pool, one player acting as the banker to sell and redeem all red counters.

**Dealing.** Six cards are dealt to each player, three at a time, but no trump is turned. All the rules for irregularities in the deal are the same as in Seven-up, but a misdeal does not lose the deal under any circumstances.

**Objects of the Game.** As in Seven-up, the object of each player is to get rid of his seven counters, one of which he is entitled to put in the pool for each of the following points: For holding the *highest* trump in play; for holding (having dealt to him) the *lowest* trump in play; for winning a trick with the *Jack* of trumps in it; for making the greatest number of the pips that count for the *game* point. The details of these points have already been explained in connection with Seven-up. If the count for Game is a tie, no one scores it.

**Bidding.** The eldest hand sells. If he pitches without waiting for a bid he must make four points, or he will be set back that number. Each player in turn, beginning on the left of the eldest hand, bids for the privilege of pitching the trump, naming the number of points he thinks he can make. If he will not bid, he must say distinctly: "*I pass.*" After a bid has been made, any following player must bid higher or pass. There are no second bids. The highest number any player can bid is four, which will require him to make High, Low, Jack, and the Game against the combined efforts of all the other players. The eldest hand must either accept the number bid, or pitch the trump himself, and make as many points as the highest bidder offered him. If the eldest hand accepts, he pushes into the pool as many counters as he is bid, and the successful bidder pitches the trump. If no bid is made, the eldest hand must pitch the trump himself.

A bidder is not allowed to give the seller enough points to put him out, and should he do so by mistake, he forfeits his right to bid at all for that deal. If the seller has only two to go, and a player is able to bid three or four, he loses nothing by bidding one only, for no one can overbid him, and he is entitled to count all he makes. The only risk he runs is that the seller can afford to refuse one, and will go out on his own pitch. To remedy this it is the custom in some clubs to allow a player to bid the full value of his hand. If the seller accepts, he scores to within one of game; but if he refuses, he must make as many as bid, even if

he does not actually want them. It is one of the fine points of the game for the seller to refuse when the number of points offered would put the bidder out if he was successful.

There is no penalty for bidding out of turn. If a player chooses to expose to a preceding player what he is prepared to bid, that is usually to his own disadvantage.

**Bidding to the Board.** Modern players usually adopt the practice of bidding to the board, eldest hand having the first bid. In this form of the game the points bid count to no one, and any one can bid up to four, no matter what the scores are. No one can claim the privilege of pitching the trump for as many as bid, as each in turn must bid higher or pass.

**Playing.** The successful bidder has the first lead, and whatever card he plays, whether by mistake or not, is the trump suit for that deal. After that, the winner of the trick may lead any suit he pleases. A player must follow suit in trumps if he is able to do so; but in a plain suit he may trump if he chooses, although holding a card of the suit led. If he does not trump, he must follow suit if he can. If he has none of the suit led, he may trump or discard as he pleases. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits.

**Scoring.** At the end of the hand the various players claim the points made, and score them by placing white counters in the pool. If the bidder makes any points in excess of the number bid, he scores them. The first player to get rid of his seven white counters wins the pool, and takes down all the red counters it contains. The white counters are then re-distributed, and the players cut for the first deal of the new game.

If two players can count out on the same deal, and one of them is the bidder, he wins the pool if he has made good his bid. If neither of the ties is the bidder, the points count out in their regular order, High first, then Low, then Jack, and finally Game. For instance: Seven are playing. A sells to B, who bids two. B and C have each two to go. B pitches a trump of which C has both High and Low; but if B makes Jack and Game he wins the pool, because he bid only two points, and made them. This is generally expressed by the rule: *bidder goes out first.*

**Setting Back.** If the player who pitches the trump fails to make the number of points bid, he is set back, and scores nothing for any points he may have made. A player who is set back, either for overbidding his hand, or for refusing to sell and failing to make the number of points offered him, must withdraw from the pool as many white counters as were bid, and add them to his own. For instance: It is A's sell. A and B each have two to go. B bids three, which A refuses, pitching the trump himself. A makes only two points, B scoring one, and a third player D,



another. B and D score one each, but A scores nothing for the two points he made, and must take three white counters from the pool, which will make him five to go. Had the bid which A refused been two only, he would have won the game, as he made two points. In many clubs it is the custom for a player who is set back to add a red counter to the pool.

**Irregularities in Play.** If any adversary of the player who pitches the trump leads or plays out of turn, he may be called upon by the bidder to play his highest or lowest of the suit led; or to trump or not to trump the trick. If any player but the pitcher has followed the erroneous lead, the cards must be taken back; but if the pitcher has followed, the error cannot be rectified.

In case of a *revoke*, the hand is played out as if the revoke had not occurred, and each player except the person in error counts whatever points he makes. If the pitcher of the trump fails to make the number of points bid, he cannot be set back, but must be allowed to score any points he makes. The revoking player is then set back the number of points bid, and forfeits a red counter to the pool. If no bid was made, he is set back two points.

---

### SMUDGE.

In this variation of auction pitch, any player who is not in the hole wins the game at once if he can bid four and make it.

---

### PEDRO.

**Pedro, Pedro Sancho, Dom Pedro, and Snoozer,** are all varieties of Auction Pitch, in which certain counting cards are added, and secondary bids are allowed.

Everything counts to the player winning it, instead of to the one to whom it is dealt. The game point is scored by the player who wins the trick containing the Ten of trumps. If that card is not in play there is no Game.

In *Pedro Sancho*, the Five and Nine of trumps count their pip value in scoring, so that 18 points can be bid and made on one deal; one each for High, Low, Jack, and Game, and fourteen more for the Nine and Five of trumps. These two trumps have no special rank. The Ten will win the Nine, and the Six will take the Five. In some places all the cards in the pack are dealt out, which makes a much better game in any form of Pedro.

The eldest hand sells, as at Auction Pitch. If a player's **first** bid is raised he may raise again in his proper turn.

Fifty points is game, and the players are usually provided with two varieties of counters for scoring; one worth five points, and the other worth one. The rank of the points in scoring is; High, Low, Jack, Ten (Game), Five, and Nine. The revoke penalty is to be set back the number of points bid, or ten points if there is no bid, and the player in fault cannot score anything that hand. In all other respects the rules are the same as in Auction Pitch.

In *Dom Pedro, or Snoozer*, the Joker is added to the pack, and the Three, Five, and Nine of trumps count their pip value in scoring. The Joker, or Snoozer, counts fifteen, so that thirty-six points can be bid and made on one deal. The Joker is the lowest trump, so that the deuce of trumps will win it, but it will win any trick in plain suits. Fifty or a hundred points is the game. In counting out, the order of precedence is: High, Low, Jack, Ten (Game), Three, Five, Nine, Snoozer.

---

## CINCH,

### DOUBLE PEDRO, OR HIGH FIVE.

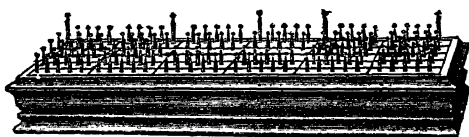
This is now regarded as the most important variety of All Fours, and bids fair to supplant the parent game altogether. Properly speaking, Cinch is one of the pedro variations of Auction Pitch, the difference being that no one sells, and that there is added the always popular American feature of a draw to improve the hand.

The derivation and meaning of the name, Cinch, seems to be very much misunderstood. Many persons assume it is simply a name for the Left Pedro, but such is not the case. Cinch is a Mexican word for a strong saddle-girth, and when used as a verb it refers to the manner of adjusting the girth on a bucking broncho so that no amount of kicking will get him free. The word is used in this sense to describe one of the principal tactics of the card game, which is to "cinch" certain tricks, so that the adversary cannot possibly get either of the Pedros free.

**CARDS.** Cinch is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards which rank A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2. When the suit is trumps the 5 retains its natural position, and is known as the *Right Pedro*; but the 5 of the same colour as the trump suit, which is known as the *Left Pedro*, ranks between the 5 and 4 of the trump suit. The ace is highest in cutting and in play. Whist-players, who have taken up Cinch as a side issue, are in the habit of making the ace lowest in cutting; but such a practice is out of harmony with all other members of the Seven-up family of games.

**COUNTERS.** The score is usually kept on a sheet of paper.

but it is more convenient to provide each side with 8 red and 11 white counters, representing 51 points; the whites being worth 1, and the reds 5 each. A good pull-up cribbage board is still better.



PULL-UP GAME COUNTER.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from two to six can play; but the regular game is for four persons, two of whom are partners against the other two. The player on the dealer's left is the *eldest hand*; on the dealer's right is the *pone*.

**CUTTING.** The players draw from an outspread pack for partners, seats, and deal. The two lowest play against the two highest; the highest cut has the choice of seats and cards, and deals the first hand. Partners sit opposite each other.

**DEALING.** Each player has the right to shuffle the pack, the dealer last. The cards are then presented to the pone to be cut, and at least four cards must be left in each packet. Beginning on his left, the dealer gives nine cards to each player, three at a time in three separate rounds. No trump is turned, and the remainder of the pack is left on the table face downward.

**MISDEALING.** If any card is found faced in the pack, the cards must be re-shuffled and dealt again. If the dealer exposes a card in dealing, or turns up a trump by mistake, the adversaries may elect to have a new deal by the same dealer, or to let the deal stand. If the dealer gives too many or too few cards to any player, or fails to give the same number of cards in each round, it is a misdeal, and the deal passes to the next player on the left. Any player dealing out of turn, or with the wrong cards, may be stopped before the last three cards are dealt; but after that the deal stands good. If a misdeal is not discovered until after a bid has been made, the deal stands good if three players have their right number of cards. The deal passes in regular rotation to the left.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The game is fifty-one points, and the side first pegging that number, or getting rid of its fifty-one counters is the winner. Fourteen points are made on every deal, as follows:—

- 1 For *High*, the ace of trumps.
- 1 For *Low*, the deuce of trumps.
- 1 For the *Jack* of trumps.
- 1 For the Ten of trumps, or *Game*.

5 For the Five of trumps, or *Right Pedro*.

5 For the Five of the same colour, or *Left Pedro*.

14 points altogether; all in the trump suit.

All these points, including Low, count to the player winning them, and not to the players to whom they are dealt. This saves endless disputes.

**BIDDING.** Beginning with the eldest hand, each player in turn, after examining his nine cards, can make *one bid* for the privilege of naming the trump suit. The peculiarity of this bidding is that nobody sells, the bids being made *to the board*, as it is called. The bidder announces the number of points he thinks he can make (with his partner's assistance) but does not name the trump suit. If a player will not bid, he says: "*I pass.*" After a bid has been made in its proper turn, any following player must bid higher or pass. No one is allowed to bid more than fourteen. There are no second bids, and a bid once made cannot be amended or withdrawn. The player who has made the highest bid is called upon to name the trump suit.

**Irregular Bids.** If any player bids before the eldest hand has bid or passed, both the player in error and his partner lose their right to make any bid that deal; but the side not in error must bid against each other for the privilege of naming the trump suit. If the eldest hand has decided, and the pone bids without waiting for the dealer's partner, the pone loses his bid, and the dealer may bid before his partner, without penalty. If the dealer bids before his partner has decided, both he and his partner lose their right to bid that deal; but the pone is still at liberty to overbid the eldest hand for the privilege of naming the trump. If the dealer's partner has bid, and the dealer bids without waiting for the pone, the dealer loses his right to bid for that deal.

If a player whose partner has not yet bid names the trump suit, his partner loses the right to bid. If no bid is made, the dealer may name any suit he pleases, without bidding. If any player exposes a card before the trump suit is named, the adversaries may elect to have a new deal by the same dealer.

**DISCARDING AND DRAWING.** The trump suit named, each player discards and leaves *face upward* on the table as many cards as he pleases. He must discard three, to reduce his hand to six cards. If he discards more than three he must draw from the remainder of the pack to restore the number of his cards to six; so that after the discard and draw each player at the table will have exactly six cards, although nine were originally dealt him.

The dealer, beginning on his left, gives to each player in turn as many cards from the top of the pack as may be necessary to restore the number in his hand to six. When it comes to the

dealer's turn, instead of taking cards from the top of the pack, he may search the remainder of the pack, and take from it any cards that he pleases. This is called *robbing the deck*. Should he find in his own hand and the remainder of the pack more than six trumps, he must discard those he does not want, showing them face up on the table with the other discards.

Should any player discard a trump, his partner has the right to call his attention to it, and if the player has not been helped to cards, or has not lifted the cards drawn, the trump erroneously discarded may be taken back; otherwise it must remain among the discards until the hand has been played, when, if it is of any counting value, it must be added to the score of the side making the trump.

Although there is no law to that effect, it is considered imperative for each player except the dealer to discard everything but trumps. This is partly because no other cards are of the slightest use, and partly because one of the points of the game is that the number of trumps held by each player before the draw should be indicated by his discard.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The player who has named the trump suit begins by leading any card he pleases. If a trump is led, every one must follow suit if able to do so, and it must be remembered that the Left Pedro is one of the trump suit. When a plain suit is led, any player may trump if he chooses, although holding one of the suit led; but if he does not trump, he must follow suit if he can. If he has none of the suit led he may trump or discard at pleasure. The highest card played of the suit led wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits. The Five of trumps, or any higher, will win the Left Pedro; but the Left Pedro will win the Four of trumps, or any lower. The winner of the trick gathers it in, turning it face down, and leads for the next trick, and so on, until all six tricks have been played. The tricks themselves have no value, and need not be kept separate. The last trick turned and quitted may be seen, but no other.

**Irregularities in Playing.** If, during the play of a hand, any person is found to have too many cards, his hand is foul, and neither he nor his partner can score any points for that deal, but they may play the hand out to prevent the adversaries from scoring everything. If he has too few cards there is no penalty.

If a player leads out of turn, and the three others follow him, the trick stands good. If all have not followed the false lead, their cards must be taken back, but only the leader's card is liable to be called. If it was the turn of the partner of the player in error to lead, the adversary on his right may call upon him to lead or not to lead a trump; but he cannot specify the plain suit. If it was the turn of either adversary of the player in error to lead, the card led in error is simply exposed.

If the third hand plays before the second, the fourth may play before the second also. If the fourth hand plays before his partner, third hand not having played, the trick may be claimed by the adversaries, regardless of who wins it; but the player who actually wins it leads for the next trick.

If a player has a card of the suit led, and neither follows suit nor plays a trump, it is a *revoke*; and, if detected and claimed by the adversaries, neither the player in error nor his partner can score any points that hand; but the hand may be played out to prevent the adversaries from scoring everything. If an adversary of the bidder revokes, the bidder's side scores all points it makes, regardless of the number bid. For instance: A has bid nine; and Y revokes. A-B make eight only, which they score, Y-Z scoring nothing. When a player renounces, his partner should ask him if he is void of the suit.

If any player abandons his hand, the cards in it may be exposed and called by the adversaries. The practice of throwing down the hand as soon as one renounces to trumps, cannot be too strongly condemned.

All *exposed cards*, such as cards dropped on the table; two or more played at once; cards led out of turn; or cards named by the player holding them, must be left face up on the table, and are liable to be called by the adversaries, unless they can be previously got rid of in the course of play. If the exposed card is a trump the adversaries may prevent its being played, but the holder of it is not liable for a revoke in such cases.

**SCORING.** When the last card has been played, each side turns over all the tricks won, and counts the points they contain; High, Low, Jack, Game, Right and Left Pedro. Everything, including Low, counts to the side winning it. The number of points won or lost is determined by deducting the lower score from the higher, the difference being the number of points won on that deal. If it is a tie, neither side scores. If either side has incurred a penalty which prevents them from scoring any points they may have won, the adversaries have nothing to deduct, and score all they make.

If the side that named the trump fails to make as many points as it bid, it scores nothing, and the number of points bid are scored by the adversaries, in addition to any points that the adversaries may have made in play. For instance: A-B are partners against Y-Z. B has bid to make 8, and named hearts for trumps. A-B make 10, which is 2 more than they bid, Y-Z getting the other 4; which leaves A-B 6. These are scored by placing one red and one white counter in the pool. But suppose A-B got only 5 points, Y-Z getting 9. A-B would score nothing, as they did not make good their bid; while Y-Z would score the 9 points actually won, and the 8 points bid in addition, or 17 altogether.

The old way of scoring was to *set back* the side that failed to make the number bid; but that system of counting entirely destroyed the interest in the game when one side got much behind; because it could not recover in time to prevent the other side from *sweating out*, as it is called. Suppose A-B have been set back 18 points on two failures, Y-Z having made 16 points on those two deals, and 23 on their own bids. The score will stand: A-B 64 to go; Y-Z, 12 to go. Even if we suppose that A-B make 11 on each of the next four deals, they will still have 20 to go, while Y-Z will be out. Again: A-B want 15, Y-Z want 2. Even if A-B can bid 12 and make it, Y-Z will sweat out.

With the system of scoring here recommended, this sweating out is impossible, and it is not uncommon for a side that wants one to go, to be beaten by an adversary that wants forty-nine.

The side first pegging out on a cribbage-board, or getting rid of its fifty-one counters, wins the game. When the game is counted on a pull-up cribbage marker, it is usual to start with ten up, and peg out to the game-hole, or 61.

**VARIATIONS.** There are quite a number of minor differences in the manner of playing Cinch. Sometimes, instead of discarding and drawing, after the successful bidder has been ascertained, but before he names the trump, four more cards are given to each player, including the dealer. Having seen thirteen cards, the bidder names the trump suit, and the hands are then reduced to six cards each. This method gives no clue to the number of trumps originally held, and deprives the dealer of one of the greatest advantages of his position, robbing the deck.

Another method is to discard and draw after the trump is named, but to make the dealer take his cards from the top of the pack to complete his hand, without seeing what he is to get. This often leaves counting cards in the remainder of the pack, which must remain face down, and be kept separate from the discards. Such points count for neither side; but any points found among the discards may be counted by the side making the trump, as in the ordinary game. Owing to the uncertainty as to the number of points actually in play, the result is controlled more largely by luck than skill.

In some places the *first lead* from the successful bidder must be a *trump*. This makes the game too much like Auction Pitch, and spoils some of the finer points in leading.

*Low* is sometimes counted for the person to whom it is dealt. Such a rule causes endless confusion and disputes.

The old method of *scoring* has already been mentioned. Another variation is that if the bidder's side do not make at least 8 points they cannot score anything, no matter what they bid. If both sides score 7, neither having bid more than 7, neither scores. If one side bids 6, and makes 8, it scores 8; but the adversaries score the 6 they make. If the side bidding 6 had made 6 only, it would

score nothing, while their adversaries would mark the 8 they made. The only good result of the 6 bid in this case is to prevent the adversaries from scoring for a failure; for if 7 had been bid, and only 6 made, the adversaries would have scored the 7 bid in addition to the 8 they made, or 15 in all. This system, while better than the old way, because it never sets players back, still allows one side to sweat out; because if the bidder does not make 14, the adversaries must count something every deal.

**Five or six players**, each for himself, may play what is called *Auction Cinch*, or *Razzle-dazzle*. Only six cards are dealt to each player, three on the first round and three on the second. Then the privilege of naming the trump suit is bid for as usual. After the trump is named, superfluous cards are thrown out, and others drawn in their place, restoring the hands to six cards each. The successful bidder then calls upon the holder of any given card to be his partner. The person holding the card named cannot refuse, and says: "I play with you." The partnership thus formed plays against the combined forces of the other players, but without changing seats. The maker of the trump leads first, any card he pleases. For instance: A B C D E are playing. C bids 8 and names clubs. After the draw he finds he holds A J 10 5 2 of trumps. He calls for the club King as his partner, and leads his Pedro at once for the King to take it in. He is then certain to catch the other Pedro, or to save three of the four points for High, Low, Jack, and the Game. Those who have played Seven-handed Euchre will at once recognize the similarity of the two games. Both are excellent round games for the family circle.

**Progressive Cinch** is played by dealing one round at each table; that is, four deals, each player having the deal once only. The ordinary game of Cinch is played, and the pair having the fewest points to go at the end of the four deals progress to the next higher table. Ties cut to decide, high going up. On arriving at the next table, the partners divide, and another game of four deals is played, the winning pair again progressing. The general arrangements for the original positions of the players, and the prizes to be given, are the same as in Progressive Euchre, and have been fully described in connection with that game.

**Blind Cinch**. Instead of giving each player thirteen cards at once, the hands are dealt in two parts. First of all, nine cards are dealt to each player, three at a time. Then four cards are dealt in front of each player, but not to be touched until the bidding is finished. The highest bidder takes up his four extra cards and then names the trump, after which he discards down to six cards for play. The others then take up their four cards and discard down to six, and the game proceeds like regular cinch.

**Sixty-three**. In this variation, nine cards are dealt to each player, three at a time. After the bidding, the players discard and



fill up again to six cards. Players are allowed several bids, each raising in turn if he is raised. The highest bid possible is sixty-three, and these may be made as follows: High, low, Jack, and ten of trumps count 1 each; pedros, 5 each; King of trumps, 25; trey of trumps, 15; nine of trumps, 9. Game is 150 points.

**Widow Cinch.** Six players cut for partners, two on a side. Each player has two adversaries between himself and his partner. The dealer gives each player eight cards, four at a time, and four are dealt to the table after the first round to the players. These four cards are the widow. The successful bidder can take the widow before he names the trump, and then all the players discard down to six cards.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** There is a great diversity of opinion on bidding. Some persons always bid six on an ace, if they hold neither of the Pedroes. This is based on the sound principle that the odds are five to four in favour of your partner having one of the Pedroes, which he will immediately give up if you lead the ace. The odds are five to two that your partner will hold one or more of any three named counting cards which you do not hold. If you have no Pedro, count on him for one, and if you have King and Queen, you can risk his having a guard to it, and bid as if you were sure of getting his Pedro home. If you have none of the points for High, Low, Jack, or Game, or only one of them, count on him for one at least, and bid accordingly.

It is very difficult to give exact rules for bidding, the state of the score having much to do with it; but as a general rule it is much better to bid on *catching cards* than on the points themselves. For instance: A K Q of trumps should certainly be good for eight points; some players habitually bid twelve on them, reckoning to catch both Pedroes and one of the minor points. This is risky unless there are one or two small trumps with the A K Q. On the other hand, two Pedroes, with Jack and Low, are not worth bidding more than five on; because it is very unlikely that you will save more than one of the Pedroes, if that. The very fact that you bid five diminishes your chances, for you betray the fact that your only hope is to save a well-guarded Pedro. Long experience with players who bid their hands correctly will give a player a very good idea of what the bidder has in his hand. To the partner this is a great point, for it enables him to judge when to give up points himself, and when to play for his partner to throw them to him.

The number of cards asked for by each player should be very carefully noted; for it will frequently happen that the entire trump suit can be located by this means. It is useless to keep anything but trumps, for tricks, as such, have no value, and every card you draw increases your chances of getting another trump.

The most important point in the game is to *cinch* every trick in which an adversary plays after you; that is, to play some trump

higher than a Pedro, if the Pedros have not been played, and you do not hold them yourself. Examples of cinching will be found in the Illustrative Hands. If your partner leads a certain winning trump, such as the ace, or the King if the ace is gone, give him the best counting card you have; but if you have two, one of them being Low, give up the lower card first; you may catch something with the Jack or Ten. If your partner leads any trump higher than the Five, play your smallest trump unless second hand covers, in which case you must cinch the trick, to prevent the fourth hand from giving up a Pedro on his partner's trick.

If you are forced to win your partner's first lead of trumps, return the best trump you have, unless it is the Jack or Ten, in which case you must be guided by the number of points you are playing for, and your chances of making them if you lose the card you lead.

If your partner begins by leading a plain suit, you must cinch the trick if you can; if second hand follows suit, any trump better than the Five will do. If second hand puts on a trump, you must cinch higher.

If the player on your right renounces to trumps, get into the lead if possible, and play your best cards in plain suits. This may give your partner a tenace position over the player on your left.

If partner begins with a high card in trumps, not the ace, credit him with the sequence below it, and put in your Pedro at the first opportunity. For instance: Partner leads King, won by the ace second hand. Whatever this player leads, put in your Pedro, if you have one, your partner must have Queen of trumps.

Playing to the score is very important. Do not attempt to get more than the number bid until that is assured. On the other hand, if it is certain that the adversary cannot make good his bid, do not let him get as close to it as possible, but play boldly to win all you can, for every point he makes is simply lost.

Here are a few example hands, which will give a very good idea of some of the fine points in the game.

**No. 1.** A bids 8 on hearts.

The draw: A 2; Y 2;  
B 4; Z 5.

A	Y	B	Z
♣ Q	♠ 3	♥ 8	♣ 5
♥ 2	♥ 6	♥ Q	♥ 4
♥ 10	♥ J	♣ J	♥ 9
♥ K	5 ♦	2 ♠	4 ♠
♥ A	♥ 7	6 ♠	♣ 9
♥ 3	♥ 5	10 ♠	K ♦

TRICK

**No. 2.** A bids 8 on hearts.

The draw: A 2; Y 3;  
B 4; Z 4.

A	Y	B	Z
♥ 3	♥ 7	♥ 10	♥ 8
♥ Q	♥ 2	♥ 4	♥ 9
♥ 6	♥ J	A ♦	♣ 4
♣ 2	7 ♠	K ♦	6 ♠
♥ K	♥ A	♣ 3	♣ 6
♥ 5	5 ♦	2 ♦	♣ 10

**No. 1.** Y's draw shows that he holds at least four trumps, so A must trust his partner to cinch the first trick and return the trump. [See our suggestions for good play.] At trick 3, Z cinches, to make A play a high trump. It is evident to A that neither E nor Z holds either Jack or Seven of trumps; so both those cards must be with Y. As B has no more trumps the adversaries must have both Pedroses, and Y must have one, as he holds four trumps. If they are divided, A can catch both by cinching this trick with the King and leading the Ace; but if Y has both Pedroses, such a course would lose Jack, Game, and one Pedro. If A cinches this trick with the Ten, allowing Y to win with the Jack, A must catch both Pedroses, no matter how they lie, provided Y leads the trump Seven, for A will refuse to win it.

Y sees his danger, and by leading a Pedro to A, forces him either to pass it, or to get into the lead and free the other Pedro.

A-B score nothing: Y-Z score 7 for Jack, Game, Pedro; and 8 in addition, for points bid but not made by A-B; 15 altogether.

**No. 2.** At trick 2, Y sees that he cannot save Low, and the lead would be a great disadvantage, because either A has all the remaining trumps, or Y's partner has an unguarded Pedro. At trick 3, A knows that if Y has Ace, and Z Pedro, A can still make his bid by catching Jack, and saving his own Pedro. If the Pedro is not with Z the small trump is still the best lead, for it puts the lead on A's left. B gets rid of cards which might get him into the lead to his partner's disadvantage. Unfortunately, Z is unable to take the lead away from Y at trick 4. As Y is still in the lead, there is no necessity for A to save his Pedro, for Y cannot possibly catch it, and A must catch Y's, no matter how Y plays.

A-B score 10 points; Low, Game, and both Pedroses, 12, from which they deduct the 2 points made by Y-Z.

**No. 3.** A bids 12 on hearts.

The draw: A 3; Y 5;  
B 3; Z 2.

A	Y	B	Z
♥ A	♥ 3	5 ♦	♥ 6
♥ K	♥ 4	♥ 8	♥ 10
♥ 2	♥ 7	♥ 9	♥ J
♣ Q	♣ K	♣ 3	♣ J
8 ♠	♣ A	♣ 10	2 ♦
♥ Q	Q ♠	K ♦	♥ 5

**No. 4.** A bids 8 on hearts.

The draw: A 2; Y 4;  
B 4; Z 4.

A	Y	B	Z
♥ A	♥ 6	♥ J	♥ 3
♥ 8	♥ 7	♥ 4	♥ 9
♥ Q	♥ 2	4 ♦	♥ K
Q ♠	♣ 2	♣ A	♣ 9
5 ♦	♥ 5	♣ J	♣ 7
♥ 10	4 ♠	J ♦	2 ♦

**No. 3.** At the second trick, A knows that his partner still holds another trump, because he drew only three cards. This trump must be the 9. Z holds two more trumps, and they must be the Jack and Right Pedro, because Z would not throw away Game if he had anything smaller. The 7 must be with Y, and if A now leads trump Queen, he will leave the Pedro good over his Deuce, leaving him only 8 points, whereas he has bid 12. If A leads the Deuce, his partner's nine will cinch the trick, and Z can make only the Jack.

A-B score 10. The 12 actually taken make good the bid; but the 2 points won by the adversaries must be deducted, leaving 10 to be scored by A-B.

**No. 4.** At the third trick, a hasty or careless player would have been only too glad of the opportunity to get in his Pedro. But Y reasons that there are only two trumps unaccounted for, the Ten and Left Pedro. If B has one, it must fall to this trick. He cannot have both, for A drew only two cards. If A has both, Y must catch his Pedro, no matter how A plays; and as long as Y does not get into the lead himself, he cannot lose his own Pedro. At trick 5, A naturally places the Pedro with Z, as Y did not save it on the King, and it is perfectly natural for A to trump with his Pedro, intending to lead the Ten to catch Z's.

A-B score nothing, not having made good their bid. Y-Z score Right and Left Pedro, and Low, 11 points; adding the 8 points bid but not made by A-B, 19 altogether.

---

## CINCH LAWS.

**Formation of Table.** A cinch table is complete with six players. If more than four assemble, they cut for preference, the four highest playing the first game. Partners and deal are then cut for, the two lowest pairing against the two highest. Partners sit opposite each other. The highest deals, and has the choice of seats and cards. The Ace is high, both in cutting and in play. A player exposing more than one card must cut again.

**Ties.** If the first cut does not decide, the players cutting equal cards cut again; but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

**Cutting Out.** At the end of the game, the players cut to decide which shall give way to those awaiting their turn to play, the lowest cuts going out. After the second game, those who have played the greatest number of consecutive games give way, ties being decided by cutting.

**Dealing.** Every player has the right to shuffle the cards, the dealer last. The dealer must present the pack to the pone to be cut. At least four cards must be left in each packet. If a card

is exposed in cutting, the pack must be re-shuffled, and cut again. If the dealer re-shuffles the pack after it has been properly cut, he loses his deal.

Beginning on his left, the dealer must give to each player in rotation three cards at a time for three rounds. No trump is turned. The deal passes to the left.

There must be a new deal by the same dealer if any card is found faced in the pack; or if the pack is proved incorrect or imperfect; but any previous cutting or scores made with the imperfect pack stand good.

The adversaries may demand a new deal if any card is exposed during the deal, provided they have not touched a card. If an adversary exposes a card, the dealer may elect to deal again. If a new deal is not demanded, cards exposed in dealing cannot be called.

The adversaries may stop a player dealing out of turn, or with the wrong pack, provided they do so before the last three cards are dealt, after which the deal stands good.

**Misdealing.** A misdeal loses the deal. It is a misdeal: If the cards have not been properly cut; if the dealer does not give the same number of cards to each player on the same round; if he gives too many or too few cards to any player; if he counts the cards on the table, or those remaining in the pack; or if he deals a card incorrectly, and fails to correct the error before dealing another. If the dealer is interrupted in any way by an adversary, he does not lose his deal.

**Bidding.** After receiving his nine cards, each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, announces the number of points he will undertake to win if he is allowed to name the trump suit. No player is allowed to bid more than fourteen. If he will not bid, he must say: "I pass." A bid having been regularly made, any following player must bid higher or pass. There are no second bids. A bid once made can neither be amended nor withdrawn.

**Irregular Bids.** If any player bids before the eldest hand has bid or passed, both the player in error and his partner lose their right to bid; but the side not in error must bid to decide which of them shall name the trump. If the eldest hand has decided, and the pone bids without waiting for the dealer's partner, the one loses his bid, and the dealer may bid before his partner. If the dealer bids without waiting for his partner, both lose their bids; but the pone may overbid the eldest hand.

If the dealer's partner has bid, and the dealer bids without waiting for the pone, the dealer loses his bid.

If a player whose partner has not yet bid names the trump suit, his partner loses his bid.

If a player bids with more than nine cards in his hand, his bid is

lost, and the adversaries must draw the superfluous cards from his hand, face down, placing them about the middle of the undealt portion of the pack.

If no bid is made, the dealer may name any trump he pleases, without bidding.

If any player exposes any of his cards before the trump suit is named, the adversaries may elect to have a new deal by the same dealer.

**Discarding.** The trump named, each player must put out at least three of his cards, and may discard as many more as he pleases. All such discards must be placed on the table face up. Should a player discard a trump, his partner may call his attention to it, and it may be taken back, provided the player has not been helped to cards, or has not lifted the cards drawn.

**Drawing.** The players having discarded, the dealer, beginning on his left, must give to each in turn from the top of the pack, face down, as many cards as may be necessary to restore the number in each hand to six.

**Robbing the Deck.** When it comes to the dealer's turn to draw cards, instead of taking them from the top of the pack, face down, he may search the remainder of the pack, and take from it any cards he pleases to restore the number in his hand to six. Should he find in his own hand and in the remainder of the pack, more than six trumps, he must discard those he does not want, face upward on the table.

**Irregular Drawing.** Should a player ask for too many or too few cards, and not discover his error until the next player has been helped, if he has too few he may make his hand good from the discards, but must not take a trump therefrom. If he has too many, the adversaries must be allowed to draw the superfluous ones at random, face down, placing them on the top of the pack.

**Playing.** The maker of the trump must lead for the first trick, any card he pleases. If a trump is led, all must follow suit if able. If a plain suit is led, a player may trump, even when holding a card of the suit led; but if he does not trump he must follow suit if he can, or he is liable to the penalty for a revoke.

The last trick turned and quitted may be seen, but no other.

**Irregularities in the Hands.** If any player is found to have an incorrect number of cards, it is a misdeal if no bid has been made. If a bid has been made, the deal stands good if three players have their right number of cards. If the first trick has been played to by a person holding too many cards, neither he nor his partner can score anything that hand; but they may play the hand out to save what points they can. If a player has too few cards, there is no penalty, but he should draw from the discard to make up the deficiency, plain-suit cards only being available.

**Exposed Cards.** The following are exposed cards, which must be left face up on the table, and are liable to be called by either adversary: 1. Every card faced upon the table otherwise than in the regular course of play. 2. Two or more cards played to a trick; the adversaries may elect which shall be played. 3. Any card named by the player holding it.

The adversary on the right of an exposed card must call it before he plays himself. If it will be the turn of the player holding the exposed card to lead for the next trick, the card, if wanted, must be called before the current trick is turned and quitted. Should a player having the lead, and an exposed card in front of him, play before the previous trick is turned and quitted, the card so led may also be claimed as exposed.

If a trump is exposed after the trump suit has been named, the adversaries may prevent the playing of such a card; but the holder of it is not liable to any penalty for a revoke under such circumstances.

**Leading Out of Turn.** If a player leads when it was his partner's turn, the partner may be called upon by his right-hand adversary to lead or not to lead a trump; but a specified plain suit cannot be called. If it was the turn of neither of the side in error to lead, the card played in error is simply exposed. If all have played to the false lead, the error cannot be rectified. If all have not followed, the cards played to the false lead may be taken back, and are not liable to be called.

**Playing Out of Turn.** If the third hand plays before the second, the fourth may play before the second also; either of his own volition, or by the direction of the second hand, who may say: "Play, partner." If the fourth hand plays before the second, the third hand not having played, the trick may be claimed by the adversaries, no matter who actually wins it; but the actual winner of it must lead for the next trick.

If any player abandons his hand, the cards in it may be claimed as exposed, and called by the adversaries.

**The Revoke.** A revoke is a renounce in error, not corrected in time, or non-compliance with a performable penalty. It is a revoke if a player has one of the suit led, and neither follows suit nor trumps.

A person prohibited from playing an exposed trump is not liable to any penalty if it causes him to revoke.

A revoke is established when the trick in which it occurs has been turned and quitted; or when either the revoking player or his partner, whether in his right turn or otherwise, has led or played to the following trick.

If a revoke is claimed and proved, the revoking side cannot score any points that deal; but they may play the hand out to prevent the adversaries from making points.

If an adversary of the bidder revokes, the bidder's side scores whatever points it makes that deal, regardless of the number bid.

A player may ask his partner whether or not he has a card of the suit in which he renounces and does not trump, and the player may correct his error if the question is asked before the trick is turned and quitted. But if he answers in the negative, there is no remedy.

**Drawing Cards.** Any player may ask the others to indicate the cards played by them to the current trick; but he must confine himself to the expression: "Draw cards."

**Irregular Remarks.** A player calling attention in any manner to the trick or to the score, may be called upon to play his highest or lowest of the suit led; or to trump or not to trump the trick during the play of which the remark is made.

**Scoring.** A game consists of fifty-one points; fourteen of which must be made on every deal, as follows:—

1 for *High*, or the Ace of trumps.

1 for *Low*, or the Deuce of trumps.

1 for the *Jack* of trumps.

1 for *Game*, or the Ten of trumps.

5 for *Right Pedro*, or the Five of trumps.

5 for *Left Pedro*, or Five of the same colour as the trump suit. All points count to the side winning them.

Any trumps found among the discards at the end of the hand count for the side that made the trump.

At the end of the hand, the number of points won by each side is added up, and the lower deducted from the higher, the difference being scored by the winners of the majority. If the result is a tie, neither scores. For instance: If A-B make 11, Y-Z must make the remaining 3, which deducted from 11 leaves 8 points for A-B to score.

If the side naming the trump suit fails to make as many points as they bid, they score nothing for that deal, and the number bid is scored by the adversaries, in addition to any other points that the adversaries may have made in play. The number bid and the number actually won, must be compared before deducting the points made by the adversaries.

The side first making fifty-one points wins the game.

**Text Books.** There are two very good text-books on the game.

*The Laws and Principles of Cinch*, by G. W. Hall, 1891.

*The Laws and Etiquette of Cinch*, issued by the Chicago Cinch Club, 1890.



# HEARTS.

---

Hearts is supposed by some persons to be an entirely new game; but its leading principle, losing instead of winning tricks, is to be found in many other card games, some of which are quite old. Slobberhannes, Enflé, Schwellen, Polignac, and The Four Jacks, all belong to the same family, but most of them have given way to the more popular game of Hearts.

There are several varieties of Hearts, but the principal arrangements are the same in all, and the chief differences are in the manner of settling at the end of the hand.

**CARDS.** Hearts is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2: the ace is the highest in play, but in cutting it ranks below the deuce. There is no trump suit.

When three persons play, the deuce of spades is thrown out of the pack; when five play, both the black deuces are laid aside, and when six play, all four deuces are discarded. It is usual to play with two packs, one being shuffled while the other is dealt.

**COUNTERS.** Every deal is a game in itself, and must be settled for in counters immediately. It is usual for each player to begin with fifty counters, which are purchased from some person who is agreed upon to act as banker. When only two play, the game may be scored on a pull-up cribbage board, and settled for at the end.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from two to six persons may play, but four is the usual number, each playing for himself against all the others. The players on the dealer's right and left are known as the *pone* and the *eldest hand*, respectively.

**STAKES.** The value of the counters must be agreed upon before play begins, and the method of settling should also be understood, Sweepstake Hearts and Howell's Settling being entirely different games, and requiring totally different methods of play.

**CUTTING.** If seven players assemble, it is usual to make up a table in which the dealer takes no cards. If there are more than seven candidates for play, two tables must be formed.

Players draw from an outspread pack for the choice of seats and cards, the lowest cut having the first choice, and the others fol-

lowing in their order. The player cutting the lowest card takes the first deal, which afterward passes in regular rotation to the left.

In cutting, the ace is low. Any player exposing more than one card must cut again.

**TIES.** If the first cut does not decide, those tying must cut again, but the new cut decides nothing but the tie.

**DEALING.** Any player has the right to shuffle the pack, the dealer last. The cards are then presented to the pone to be cut, who must leave at least four in each packet. The cards are dealt from left to right, one at a time to each player in rotation until the pack is exhausted. No trump is turned. In Two-handed Hearts, the dealer stops when each player has received thirteen cards. The deal passes to the left.

**Misdealing.** It is a misdeal if the dealer omits to have the pack cut, and the error is discovered before the last card is dealt ; if he deals a card incorrectly, and does not remedy the error before dealing another ; or if he counts the cards on the table, or those remaining in the pack ; or if it is discovered before all have played to the first trick that any player has too many or too few cards. A misdeal loses the deal unless one of the other players has touched the cards, or has in any way interrupted the dealer.

If any card is exposed by the dealer, the player to whom it is dealt may demand a new deal, provided he has not touched any of his cards. Any one dealing out of turn, or with the wrong cards, may be stopped before the last card is dealt. After that the deal stands good, and the packs, if changed, must so remain.

**IRREGULAR HANDS.** If, after the first trick has been played to, any two players are found to have more or less than their correct number of cards, the pack being perfect, the one having less must draw, face downward, from the hand of the one having more ; and each must pay five counters into the pool.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** As a general proposition, the object of each player is to avoid getting any hearts in the tricks he takes in. In some varieties of the game his object must be to take no hearts ; in others it will be to take less than his adversaries ; while in others it will be to take less than four. After a person has taken in one or more hearts, his object will be to *load* the others ; that is, to see that they get some hearts also ; or it may be to see that a given player takes at least one heart ; or that no one but himself takes any. The manner in which a person must vary his play in accordance with these different objects will be discussed when we come to the suggestions for good play. In the meantime, it is necessary to bear in mind only the general principle that the object of the game is to avoid winning any tricks that contain hearts.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The cards dealt, the player to the left of the dealer begins by leading any card he pleases, and the others must follow suit if they can. The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick. There is no trump suit. If a player has none of the suit led, he may discard anything he pleases. The winner of the trick takes it in and leads for the next trick, and so on until all the cards have been played. The tricks themselves have no value as such, and need not be kept separate.

**Irregularities in Play.** If any player omits to play to a trick, and plays to a following one, he is not allowed to correct his error, but is compelled to take the thirteenth or last trick, with whatever hearts it may contain. If a player is found, during or at the end of a hand, to be a card short, all others at the table having their right number, and all having played to the first trick, the player with the short hand is compelled to take the last trick, with whatever hearts it may contain.

**Exposed Cards.** Should a person lead or play two cards to one trick, he is allowed to indicate the one intended; but he must leave the other face upward on the table. All exposed cards are liable to be called by any player at the table, and should one player call such a card, his decision is binding on the others. A player with an exposed card in front of him must play it when called upon, provided he can do so without revoking; but he cannot be prevented from getting rid of the exposed card in the course of play, if the opportunity offers.

**Leading Out of Turn.** Should a player lead out of turn, he may be called upon to lead or not to lead a heart when it is next his turn to lead. This penalty can be enforced only by the player on his right. If all have played to the false lead the error cannot be rectified; but if all have not played, their cards must be taken back, and are not liable to be called.

If any person plays out of turn in any trick, the player on his left, not having played, may demand that the card be taken back, and after the proper player has played the player in error may be called upon to play his highest or lowest of the suit led, or not to discard a heart. If the person on the left of the player in error was the leader in the trick, either he or the player whose proper turn it was to play may demand the penalty.

**Revoking.** Any player failing to follow suit, when able to do so, may amend his error if he discovers his mistake before the trick in which it occurs has been turned and quitted. The card played in error then becomes an exposed card. Those who have played after him have the privilege of withdrawing their cards and substituting others, without penalty. Should the revoking player not discover his error in time, the hand must be played out, and if the revoke is detected and claimed the player in error must pay all the losses on that hand. Should the revoking player win the pool!

himself, he must pay the thirteen counters to the pool, and leave them for a **Jack**. Should he divide the pool with another player, he must pay his co-winner six counters, and put up the other seven for a Jack.

If two or more players revoke in the same hand, each must pay the entire losses in that hand as if he were alone in error ; so that if two should revoke and a third win the pool, the latter would receive twenty-six counters instead of thirteen. In Auction Hearts, the revoking player must also refund the amount put up by the bidder. A revoke must be claimed and proved before the pool is divided. Non-compliance with a performable penalty is the same as a revoke.

**SETTLING.** After the last card has been played, each player turns over his tricks, counts the number of hearts he has taken in, and announces it. Players should be careful not to gather or mix the cards until all thirteen hearts have been accounted for. Each player then pays into the pool for the number of hearts he has taken in, according to the system of settlement agreed upon before play began. The pool is then taken down by the player or players winning it, and the deal passes to the left. The game is at an end any time the players wish to stop, after a hand has been settled for ; but it is usual to agree upon some definite hour.

There are two ways of settling at the end of the hand, each of which has its good points.

**SWEEPSTAKE HEARTS.** After the hand has been played, each player announces the number of hearts he has taken in, and pays into the pool one counter for each. All thirteen hearts having been paid for, any player having taken no hearts wins the entire pool ; two having taken none, divide it. If all the players have taken hearts, or if one player has taken all thirteen, the pool remains, and forms a **Jack**. This can be won only by a single player in some subsequent deal taking no hearts, all the others having taken at least one. These jack pools are of course increased thirteen counters every deal until some player wins the whole amount. Some clubs make it a Jack after two players have divided a pool, using the odd counter as a starter. It will be found that natural Jacks occur quite frequently enough without resorting to this expedient.

**HOWELL'S SETTLING.** The great objection to the method of settling at Sweepstake Hearts is that it makes the game almost entirely one of chance. No matter how good a player one may be, good luck alone will bring success. In a four-handed game it is possible for one player to take in only 58 hearts in 60 deals, and still to be 46 counters behind ; while another player may take in 500 hearts in 60 deals and be 46 counters ahead. It may be claimed that the player who has 46 counters ahead at the end

was the better player, because he won ; but most persons will agree that a player who takes in only 58 hearts in 60 deals is a much better player than one who has taken in 500 hearts in the same time.

It was to remedy this defect, and to give skill its proper percentage of value, that Mr. E. C. Howell of Boston proposed the manner of contributing to and dividing the pools which is now known as Howell's Settling.

Each player begins with an equal number of counters, usually 100. At the end of the hand, after the hearts have been counted and announced, each player pays into the pool, for every heart he holds, as many counters as there are players besides himself. For instance: A, B, C and D play. A takes three hearts; B and C five each, and D none. There being three players besides himself, A puts up three times three, or 9 counters. B and C put up 15 each, and D none; so that there are 39 in the pool. Each player then takes out of the pool 1 counter for every heart he did *not* hold when the hearts were announced. D, having taken no hearts, gets 13 counters. A, having taken three hearts only, is entitled to 10 counters for the 10 hearts he did not hold, while B and C get 8 each. This exhausts the pool. There are no Jacks in this way of settling.

Matters may be facilitated by having counters of different colours, the white being the unit, and the red representing the number which it will be necessary to pay for one heart. Practice will make the players so familiar with the amount of the various profits or losses that they simply pay or take what is due to them.

The first time this is played it looks like a pretty severe game for a player who takes in a large number of hearts on one deal; but it will be found that he rapidly recovers. During a sitting of any length the player who takes in the smallest number of hearts must be the winner. In the case mentioned in connection with Sweepstake Hearts, in which one player lost 46 counters while another won 46, in 60 deals, the result at Howell's Settling would have been that the player who took in only 58 hearts would be 548 counters ahead instead of losing 46; while the one who took in 500 hearts would lose 1220 counters, instead of winning 46.

**METHODS OF CHEATING.** Under the rule for dealing the cards one at a time, the greek must be very skilful to secure any advantage at Hearts. But when it is the practice to deal the cards three at a time, and four on the last round, it is an easy matter to get four small hearts together on the bottom of the pack. Any person who is observed to hold three or four small hearts every time he deals, should be carefully watched, and it will usually be found that he gathers the small hearts from the hands of the other players while the pool is being divided. Marked cards are of little use to the greek at hearts, because so much depends on what a player holds, and so little on his play.

## VARIETIES OF HEARTS.

Before proceeding to suggestions for good play, it will be better to describe some of the variations of the game in common use, because what would be good play in one variation would not be in another.

**TWO-HANDED HEARTS.** The two players having cut for the deal, thirteen cards are given to each, one at a time, and the remainder of the pack is left on the table, face down. The dealer's adversary, usually called the pone, begins by leading any card he pleases, and the dealer must follow suit if he can, as in the ordinary game. The winner of the trick takes it in, but before leading for the next trick he draws one card from the top of the pack lying on the table, restoring the number of his cards to thirteen. His adversary then draws the next card, and the cards are played and drawn in this manner until the pack is exhausted. The thirteen cards remaining in the hands of the two adversaries are then played, and after the last trick has been won, each turns over his cards and counts the number of hearts he has taken in. The object of the game is to take fewer hearts than your opponent, and the method of settling is either for the greater number to pay the lesser the difference; or, for the first six hearts taken by the loser to count nothing, but all above six to be paid for. The most popular way is to peg up the difference on a cribbage board, and to settle at the end of the sitting.

**THREE-HANDED HEARTS.** The deuce of spades is discarded, and seventeen cards are dealt to each player, one at a time, after which the game proceeds in the usual way. There are several methods of settling. Howell's method is undoubtedly the best, but Sweepstakes is very common. An excellent way is for the player who takes the largest number of hearts to pay the two others as many counters as he has hearts in excess of theirs. If two have an equal number, both pay the low man. There are no Jacks.

**AUCTION HEARTS.** This is usually played by four persons, although five or six may form a table. After the cards have been dealt in the usual way, the player to the left of the dealer examines his cards, and determines which suit he would prefer to play to get clear of. It may be that if the game were to get rid of clubs instead of hearts, his hand would be a very good one, whereas if the suit were to remain hearts it would be a very bad hand. As the pool will contain thirteen counters to a certainty, he can afford to pay something for the better chance he will have to win it if he is allowed to make clubs the suit to be avoided, instead of hearts. He bids whatever amount he is willing to pay for

the privilege of changing the suit, without naming the suit he prefers. The next player then has a bid, and so on in turn, the dealer bidding last. There are no second bids.

The player making the highest bid pays into the pool the amount he has bid. He then names the suit to be avoided, and leads for the first trick, regardless of his position with respect to the deal. The dealer's position is a great advantage, on account of its having the last bid.

After the hand is played, those who have taken in any cards of the suit announced to be avoided, pay one counter to the pool for each of them. If any one player gets clear, each of the others having at least one of the tabooed suit, he takes the entire pool. If two get clear, they divide the pool, leaving any odd counter to form the basis of a Jack, as at Sweepstakes. If one player takes all thirteen, it is a Jack; but instead of the next choice being sold to the highest bidder, the one who named the suit on the hand that made the pool a Jack has the choice of suits again for the next deal, and he must select some suit without paying anything further for it, until some player wins what he paid for the choice in the first place. That is, the pool must be won before the choice can be sold again.

The general principle of the game is for the players to combine against the successful bidder, and to spare no effort to prevent him from winning the pool.

**SPOT HEARTS.** In this variation, when the hearts are announced at the end of the hand, the spots on them are the units of value, the Jack being worth 11, the Queen 12, the King 13, and the Ace 14. This adds nothing to the interest or skill of the game; but rather tends to create confusion and delay, owing to the numerous disputes as to the correctness of the count.

The total to be accounted for in each deal is 104. In settling, the player with the smallest number collects from each of the others the amount they have in excess of his. If two or more players have an equal number, or none at all, they divide the amount collected from each of the others. For instance: Four play, A has 8 points, B 24, C 18, and D 54. As 8 points is the lowest, B pays A 16, C pays him 10, and D pays him 46. If A and B had 8 each, C 32, and D 56, C would pay 24, and D 48; and A-B would divide the amount between them.

The chief variation in play arises from the fact that one who must win a heart trick cannot always afford to play his highest heart as in the ordinary game.

**JOKER HEARTS.** In this variation, the heart deuce is discarded, and the Joker takes its place. The Joker occupies a position between the Jack and the Ten in value, with the added peculiarity that it cannot be discarded on a plain suit; for if it is,

it wins the trick unless there is a higher heart in the same trick. If a player has the Joker dealt to him, his only chance to get rid of it is to play it on a trick in which hearts are led, or to discard it on a plain suit on which some other player has already discarded a higher heart than the Ten. Under such circumstances, the holder of the Joker is allowed to discard it, even if he has one of the suit led, and the Joker being in the trick compels the player who discarded the higher heart to take it in.

In settling, the Joker is worth five counters. If the player to whom it was dealt takes it in, he pays these five counters to the pool. If another player gets the Joker, he must pay the five counters to the player who got rid of it. The remainder of the pool is then divided in the usual way. This is a most exasperating game.

**DISCARD HEARTS.** This is sometimes called *Black Jack*, or *Black Lady*. If it is the Jack, it is worth ten hearts; if it is the Queen, it is worth thirteen hearts.

After the cards are dealt, each player in turn lays out three cards which he does not want, and the player on his left is obliged to take them, after having discarded himself. No player may look at what he is going to get until he has discarded himself.

The Black Jack or Lady holds its rank as a spade when spades are led; but the moment any other suit is led, of which the player is void, he can discard the Black Jack or Lady, just as he would get rid of a heart. If hearts are led and the player has no hearts, he can play the Black Jack or Lady to the trick, as it ranks below the deuce of hearts.

**PROGRESSIVE HEARTS.** The general arrangements for the players and their positions are exactly the same as those already described in connection with Progressive Euchre. The players at each table cut for the deal, and play begins with the tap of the bell at the head table. Only one deal is played at each table.

There are no counters. At the end of the hand the ladies compare their cards, and the one having the fewer hearts goes to the next higher table. The gentlemen then compare their cards in the same way, so that one lady and one gentleman go up from each table at the end of every hand. They take the seats vacated by those leaving the table they go to. All ties are determined by cutting, those cutting the lower cards going up. In cutting, the ace is low.

Each player is provided with a score card, to which the gold, red and green stars are attached as in Euchre. The gold stars are given to those at the head table who have the fewest hearts. Those moving from other tables receive red stars; and those taking in the most hearts at the booby table receive green stars.



Prizes are given to the ladies and gentlemen having the greatest number of each variety of star; but the same player cannot win two prizes. If there is a tie in one class, the number of other stars must decide; equal numbers of gold being decided by the majority of red on the same card; red ties, by the greater number of gold; and green ties by the fewest number of gold stars.

**HEARTSETTE.** Heartsette differs from hearts only in the addition of a widow. When four play, the spade deuce is deleted; twelve cards are given to each player, and the three remaining form the widow, which is left face downward in the centre of the table. When any other number play, the full pack is used. If there are three players, three cards are left for the widow: two cards are left when five play, and four when six play. The player winning the first trick takes in the widow, with any hearts it may contain. He is entitled to look at these cards, but must not show or name them to any other player. The game then proceeds in the usual way. Payments are made to the pool for all hearts taken in, and the pool is then won, divided, or remains to form a Jack, just as at Sweepstake Hearts. The chief difference in the game is that the other players do not know whether the winner of the first trick is loaded or not, and he is the only player who knows how many or what hearts are still to be played.

**DOMINO HEARTS.** In this variation, six cards only are dealt to each player, the remainder of the pack being left face down on the table. When a player is unable to follow suit, he must draw cards from the stock, one at a time, until he can. The last player with any cards left in his hand must take what is left of the stock, if any. The hearts taken in are then counted as usual. Thirty-one points is game, and the winner is the player who has the least hearts scored when some other player reaches thirty-one.

---

### SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.

A good player, after sorting his hand, carefully estimates its possibilities. The hand may be such that it is evidently impossible to avoid taking some hearts. The player must then decide whether he will play to give each of the others hearts, or will take them all himself. If he succeeds in either object he has a chance to win back his money in the ensuing Jack. In deciding on his chances to get clear without taking a single heart, the player must first consider the advisability of beginning with a heart, or with a plain suit. If hearts, he should know the probability of the heart he leads not winning the trick; if a plain suit, he should know the probability of the suit going round one or more times without hearts being discarded on it, especially if he intends to lead high

cards. These chances must then be balanced one against the other and the more favourable selected.

**LEADING HEARTS ORIGINALLY.** When your hearts are so small as to be absolutely safe, such as the 7 5 3 2, it might be supposed that the best play would be to lead them at once, in order to get a large number of hearts out of your way. But with such cards it is usually much better play, unless you have a very dangerous hand in plain suits, to reserve these small hearts until you have a more definite idea, from the fall of the cards, to whom you are giving them. Such cards are particularly useful for getting rid of the lead at dangerous stages in the end-game.

When the plain-suit cards are high or dangerous, but the hearts are reasonably safe, it is usually better to lead the hearts, and to continue leading them every time you get in. By following these tactics it is quite possible for you to take almost every trick in the plain suits, and yet to win the pool by rapidly exhausting the hearts.

If you lead the ♡ 4, the only chance for it to win is that one player has no hearts, and that the 2 and 3 are divided. The odds against this combination of circumstances will vary with the number of hearts you hold with the 4, but may be generally stated on the average as about 50 to 1. It is usually considered a safer lead than a high card of a plain suit, even if you have only three of the suit.

If your only heart is the 5, and you propose to lead it, the chances that the 2, 3, and 4 are not each in separate hands are about 19 in 25, or 19 to 6 against it, which is about 3 to 1. If you lead the 5, the odds against your winning the trick decrease as the number of hearts you hold with the 5 increases. If you have four hearts, the 5 being the lowest, the odds against its winning the trick, if you lead it, are about 29 to 11. If you have eight hearts, the 5 being the lowest, it is about an even chance. If your only heart is the 6, it is about an even chance that it will win the trick; but the odds against you increase rapidly with the number of additional hearts that you hold. If you propose to lead the 7, the chances that it will win the trick are 2 to 1 under the most favourable circumstances, which are when it is your only heart. These odds against you increase rapidly with the number of additional hearts that you hold.

**LEADING PLAIN SUITS ORIGINALLY.** It will often happen that you will have to decide between the lead of a comparatively dangerous heart and a risky plain suit. Your knowledge of probabilities should enable you to select the safer course. The odds against getting a heart on the first round of a plain suit depend upon how many cards of the suit you hold. If you lead an Ace, or any card which is sure to win the trick, the odds against your getting a heart on it are as the following :—

If you have 4 cards of the suit, 22 to 1.			
" 5	"	15 to 1.	
" 6	"	7 to 1.	
" 7	"	4 to 1.	
" 8	"	2 to 1.	

These odds may be slightly increased by taking into account the fact that players who cannot follow suit do not always discard hearts, having perhaps more dangerous cards to get rid of.

The odds against a suit going round a second time may be influenced by the cards played to the first round; but it sometimes happens that you have to calculate in advance for two rounds of a suit, regardless of the cards that may be played by others. This is especially the case when you fear that the suit will be led to you, and you have such cards as must win two rounds. If you have 4 cards of the suit the odds *against* your getting a heart in two rounds are 2 to 1. The odds *in favour* of your getting a heart in two rounds are:—

If you have 5 cards of the suit, 4 to 3.			
" 6	"	2 to 1.	
" 7	"	6 to 1.	

As an example of the value of a thorough knowledge of these odds to a careful player, suppose he had to win two rounds of a plain suit, of which he held six cards; or to lead the ♠ 7, having three higher. The suit would be the better play, because it takes in only one heart, while the lead of the heart might take in four.

The following table shows the exact number of times in 1,000 deals that a heart would probably be discarded on a plain suit led, according to the number of cards in the suit held by the leader, and the number of times the suit was led:

Cards held by the leader.	1, 2, 3, 4	5	6	7	8
Times hearts will be discarded:—					
On first round.....	44	63	122	200	315
On second round.....	358	430	659	857	1000
On third round.....	842	1000	1000	1000	1000

This shows that 158 times in 1,000, when the leader has 1, 2, 3, or 4 cards of the suit, it will go round three times, because 158 is the balance necessary to bring our last figure, 842, up to 1,000. Reducing this to a small fraction, the odds are about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 that a suit will not go round three times without affording to some player the chance of discarding hearts on it. This calculation shows the hopeless nature of all hands that contain at least three cards of each suit, unless the smallest card in every suit is below a 6; for if any one of the suits is led three times, it is even betting that you will have to win the third round, and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 that you get a heart on it if you do.

**PLAIN-SUIT LEADS.** The favourite lead with most heart players is a singleton; or, failing that, a two-card suit. This is a mistake, unless the singleton is a high card; for if the adversaries are sharp players they will at once suspect the nature of the lead, and carefully avoid the suit. But if you wait until some other player opens the suit, it will very probably be led twice in succession. The best original plain-suit lead is one in which you are moderately long, but have small cards enough to be safe, and from which you can lead intermediate cards which probably will not win the first trick.

A very little experience at Hearts will convince any one that it is best, in plain suits, to play out the high cards first. This agrees with the theory of probabilities; for while the odds are 22 to 1 against your getting a heart on the first round of a plain suit of which you have 4 cards, the odds are only 2 to 1 against it on the second round, and on the third they are  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 in favour of it. Accordingly, on the first round most players put up their highest card of the suit led, no matter what their position with regard to the leader; but in so doing, they often run needless risks. The object in Sweepstake Hearts is to take none, and the most successful players will be found to be those who play consistently with the greatest odds in their favour for taking none.

Suppose that you hold such a suit as A 10 9 7 4 2. This is a safe suit; because it is very improbable that you can be compelled to take a trick in it. The best lead from such a suit is the 10 or 9. If the suit is led by any other player, the same card should be played, unless you are fourth hand, and have no objection to the lead. This avoids the risk, however slight, of getting a heart on the first round, which would be entailed by playing the ace. In Sweepstake Hearts it is a great mistake to play the high cards of a suit in which you are safe; for no matter how small the risk, it is an unnecessary one. In the case we are considering, when you have six cards of the suit, the odds are 7 to 1 against your getting a heart if you play the ace first round. That is to say, you will probably lose one pool out of every eight if you play it. Take the greatest odds in your favour, when you have only four cards of a suit; they are 22 to 1 against your getting a heart the first round, so that you would lose by it only once in 23 times. But this is a heavy percentage against you if you are playing with those who do not run such risks, for you give up every chance you might otherwise have in 5 pools out of every 110.

When you have a dangerous hand in hearts, but one absolutely safe long suit, it is often good play to begin with your safe suit, retaining any high cards you may have in other suits in order to get the lead as often as possible for the purpose of continuing your safe suit, which will usually result in one or more of the other players getting loaded.

When you have at least three of each plain suit it is obvious

that you cannot hope for any discards, and that you must take into account the probability of having to win the third round of one or more suits, with the accompanying possibility of getting hearts at the same time. If you have the lead, this probability must be taken into account before any of the other players show their hands, and as it may be set down as about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 that you will get a heart, any better chance that the hand affords should be taken advantage of.

It will often occur that a player's attention must be so concentrated on getting clear himself that he has no opportunity to scheme for "loading" the others. But if it unfortunately happens that he is compelled to take in one or more hearts, he should at once turn his attention to taking them all, or to loading the other players, with a view to making a Jack of the pool. Should he succeed in either object, he has another chance for his money.

It is usually bad policy to return the suit opened by the original leader. He has picked that out as his safest suit, and although he may be the only one safe in it, by continuing it you are reducing your chances to two players, when you might share them with all three.

**FOLLOWING SUIT.** When a player is not the original leader, his policy becomes defensive; for, as the first player is plotting to give hearts to every one but himself, each of the others must be a prospective victim, and should do his best to avoid the traps prepared by the one who plans the opening of the hand.

When you are second or third player, the first time a suit is led, it is usually best to play your highest card, unless you are safe in the suit, or have so many that there is danger of getting a heart, even on the first round. As fourth player, you should always play your highest card, unless there is already a heart in the trick, or some decided disadvantage in the lead. The risks you run in playing high cards while following suit must be judged by the same probabilities that we examined in considering the original lead. The fact that one or more players have already followed suit, and perhaps the cards they have played, may enable you to arrive at a still closer estimate of your chances. It is generally conceded that the odds against a player who holds up on the first round are about 1 to 11. That is to say, in 12 pools, he will sacrifice his chances of one simply by holding up.

After one or two tricks have been played, the conditions may be such that it becomes necessary to hold up, in order to win the second round. This is especially the case after you have been loaded, and are anxious to keep a certain player out of the lead. For an example see Illustrative Hand No. 4, in which Y holds up the  $\diamond$  King to keep A from getting in and leading another round of hearts. In the same hand Z tries hard to make the pool a Jack by holding up the  $\clubsuit$  Q. Had not A been entirely safe in diamonds the stratagem would have succeeded.

In following suit it is important to keep count of the cards played, in order to avoid the unwitting lead of a suit of which the other players have none. The suits that need close watching are those in which you have nothing smaller than a six or eight. You should be careful to note which player appears to have the smaller cards, after the suit has been led once or twice, and be on the watch to take the lead away from him in other suits if you can, or he may load you by leading the small cards of your dangerous suit, in which he is safe. When this danger is apparent, it is best to retain, until the second round, such high cards as Kings and Queens of the suits led. Even if you have four of the suit, you run only a 2 to 1 risk in winning the second round instead of the first, as against a certainty that you will be out of the pool at once if the dangerous player gets the lead. For an example of this, see B's play in Illustrative Hand No. 2.

Where you have a certain safe card, and others of another suit not absolutely safe, it is better to keep the safe card, in order to be sure of getting rid of the lead if you are put in on your dangerous suit.

In following suit, the most annoying hand that one can hold is one containing at least three cards of each suit, none of them below a 6. There is no hope of a discard, unless two players make a fight in some one suit, which they lead four or five times in order to load each other, regardless of the escape of the other players. This very seldom occurs, and never among good players. With such a hand escape is almost impossible, and it is usually best to make the losses as small as possible. Many good players, with such a hand, will deliberately take in hearts on the plain suits, hoping to escape with only one or two in each trick, instead of having to carry the whole load by getting into the lead at the end. It should never be forgotten that when you must inevitably take some hearts it is cheaper to take them in on plain suits than to win heart tricks.

**CONTROL OF THE LEAD.** One of the strongest points in good heart play is the proper control of the lead at certain times. A player whose hand contains no commanding cards, and who is unable to do anything but follow suit on the first two or three rounds, will often find himself compelled to win one of the later rounds with a small card, taking in one or two hearts with it; and this misfortune usually overtakes him because a certain player gets into the lead at a critical period of the hand. If he sees the impending danger, and has K, Q or J of a suit led, he will not give up his high card, even if the ace is played to the trick; but will retain it in order to prevent the possibility of the dangerous player getting into the lead on the second round of the suit. In doing this, he of course decreases the odds against his getting hearts, by deliberately winning the second round. But 2 to 1 in his favour is a much better chance than the certainty, almost, that he will be loaded if ●

particular player is allowed the opportunity to lead a certain suit again. See B's play in Illustrative Hand No 2, and Y's in No 4.

A player may have no desire to prevent any particular adversary from getting the lead; but may be anxious simply to carry out a certain line of play. In order to do this it may be essential that he should have some direction of the course of the hand. This is impossible if his play is confined to following suit helplessly, whatever is led. He must be able to assume the lead himself in order so to change the course of the play as to better suit his game.

Let us suppose that he has a dangerous hand in plain suits, but is safe in hearts, and decides that his best chance is to lead hearts at every opportunity; or that he has a certain safe suit which it is manifestly to his advantage to have led as often as possible. The other players, being the ones who are to suffer from this line of play, will of course prevent it if possible; and in order to carry out the plan in spite of their opposition, it will be necessary for the individual player to gain the lead a certain number of times, and so force his game upon them.

Again, a player may know that he can load a certain adversary if he can get in and lead a certain suit or card; or he may know that by giving one player the lead, that player can load another. In such cases commanding cards must be held or retained, in order to give the player a certain control of the lead.

When a player is attempting to take all thirteen hearts, the control of the lead, especially in the end game, is very important; because the design of each of the other players will be to get the lead into some other hand, in the hope that they may load the player having it, and so at least divide the pool.

**THE DISCARD.** One of the most important elements in heart play is the discard. The beginner is too apt to discard hearts at every opportunity; but a little experience will teach him that even a 3 in a plain suit may be a better card to part with.

The most important thing in discarding is to reduce the odds against your winning the pool. Let us suppose that you have the A K Q of a plain suit. It is 5½ to 1 that you get a heart if this suit is led a third time. If you can get a discard, the odds are at once reduced to 2 to 1 in your favour, that being the probability that you will escape, even if you have to win two rounds. This is a very large percentage, and should never be lost sight of. If you have a choice between two discards, one being from the K Q J 2 of hearts, and the other from the K Q J of a plain suit, select the plain suit. You can improve your chances little or none in the hearts, while you not only bring the odds to your side in the plain suit, but secure a chance of discarding on the third round of it.

Following the same principle, it is evidently good play to discard from a suit which has been led once or twice, if you have a dangerous card or cards in it. Even if you have a safe tenace in a suit, such as 4 and 2, the 5 and 3 being still out somewhere, it

is better to discard from it if there is the slightest danger of your getting the lead. Tenaces are only safe when led up to.

In *Howell's settling*, the object is not so much to load the others as to escape yourself. It is never advisable to attempt to take all thirteen hearts, because there are no Jacks; but there are many cases in which it is better deliberately to take three or four, in order to avoid the chance of taking six or eight. For an example of these tactics adopted by two players, see Illustrative Hand, No. 3. On the same principle, there are often cases in which it is advisable to take a trick with one heart in it, in order to get rid of a dangerous card, which might bring you in several hearts later on. The general principles of leading and discarding are the same as in Sweepstake Hearts; but it is not necessary to take such desperate chances to escape entirely.

**THREE-HANDED HEARTS** is more difficult to play than any other form of the game, partly because there are so many rounds of each suit, and partly because the moment one player refuses, the exact cards of that suit in the two other players' hands are known to each of them.

There is usually a great deal of cross-fighting in the three-handed game, during which one player escapes by getting numerous discards. When all three have refused, each a different suit, the end game becomes a question of generalship, and the preservation of one or more commanding cards, with which to control and place the lead, is usually the key to the situation. A player who has no high cards for the end game, unless he is quite safe, is almost certain to be loaded in the last few tricks.

**TWO-HANDED HEARTS.** Before opening the hand, the player should carefully consider what suits are safe and what are dangerous. It is usually best to preserve the safe suits and to lead the dangerous ones, which you should clear your hand of, if possible. It is a great advantage to have a missing suit, and equally disadvantageous to have a number of a suit of which your adversary is probably clear. If a card of a missing suit is drawn, it is usually best to lead it at once, so as to keep the suit clear; but in so doing, be careful first to place the card among the others in the hand, or your adversary will detect that it is a missing suit.

The lead is a disadvantage if you have safe hearts; but toward the end of the stock, from which cards are drawn, it is an advantage to have commanding cards, with which you can assume the lead if necessary.

There is some finesse in determining whether or not to change the suit often in the leads. If you have a better memory than your adversary, it may be well to change often; but if not, it may assist you to keep at one suit until afraid to lead it again.

In Two-Handed Hearts, keeping count of the cards is the most important matter, because the real play comes after the stock is



exhausted, and the moment that occurs you should know every card in your adversary's hand. The exact number of each suit should be a certainty, if not the exact rank of the cards. Until you can depend on yourself for this, you are not a good player. The last thirteen tricks are usually a problem in double-dummy; but the advantage will always be found to be with the player who has carefully prepared himself for the final struggle by preserving certain safe suits, and getting rid of those in which it became evident that his adversary had the small and safe cards.

Some very pretty positions arise in the end game, it being often possible to foresee that four or five tricks must be played in a certain manner in order to ensure the lead being properly placed at the end, so that the odd hearts may be avoided.

**AUCTION HEARTS.** The cards having been cut and dealt, the player to the left of the dealer, whom we shall call A, examines his hand, and determines which suit he would prefer to play to get clear of. Let us suppose his hand to consist of the ♠ A K 8; ♣ J 6 5 4 3 2; ♦ K 4; and the ♠ 7 3. If the suit remains hearts, he is almost certain to take in a number; but if it is changed to clubs, he is almost as certain of getting clear. The hand is not absolutely safe, as hearts might be led two or three times before the clubs in the other hands were exhausted by the original leader, whose game would be to lead small clubs. As the pool will contain thirteen counters to a certainty, he can afford to bid in proportion to his chances of winning it for the privilege of making clubs the suit to be avoided, instead of hearts.

It might be assumed, if the odds were 10 to 1 that the player would get clear if the suit were clubs, that therefore he could afford to bid ten times the amount of the pool, or 130, for his chance. Theoretically this is correct, but if he should lose one such pool, he would have to win ten others to get back his bid alone, to say nothing of the amounts he would lose by paying his share in pools won by others. Let us suppose him to win his share, one-fourth of all the pools. While he is winning the ten pools necessary to repair his single loss, he has to stand his share of the losses in the thirty others, which would average about 128 counters. This must show us that even if a player has a 10 to 1 chance in his favour, he must calculate not only on losing that chance once in eleven times, but must make provision for the amounts he will lose in other pools. Experience shows that a bid of 25 would be about the amount a good player would make on such a hand as we are considering, if the pool were not a Jack, and he had first say.

The next player, Y, now examines his hand. Let us suppose that he finds ♠ 6 4 3; ♣ A K 10; ♦ 8 7 5 3; ♠ 6 5 4. If the first bidder is offering on clubs, it is evident that he will lead them, as the successful bidder has the original lead in Auction Hearts; and it is equally evident that if he does so, a player with A K 10 will have to pay for most of the pool. If any of the other suits is the

# 310 (Hearts.) ILLUSTRATIVE HANDS.

one bid on, B has as good a chance for the pool as any one, at least to divide it. With two men still to bid, a good player would probably make himself safe by shutting out A's bid, probably offering 26.

Let us suppose B then to examine his hand, finding ♠ J 10; ♣ Q 9 8 7; ♦ A 10 9; ♠ 10 9 8 2. Being unsafe in everything, he passes, and practically submits to his fate, his only hope being that the pool will result in a Jack. Z then examines his hand, finding ♥ Q 9 7 5 2; ♣ none; ♦ Q J 6 2; ♠ A K Q J. He sees at once that on spades he would lose everything, and on diamonds he would have a very poor chance. On clubs the result would depend on how often spades were led. In hearts, he has a very good hand, especially as he has a missing suit to discard in. As he is the last bidder he can make sure of the choice for 27, which he bids, and pays into the pool. The result of the play is given in Illustrative Hand No. 4. (As the cards happen to lie, had A been the successful bidder and made it clubs Z would have won the pool.)

## ILLUSTRATIVE HANDS.

No. 1. Sweepstake Hearts. A leads for first trick.				TRICK	No. 2. Sweepstake Hearts. A leads for first trick.			
A	Y	B	Z		A	Y	B	Z
10 ♠	Q ♠	8 ♠	K ♠	1	♣ A	♣ K	♠ 10	♣ Q
♣ J	♣ A	♣ 4	♣ K	2	♣ 5	♣ 2	♣ 9	♣ J
6 ♦	A ♦	J ♦	Q ♦	3	10 ♦	J ♦	9 ♦	A ♦
5 ♦	K ♦	10 ♦	9 ♦	4	Q ♦	8 ♦	K ♦	4 ♦
4 ♦	3 ♦	2 ♦	8 ♦	5	2 ♠	J ♠	A ♠	9 ♠
♣ 9	♣ 7	♣ 3	♣ Q	6	Q ♠	10 ♠	K ♠	8 ♠
♣ 6	♣ 5	♣ 2	♣ 10	7	♥ A	7 ♦	3 ♦	♥ Q
3 ♠	6 ♠	4 ♠	J ♠	8	♥ 10	♥ 4	♥ 3	♥ 5
2 ♠	5 ♠	♥ K	9 ♠	9	♣ 4	♥ K	♣ 6	♣ 7
♥ A	♥ Q	♥ 10	♥ 5	10	♥ 9	7 ♠	♥ J	5 ♠
♥ 7	♥ J	♥ 9	7 ♠	11	♥ 7	♥ 2	♣ 8	♥ 8
♥ 6	♥ 8	♥ 4	♣ 8	12	♥ 6	6 ♠	6 ♦	4 ♠
A ♠	♥ 2	♥ 3	7 ♦	13	♣ 3	5 ♦	2 ♦	3 ♠
A 4	Y 6	B 2	Z 1		A 4	Y 5	B 0	Z 4
Making it a Jack.					B wins the Pool.			

**No. 1. 2nd Trick.** Z sees that with such a hand escape is impossible. As his chief danger is in being loaded with hearts at the end, he clears his hand as rapidly as possible. **9th Trick.** The ♠ A being held up, it looks as if A were safe in that suit with

**A 5 2.** If Z now leads the ♠ 5, and A gets into the lead, returning the spade, Z must take every other trick. **10th Trick.** If Z now leads ♠ 7, he loads A; but if his ♠ 5 should win the next trick he will take all the rest of the hearts, Y and B dividing the pool. If he leads the ♠ 5 first he cannot get more than four hearts, and the other players will inevitably make a Jack of it. **11th Trick.** Y sees that if he underplays the 7 led, B will win the pool, as he has nothing but hearts, A having only one more. He keeps A out of the lead by winning two rounds, so as to be sure of leading B, making it a Jack. The ending is very well played.

**No. 2.** A has an even chance to escape, and it is better for him to be third or fourth player in hearts than to lead them. **3rd Trick.** B sees from the fall of the clubs that Y has no more, and that A is safe in them and will lead them again; so he holds up ♦ K to keep A out of the lead. **7th Trick.** As A's hand can now be counted to contain either the 7 4 3 of clubs and four dangerous hearts, or the 4 3 of clubs and five hearts, B's game is clearly to lead diamonds, in order to load Y and Z. His only dangerous card, the ♠ J, will go on the next round of spades, which must be led again in the next two or three tricks.

**No. 3. Howell's Settling.**

Z dealt, and A leads for first trick.

A	Y	B	Z
10♦	J♦	9♦	<u>K♦</u>
7♦	6♦	8♦	<u>Q♦</u>
♣ 4	♣ 9	♣ J	♣ A
♣ 2	♣ 8	♣ 5	♣ K
J♠	8♠	K♠	<u>A♠</u>
5♠	7♠	<u>Q♠</u>	10♠
4♠	<u>6♠</u>	3♠	2♠
♥ 5	♥ 3	<u>♥ 8</u>	♥ 4
<u>♥ A</u>	♥ J	♥ 7	5♦
♥ 9	♥ 2	<u>♥ K</u>	♣ Q
A♦	<u>♥ 10</u>	<u>♥ 6</u>	9♠
4♦	<u>♣ 3</u>	♥ Q	<u>♣ 10</u>
2♦	<u>♣ 7</u>	3♦	<u>♣ 6</u>

A 3    Y 2    B 7    Z 1

Z wins 9; Y 5; A 1; B loses 15.

**No. 4. Auction Hearts.**

A, the successful bidder, names Hearts.

TRICK	A	Y	B	Z
1	♥ 5	♥ 8	♥ 6	<u>♥ J</u>
2	Q♦	4♦	8♦	<u>A♦</u>
3	J♦	<u>K♦</u>	7♦	10♦
4	<u>A♠</u>	7♠	6♠	10♠
5	♥ 7	<u>♥ A</u>	♥ 4	♥ 10
6	<u>K♠</u>	3♠	5♠	9♠
7	♥ Q	<u>♥ K</u>	♥ 3	♣ 9
8	♥ 9	♣ J	♣ 10	<u>♣ Q</u>
9	<u>Q♠</u>	♣ 6	4♠	8♠
10	<u>J♠</u>	♣ 5	♣ A	2♠
11	6♦	♣ 4	5♦	<u>9♦</u>
12	2♦	♣ 3	<u>♣ K</u>	♣ 8
13	♥ 2	♣ 2	<u>3♦</u>	♣ 7

A 0    Y 7    B 1    Z 5

A wins the pool.

**No. 3.** A begins with the intermediate cards of his safe suit.  
**8th Trick.** Y is afraid to lead away from his club tenace, because it might be at once led back to him. **9th Trick.** Z seizes this opportunity to get rid of the very dangerous  $\diamond 5$ . If A does not play the  $\heartsuit$  A now, it is quite possible that he will take every trick, except one in diamonds. **10th Trick.** If A leads the  $\diamond 2$ , and hearts are led again, he must take all the remaining hearts. By taking three at once he can escape the rest. B sees that if he passes this trick A will at once lead the  $\diamond 2$ , and he will take all the remaining hearts; so he takes these three and throws the lead to Y, who has no chance to injure him. **11th Trick.** Z keeps two clubs, hoping that if Y gets in and leads clubs, B may discard a diamond instead of a heart, in which case Z would get clear.

**No. 4.** A, with his dangerous suit of spades, clears up the hearts at once. **6th Trick.** The second round of spades betrays A's dangerous suit to the other players. **7th Trick.** A must risk the King and 3 being divided, for if they are in one hand nothing will save him. Z keeps  $\diamond 9$  and  $\clubsuit Q$  in order to be sure of getting a lead, as he is the only player who can load A by putting him in on spades at the end making him take in his own hearts. **8th Trick.** B cannot risk playing the high clubs while there is any chance for him to win the pool. He can count A to be safe in diamonds, with two hearts and two spades. **10th Trick.** A clears his hand of the very dangerous spade before leading his tenace in diamonds. **12th Trick.** A will not give up the heart until he is sure that B has not the  $\clubsuit 7$ .

**Text Books.** There are at present only two text-books on the game; *Foster on Hearts*, and *Hearts and Heartsette*.

## SLOBBERHANNES.

**Cards.** Slobberhannes is played with a Euchre pack, thirty-two cards, all below the Seven being deleted. The cards rank: A K Q J 10 9 8 7, the ace being the highest both in cutting and in play. There is no trump suit.

**Counters.** Each player is provided with ten counters, and points are marked by placing these counters in the pool. The player who first loses his ten counters also loses the game. If stakes are played for, counters of a different colour must be provided, and the player losing the game must pay as many counters

to each of the others as they have points still in front of them. One player is usually the banker, and sells and redeems all money counters. The others are re-distributed at the end of each game.

**Players.** Any number from four to seven may play; but the two black Sevens must be deleted if there are more than four players. When seven play, the dealer takes no cards. All the preliminaries of seats, cards and deal are settled as at Hearts.

**Dealing.** The entire pack is distributed, the dealer giving each player in rotation two or three cards in each round. No trump is turned. All irregularities in the deal are governed by the same laws as at Hearts; but a misdeal does not lose the deal under any circumstances. The same dealer must deal again.

**Objects of the Game.** The object in Slobberhannes is to avoid taking either the first or the last trick, or any trick containing the Queen of clubs. The player who wins any of these loses one point, and if he wins all three of them, he loses an extra point, or four altogether. The penalty for a revoke is also the loss of a point.

**Method of Playing.** The eldest hand begins by leading any card he pleases, and the others must follow suit if they can. The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, and the winner takes it in and leads for the next trick. The player winning the first trick must pay for it immediately, to avoid disputes. The tricks which are neither the first nor the last have no value, unless they contain the club Queen, which must be paid for as soon as it is taken in.

There is a good deal of play in manœuvring to get rid of cards which might win the last trick, or which would take in the club Queen. The Ace and King of clubs are of course dangerous cards, and unless the player holding them has small cards enough to make him safe in that suit, he should be on the alert for opportunities to discard.

---

## POLIGNAC.

### QUATRE-VALETS, OR FOUR JACKS.

**Cards and Players.** When Polignac is played by four persons, a Piquet pack is used, and eight cards are dealt to each player, 3-2-3 at a time. When five play, the two black Sevens are deleted, and six cards are given to each player. When six play, each receives five cards. When seven play, the dealer takes no

cards. In France, the cards usually rank as in Écarté ; K Q J A 10 9 8 7 ; but in England and America it is more usual to preserve the order in Piquet, A K Q J 10 9 8 7. There is no trump suit. All the preliminaries are settled as at Hearts or Slobberhannes,

**Counters.** Each player is provided with ten or twenty counters, as may be agreed upon, and the player first losing his counters loses the game, and pays to each of the others any stake that may have been previously agreed upon, usually a counter for each point they have still to go when he is decavé.

**Objects of the Game.** The object of the game is to avoid winning any trick containing a Jack, and especially the Jack of spades, which is called *Polignac*. The moment any player wins a trick containing a Jack, he pays one counter into the pool. If he takes in Polignac, he pays two counters. The eldest hand begins by leading any card he pleases, and the others must follow suit if they can. The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, and the winner leads for the next trick. If a player has none of the suit led he may discard anything he pleases.

The game is sometimes varied by adding a *general*, or *capot*. Any player who thinks he can win all the tricks announces capot before the first card is led. If he is successful he loses nothing ; but each of the others must pay five counters into the pool, one for each Jack, and one extra for Polignac. If the capot player fails to win every trick, each player pays for whatever jacks he has taken in.

---

## ENFLÉ,

### OR SCHWELLEN.

When Enflé is played by four persons, the Piquet pack of thirty-two cards is used. If there are more than four players, sufficient cards are added to give eight to each person. The rank of the cards and all other preliminaries are the same as at Hearts. There is no trump suit.

The cards are dealt 3-2-3 at a time. The eldest hand leads any card he pleases, and the others must follow suit if they can. If all follow suit, the highest card played wins the trick, which is turned face down, and the cards in it are dead. The winner leads for the next trick, and so on. But if any player is unable to follow suit, he is not allowed to discard, but must immediately gather up the cards already played, and take them into his own hand with the cards originally dealt to him. The players following the one who renounces to the suit led do not play to the trick at all ; but wait for him to lead for the next trick. Should any player fail to

follow suit on the next trick, or on any subsequent trick, he gathers the cards already played, takes them into his hand and leads for the next trick. The play is continued in this manner until some player gets rid of all his cards, and so wins the game.

Enflé is usually played for a pool, to which each player contributes an equal amount before play begins. The game requires considerable skill and memory to play it well, it being very important to remember the cards taken in hand by certain players, and those which are in the tricks turned down.

---

## THE LAWS OF HEARTS.

1. Formation of table. Those first in the room have the preference. If more than the necessary number assemble, the choice shall be determined by cutting, those cutting the lowest cards having the right to play. Six persons is the largest number that can play at one table. The player cutting the lowest card has the deal.

2. In cutting, the Ace is low. Players cutting cards of equal value, cut again. All must cut from the same pack, and any person exposing more than one card must cut again. Drawing cards from an outspread pack is equivalent to cutting.

3. A complete Heart pack consists of fifty-two cards, which rank in the following order :—A K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2, the Ace being highest in play. In Three-Handed Hearts, the spade deuce is thrown out. In Five-Handed, both the black deuces are laid aside. In Six-Handed, all four deuces are discarded. In Joker Hearts the heart deuce is replaced by the Joker.

4. When two packs are used, the player next but one on the dealer's left must collect and shuffle the cards for the next deal, placing them on his right. The dealer has the privilege of shuffling last.

5. The dealer must present the pack to his right-hand adversary to be cut. Not less than four cards shall constitute a cut.

6. In case of any confusion or exposure of the cards in cutting, or in reuniting them after cutting, the pack must be shuffled and cut again.

7. If the dealer re-shuffles the cards after they have been properly cut, or looks at the bottom card, he loses his deal.

8. After the cards have been cut, the dealer must distribute them one at a time to each player in rotation, beginning at his left, and continuing until the pack is exhausted; or in Two-Handed Hearts, until each player has thirteen.

9. The deal passes to the left.

10. There must be a new deal by the same dealer if the pack

is proved to be incorrect, either during the deal or during the play of a hand; or if any card is faced in the pack, or is found to be so marked or mutilated that it can be named. In the last case a new pack must be used.

11. If a card is exposed during the deal, the player to whom it is dealt may demand a new deal, provided he has not touched any of his cards. If the deal stands, the exposed card cannot be called.

12. Any one dealing out of turn may be stopped before the last card is dealt. After that the deal must stand, and the packs, if changed, must so remain.

13. It is a misdeal: If the dealer omits to have the pack cut, and the error is discovered before the last card is dealt; or if he deals a card incorrectly, and fails to remedy it before dealing another; or if he counts the cards on the table, or those remaining in the pack; or if it is discovered before all have played to the first trick that any player has not his proper number of cards, the pack being perfect.

14. A misdeal loses the deal unless one of the other players has touched his cards, or in any way interrupted the dealer.

15. If, after the first trick is played to, any two players are found to have more or less than their correct number of cards, the pack being perfect, the one having less shall draw from the hand of the one having more, and each shall pay a forfeit of five counters into the pool.

16. If a player omits to play to any trick, and plays to the following one, he shall not be allowed to correct the error; but shall be compelled to take in the last trick, with whatever hearts it may contain.

17. Should a player be found during or at the end of a hand to be a card short, all the others having the right number, and all having played to the first trick, he shall be compelled to take in the last trick.

18. If a player leads or plays two cards to a trick, he must indicate the one intended, and leave the other face up on the table. Any card exposed, except in the proper course of play, or any card named by the player holding it, must be left face up on the table.

19. A player must lead or play any exposed card when called upon to do so by any other player, provided he can do so without revoking. He cannot be prevented from playing an exposed card, and if he can so get rid of it, no penalty remains.

20. If a player leads out of turn, a suit may be called from him when it is next his proper turn to lead. This penalty can be enforced only by the player on his right. If he has none of the suit called, or if all have played to the false lead, no penalty can be enforced. If all have not played to the false lead, the cards can be taken back, and are not exposed cards.



21. If the third hand plays before the second, the fourth hand may demand that the card be taken back, and may call upon the third hand to play the highest card he has of the suit; or may call upon him not to discard hearts. If the fourth plays before the third, the second player may demand the penalty.

22. The first player to any trick having led, the others must follow suit if they can. Should a player revoke, and discover the error before the trick in which it occurs has been turned and quitted, he may amend his play, and the card played in error becomes an exposed card. Any who have played after him may withdraw their cards and substitute others, the cards first played not being exposed.

23. If the revoke is discovered during the play of the hand, the hand must be played out, and at the end the revoking player must pay all losses in that hand. Should the revoking player win the pool himself, he must pay to the pool thirteen counters and leave them for a Jack. Should he divide it, he must pay the other winner six counters, and leave up seven for a Jack.

24. Should two or more players revoke in the same hand, each must pay the entire losses in the hand, as if he were alone in error; so that if two should revoke, and a third win the pool, he would receive twenty-six counters, instead of thirteen. In Auction Hearts the revoking player must pay the amount of the bid in addition.

25. The claimant of a revoke may search all the tricks at the end of a hand. The revoke is established if the accused player mixes the cards before the claimants have time to examine them.

26. A revoke must be claimed before the tricks have been mixed, preparatory to shuffling for the next deal.

27. If a player is lawfully called upon to lead a certain suit, or to play the highest of it, and unnecessarily fails to comply, he is liable to the penalties for a revoke.

28. Any trick once turned and quitted must not again be seen until the hand is played. Any player violating this rule is subject to the same penalties as for a lead out of turn.

29. In settling at the end of the hand, the player having taken no hearts, [each of the others having taken at least one,] wins the pool. Two players having taken none, the other two having each at least one, divide it, the odd counter remaining until the next pool. Three players having taken none, the thirteen counters remain in the pool, forming a Jack, which can be won only by one player taking no hearts, each of the others having taken at least one. During the time the Jack is played for, and until it is won, each player must add to the pool by paying for the hearts he takes in each hand.

30. In Auction Hearts, the player to the left of the dealer has the first bid, the dealer the last, and there is no second bid.

## THE BÉZIQUE FAMILY.

---

This family includes three of our most popular games ; Béziqne itself, Binocle, and Sixty-Six. These are all comparatively modern games, but are descended from very old stock, the best known of the ancestors being Marriage, Matrimony, and Cinq-Cents. The etymology of the word Béziqne is very much disputed. Some claim that it is from the Spanish *basa*, afterwards *basico*, a little kiss ; referring to the union of the spade Queen and the diamond Jack, and the various marriages in the game. This was afterwards *Basique*, transformed by the French to *Bésique*, and by the English to Béziqne. One English writer thinks the word is from *bésaigne*, the double-headed axe.

Judging from the rank of the cards, which is peculiar to German games, Béziqne may have originated in an attempt to play Binocle with a piquet pack, for Binocle seems to have been originally played with a full pack of fifty-two cards. One German writer says the game is of Swiss origin, and that they probably got it from Spain. In one writer's opinion, the name Binocle, is derived from *bis*, until, and *knockle*, the knuckle, which would imply that the original meaning was, until some one knuckled ; *i. e.*, stopped the game by knocking on the table with his knuckles. This interpretation seems far-fetched, but if correct, it would sustain the opinion that Binocle was derived from the old game of Cinq-Cents, in which the player knocked with his knuckles to announce that he had made enough points to win the game. In the opinion of the author, the word "binocle" is a German mispronunciation of the French word "binage," which was the term used in Cinq Cents for the combination of spade Queen and diamond Jack, as will be seen if the description of Cinq Cents is referred to. Stopping the play is a prominent feature in Sixty-Six, another variation of Béziqne, and the connecting link between Binocle and Skat. In Sixty-Six, the combination known as Béziqne, or binocle, is omitted ; so is the sequence in trumps. Sixty-four-card Binocle is simply Béziqne, with a slight difference in the counting value of the various combinations. Sometimes twelve cards are given to each player.

Great confusion seems to have existed when the game of Béziqne was introduced to England, in the winter of 1868-9, owing to the fact that so many persons rushed into print with their own private opinions of the rules, which were first given by Dr. Pole, in 1861,

No one knew whether "the last trick" was the absolute last, or the last before the stock was exhausted. Whether the highest or lowest cut dealt was also a matter of dispute. "Cavendish" got both these wrong in the first edition of his "Pocket Guide," but corrected himself without explanation or apology in the second edition. It was then the custom of many players to attach no value to the trump suit until the stock was exhausted; so that until the last eight tricks there was no such thing as trumping a trick in order to win it. Disputes also arose as to counting double combinations, many contending that a double marriage should be as valuable as a double *bézi*que. Time and experience have finally settled all these points, and the rules of the game are now practically uniform in all countries.

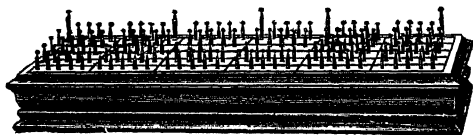
## BÉZIQUE,

### OR SIXTY-FOUR-CARD BINOCLE.

There are two forms of *Bézi*que in common use; the ordinary game, which will be first described, and the variation known as *Rubicon Bézi*que, which is to *Bézi*que proper what *Railroad Euchre* is to *Euchre*.

**CARDS.** *Bézi*que is played with two packs of thirty-two cards each, all below the Seven being deleted, and the two packs being then shuffled together and used as one. It is better to have both packs of the same colour and pattern, but it is not absolutely necessary. The cards rank, A 10 K Q J 9 8 7; the Ace being the highest, both in cutting and in play.

**COUNTERS.** Special markers are made for scoring at *Bézi*que; but the score may easily be kept by means of counters.



PULL-UP BÉZIQUE MARKER.

Each player should be provided with four white, four blue, and one red, together with some special marker, such as a copper cent or a button. The button stands for 500 points, each blue counter for 100, the red for 50, and the white ones for 10 each. At the beginning of the game the counters are placed on the left of the player, and are passed from left to right as the points accrue, exchanging smaller denominations for higher when necessary.

Many persons find it more convenient to peg the game on a pull-up cribbage board, starting at 21, counting each peg as 10 points, and going twice round to the game hole.

**STAKES.** *Béziqne* is played for so much a game, 1,000 points up; or for so much a point, the score of the loser being deducted from that of the winner. When a partie of five games is agreed upon, it is usual to have an extra stake upon the odd game, and when three games have been won by the same player, the partie is at an end. It is usual to count it a double game if the loser has not reached 500 points.

**PLAYERS.** *Béziqne* is played by two persons, one of whom is known as the *dealer*, and the other as the *pone*. They cut for choice of seats and deal, the player cutting the highest card having the first choice, and electing whether or not to deal himself. In cutting, the cards rank as in play, and the ace is the highest. If a player exposes more than one card, he must cut again.

**DEALING.** The cards are thoroughly shuffled, and presented to the pone to be cut. At least five cards must be left in each packet. The cards are then dealt three at a time for the first round, two for the next, and three for the last, each player receiving eight cards. The seventeenth is then turned up for the trump. If this card is a Seven, the dealer scores 10 points for it at once. The trump card is laid on the table by itself, the remainder of the pack, which is called the *stock* or *talon*, is slightly spread, to facilitate the process of drawing cards from it, and to be sure that none of the cards remaining in the undealt portion are exposed. In sixty-four-card *Binocle* twelve cards are sometimes dealt to each player.

**Misdealing.** A misdeal does not lose the deal, but in some cases a new deal is at the option of the adversary. If the dealer exposes a card belonging to the adversary or to the stock, the pone may demand a new deal; but if either player exposes any of his own cards, the deal stands good. If too many cards are given to either player, there must be a new deal. If too few, the pone may claim a fresh deal, or allow the dealer to supply the missing cards from the top of the stock, without changing the trump card. If any card but the trump is found faced in the pack, there must be a new deal. If a card faced in the stock is not discovered until the first trick has been played to, the exposed card must be turned face down, without disturbing its position. If a pack is found to be imperfect, the deal in which the error is discovered is void, but all previous cuts or scores made with that pack stand good.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The pone begins by leading any card he chooses, to which his adversary may play any card he pleases. A player is not obliged to follow suit, nor to trump; but

may renounce or trump at pleasure until the stock is exhausted, after which the method of play undergoes a change. If a player follows suit, the higher card wins the trick, and if identical cards are played to the same trick, such as two Jacks of clubs, the leader wins. Trumps win plain suits. The winner of the trick takes in the cards, turning them face down; but before he leads for the next trick he has the privilege of announcing and scoring any one of certain combinations that he may hold in his hand. After, or in the absence of any such announcement, and before leading for the next trick, he draws a card from the top of the stock and places it in his hand, without showing or naming it. His adversary draws the next card, so that each player restores the number of cards in his hand to eight. This method of drawing from the stock is open to many objections, and in France the pone always draws first, no matter who wins the trick.

All combinations announced and scored must be laid face upward on the table; but the cards still form part of the player's hand, and may be led or played at any time, although they must not again be taken in hand until the stock is exhausted.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The reasons for winning or not winning certain tricks will be better understood in connection with the description of the various combinations that count toward game, and the manner of scoring them.

**Brisques.** The aces and Tens of each suit are called brisques, and count ten points each towards game. Except for the purpose of getting or keeping the lead, there is no object in winning any trick which does not contain a brisque. Every brisque taken in should be scored at once by the player winning the trick; 10 points for an ace or Ten; 20 points if there are two such cards in the same trick.

A player holding or drawing the *Seven of trumps* has the privilege of exchanging it for the turn-up trump, and scoring 10 points at the same time; but he must make the exchange immediately after winning a trick, and before drawing his card from the stock. Should the turn-up card be a Seven, or one exchange have already been made, the exchange can still be made and scored. He cannot score the Seven and make a declaration at the same time.

**DECLARATIONS.** The combinations which may be announced and scored during the play of the hand are divided into three classes: Marriages and Sequences; *Béziques*; and Fours of a kind. Only one combination can be scored at a time, and it must be announced immediately after the player holding it has won a trick, and before he draws his card from the talon. If he draws without announcing, it is equivalent to saying he has no declaration to make. Having drawn his card, even if he has not looked at it, he cannot score any declaration until he wins another trick.

The combinations and their values are as follows:—

## CLASS A

King and Queen of any plain suit, <i>Marriage</i> .	20
King and Queen of trumps, <i>Royal Marriage</i> .	40
Sequence of five highest trumps, <i>Sequence</i> .	250

## CLASS B.

Spade Queen and diamond Jack, <i>Béziq</i> .	40
Two spade Queens and diamond Jacks, <i>Double Béziq</i> . . . . .	500

## CLASS C.

Any <i>four Aces</i> . . . . .	100
Any <i>four Kings</i> . . . . .	80
Any <i>four Queens</i> . . . . .	60
Any <i>four Jacks</i> . . . . .	40

The four court cards in class C may be all of different suits, or any two of them may be of the same suit.

A great many misunderstandings arise with respect to the manner and order of making declarations, most of which may be avoided by remembering the following rules:

The player making the declaration must have won the previous trick, and must make his announcement before drawing his card from the stock. When the stock is exhausted, so that there is no card to be drawn, no announcement can be made.

Only one declaration can be scored at a time, so that a trick must be won for every announcement made, or the combination cannot be scored. This does not prevent a player from making two or more announcements at the same time, but he can score only one of them.

A player cannot make a lower declaration with cards which form part of a higher one already made in the same class. For instance: Marriages and sequences belong to the same class. If the sequence has been declared, a player cannot take from it the King and Queen and score a marriage; neither can he add a new Queen to the King already in the sequence, and announce a marriage; because the higher combination was scored first. But if the marriage is first announced, the A 10 J may be added and the sequence scored, after winning another trick.

Cards once used in combination cannot again be used in combinations of equal value of the same class. For instance: Four Kings have been declared, and one of them afterward used in the course of play. The player cannot add a new King to the three remaining, and announce four Kings again. A marriage in spades has been declared, and the King got rid of in play. A new King

of spades will not make another marriage with the old Queen. A béziqne has been scored, and the Jack got rid of in play ; a new Jack of diamonds will not make another béziqne with the old Queen.

Some judgment is necessary in making announcements, the question of time being often important. Suppose hearts are trumps, and the winner of the trick holds double béziqne, sixty Queens, and a royal marriage :—



He cannot lay all these cards down at once, and claim 600 points. Neither can he lay down four Queens and two Jacks, and score 560 ; nor four Queens and a King and score 100. He may announce them if he chooses to expose his hand in that manner, but he can score only one combination, and must win a separate trick to score each of the others. It would be better for him to select some one of the combinations, and declare it, waiting until he won another trick to declare the next one. A beginner would be apt to declare the highest count first, 500 for the double béziqne ; but under the rule which prevents a player from making a declaration which forms part of a higher one of the same class already made, he would lose the 40 points for the single béziqne. It would be better to declare the single béziqne first, scoring 40 points for it, and after winning another trick to show the other béziqne, scoring 500 points more for the double combination. A player is not allowed to score 40 for the second béziqne, and then 500 for the two combined ; because if new announcements are made in the same class, at least one new card must be added from the player's hand when the announcement is made, even if it is not scored until later.

**Double Declarations.** It frequently happens that a player is forced to make two declarations at the same time, although he can score only one of them. For instance : A player has announced and shown four Kings, one of them being the King of spades. On winning another trick he shows and scores béziqne. One of the béziqne cards forms a marriage with the spade King, and as the combinations belong to different classes, both may be scored, although the same card is used in each ; but the player cannot score the second combination until he wins another trick. Under such circumstances it is usual to declare both combinations, scoring the more valuable, and repeating the one left over until an opportunity arises to score it. In this case the player would

say: "Forty for *béziq.*, and twenty to score." If he lost the next trick he would continue to repeat at every trick: "Twenty to score," until he won a trick.

A player having a score in abeyance in this manner is not obliged to score it if he has anything else to announce. A player with twenty to score might pick up the sequence in trumps before he won another trick, and he would be very foolish to lose the chance to score 250 for the sake of the 20 already announced. If he had time, he would probably declare: "Royal Marriage, forty, and twenty to score." On winning another trick he would add the A 10 J of trumps, and announce, "Two-fifty in trumps, and twenty to score," still carrying on the small score for a future opportunity.

A player may lay down and score eighty Kings, and afterward sixty Queens, the remaining Kings forming marriages. In such a case he would score the sixty points first, and declare the two or three marriages remaining. In the same manner he may have announced four Kings, and after playing away two of them, leaving two Kings of spades, he may declare double *béziq.*, and claim the two marriages "to score." In all such cases it must be remembered that the cards declared must still be on the table when the time comes to score them. If, in the case just given, one of the cards forming either of the marriages was got rid of in the course of play, that marriage could not afterward be scored, although it had been properly announced. If the stock is exhausted before the player with a score in abeyance can win another trick, the score is lost.

It is often very important for a player to know how much time he has to score. When the talon is spread it is comparatively easy to judge how many more tricks remain to be played. The English laws allow a player to count the stock, the French do not. A trick once turned and quitted cannot again be seen, and the players are not allowed to count the number of tricks they have won.

The last card of the stock is taken by the player winning the trick, and the turn-up trump goes to his adversary.

***The Last Eight Tricks.*** When the stock is exhausted, the players take back into their hands all the cards remaining of the combinations which have been laid on the table. The winner of the previous trick then leads any card he pleases, but his adversary must now not only follow suit, but must win the trick if he can, either with a superior card of the same suit, or with a trump. The same rule applies to all the remaining tricks. Brisques still count for the winner of the trick containing them, and should be scored as soon as made. The winner of the last trick of all scores ten points for it immediately, in addition to any brisques that it may contain.



***Irregularities in Play.*** If a player leads out of turn, and his adversary plays to the lead, whether intentionally or otherwise, the trick stands good. If the adversary calls attention to the error, the card led out of turn may be taken back without penalty.

If a player has too many cards after playing to the first trick, his adversary may either claim a fresh deal or may compel him to play without drawing from the talon, until the number of cards in his hand is reduced to eight; the player with too many cards not being allowed to make any announcements until he has his right number of cards. If a player has too few cards, his adversary may either claim a fresh deal, or may allow him to make good the deficiency by drawing from the stock.

After the stock is exhausted, any player failing to follow suit or to win a trick, when able to do so, may be compelled to take back his cards to the point where the error occurred, and to replay the hand. In France he is penalised by counting nothing from that point on, either for brisques or for the last trick.

***Irregularities in Drawing.*** If a player has forgotten to take a card from the talon, and has played to the next trick, his adversary may elect to call the deal void, or to allow him to draw two cards next time.

If a player has drawn two cards from the stock, instead of one, he must show the second one to his adversary if he has seen it himself. If he has not seen it, he may put it back without penalty. If he draws out of turn, he must restore the card improperly drawn; and if it belongs to his adversary the player in error must show his own card. If both players draw the wrong cards there is no remedy.

If the loser of any trick draws and looks at two cards from the stock, his adversary may look at both cards of the following draw, and may select either for himself. If he chooses the second card, he need not show it.

If, on account of some undetected irregularity, an even number of cards remain in the stock, the last card must not be drawn. The winner of the trick takes the last but one, and the loser takes the trump card.

***Irregular Announcements.*** Should a player announce four of a kind, having only three; as, for instance, laying down three Kings and a Jack, and declaring four Kings, his adversary can compel him not only to take down the score erroneously marked, but to lead or play one of the three Kings. A player may be called upon to lead or play cards from any other erroneous declarations in the same manner; but if the player has the right card or cards in his hand, he is permitted to amend his error, provided he has not drawn a card from the stock in the meantime.

**SCORING.** It is better to score all points as soon as they are made. The game is usually 1000 points. Some players do not count the brisques until the last trick has been played, but the practice is not to be recommended. Scores erroneously marked must be taken down, and the adversary may add the points to his own score.

*Suggestions for Good Play* will be found in Binocle.

---

## FOUR-HANDED BÉZIQUE.

In this variation, four persons may play; each for himself or two against two, partners sitting opposite each other. Four packs of thirty-two cards each are shuffled together and used as one. Triple bézique counts 1500. When a player wins a trick, either he or his partner may declare everything in the hand, but only one combination can be scored at a time. The advantage of showing all the combinations in the hand is that they may be built up by either partner. For instance: One partner has declared bézique and royal marriage, scoring the marriage only. His partner wins the next trick and adds A 10 J to the marriage, scoring the sequence; or perhaps shows three Kings or Queens, making fours.

The players usually divide after the stock is exhausted, and for the last eight tricks each takes one of his former adversaries for a partner, but without changing seats. The game is usually 2000 points up.

---

## THREE-HANDED BÉZIQUE.

Three persons play, each for himself. Two packs of thirty-two cards each and one of thirty-one cards are shuffled together. Triple bézique counts 1500, and the game is usually 2000 points.

The deleted card from the third pack should be an Eight.

---

## POLISH BÉZIQUE.

This differs from the ordinary game only in the value of the tricks taken. The winner of each trick, instead of turning it down after counting the brisques, takes from it any court cards it may

contain, and the Ten of trumps. He lays these cards face up on the table, but apart from those declared from his own hand, and uses them to form combinations, which may be scored in the usual way. The chief difference is that cards so taken in tricks cannot be led or played to subsequent tricks, nor can they be taken in hand at the end of the stock. Combinations may be completed either by cards in the player's hand, or by cards won in subsequent tricks.

---

## CINQ-CENTS.

This might be described as Béziq̃ue with one pack of cards. All the regulations are the same as in the modern form of Béziq̃ue, but there is an additional count, 120, for a sequence of the five highest cards in any plain suit. Béziq̃ue is called *Binage*, and of course there are no double combinations. Cards which have been used in one combination cannot be used in any other, even of a different class.

Brisques are not scored as they are won; but after the hand is over, and ten points have been counted for the last trick, each player turns over his cards and counts up the value of the points they contain. In this final count, the Ace reckons for 11, the Ten for 10, King for 4, Queen for 3, Jack for 2, no matter what the suit may be, so that there are 120 points to be divided between the players. It is usual for only one to count, the other taking the difference between his total and 120.

From this it might be imagined that no notice was taken of the counting value of the cards taken in during the progress of the play. Early in the game this is true, but toward the end each player must keep very careful mental count of the value of his tricks, although he is not allowed to score them. When either player knows, by adding the mental count of his tricks to his scored declarations, that he has made points enough to win the game, he stops the play by knocking on the table, either with his knuckles or his cards. He then turns over his tricks and counts the points they contain to show his adversary that he has won the game. Even if his adversary has also enough points to go out, the player who knocked wins the game, provided his count is correct. If the player who knocks is mistaken, and cannot count out, he loses, no matter what his adversary may have.

If neither knocks, and at the end of the hand both players are found to have points enough to put them out, neither wins the game, which must be continued for 100 points more; that is, as 500

points is the usual game, it must be made 600 in such a case. Should both reach 600 without knocking, it must be continued to 700. If neither knocks, and only one has enough points to go out he wins the game on its merits.

As the name implies, 500 points is game.

---

## PENCHANT.

Penchant is a complicated form of Cinq-cents and Bézique, played with a single pack of thirty-two cards, which rank as at Pi-quet; A K Q J 10 9 8 7, the ace being highest both in cutting and in play.

**Cutting.** The higher cut has the choice of seats, and the lower cut deals the first hand.

**Dealing.** After the cards have been cut by the pone the dealer gives one card to his adversary, then one to the stock, and then one to himself, all face down. Two more are then given to the stock, one to the pone, two to the stock again, and one to the dealer. This is continued, giving two cards to the stock between the ones given to each player, until the last round, when only one card is dealt to the stock. This will result in each player receiving six cards, and twenty being left in the centre of the table for the talon. No trump is turned. Very few players trouble themselves with this method of dealing, preferring to deal three cards to each player alternately, leaving the remaining twenty for the stock.

**Playing.** All the regulations for leading, following suit, drawing from the talon, etc., are the same as in Bézique, but the declarations and their values are quite different.

**Brisques.** There are twelve brisque cards, the Seven of each suit being added to the usual Aces and Tens. The brisques are not scored as taken in, except in the last six tricks. At the end of the hand all the brisques are counted, whether already scored in the last six tricks or not, and the player having more than six counts ten points for each above six. If each has six, neither scores. By this method, a player may make and score several brisques in the last six tricks, all of which he will reckon over again in the total count at the end.

**Declarations.** The winner of any trick, previous to the exhaustion of the stock, may announce and lay upon the table any one of ten different combinations, which are divided into three classes. These are as follows, with the number of points he is entitled to score for each:

## CLASS A. DIFFERENT SUITS.

Any four of a kind, such as four Tens, . . .	100
Any three of a kind, such as three Queens, . . .	30
Any pair, such as two Nines, . . .	20

## CLASS B. THE SAME SUIT.

Any sequence of five, containing K Q J, . . .	250
Any sequence of four, containing K Q J, . . .	40
Any sequence of K Q J, . . .	30
King and Queen of any suit, . . .	20
Queen and Jack of any suit, . . .	20
Any flush of five cards, containing K Q J, . . .	50

## CLASS C. PENCHANTS.

Any Queen and Jack of different suits, . . .	10
--	----

The sequences and flushes in class B must all be of the same suit; pendant cards must be of different suits.

If the winner of any trick has no declaration to make, he signifies it by drawing the top card from the stock. His adversary, before drawing his card from the stock, may then declare a pendant, if he has one; but no other combination can be declared by the player who does not win the trick. If the winner of the trick makes any declaration, the loser cannot declare.

The Jack of the first pendant declared makes the *trump suit* for that deal, no matter which player announces it. Trumps do not increase the value of any combination, and are only useful to win plain-suit tricks.

All declarations are scored immediately, either on a marker or with counters. It will be observed that with the exception of sequences of five cards, fours, and pendants, the count is ten points for each card in the combination. Only one declaration can be made at a time.

Any card laid upon the table for one declaration can be used again in future declarations, provided the player making the new announcement adds at least one fresh card from his hand. A player having a marriage and a pendant on the table cannot afterward score for the pair of Queens; but if he adds a Queen from his hand he can score the triplet.

Pairs, triplets and fours are divided into two classes, the major being formed of court cards; the minor of cards below the Jack. Minor combinations cannot be scored if the adversary has upon the table cards which form a major combination of the same or greater value in the same class; that is, in class A. For instance: If your adversary has two Queens on the table, you cannot announce any pair below Jacks. His Queens need not have been announced as a pair; they may be parts of a marriage and a pendant. But if you have on the table a pair as good as his, you can score minor

pairs. For instance : He has two Kings on the table, and you have two Aces. Your Aces cancel his Kings, and you can score any minor pair ; but he can not. If you have a minor triplet to declare, such as three Eights, no major pair of his will bar it, because your triplet counts more than his pair. No minor combination on his side will bar you ; it must be one of court cards, and it must be better than any that you have laid on the table yourself.

***The Last Six Tricks.*** After the stock is exhausted, the second player must follow suit if able, and must win the trick if he can. As already explained, brisques won in the last six tricks are scored as they are taken in, and after the last card is played all the brisques are re-counted, the player holding more than six scoring ten points for each above that number. There is no score for winning the last trick.

Four deals is a game. At the end of the fourth deal the lower score is deducted from the higher, and the difference is the value of the game in points. If the lesser score is not at least 400 points, the winner doubles the difference in his favour.

The only text-book on this game introduces a great many technical terms which have no meaning to the ordinary card-player, and which have therefore been omitted from this description.

***Suggestions for Good Play*** will be found in Binocle.

---

## RUBICON BEZIQUE.

Rubicon Bézique bears the same relation to the ordinary game that Railroad Euchre does to Euchre proper. In fact the game might well be called Railroad Bézique, for its chief peculiarity is the rapid accumulation of large scores. The game seems to have originated in France, but is now very popular wherever Bézique is played.

***CARDS.*** Rubicon Bézique is played with four piquet packs of thirty-two cards each ; all below the Sevens being deleted from an ordinary pack. The four packs, which should be of the same pattern and colour, are shuffled together and used as one. The cards rank : A 10 K Q J 9 8 7, the ace being the highest, both in cutting and in play.

***MARKERS.*** The game may be kept on a bézique marker, a pull-up cribbage board, or with counters. Markers must be made to score at least 5000 points. When a cribbage board is used, it is usual to count the outside row of pegs as 10 each, the inner row as 100 each, and the game pegs in the centre as 1000 each. If counters are used, there must be for each player ; four white, to mark 10's ; one red to mark 50 ; nine blue to mark 100's ; and four

coppers to mark 1000 each. These counters are moved from left to right of the player as the points accrue. In whatever manner the count is kept, it should be distinctly visible to both persons, as playing to the score is very important.

**STAKES.** Rubicon Bézique is played for so much a hundred points, and in settling up, all fractions of a hundred are disregarded, unless they are necessary to decide the game. Ten cents a hundred is the usual stake; sixpence in England. Games are seldom worth less than one or two thousand points.

**PLAYERS.** Rubicon Bézique is played by two persons, one of whom is known as the *dealer*, and the other as the *pone*. They cut for seats and deal, the player cutting the higher card having first choice, and electing whether or not to deal himself. In cutting, the cards rank as in play, the ace being the highest. If a player exposes more than one card, he must cut again.

**DEALING.** The cards are thoroughly shuffled, and presented to the pone to be cut. At least five cards must be left in each packet. The dealer then distributes the cards three at a time, first to his adversary and then to himself, for three rounds, so that each player receives nine cards. No trump is turned; but the first marriage declared and scored is the trump suit for that deal. The undealt portion of the pack, called the *stock* or *talon*, is slightly spread between the two players, and a little to the left of the dealer. If in spreading the stock any card is found to be exposed, there must be a new deal by the same dealer.

**Misdealing.** A misdeal does not lose the deal, but in some cases a new deal is at the option of the pone. If the dealer exposes a card belonging to his adversary or to the stock, the pone may demand a new deal; but if either player exposes any of his own cards, the deal stands good. If too many cards are given to either player, and the error is discovered before the dealer plays to the first trick, there must be a new deal. If either player has too few cards, the pone may demand a new deal, or may allow the dealer to supply the deficiency from the top of the stock. If any card is found exposed in the pack, there must be a new deal. If any card faced in the stock is not discovered until the first trick has been played to by the dealer, the exposed card must be turned face down, without disturbing its position. If the pack is found to be imperfect, the deal in which it is discovered is void; but all previous scores or cuts made with that pack stand good.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The pone takes up and examines his nine cards. If he finds himself without King, Queen or Jack of any suit, he immediately shows his hand to the dealer, and marks fifty points for *carte blanche*. Whether he has *carte blanche* or not, he begins the play by leading any card he pleases. If the dealer has *carte blanche*, he must show and score it before

playing to the first trick. Players are not obliged to follow suit, nor to trump; but may renounce or trump at pleasure until the stock is exhausted, after which the method of play undergoes a change. Until the first marriage is declared and scored there is no trump suit. If the second player in any trick follows suit, the higher card wins. Trumps win plain suits. If identical cards are played to the same trick, such as two club aces, the leader wins.

The tricks are left face upward on the table until an ace or Ten is played, for tricks not containing either of these cards are of no value. When an ace or Ten is played, the winner of the trick gathers in all the cards that have accumulated, and turns them face down in front of him. These counting cards are called *brisques*, and if a player neglects to gather the brisques he wins, his adversary may do so when next he wins a trick, whether the trick he wins contains a brisque or not; the fact that there is a brisque on the table is sufficient.

**Declaring.** The winner of any trick, before leading for the next trick, has the privilege of announcing and scoring any one of certain combinations that he may hold in his hand. After, or in the absence of any such announcement, and before leading for the next trick, he draws one card from the top of the stock, and places it in his hand, without showing or naming it. His adversary then draws the next card, so that each restores the number of cards in his hand to nine. This method of playing, announcing, and drawing is continued until the stock is exhausted.

If a player who has already announced *carte blanche* finds that the first card he draws from the stock is not a King, Queen or Jack, he shows it to his adversary, and scores another fifty points for another *carte blanche*. This may be continued until he draws one of those cards. *Carte blanche* cannot be scored at all unless held before a card is played; that is, it must be dealt to the player originally.

All combinations announced and scored must be left face upward on the table, but the cards still form part of the player's hand, and may be led or played at any time, although they must not again be taken in hand until the stock is exhausted.

The first marriage announced and scored, no matter by which player, makes the *trump suit* for that deal; but a player with a marriage on the table is not obliged to announce it if he does not wish to make that suit the trump.

**Irregularities in Play.** If a player leads out of turn, and his adversary plays to the lead, whether intentionally or otherwise, the trick stands good. If the adversary calls attention to the error, the card led out of turn may be taken back without penalty.

If, after playing to the first trick, one player is found to have more than his right number of cards, the English rules say that the game is to be immediately abandoned, and the adversary of the



player in error is to add 1300 points to his score at the time the error is discovered, together with all the points already scored by the player in error; but the latter amount must not exceed 900.

The same penalties are enforced if one player has too many cards and the other too few; but in the latter case the hand is played out, the player not in fault scoring all he can.

If both players have more than their right number of cards, the deal is void. If either has less than his proper number, his adversary having the right number, the deal stands good, and there is no penalty except that the player with the right number of cards wins and scores for the last trick. If both have less than the right number, the deal stands good, and the actual winner of the last trick scores it.

It will be observed that these rules are quite different from the French rules, which have been given in connection with the ordinary game of *Bézique*. In France, it is always the custom to establish the *status quo*, if possible, and to assume that the error was quite unintentional. In England, all laws are based on the assumption that your adversary is a rogue, and the penalties are absurdly severe, but we have no authority to change them.

***Irregularities in Drawing.*** If a player has forgotten to take his card from the talon, and has played to the next trick, the English laws compel him to play the remainder of the hand with eight cards; the French laws give his adversary the option of calling the deal void, or allowing the player in error to draw two cards from the stock next time.

If a player draws two cards from the stock, instead of one, he must show the second one to his adversary if he has seen it himself. If it was his adversary's card, he must show his own card also. If he has not seen it, he may put it back without penalty. If he draws out of turn, he must restore the card improperly drawn, and if it belongs to his adversary, the player in error must show his own card. If both players draw the wrong cards, there is no remedy.

If the loser of any trick draws and looks at two cards from the stock, his adversary may look at both cards of the following draw, and may select either for himself. If he chooses the second card, he need not show it.

If, on account of some undetected irregularity, an odd number of cards remain in the stock, the last card must not be drawn.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** Each game is complete in one deal, and the score of the loser is deducted from that of the winner. The combinations which may be declared and scored are the same as in *Bézique*, but owing to the use of four packs of cards double combinations are much more frequent, and triple combinations are not uncommon.

The chief concern of the player must be, first of all, to save himself from a rubicon; that is, either to reach 1000 points, or to score as few points as possible. If he does not reach 1000, his adversary will take whatever he has scored, and add them to his own, besides 1300 in addition for rubicon and brisques. For instance: At the end of the hand A has scored 1200, and B has only 700. B is rubiconed, and his 700 points are added to A's 1200, together with 1300 more for a rubicon game and brisques; giving A a grand total of 3200 points to nothing. Had B reached 1000, he would have saved his rubicon, and A would have scored the difference only, or 200 points, plus 500 for the game; 700 altogether.

**Brisques.** The aces and Tens of each suit are of no value unless it is necessary to count them to decide a tie, or to save a rubicon. They are never scored during the play of the hand.

**Declarations.** The combinations which may be announced and scored during the play of the hand are divided into three classes: A, Marriages and Sequences; B, Béziques; and C, Fours. Only one combination can be scored at a time, and it must be announced and laid on the table immediately after the player holding it has won a trick, and before he draws his card from the talon. If he draws without announcing, it is equivalent to saying he has no declaration to make. Having drawn his card, even if he has not looked at it, he cannot score any declaration until he wins another trick. The various combinations and their values are as follows:

## CLASS A.

King and Queen in any plain suit, <i>Marriage</i>	20
King and Queen of trumps, <i>Royal Marriage</i>	40
Five highest cards in a plain suit, <i>Sequence</i>	150
Five highest cards in trumps, <i>Royal Sequence</i>	250

## CLASS B.

Spade Queen and Diamond Jack, <i>Single Bezique</i>	40
Two spade Queens and diamond Jacks, <i>Double Bezique</i>	500
Three spade Queens and diamond Jacks, <i>Triple Bezique</i>	1500
Four spade Queens and diamond Jacks, <i>Quadruple Bezique</i>	4500

## CLASS C.

Any four Aces	100
Any four Kings	80
Any four Queens	60
Any four Jacks	40

Besides the foregoing, there is the score of fifty points for *carte blanche*, which may be announced only before the first trick is played to, and the score of fifty points for the winner of the last trick of all.

In class A, the first marriage declared must of course count 40, as it is the trump suit for that deal. In class C, the four court cards may be of different suits, or any two or more of them may be of the same suit.

The rules governing declarations are as follows :—

The player making the declaration must have won the previous trick, and must make his announcement before drawing his card from the stock. When the stock is exhausted, so that no cards remain to be drawn, no announcements can be made.

Only one declaration can be scored at a time, so that a trick must be won for every announcement made, or the combination cannot be scored. This rule does not prevent a player from making two or more announcements at the same time; but he can score only one of them.

A player cannot make a lower declaration with cards which form part of a higher combination already shown in the same class. For instance :—Marriages and sequences belong to the same class. If a sequence has been declared, the player cannot take from it the King and Queen, and score for the marriage; neither can he add a new Queen to the King already used in the sequence, because the higher combination was scored first. The same rule applies to lower and higher *béziques*. But if the lower combination is first shown and scored—the marriage—the A 10 J may be added afterward, on winning another trick, and the sequence scored. This rule does not apply to cards belonging to combinations in different classes. A Queen used in class A may be used over again in both B and C classes.

**Re-forming Combinations.** The chief peculiarity in Rubicon *Bélique* is that combinations which have been laid on the table and scored may be broken up, re-formed, and scored again indefinitely. For instance: A player has declared royal sequence, and scored 250 points for it. He may play away the Ace, breaking up the sequence, and upon winning the trick lay down another Ace, re-forming the sequence, and scoring 250 points again. He might repeat the same process with the Ten, King, Queen and Jack, and in six successive tricks he would score this royal sequence six times, making 1500 points out of it. In actual play it is not necessary to go through the formality of playing away a card from the combination on the table, and then replacing it, for it amounts to the same thing if the new card in the hand is led or played, and the fresh combination claimed.

Marriages, *béziques* and fours may be broken up and re-formed in the same way. After declaring 100 Aces, the player may lead

or play another Ace, and claim another 100 Aces, scoring them when he wins a trick. In this way, eight Aces actually held might score 500 points. In the *bézique* combinations, a new card simply re-forms the single *bézique*. In order to score double, triple, or quadruple *bézique*, all the cards forming the combination must be on the table at one time, but they may be played and scored one after the other, cumulatively. For instance: A player holding quadruple *bézique* and showing all eight cards at once would score 4500 only; the minor *béziqs* would be lost. If he had time, and could win tricks enough, he might show the single first, scoring 40, then the double, scoring 500, then the triple, scoring 1500, and finally the quadruple, scoring 4500, which would yield him a grand total of 6540 points. He might declare marriage in hearts, and afterward play three more heart Queens, scoring each marriage, and then three heart Kings, scoring three more marriages. These would all be new combinations.

**Double Declarations.** These are carried forward in the manner already described for the ordinary game. Suppose a player has two spade Kings on the table, and shows double *bézique*. He of course marks the more valuable score, 500, and simply claims the marriages by saying: "With twenty and twenty to score." On winning another trick he is not compelled to score the previous announcement if he has any other or better to make. He might have two more Queens, and would announce: "Sixty Queens, with twenty and twenty to score." If he scores one of the announcements held over, he still carries on the other.

When announcements are carried forward in this manner, it must be remembered that the cards must still be on the table when the time comes to score them. If one of them has been led or played, or the stock is exhausted before the player wins another trick, the score held over is lost.

**Time.** On account of the great number of combinations possible at Rubicon *Bézique*, it is very seldom that a player succeeds in scoring everything he holds. He is allowed to count the cards remaining in the talon, provided he does not disturb their order. This count is often important toward the end of the hand. For instance: You know from the cards you hold, and those played, that your adversary must have in his hand the cards that will make a double *bézique* on the table into a triple *bézique*, which would give him 1500 points. If, on counting the stock, you find only six cards remain, and you have three certain winning trumps to lead, you can shut out his 1500 by exhausting the stock before he can win a trick.

**Irregular Announcements.** If a player announces a combination which he does not show; such as fours, when he has only three, which he may easily do by mistaking a Jack for a King,

his adversary can compel him not only to take down the score erroneously marked, but to lead or play one of the three Kings. A player may be called upon to lead or play cards from other erroneous declarations in the same manner; but if he has the right card or cards in his hand, he is permitted to amend his error, provided he has not drawn a card from the stock in the meantime.

**The Last Nine Tricks.** When the stock is exhausted, all announcements are at an end, and the players take back into their hands all the cards upon the table which may remain from the combinations declared in the course of play. The winner of the previous trick then leads any card he pleases, but for the last nine tricks the second player in each must not only follow suit, but must win the trick if he can, either with a superior card or with a trump. Any player failing to follow suit or to win a trick, when able to do so, may be compelled to take back his cards to the point where the error occurred, and to replay the hand from that point. In France he is penalised by counting nothing from that point on, either for brisques or for the last trick.

The winner of the *last trick* scores fifty points for it immediately.

**SCORING.** Each deal is a complete game in itself, and the winner is the player who has scored the most points for *carte blanche*, combinations, and the last trick. The brisques are not counted, unless they are necessary to decide a tie, or save a rubicon.

The value of the game is determined by deducting the lesser score from the higher, and then adding 500 points to the remainder. In this deduction all fractions of a hundred are disregarded. For instance: A's score is 1830; while B's is 1260. A wins 1800, less the 1200 scored by B, which leaves 600; to this must be added the 500 points for game, making the total value of A's game 1100 points.

If the scores are very nearly equal, being within one or two hundred points of each other, the tricks taken in by each player are turned over, and the brisques are counted, each player adding to his score ten points for every brisque he has won. Suppose that after the last trick had been played and scored, A's total was 1260, and B's 1140. This is close enough to justify B in demanding a count of the brisques. It is found that A has seven only, while B has twenty-five. This shows B to be the winner of the game, with a total score of 1390 to A's 1330.

If the difference between the final scores is less than 100 points, after adding the brisques and throwing off the fractions, the player with the higher score adds 100 points for bonus. In the case just given, B's final score is equal to A's, after dropping the fractions from both; so he would add 100 for bonus to the 500 for game, and win 600 points altogether.

**Rubicons.** If the lower score is less than 1000, no matter what the higher score may be, the loser is rubiconed, and all the points he has scored are *added* to the score of the winner, instead of being deducted. In addition to this, the winner adds a double game, or 1000 points, for the rubicon, and 300 points for all the brisques, no matter who actually won them. For example: A's score is 920, and B's 440. It is not necessary to count the brisques to see that A wins and B is rubiconed. A adds B's 400 to his own 900, making his score 1300, and to this total he adds 1300 for rubicon and brisques, making the value of his game 2600 points altogether.

The loser is not rubiconed if he can bring his total score to 1000 by adding his brisques. Suppose A has 1740 and B 850. The brisques are counted, and it is found that B has eighteen, making his score 1030, and saving his rubicon. A adds his fourteen brisques, making his total 1880, which makes the value of his game 1800, minus B's 1000, plus 500 for the game, or 1300 altogether.

If B's brisques did not prove sufficient to save the rubicon, A would count them all. Suppose that in the foregoing case B had taken in only eleven brisques, leaving his total 990. As this does not save the rubicon the game is reckoned as if the brisques had not been counted at all, and A wins 1800, plus B's 800, plus 1300 for rubicon and brisques; 3900 altogether.

If the player who is rubiconed has scored less than 100 points, the winner takes 100 for bonus, in addition to the 1300 for rubicon and brisques.

When a series of games is played between the same individuals, it is usual to keep the net results on a sheet of paper, setting down the hundreds only, and to settle at the end of the sitting.

**Suggestions for Good Play** will be found in Binocle.

---

**CHINESE BEZIQUE** is Rubicon Bézique with six packs of cards shuffled together and used as one. The counts run into enormous figures, and 6000 is not an uncommon score for the winner.

In **CHOUETTE BEZIQUE**, one of several players agrees to take all bets, and has the choice of deal and seats without cutting. His adversaries may consult together in playing against him. If the chouette player wins, one of his opponents takes the loser's place; but if he loses, the same player opposes him for the next game. The adversaries usually cut to decide which of them shall play the first game against the chouette player, the highest card having the privilege. If there are four players, two may play against two, each consulting with his partner and sharing his bets.

## BINOCLE.

The word Binocle is spelt in many different ways, all of which, are, however, phonetic equivalents of the correct one. The word is probably derived from the French word "binage," which was the name given to the combination known as "binocle," and which seemed a better term than "cinq cents" as the game was no longer 500 points up. In all German works on card games the name is spelt as we give it; but the pronunciation of the initial "b" in the German is so near that of "p," that "Pinocle" is nearer the correct spelling than any other form. There is no authority for the introduction of the "h," which has led some persons to think the word a compound of "bis" and "knochle," and has given rise to the forms: binochle, pinochle, pinuchle, pinucle, penucle, penuchle, penuckle and pinuckel, all of which may be found in various works on card games.

**CARDS.** Binocle is played with two packs of twenty-four cards each, all below the Nine being deleted, and the two packs being then shuffled together, and used as one. The cards rank A 10 K Q J 9, the Ace being the highest, both in cutting and in play.

**COUNTERS.** The game is 1000 points, and is usually scored with counters, each player being provided with four white, worth 10 each; four blue, worth 100 each; one red, worth 50, and a copper cent or a button, which represents 500. These counters are placed on the left of the player at the beginning of the game, and are moved over to his right as the points accrue. The game is sometimes kept on a cribbage board, each player starting at 21, and going twice round to the game-hole, reckoning each peg as 10 points.

**STAKES.** Binocle is played for so much a game of 1000 points, and the moment either player either actually reaches or claims to have reached that number, the game is at an end. If his claim is correct, he wins; if it is not, his adversary takes the stakes, no matter what the score may be.

**PLAYERS.** Binocle is played by two persons, one of whom is known as the *dealer*, and the other as the *pone*. They cut for the choice of seats and deal, and the player cutting the higher card may deal or not, as he pleases. It is usual for the player having the choice to make his adversary deal. A player exposing more than one card must cut again.

**DEALING.** After the cards are thoroughly shuffled, they are presented to the pone to be cut. At least five cards must be left in each packet. The dealer then distributes the cards four at a time for three rounds, giving to his adversary first, and then to

himself. The twenty-fifth card is turned up for the trump. If this card is a Nine, the dealer claims *dix*, and counts ten for it immediately. The trump card is laid aside, and the remainder of the pack, which is called the *stock*, or *talon*, is slightly spread, to facilitate the process of drawing cards from it, and to be sure that none of the cards remaining in the stock are exposed. The trump is usually placed face up under the last card of the stock.

In *Sixty-four-card Binocle*, the Sevens and Eights are added to the pack. There are then two ways to play: If eight cards are dealt to each player, the game is simply *Bézique*, except for some minor details relating to the combinations and their value. These are usually disregarded, and the regular game of *Bézique* is played. If twelve cards are dealt to each player, the game is the same as the one about to be described, but with eight cards added to the pack, and the Seven taking the place of the Nine for *dix*.

**Misdealing.** If the dealer exposes a card belonging to his adversary or to the stock, the pone may demand a new deal; but if either player exposes any of his own cards the deal stands good. If too many cards are given to either player, and the error is discovered before the dealer plays to the first trick, there must be a new deal. If either player has too few cards, the pone may demand a new deal, or may allow the dealer to supply the deficiency from the top of the stock. If any card is found exposed in the pack, there must be a new deal. If a card faced in the stock is not discovered until the first trick has been played to by the dealer, the exposed card must be turned face down, without disturbing its position. If the pack is found to be imperfect, the deal in which it is discovered is void; but all previous scores and cuts made with that pack stand good. In all misdeals the same dealer deals again.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** After the trump is turned, the pone begins by leading any card he pleases. The second player is not obliged to follow suit, nor to trump; but may renounce or trump at pleasure until the stock is exhausted, after which the method of play undergoes a change. If the second player follows suit in any trick, the higher card wins. Trumps win plain suits. If identical cards are played to the same trick, such as two club Jacks, the leader wins.

The winner of the trick takes in the cards, turning them face down, but before he leads for the next trick he has the privilege of announcing and scoring any one of certain combinations that he may hold in his hand. After, or in the absence of any such announcement, and before leading for the next trick, he draws a card from the top of the stock, and places it in his hand, without showing or naming it. His adversary then draws the next card, so that each player restores the number of cards in his hand to twelve. This method of playing, announcing, and drawing from



the talon is continued until the stock is exhausted. The A 10 K Q J of each suit have certain counting values, which will be described further on.

All combinations announced and scored must be laid face upward on the table ; but the cards still form part of the player's hand, and may be led or played at any time, although they must not again be taken in hand until the stock is exhausted.

***Irregularities in Play.*** If either player leads out of turn, and his adversary plays to the lead, whether intentionally or otherwise, the trick stands good. If the adversary calls attention to the error, the card may be taken back without penalty.

If at any time it is discovered that a player has too many cards, his adversary may either claim a fresh deal, or may compel him to play without drawing from the talon until the number of his cards is reduced to twelve. The player with too many cards is not allowed to make or score any announcements until he has his right number of cards. If a player has too few cards, his adversary may either claim a fresh deal, or allow him to make good the deficiency by drawing from the stock.

Any player looking at any but the last trick turned down, forfeits his entire score for "cards."

***Irregularities in Drawing.*** If a player has forgotten to take a card from the talon, and has played to the next trick, his adversary may elect to call the deal void, or to allow him to draw two cards next time.

If a player has drawn two cards from the stock, instead of one, he must show the second one to his adversary if he has seen it himself. If it was his adversary's card, he must show his own card also. If he has not seen it, he may put it back without penalty. If he draws out of turn, he must restore the card improperly drawn, and if it belongs to his adversary, the player in error must show his own card. If both draw the wrong cards there is no remedy, and each must keep what he gets. If the loser of any trick draws and looks at two cards from the stock, his adversary may look at both cards of the following draw, and may select either for himself. If he chooses the second card, which his adversary has not seen, he need not show it.

If, on account of some undetected irregularity, an even number of cards remain in the stock, the last card must not be drawn. The winner of the trick takes the last but one, and the loser takes the trump card.

***OBJECTS OF THE GAME.*** The aim of each player is to reach 1000 points before his adversary, and the one first reaching that number, and announcing it, wins the game. Points are scored for *dix*, *melds*, the *last trick*, and for *cards*, which are the counting cards in tricks won.

**Melds.** The various combinations which are declared during the play of the hand are called melds, from the German word *melden*, to announce. These melds are divided into three classes: *a*, Marriages and Sequences; *b*, Binocles; and *c*, Fours. Only one combination can be announced at a time, and it must be melded immediately after the player holding it has won a trick, and before he draws his card from the stock. If he draws without announcing, even if he has not seen the card drawn, he cannot meld anything until he wins another trick. The melds and their values are as follows:—

## CLASS A.

King and Queen of any plain suit, <i>Marriage</i> ,	.	.	20
King and Queen of Trumps, <i>Royal Marriage</i> ,	.	.	40
The five highest trumps, <i>Sequence</i> ,	.	.	150

## CLASS B.

Spade Queen and diamond Jack, <i>Binocle</i> ,	.	.	40
Two spade Queens and diamond Jacks, <i>Double Binocle</i> ,	.	.	80
King and Queen of spades, and diamond Jack, <i>Grand Binocle</i> ,	.	.	80

## CLASS C.

Four Aces of different suits,	.	.	.	100
Four Kings of different suits,	.	.	.	80
Four Queens of different suits,	.	.	.	60
Four Jacks of different suits,	.	.	.	40
Eight Aces,	.	.	.	200
Eight Kings,	.	.	.	160
Eight Queens,	.	.	.	120
Eight Jacks,	.	.	.	80

The third meld in class B is not often played in America. The count for it is the same, 80 points, whether the marriage in spades is the trump suit or not. It will be observed that the court cards in class C must be of different suits in Binocle, whereas, in *Bézique*, any four court cards may be declared. The following rules govern all classes of declarations:—

The player making the declaration must have won the previous trick, and must meld before drawing his card from the stock. When the stock is exhausted, so that no cards remain to be drawn, no further announcements can be made.

Only one meld can be scored at a time, so that a trick must be made for every announcement made, or the combination cannot be scored, and a fresh card must be played from the hand for every

**fresh meld.** This is a very important rule, and little understood. Suppose a player holds four Kings and four Queens. The total count for the various combinations these cards will make is 220: two plain-suit marriages, 20 each; royal marriage, 40; four Kings, 80; and four Queens, 60. As only one combination can be scored for each trick won, and as the player must lay down at least one fresh card for each successive meld, it is evident that if he begins with the 80 Kings, and then marries each of them in turn, when he comes to the fourth Queen he will have to sacrifice the 20 for a marriage in order to score the 60 for the four Queens. He cannot score both, or he will not be complying with the rule about the fresh card from the hand for every meld. That is why four Kings and four Queens are never worth 240, but only 220.

A player cannot meld cards which have already been used to form higher combinations in the same class; but he may use cards melded in lower combinations to form more valuable ones in the same class, provided he adds at least one fresh card from his hand. The principle is that cards may be *added* to melds already shown, but they cannot be *taken away* to form other combinations in the same class. For example: Royal marriage has been melded and scored. The player may *add* to this the Ace, Ten, and Jack of trumps to make the sequence, which is a more valuable combination in the same class. But if the first meld is the sequence, he cannot *take away* from the sequence the card or cards to form a marriage. A new Queen added to the King already in the sequence will not make a marriage; because it is not the Queen that is added to the sequence, but the King that is taken away.

The same rule applies to the binocles. If a player has scored double binocle, he can not afterward take away two cards to meld a single binocle; but if the single binocle has been melded and scored first, he may add two more cards, and score the double binocle. He cannot score the second single, and then claim the double, because some new card must be added to form a new meld in the same class.

If four Kings are melded and scored, the other four may be added later; but if the eight Kings are first melded, the score for the four Kings is lost.

Cards may be taken away from one combination to form less valuable combinations in another class. For instance: Four Jacks have been melded; the diamond Jack may be taken away to form a binocle with the spade Queen. If spades are trumps, and the sequence has been melded, the Queen may be taken away to form a binocle, because the binocle is in a different class of melds; but the Queen cannot be used to form a marriage, because the sequence and the marriage are in the same class. As there are three classes, one card may be used three separate times. The spade Queen, for instance, may be used in a marriage, in

binocle, and in four Queens, and these melds may be made in any order.

Cards once used in combinations cannot again be used in melds of equal value belonging to the same class; and combinations once broken up cannot be re-formed by the addition of fresh cards. For instance: Four Kings have been melded, and one of them has been used in the course of play. The player cannot add a new King to the three remaining, and meld four Kings again. A marriage in hearts has been melded, and the King played away. A new King will not make another marriage with the old Queen. A binocle has been melded, and the Jack has been played; another Jack will not make a new binocle with the old Queen.

**Double Declarations.** When a player makes a meld containing certain cards which will form a counting combination with other cards already on the table, it is called a double declaration, that is, a meld in two different classes at the same time. For instance: A player has melded and scored four Kings, and on winning another trick he melds binocle. Two of the cards on the table form a marriage in spades, and as the marriage is in a different class from either of the other melds, he may claim it and score it; but if he does, he will lose the score for the binocle, being prevented by the rule about a fresh card from the hand for each individual meld. The only way to secure both scores would be to meld the marriage first, and afterward to lay down the Jack and meld the binocle.

**Time.** On account of the number of combinations possible, and the fact that there are only twelve tricks to be played before the scores for announcements are barred, it frequently happens that a player has not time to score everything he holds. He is allowed to count the cards remaining in the talon, provided he does not disturb their order, and it is often important to do so toward the end of a hand.

**Scoring Dix.** If a player holds or draws the Nine of trumps, he has the privilege of exchanging it for the turn-up card, and scoring ten points for dix. The exchange must be made immediately after winning a trick, and before drawing his card from the stock. Should the turn-up be a Nine, the exchange may still be made and scored; and if one player has already exchanged a Nine for the turn-up, the second Nine may still be exchanged for the first, and scored. A player cannot score dix and any other combination at the same time. For this reason a player whose time is short will often forego the dix score altogether unless the trump card is valuable.

**Irregular Melds.** If a player announces a combination which he does not show, such as fours when he has three only

which he may easily do by mistaking a Jack for a King, his adversary can compel him not only to take down the score erroneously marked, but to lead or play one of the three Kings. A player may be called upon to lead or play cards from other erroneous declarations in the same manner, but if he has the right card or cards in his hand, he may amend his error, provided he has not drawn a card from the stock in the meantime.

**The Last Twelve Tricks.** When the stock is exhausted all announcements are at an end, and the players take back into their hands all the cards upon the table which may remain from the combinations declared in the course of play. Should a player take up his cards before playing to the last trick, he may be called upon to lay his entire hand on the table.

The winner of the previous trick then leads any card he pleases; but for the last twelve tricks the second player in each must not only follow suit, but must win the trick if he can, either with a superior card or with a trump. Any player failing to follow suit or to win a trick, when able to do so, may be compelled to take back his cards to the point where the error occurred, and to replay the hand from that point on. The penalty for the *revoke* varies in different places, but the general rule is for the revoking player to lose his entire count for "cards."

The winner of *the last trick* scores ten points for it; and the players then turn over the tricks they have taken, and count their score for "cards."

**Cards.** The five highest cards in each suit count toward game for the player winning them. The Ace is worth 11 points, the Ten 10, the King 4, the Queen 3, and the Jack 2, no matter what the suit may be, so that there are 240 points for cards to be divided between the players in each deal. It is usual for only one to count, the other checking him, and taking the difference between the total and 240. Cards are not scored as the tricks are taken in, but after the hand is over and the 10 points have been scored for the last trick.

From this it might be imagined that no notice was taken of the counting value of the cards taken in during the play. Early in the game this is true; but toward the end each player must keep very careful *mental count* of the value of his tricks, although he is not allowed to make any note of it, nor to score it. When either player knows, by adding his mental count to his score for melds and dix, that he has made points enough to win the game, he stops the play by knocking on the table. He then turns over his tricks and counts his cards, to show his adversary that he has won the game. Even if both have enough to go out, the player wins who knocks first, provided his count is correct. If the player who knocks is mistaken, and cannot count out, he loses the game, no matter what his adversary's score may be.

If neither knocks, and at the end of the hand both players are found to have points enough to put them out, neither wins the game. If the game is 1000 points, it must be continued to 1250. Should both reach that point without knocking, it must be continued to 1500. If neither knocks, and only one has enough points to put him out, he wins the game on its merits.

**SCORING.** The game is usually 1000 points. All scores for *dix*, melds, and the last trick, are counted as soon as made; but the players are not allowed to keep any record of the score for cards, nor to go back over their tricks to refresh their memory. Any player going back further than the last trick turned and quitted, forfeits his entire score for cards. The player first correctly announcing that he has reached 1000 points, wins the game, no matter what his adversary's score may be; but if the announcement is incorrect, he loses the game.

Should a player score more than he is entitled to; as, for instance, scoring 80 for four Queens, his adversary may take down the superfluous score, 20 points in this instance, and may add it to his own score for a penalty.

**CHEATING.** Apart from the usual weapons of false shuffles, strippers cut to locate or pull out the binocle cards, and the opportunities always offered to the greek when the cards are dealt three or four at a time, the *bézique* family of games are particularly adapted to the use of marked cards. These will show the philosopher the exact value of both the cards in the next draw, and will enable him to vary his play accordingly. It is for this reason that in France the top card of the stock is always drawn by the same player, no matter which wins the trick. In Rubicon *Bézique*, a person should be very familiar with the movements peculiar to dealing seconds before he ventures to play in a public café, or he may find his adversary with the most astonishing run of repeated combinations, and will be rubiconed almost every game.

Never play with a man who cuts the pack with both hands, watches the cards closely as he deals, or looks intently at the top of the stock before he plays to the current trick. Players who have a nervous affection which makes them pass over too many counters at once will also bear watching. Colour blindness may lead them to take over a blue instead of a white in a close game.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** The general principles of play are much the same in all the *Bézique* family of games.

It is usually best to give your adversary the deal, because the first lead is often an advantage, especially if the turn-up is valuable, and you have a *dix*, or if you want to make the trump in Rubicon *Bézique*.

It is seldom right to make the trump unless you have one or two of the sequence cards with the marriage.

**The Lead** is a disadvantage unless you have something to declare, or there is a brisque in the trick, or you can get home the Ten of a plain suit. The Tens are of no value in plain suits except as brisques, for they enter into no combination with other cards except in Penchant, Cinq-cents, and Rubicon. If the trick is of no value, or you have nothing important to declare, get rid of your small cards, and lead them when you do not want to retain the lead. The lead is sometimes necessary to prevent your adversary from declaring, especially toward the end of the hand. If you have led a brisque and won the trick, it is better to lead another brisque in the same suit than to change.

Aces are better leads than Kings or Queens, for the court cards can be married, and you may never get 100 Aces. Kings are better leads than Queens, especially if the Queens are spades. Jacks are better than either, but the Jack of diamonds should be kept as long as possible. If you have to decide between two combinations, one of which you must sacrifice, lead that which is of the smallest value, or the least likely to be restored. For instance: If your adversary has shown one or two Kings, but no Ace, and you have three of each, you are more likely to get 100 Aces than 80 Kings.

If you hold duplicate cards, especially in trumps, play the one on the table, not the one in your hand.

**Brisques.** Beginners often overlook the importance of brisques. Every time you allow your adversary to take in a brisque which you might have won, you make a difference of twenty points in the score. While you are hugging three Aces, waiting for a fourth, your adversary may get home all his Tens, and then turn up with your fourth Ace in his hand.

**Discarding.** It is usually best to settle upon one of two suits or combinations, and to discard the others, for you cannot play for everything. Having once settled on what to play for, it is generally bad policy to change unless something better turns up.

Your adversary's discards will often be a guide as to the combinations he hopes to make, and will show you that you need not keep certain cards. For instance: If a binocle player discards or plays two heart Kings, it is unlikely that he has either of the Queens, and you may reasonably hope for 60 Queens; but it will be impossible for you to make anything out of your Kings but marriages. In Bézique, where Kings may be of the same suit in fours, you will have a slightly better chance for 80 Kings on account of your adversary's discards, because he certainly has no more, as he would not break up three Kings.

**Declaring.** It is often a nice point to decide whether or not you can afford to make minor declarations while holding higher ones in your hand. In Rubicon many players will give up the

trump marriage if they have the sequence, especially with a good chance of re-forming it several times with duplicate cards. The number of cards in hand will often be the best guide. In Rubicon, if you held trump sequence and double bézique, it would be better to declare the sequence first, and to lead the card you drew. One of the trump sequence on the table would then be free to regain the lead and declare the double bézique; but if the bézique was declared first, the sequence might have to be broken into to regain the lead. With a plain-suit sequence and four Aces, declare the Aces first. They will then be free to win tricks for the purpose of making other declarations.

It is seldom right to show the bézique cards in other combinations, and four Jacks is a very bad meld, because it shows your adversary that he cannot hope for double bézique. By holding up bézique cards, even if you know they are of no use to you, you may lead your adversary to break up his hand, hoping to draw the card or cards you hold.

**Trumps.** Small trumps may be used to advantage in winning brisques, but you should keep at least one small trump to get the lead at critical periods of the hand, or to make an important declaration. It is bad policy to trump in to make minor declarations, unless your time is short. It is seldom right to lead the trump Ace, except at the end of the hand, or when you have duplicates, but leading high trumps to prevent an adversary from declaring further is a common stratagem, if you know from the cards in your hand, and those played, that your adversary may get the cards to meld something of importance.

**The Last Tricks.** Before you play to the last trick, give yourself time to note the cards your adversary has on the table, and compare them with your own, so that you may play the last tricks to advantage. If you wait until after playing to the last trick, he may gather up his cards so quickly that you will be unable to remember them. At Rubicon it is not always advisable to win the last trick. If your adversary is rubiconed in any case, you may add 100 points to your own score by giving him the 50 for the last trick, which may put him across the line into another hundred.

#### TEXT BOOKS.

Foster's Complete Pinocle. 1906.

Laws of Pinochle, by R. F. Foster. 1908.

Bézique and Cribbage, by "Berkeley."

The Royal Game of Bézique, by Chas. Goodall

Pocket Guide to Bézique, by "Cavendish."

Bézique, by J. L. Baldwin.



Rubicon Bézique, by "Cavendish."

Bézique, by Reynolds & Son.

Bézique, by English.

Règle du Bésique Japonais.

Articles in *Macmillan*, Dec., 1861; *Field*, Jan. 30, 1869; *Pall Mall Gazette*, Jan. 23, 27, 1869; *Once a Week*, Feb. 13, Mar. 20, 1869; *Daily News*, Feb. 10, 1869; *Westminster Papers*, Jan., 1869.

---

### THREE-HANDED BINOCLE.

When three persons play, the entire pack is dealt out, giving sixteen cards to each player, four at a time, and turning up the last for the trump. There is no stock. Each plays for himself, and must keep his own score. A triangular cribbage board is very useful for this purpose.

**Dix.** Each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, may show the Nine of trumps if he holds it, and exchange it for the trump card. Should two Nines be shown by different players, the one on the dealer's left takes the turn-up trump. Even if the dealer has a Nine himself, he is not allowed to keep the turn-up trump. If the same player holds both Nines he may score twenty on winning a trick. A player with 990 up is not out if he turns up the Nine. He must win a trick.

**Melds.** All the combinations have the same value as in the ordinary game, but all melds are laid upon the table before a card is played. When he lays down his cards, a player may make as many combinations with them as he can, just as he would in the ordinary game if he had plenty of time. If he has the trump sequence, he may lay down the marriage first, then the A 10 J. If he has double binocle, he may lay down the single first, and then the other, claiming the count for both. Four Kings and four Queens count 220. The trump sequence counts 190.

No player is allowed to meld after he has played to the first trick. If he discovers he had more to meld, but has played a card, the unannounced score is lost. An interesting variation is sometimes introduced by allowing the other players to claim any score overlooked by the one who melds.

The total number of points claimed by each player is simply announced, but not scored. The player must win a trick before he can score anything; but the first trick he wins entitles him to score everything he has announced, including dix. It is usual to put the melds on a slate, and to rub them out if the player does not win a trick.

**Playing.** The melds are all taken in hand again before play begins. The eldest hand leads for the first trick any card he pleases, and the others must follow suit if able, and must win the trick if they can, either with a higher card or with a trump. If the third hand cannot win the trick, he is still obliged to follow suit if he can; but if he has none of the suit led, and the second hand has already put on a better trump than any held by third hand, the latter must under-trump if he can. The winner of one trick leads for the next, as in the ordinary game. The winner of the sixteenth or last trick counts ten points for it at once.

**Scoring.** The points for dix, melds, and the last trick are all scored with the counters in the ordinary way, but the score for cards must be kept mentally. The moment any player correctly announces that he has reached 1000 points, he wins the game, no matter what the others may have scored. If his claim is not correct, he retires, and the two remaining players finish alone. If neither wins the game that deal, they play the next deal as in ordinary two-handed Binocle, with a stock, the ultimate winner taking the stakes. If it has been agreed that the lowest score pays when the first player goes out, the game is ended as soon as one retires. If two players reach 1000 points without either having claimed the game, they must both go on to 1250; but if the third player reaches and announces 1000 before either of the others reaches 1250, he wins the game.

**The Revoke.** The individual player in error loses his entire score for "cards." The bidder cannot be set back if either adversary revokes. He may demand that the hand be played out if he thinks he can get a good score.

---

## FOUR-HANDED BINOCLE.

Four persons may play, each for himself, or two against two as partners, sitting opposite each other. All the cards are dealt, twelve to each player, four at a time, and the last is turned up for the trump.

**Melds** are not made until the player holding them has played to the first trick. The eldest hand leads and then melds; the second player plays and then melds, and so on. The card played to the first trick may still be reckoned in the melds.

**Playing.** The general rules of play are the same as in the three-handed game; players being obliged to follow suit and to win the trick if able to do so. The fourth player must win his partner's trick if he can, and any player who cannot follow suit to a trick that is already trumped must under-trump if he is unable to over-trump.

**Scoring.** There are three ways to score: In the first, each player must individually win a trick in order to score his melds. In the second, when either partner wins a trick, the melds in both hands may be scored. In both these the melds are kept separate. In the third, when a player wins a trick he may combine his melds with those of his partner to form fresh combinations, and the scores are made as if the melds of the two partners were in one hand; but cards previously played to the tricks cannot be used in these fresh combinations. The cards must still be on the table, unplayed. For this reason, in this style of game the melds are not taken up until one of the partners wins a trick.

## AUCTION PINOCHE

**WITH A WIDOW.** This form of the game has now practically supplanted all others as a game for three or four players, as it is simpler and more easy to score than any of the older methods. In many of its features it resembles the latest favorite in the bridge family, Contract, as the highest bidder cannot score more than he makes, and must make his bid in order to win the game. The spelling, "Pinochle" has now been generally adopted for this distinctively American form of the game.

**Cards.** Auction pinochle is played with the regulation double pinochle pack of 48 cards, containing duplicates from the ace to the nine in each of the four suits. The cards rank A, 10, K, Q, J, 9, the ace being always the highest and the ten next.

**Markers.** The scores may be kept by providing the players with an equal number of markers or chips of agreed value, ten being the lowest denomination, sometimes 50 or 100. Or the scores may be kept on a pad or slate. It is sometimes necessary to record the melds, in case of close decisions if a certain number of extra points have to be made in tricks won.

**Stakes.** The game is usually played for so much a point, but it is customary to throw off parts of tens, fifties, or hundreds, and play for so much a hundred, or tenths of it.

**Players.** There are only three active players, but if a fourth is at the table he is usually the dealer of the first hand, but takes no cards himself. The deal passes to the left so that each in turn becomes the dealer, who takes no part in the play but shares in the fortunes of those opposed to the highest bidder, win or lose.

**Cutting.** The pack is spread and cards drawn for positions at the table. The highest has the choice of seats and deals the first hand, the others choosing their seats in the order of their cards. The suits have no rank and ties cut again, the new cut deciding nothing but the tie between those two.

**Dealing.** The pack, thoroughly shuffled, is presented to the player on the dealer's right to be cut, the dealer himself reuniting the two packets. The cards are then dealt from left to right, three at a time to each player, all face down, until each has received fifteen. The three surplus cards are left in the center of the table, face down, for the "Widow." These three may be laid off by the dealer at any time, so that they are neither the first nor the last dealt. It is usual to deal them after the first round to the players.

**Irregularities in the Deal.** If more than one card dealt to a player is faced, or if any of the cards laid out for the widow is exposed, all the cards must be gathered up, shuffled, cut, and dealt again by the same dealer.

If any player is found to have too many cards and another too few, the short hand draws the surplus, face down, from the long hand. If the bidding has begun before the discrepancy is discovered, the bidding up to that point stands good; and may be continued. But if the error is not announced until the highest bidder has turned the widow face up, the bidder cannot be set back if he has the correct number of cards.

**Bidding.** The player to the left of the dealer has the first opportunity to bid or pass. The bidding goes round to the left and continues until no one will bid higher. The first bid made must be for at least 200, and this must be increased by at least ten points at a time. A player who has passed on one round may come into the bidding again later in his turn. If any card in the widow is exposed during the bidding, the last bid made shall be final.

Bids are based on the number of points the player considers he can make if he is allowed to exchange any of his cards for better ones he might find in the widow before he names the trump. This chance he combines with his knowledge of the value of the melds he may have in his hand, and their possible improvement, together with the playing value of the tricks he estimates he can win in play and the cards he can lay aside in his discards in place of cards taken from the widow. These values he judges by the scale of values for tricks and melds given on page 398.

**The Widow and Discards.** The highest bid having been passed by the two other players, the three cards in the widow are turned face up, so that all may see them. If the bidder decides to play the hand, he takes the three cards into his own hand, and discards any three he pleases, face down. Any points in these discards count for him at the end of the play. He then announces the trump and lays down his melds.

Should the bidder wish to change his discard after having announced the trump and made his melds, but before leading for the first trick, he must lay out his melds again, in order to show that no part of them has been discarded. Should he fail to do this, laying away a card of his melds, or putting away a wrong number of cards, he loses his game. No change in discards can be made after the first card is led, nor can the bidder change the trump after he has made a meld.

**The Melds.** The highest bidder is the only player that makes any melds, and he lays these down and announces their values according to the table shown on page 398 (?) It is the duty of his adversaries to see that these melds are correctly laid down and counted.

The bid may be made good by melds alone, if that is enough for the purpose, in which case the hand is not played, as no one can make more than his bid.

**Objects of the Game.** The object of the highest bidder is to make good his contract by scoring the points for melds shown on the table, the points laid away in his discard, and if these are not enough to equal his bid, to win the further necessary points in the play of the hand.

The object of the adversaries is to prevent the bidder from making enough points in play to fulfil his bid, if he has not already secured them in his melds and discards. If they succeed in this, they score double the amount of the bid in penalties, and he scores nothing.

**Abandoned Hands.** The bidder, upon seeing the cards in the widow, may abandon all attempts to make good his bid if he considers it improbable or impossible, and may pay the exact amount of the bid to each of his opponents, whereupon the deal passes to the left. The announcement to abandon the hand must be made before laying out any melds or announcing the trump.

**The Play.** If the bidder decides to play the hand, or to meld enough to make good, he lays out for his discard and then makes his melds; after which, if that is not enough, he leads any card he pleases for the first trick. Each player in turn to the left must follow suit if he can. If he cannot follow suit he must trump if he has a trump, and if a trick is already trumped and he cannot follow suit, he must play a trump and also over trump if he can.

If two cards of the same value numerically, such as two tens, are played to the same trick, the first one played wins. A lead out of turn loses the game immediately.

**Revokes.** Failure to follow suit when able to do so, or to head a trick or play trumps when required to do so, or to trump a trick while still holding some of that suit, is a revoke. It is too late to correct a revoke after the card played in error has been placed face upward on the table, so that another player can see any portion of its face. A revoke immediately loses the game.

**Scoring.** In this modified form of pinochle, the trump sequence is usually valued at 150 only, instead of being considered as a double meld, 40 and 150, or 190. The "round trip," four kings and queens of different suits, is scored as 240, instead of 220 only, the fourth queen being scored without being laid down separately as either completing 60 queens or marriage. The dix, nine of trumps, must be held by the bidder to be scored.

In addition to the melds, the bidder scores for all points won in tricks, and laid away in his discards, if they are enough to make good his bid. The moment the bid is covered, any further play is unnecessary, as that is all he can score.

The value of the bid is usually divided by ten for the recorded score, so that a bid of 260 would be credited as 26. Some players throw off all the points below 50, and add for all over 50, so that 340 would be 30, and 360 would be 40. Although the bidder may score only 30, he must make 340 if he bids it.

When the bidder fails each adversary, including the fourth player if there is one, scores the full amount of the bidder's loss.

**Premiums.** In order to encourage players to bid the full value of their hands, it is usual to pay a bonus for unusually high bids if they are successful.

Bids between 350 and 399, pay.....	50
Bids between 400 and 449, pay.....	80
Bids between 450 and 499, pay.....	100
Bids of 500 or more, pay.....	120

If any of these bids fail, they simply lose double their face value, not double the premium they would have earned.

**Probabilities.** There is room for a good deal of speculation in this form of pinochle with regard to the chances of finding certain cards in the widow that would enhance the value of the bidder's hand. As he holds only 15 of 48 cards, and there are 33 unknown cards, only 3 of which are in the widow, it is 10 to 1 against any single named card being there.

Suppose a player held two aces, kings, queens, and jacks of spades, with one ten, there would be only 3 chances out of 33, or 10 to 1 against finding the other spade ten in the widow. But if there are two cards that will fill the hand, such as either of the two tens, when the player holds A K Q J, it is only 5 to 1 against it.

In many cases there are a number of cards that would improve the hand, and the chances may be in favor of getting at least one of them. Suppose the bidder holds A K Q J of spades, two other aces, different suits, two other king-queen marriages. If he finds in the widow the spade ten, a fourth ace, king, or queen, or another king-queen marriage, any of these would add to the melding value of his hand, and also to its playing strength.

## SIXTY-SIX.

Sixty-six is one of the simplest forms of Bézique, and is an extremely good game for two persons with one pack of cards.

**Cards.** Sixty-six is played with a pack of twenty-four cards, all below the Nine being deleted. The cards rank, A 10 K Q J 9; the Ace being the highest, both in cutting and in play.

**Markers.** The game may be kept with the small cards in the unused portion of the pack, or with a whist marker or counters. Anything that will score up to seven points will do.

**Players.** The regular game is played by two persons, one of whom is known as the dealer, and the other as the pone. They cut for seats and deal, the highest cut having the choice.

**Stakes.** Sixty-six is played for so much a game, or for so much a point, the loser's score being deducted from the winner's. If the loser has not scored at all, it is usually counted a double game.

**Dealing.** The cards having been shuffled and presented to the pone to be cut, the dealer gives six cards to each player, three at a time, dealing first to his adversary. There are several ways of making the trump, one of which should be agreed upon before play begins. One way is for the pone to draw a card from the top, the middle, or the bottom of the talon, after the dealer has given each player his six cards. Another way is for the dealer to turn up the seventh card, after dealing the first round of three to each player. Another, and the one generally adopted in America, is for the dealer to turn up the thirteenth card for the trump, after giving six cards to each player. The trump card is left face upward on the table, and is usually placed under the remainder of the pack, which is slightly spread, face down, for the players to draw from.

The general rules for irregularities in the deal are the same as in Binocle. A misdeal does not lose the deal.

**Objects of the Game.** The object of the game, as its name implies, is to count sixty-six. If a player can get sixty-six before his adversary, he counts one point toward game. If he gets sixty-six before his opponent gets thirty-three, which is called *schneider*, he counts two. If he gets sixty-six before his adversary wins a trick, which is called *schwartz*, he counts three. The player first making seven points in this manner wins the game.

A player may reach sixty-six by winning tricks containing certain counting cards; by holding and announcing marriages, which are the King and Queen of any suit; and by winning the last trick.

The various counts for these are as follows:—

For King and Queen of trumps, <i>Royal Marriage</i> ,	40
For King and Queen of any plain suit, <i>Marriage</i> ,	20
For the Ace of any suit,	11
For the Ten of any suit,	10
For the King of any suit,	4
For the Queen of any suit,	3
For the Jack of any suit,	2
For the last or twelfth trick,	10

The marriages count for the player holding and announcing them; all other points for the player actually winning them. The last trick does not count unless it is the twelfth; that is, not unless every card is played.

**Method of Playing.** The pone begins by leading any card he pleases. The second player in any trick is not obliged to follow suit, even in trumps; but may renounce or trump at pleasure until the players cease to draw from the stock. If the second player follows suit, the higher card wins the trick. Trumps win all other suits.

**Drawing.** The winner of the trick takes in the cards, turning them face down; but before he leads for the next trick he draws a card from the top of the stock, and places it in his hand without showing or naming it. His adversary then draws the next card, so that each restores the number of cards in his hand to six.

**The Trump.** If either player holds or draws the Nine of trumps, he may exchange it for the turn-up at any time, provided he has already won a trick. This need not be the trick immediately before exchanging, and he need not wait to get the lead before making the exchange. For instance: A player holding the Nine, and having to play to his adversary's lead, may win the trick with the turn-up card, leaving the Nine in its place, provided he has won some previous trick. There is no count for dix, as in



Bézique and Binocle, and the player is not obliged to exchange unless he wishes to do so. If the Nine is the last card in the stock, it is, of course, too late to exchange it, and the player drawing it must keep it.

**Marriages.** If a player holds both King and Queen of any suit, he may count 20 points towards 66 for the marriage, or 40 for royal marriage, by leading either of the marriage cards. It is not necessary for the King or Queen so led to win the trick; but the player declaring a marriage must have the lead, and must have won a trick, or he cannot count it. The pone may declare a marriage on his first lead; but it will not count unless he wins some subsequent trick, and if his adversary gets to 66 before the pone gets a trick, the marriage is lost, and the pone is schwartz.

If the 20 or 40 claimed for the marriage is enough to carry the player's count to 66 or beyond, the marriage need only be shown and claimed, without leading it, and the remaining cards are then abandoned, provided the count is correct. Only one marriage can be shown but not led in this manner.

In the ordinary course of play it is not necessary to show both cards of the marriage unless the adversary asks to see them. The player simply leads the King or Queen, and says: "Twenty," or "Forty," as the case may be. If he leads a King or Queen without claiming any count, it is evident that he has not a marriage. If he has simply forgotten to claim it, he cannot amend the error after his adversary has played to the trick, and the score is lost. To avoid disputes, careful players leave one of the marriage cards face up among their cards, as a reminder that a marriage was claimed in that suit, either by the player with the card turned, or by his adversary.

**Counting.** A player is not allowed to make any record of his progress toward sixty-six, but must keep his count mentally. It is highly important to keep both your own and your adversary's count, in order that you may always know how many each of you wants to reach 66. A player is not allowed to go back over his tricks to refresh his memory, and if he looks at any trick but the last one turned and quitted, he loses the privilege of "closing."

All *irregularities* in playing and drawing are governed by the same rules as in Binocle.

**The Last Six Tricks.** After the stock is exhausted, marriages may still be led or shown, and scored; but the second player in each trick must follow suit if he can, although he is not obliged to win the trick unless he chooses to do so. If all the cards are played, the winner of the last or twelfth trick, counts 10 for it toward his 66.

**Announcing Sixty-six.** If neither of the players has claimed to have reached 66 until after the last trick is played, both

turn over their cards and count their points. If only one has reached 66, he counts one or two points, according to his adversary's count. If neither has reached 66, which is possible if no marriages have been declared; or if both have 66 or more, and neither has claimed it, neither side scores, but the winner on the next deal adds one to whatever he may make. For instance: A and B are adversaries, and the last trick is played without either announcing that he is sixty-six. On counting, it is found that A has 48 points and a marriage, 68 altogether, while B has 72 points and the last trick, 82 altogether. Neither counts anything. On the next deal let us suppose that A makes 66 before B gets out of schneider, which will give A two points. To these he adds one for the tie on the last deal, and scores three altogether.

**Closing.** Closing is turning the trump card face down on the remainder of the pack, which signifies that there shall be no more drawing from the stock, and that the second player in each trick must follow suit if he can, although he is not obliged to win the trick.

A player can close only when he has the lead, but having the lead, he may close at any time. The pone may close before leading for the first trick; or after winning the first trick, and before drawing from the stock. The leader may close after one or more tricks have been played, and he may close without drawing from the stock; or he may draw, and then close. If the leader closes without drawing, his adversary must play without drawing.

When the stock is closed, the player holding the Nine of trumps may still exchange it for the trump card, whether he is the closer or not, provided he has previously won a trick. It is usual for the closer, if he does not hold the Nine himself, to take up the trump card and offer it to his adversary. This is an intimation that he is about to turn it down if his adversary does not want it. It is sometimes better not to exchange when the game is closed, as it may give the adversary a good counting card if he can catch all your trumps.

There is no score for the last trick when the game is closed, because the number of tricks played will then be less than twelve.

As closing gives peculiar advantages to the closer, there are certain forfeits if a person closes and fails to reach 66. There are three varieties of closing, which are as follows:—

If, during the play of the hand, either player thinks he has reached 66, he closes, and turns over the tricks he has already won. If he is correct, he scores one, two, or three points, according to the condition of his adversary's count. But if he is not correct, and has not quite reached 66, his adversary scores two points in any case, and if the non-closer had not won a trick up to the time the stock was closed, he scores three; because that is the number the closer would have won if he had been correct in his count.

If a player thinks he would have a better chance to reach 66 first if his adversary was compelled to follow suit, he may close the stock. For instance: A's mental count is 35, and he holds in his hand a marriage, and the Ace of another plain suit; but no trumps. If he closes at once, and leads the Ace, his adversary will have to follow suit, and the 11 points will put the closing player to 46. He can then show his marriage, without leading it, and claim 66. But if the adversary should turn out to have none of the suit led, and should trump the Ace, A might never reach 66, and B would count two points.

A player may close, hoping to make schneider or schwartz. For instance: A knows his score is 13, while B has 32. A has royal marriage and Ace of trumps in his hand, and the Nine is turned up. If A closes, and so compels B to follow suit, he must catch the Jack or Ten of trumps by leading the Ace. If he catches the Jack, that will put him to 26, and showing the royal marriage will put him 66, and make B schneider. If B has no trump, one of the marriage cards can be led without any fear of losing it, and that will put A to 66, even if B plays a Nine to both leads. But if A leads the ace of trumps without closing, B is not compelled to follow suit, and might play the Nine of a plain suit to the Ace of trumps. If A then closed or played on without closing, B might win one of the marriage cards with the Ten, and not only get out of schneider, but reach 66 in plain suits before A could win another trick.

On the same principle, a player may think he can reach 66 before his adversary can win a trick, provided he can compel him to follow suit. With two plain-suit Aces and the royal marriage, the pone would close before playing to the first trick, trusting to catch at least 4 points with his two aces, and then to show the marriage, making his adversary schwartz.

Some judgment is necessary in deciding whether or not to draw before closing. If a player is allowed to draw, he may get a trump, or a guard to one that you suspect he has. Suppose he has exchanged the Nine for the Ten, and you have Ace and royal marriage; it is very likely that the Ten is unguarded, and if you close without drawing you may catch it, which will make your three trumps alone good for 68. This also shows that the player should not have taken up the Ten until he wanted to use it.

Nothing is gained by closing, except compelling the adversary to follow suit; because if you close to make him schwartz, and he gets a trick, you count two only; if you close to make him schneider, and he gets out, you count one only. If you fail in the first case, he counts three, and any failure will give him two points.



## THREE-HANDED SIXTY-SIX.

This is exactly the same as the ordinary game, except that the dealer takes no cards, but scores whatever points are won on the hand he deals. If neither of the others score, either through each making 65, or one failing to claim 66, the dealer scores one point, and the others get nothing. The dealer cannot go out on his own deal. He must stop at six, and win out by his own play.

There are two ways to settle: Each may pay a certain amount to the pool, and the first man out take it all; or, after one is out, the two remaining finish the game, and the loser pays both or settles for the refreshments, as the case may be. If the first man goes out when it will be his turn to deal, he must deal the next hand.

---

## FOUR-HANDED SIXTY-SIX.

This game is sometimes called *Kreutz-mariage*, owing to the German fashion of dealing the cards in the form of a cross; but as the cards are not dealt that way, and marriages are not scored in America, the name is not appropriate in this country.

The pack is increased to thirty-two cards by the addition of the Sevens and Eights. After the cards are cut by the pone, the dealer gives three to each player on the first round, then two, and then three again, turning up the last card for the trump. In Germany the dealer first gives two cards to his partner, then two to his left hand adversary, then two to his right hand adversary, and finally two to himself. This is continued for four rounds, so that each player receives eight cards, and the last is turned up for the trump. The turned-up trump belongs to the dealer, and cannot be exchanged.

In this form of the game the players must not only follow suit, but must win the trick if they can, and must trump and over-trump if possible. A player is even obliged to win his partner's trick. Owing to this rule, a player with good plain suit cards will usually attempt to exhaust the trumps as rapidly as possible.

The *counting cards* are the same as in Sixty-six, and the winner of the last trick counts 10. As there is no stock, there is no closing; and as marriages are not counted in America, the 66 points must be made on cards alone.

The scores for *schneider* and *schwartz* are the same as in Sixty-six, and seven points is game. There are 130 points made in every deal, so if one side gets more than 66 and less than 100, their adversaries must be out of schneider, and the winners count one. More than 100, but less than 130 is schneider, and counts two. If the winners take every trick, making 130 points, they score three. Sometimes an extra point is scored for winning the Ten of trumps; but such a count is quite foreign to the game.

## NATIONAL GAMES.

---

There are certain games of cards which do not seem to belong to any particular family, but stand apart from other games, and have been played since their first invention with only trifling variations, giving rise to no offshoots bearing other names. These are usually the most popular games with the middle and lower classes in the countries in which they are found, and may be considered as distinctly national in character. Games that become popular with the masses always last longer than others, and the rules governing them are much better understood, and more firmly established. In the course of a century the English aristocracy have run the gamut of Quadrille, Ombre, Whist, Écarté, Bézique, Piquet, Rubicon, and Bridge; while the middle classes have stuck steadily to Cribbage for nearly two hundred years.

Six of these popular games are strikingly typical of the national character, both in their construction, and in the manner of playing them. These are: Skat in Germany; Cribbage in England; Piquet in France; Conquian in Mexico; Calabresella in Italy; and Cassino in America. All these are excellent games, and have deservedly survived much more pretentious rivals.

With the exception of Skat, little is known of the exact origin of any of these games, although most of them may be traced by their resemblance to more ancient forms. Skat is the most modern, and to-day the most popular, many persons thinking it superior to Whist. The game seems to have originated among the farmers of Thuringia, a province of Saxony, and was probably a variation of the Wendish game of Schapsskopf. The first mention of Skat that we can find is in an article in the "*Osterländer Blättern*," in 1818. Thirty years later Professor Hempel of Altenburg published the rules and principles of the game under the title: "*Das Skatspiel, von J. F. L. H.*" It is said that he learned the game from a friend, who had been taught it by a Wendish coachman in his employ. The game spread rapidly, and soon became popular all over Germany, but with many minor variations in the details of play. To settle these, a Skat congress was finally held in Altenburg in 1886. This was succeeded by others in Leipzig

and Dresden, and the result of these meetings has been to weed out all the minor differences in play, and to settle upon a universal code of laws for the game, which is called Reichs-Skat.

In America, Reichs-Skat is no longer played; the value of some of the games is changed, and all the bidding is by Zahlen-reizen. In all the text-books on Skat which we have examined, this fact has been entirely overlooked.

---

## SKAT.

The etymology of the word Skat, sometimes spelt Scat, is a matter of doubt, but the most plausible explanation is that it is a corruption of one of the terms in the parent game of Taroc; "scart," from "scarto," what is left; or "scartare," to discard or reject. "Matadore" is another word from the game of Taroc, still retained in Skat. Others attribute the word to "Skatt," the Old-German or Anglo-Saxon for money; the modern German, "Schatz," a treasure, referring to the forms of the game in which good counting cards are laid aside in the skat for the count at the end of the hand. This derivation would account for both spellings of the word, with a "k" and with a "c."

The student is advised to make himself familiar with the German terms in the following description, as they are in common use wherever skat is played. Many American players who use the English language in bidding by figures, still adhere to the German names for the suits and positions at the table.

**CARDS.** Skat is played with a pack of thirty-two cards, all below the Seven being deleted. The rank of the cards differs according to whether the players are attempting to win or to lose tricks. If the object is to win tricks, it is known as a "game;" if the object is to lose, it is called a "nullo." In nullo the cards rank in their natural order; A K Q J 10 9 8 7, the Ace being the highest. In the various "games," the four Jacks are always the best trumps, and are known as *Wenzels*. The other cards follow the usual German rank; A 10 K Q 9 8 7, the Ace being the highest in plain suits.

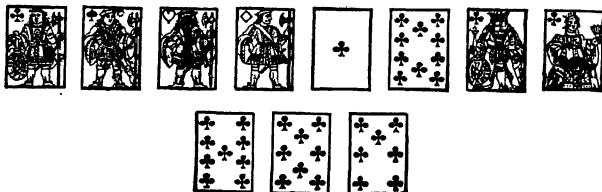
The German names for the cards are as follows;—**Jack:** Wenzel, Bauern, Bube, Jungen, or Unter. **Ace:** As, or Daus. **Ten,** Zehn. **King,** König. **Queen:** Dame, Ober, or Königen. **Nine,** Neun. **Eight,** Acht. **Seven,** Sieben. The most common terms are; Bube, As, Zehn, König, Dame, etc. The words Unter and Ober for the Jack and Queen, refer to the manner of marking the suits on the German cards. In the Queens, the mark of the suit is always above the figure, which has a single head;

in the Jacks the suit mark is always under the figure. This distinction is necessary, because in the German cards the Queen is a male figure. The King has two suit marks, one on each side of the head. When the French or American double-head cards are used, with suit-marks in both corners, the words "ober" and "unter" have no meaning; Dame and Bube being used instead.

**Rank of the Suits.** In addition to the rank of the cards themselves, the suits outrank one another, except in Nullo, clubs being always the best, then spades, hearts and diamonds. The Germans have various names for the suits, that first given in each instance being in common use among modern Germans. **Clubs:** Kreuz, Trefle, Eichel, Eckern, or Braün. **Spades:** Pique, Schüppen, Laub, or Grün. **Hearts:** Herten, Cœur, or Roth. **Diamonds:** Carreau, Schellen, Eckstein, Ruthen, or Gelb. In the German notation of card games and problems, the suits are indicated by the French terms: clubs, *tr* for trefle; spades, *p* for pique; hearts, *co* for cœur; diamonds, *car* for carreau. The cards are indicated by the initials; A K D B Z 9 8 7, which stand for As, König, Dame, Bube, Zehn, etc. The winning card in each trick is always printed in full-faced type.

The cards of each suit are divided into two parts, known as counting cards, *Zahlkarten*, and those having no counting value; *Fehlkarten*, or Ladons. The counting cards and their values are as follows:—Ace 11, Ten 10, King 4, Queen 3, and Jack 2. These are used in reckoning up the value of the tricks won by each side in counting toward 61 in all the "games," but not in Nullo. The Seven, Eight and Nine have no counting value.

The rank of the suits has no influence on their trick-taking powers, nor on the value of the *Zahlkarten*; but it increases or diminishes the value of the "game" played for. When any suit is made the trump, it takes the precedence of the three others only in so far as trumps will win other suits, and the suits which are not trumps are equal in value so far as trick-taking is concerned. As the four Wenzels are always the highest trumps, there will always be eleven cards in the trump suit, and seven in each of the plain suits; so that if clubs were trumps, the rank of the cards would be:—

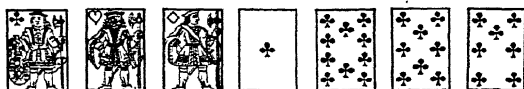




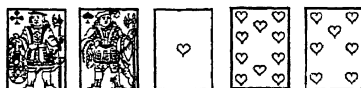
In any of the other suits the rank would be:—



**Matadores.** The club Jack is always the best trump, and every trump card in unbroken sequence with the club Jack is called a Matadore, provided the sequence is in the hand of the same player. This rule holds whether the sequence was in the hand originally dealt to him or part of it is found in the Skat, should he become possessed of the Skat cards. For instance: Clubs are trumps, and a player holds these cards:—



He has only one Matadore; but as the Skat cards will belong to him if he has made the trump, he may find in them the spade Jack, which would complete his sequence, giving him six Matadores, instead of one. As one side or the other must have the club Jack in every deal, there must always be a certain number of Matadores, from one to eleven. If the player who makes the trump has them, he is said to play *with* so many; if his adversaries hold them, he is said to play *without* just as many as they hold. The difficult thing for the beginner at Skat to understand is that whether a player holds the Matadores or not, the number of them has exactly the same influence on the value of his game. If one player held these cards



and wished to make hearts trumps, he would be playing "with two." If another player wished to make the same suit trumps with these cards:—



he would be playing "without two," and the value of each game would be exactly the same, no matter which player actually made the trump. Matadores must be held; they do not count if won from the adversaries in the course of play.

**MARKERS.** Counters of any kind are not used in Skat, as the score is kept on a writing pad, which should be ruled into vertical columns for the number of players engaged.

**PLAYERS.** Skat is played by three persons. If there are four at the table the dealer takes no cards, but shares the fortunes of those who are opposed to the single player, winning and losing on each hand whatever they win and lose. If there are five or six at the table, the dealer gives cards to the two on his left, and the one next him on the right. Those holding no cards share the fortunes of the two who are opposed to the single player.

After the table is formed, no one can join the game without the consent of all those already in, and then only after a *round*; that is, after each player at the table has had an equal number of deals. Should any player cut into a table during the progress of a game, he must take his seat at the right of the player who dealt the first hand. When six persons offer for play, it is much better to form two tables, but some persons object to playing continuously, and like the rest given to the dealer when more than three play.

There are always three active players in Skat. The one who makes the trump is called *the player*, or *Spieler*; the two opposed to him are called the *adversaries*, or *Gegner*; while those who hold no cards are called *im Skat*, or *Theilnehmer*. Of the three active players, the one who leads for the first trick is called *Vorhand*; the second player is called *Mittelhand*, and the third *Hinterhand*. The person sitting on the dealer's right, to whom the cards are presented to be cut, is called the *pone*.

No person is allowed to withdraw from the game without giving notice in advance, and he can retire only at the end of a round of deals. It is usual to give notice at the beginning of a round, by saying: "This is my last."

**CUTTING.** Positions at the table are drawn for, the cards ranking as in play, Jacks being the best, and the suits outranking one another in order, so that there can be no ties in cutting. The lowest cut has the first choice of seats, and also deals the first hand. It is usual for the player sitting on the right of the first dealer to keep the score, so that one may always know when a round ends.

**STAKES.** Skat is played for so much a point, and the single player wins from or loses to each of the others at the table. A cent a point is considered a pretty stiff game, half a cent being more common in good clubs. Many play for a fifth, or even a tenth of a cent a point. At half a cent a point, ten dollars will usually cover a run of pretty bad luck in an evening's play.

**DEALING.** At the beginning of the game the cards should

be counted and thoroughly shuffled, and shuffled at least three times before each deal thereafter. The dealer presents the pack to the pone to be cut, and at least five cards must be left in each packet. The cards are dealt from left to right in rotation, and the deal passes to the left in regular order.

Only three persons at the table receive cards, no matter how many are in the game. If there are four players, the dealer gives himself no cards. If there are five or six players, the first two on the dealer's left and the pone receive cards. The other persons at the table are said to be "im Skat," because they are laid aside for that deal.

The cards may be distributed in several ways, but whichever manner the first dealer selects must be continued during the game, both by the original dealer, and by the others at the table. Ten cards are given to each player, and two are dealt face downward in the centre of the table for the Skat. No trump is turned. The cards must be dealt, three cards to each player, then two to the Skat, then four to each player again, and finally three.

***Irregularities in the Deal.*** If the pack is found to be imperfect, the deal in which the error is discovered is void; but any previous scores or cuts made with that pack stand good. If the cards have not been cut, or if a card is found faced in the pack, or if the dealer exposes a card in dealing, any active player who has not looked at his cards may demand a fresh deal by the same dealer. If the dealer gives too many or too few cards to any player, he must shuffle and deal again. If the error is not discovered until the hand is partly played out, the deal is void, and the misdealer deals again. A misdeal does not lose the deal under any circumstances, but it is usual to exact a penalty of ten points for a misdeal.

***OBJECTS OF THE GAME.*** The object of each player is to obtain the privilege of attempting to accomplish a certain task, which is known as his "game," and which he must be able to carry through successfully against the combined efforts of the two other players. The more difficult the task undertaken, the greater the number of points scored for it, and the player who will undertake the game which is of the greatest value of those offered must be allowed the privilege of trying it. In order to determine which player this is, they may all bid for the privilege by naming a certain number of points, usually well within the actual value of the game they intend to play. If a bidder meets with opposition, he gradually approaches the true value of his game, and the player whose game is worth the most will of course be able to bid the greatest number of points, and must be selected as the player, the two others being his adversaries.

***Games.*** These games are divided into two principal classes, those in which the player undertakes to win, and those in which he tries to lose. When he plays to lose, it is to lose every trick.

there being no trump suit, and the cards in each suit ranking A K Q J 10 9 8 7. These games are called *Null*, or *Nullo*. and *Null Ouvert*, the latter being played with the successful bidder's cards exposed face upward on the table, but not liable to be called. The moment he wins a trick in a *Nullo*, he loses his game. *Nullos* are quite foreign to *Skat*, and appear to have been introduced as a consolation for players who always hold bad cards.

When *Ramsch* is played, the object is to take less than either of the other players; but the cards rank as in the ordinary game, except that the four Jacks are the only trumps.

In all other games the successful bidder undertakes to win; but his success does not depend on the number of tricks he takes in, but on the total value of the counting cards contained in those tricks. The total value of all the counting cards is 120 points, and to be successful, the single player must win at least 61. If he succeeds in winning 61 or more points, he wins his game, whatever it may be. If he can get 91 points, he wins a double game, which is called *schneider*. If he can take every trick, he wins a treble game, which is called *schwartz*. It is not enough to win 120 points, for if the adversaries win a single trick, even if it contains no counting cards, they save the *schwartz*.

If the single player fails to reach 61, he loses. If he fails to reach 31, he is *schneider*; and if he fails to take a trick he is *schwartz*. These various results increase the value of the game, as will presently be seen.

There are four varieties of games in which the successful bidder plays to win, the difference being in the manner of using the skat cards, and making the trump. These games are called *Frage*, *Tourne*, *Solo*, and *Grand*, and they outrank one another in the order given, *Frage* being the lowest. The first three: *Frage*, *Tourné* and *Solo*, are each again divided into four parts, according to the suit which is trumps; a *Tourné* in clubs being better than one in spades; a *Solo* in hearts being better than one in diamonds, and so on. This is in accordance with the rank of the suits already mentioned in the paragraph devoted to that subject.

In a *Frage*, or Simple Game, the successful bidder takes both the skat cards into his hand, and then declares which suit shall be the trump; discarding two cards face downward for his *schatz*, or treasure, before play begins. The two cards thus laid aside count for the single player at the end of the hand, provided he takes a trick, and they cannot be won by the adversaries unless they make the single player *schwarz*. *Frage* is no longer played.

In a *Tourné*, the successful bidder turns one of the skat cards face upward on the table before looking at the second card. He may turn over whichever card he pleases, but the one he turns fixes the trump suit for that hand. If the card turned over is a Jack, he may change to a *Grand*; but he must do so before he sees the second card in the *Skat*.

If the player does not like the first card he turns, he need not show it, but may put it in his hand and turn the other. This second one must be the trump; or a Grand may be played if the card is a Jack. In case the game is lost after taking the second card, it costs double. This is called *Passt mir Nicht*.

In a *Solo*, the skat cards are not touched, the successful bidder naming the trump to suit the hand of ten cards originally dealt him. The Skat belongs to him, as in Frage and Tourné, but he must not see its contents until the hand is played out, when any points and Matadores it may contain will count for him.

In a *Grand* there is no trump suit, the four Jacks being the only trumps in play. These four cards preserve their relative suit value, the club Jack being the best, and they are still Matadores. There are four varieties of Grand: A tourné player may make it a Grand if he turns up a Jack. This is called a *Grand Tourné*. A player may make it a grand without seeing either of the skat cards. This is called a *Grand Solo*. A player may announce a Grand and lay his cards face up on the table; exposed, but not liable to be called. This is called a *Grand Ouvert*. A Frage cannot be played as a Grand under any circumstances. A player may announce *Gucki Grand*, which means that he will take both the skat cards into his hand at once, in order to get the privilege of laying out any two cards he pleases, but that Jacks will be the only trumps. If a Gucki Grand is lost, it costs double.

A player may announce a *Gucki Nullo*, in which he takes both the skat cards into his hand and lays out any two cards he pleases. This loses double if it is not successful.

*Revolution* is seldom played. It is a Nullo in which the adversaries put their twenty cards together as one hand to see if they can make the player take a trick.

*Uno* and *Duo* are Grands, in which the single player engages to take one trick in Uno, or two in Duo, neither more nor less.

**GAME VALUES.** Each of the foregoing games has what is called a unit of value, which is afterward multiplied several times according to the number of Matadores, and whether the game was *schneider* or *schwarz*.

These unit values are as follows, beginning with the lowest:

Suits Trumps:—			Jacks Trumps:—		No Trumps:—	
	Turn	Solo	Turned Grand		Gucki Nullo.....	
♦	5	9	Gucki Grand..	16	“ if played open	30
♥	6	10	Solo Grand...	20	Solo Nullo.....	20
♠	7	11	Open Grand ..	24	“ if played open	40
♣	8	12	Ramsch .....	20	Revolution .....	60

When one player takes no trick in a Ramsch, the player with the greater number of points loses 30. If two players take no trick, the loss is 50 points.

*All Guckis lose double if they fail*, so that if a player announces a Gucki Nullo and loses it, he will lose 30; but if he won it he would get 15 only. If a player has a Gucki Null Ouvert, he must announce that it is to be played open before he touches the skat cards. It is then worth 30 if won; 60 if lost.

*Passt-mir-nicht tournées all lose double if they fail*, but win the usual number of points if they succeed.

**Multipliers.** The foregoing are simply the standard counting values of these various games. In calculating the actual value of a player's game, in order to see how much he may safely offer in the bidding, and how much he would win if successful in his undertaking, these standard values are multiplied as follows:—

Five classes of games are recognized, beginning with the lowest, in which the player gets the necessary 61 points, but does not make his adversaries schneider. This is simply called "game," and as it must always be either won or lost, it is a constant factor. The value of the game is 1, and each better game is numbered in regular order, the five varieties being as follows:

The Game, 1. Schneider, 2. Schwarz announced or Schwarz, 3. Schwarz after announcing Schneider, 4. Schwarz announced, 5.

These numbers are added to the number of Matadores, and the total thus found is multiplied by the unit value of the game. For instance: A player has obtained the privilege of playing on a bid of thirty. His game is a Solo in hearts, in which he holds the three highest Matadores and announces schneider in advance. His game multiplier is therefore 3 (for the announced schneider), to which he adds 3 more for the Matadores, 6 altogether. The unit value of a heart Solo being 10, he could have gone on bidding to 60 had it been necessary, and he will win 60 from each of his adversaries if he succeeds in reaching 91 points in the counting cards he takes in in his tricks, together with what he finds in the Skat.

If his adversaries got to 30 with their counting cards, he would have lost 60 to each of them, although he bid only 30, because he announced his game as schneider, and did not make it. Had he not announced the schneider, and reached 91 or more in his counting cards, he would have won a game worth 50, losing the extra multiplier by not announcing the schneider in advance; for a schneider made without announcing it is worth only 2.

In reckoning the value of a game it is always safer to bid on playing "with" than "without" Matadores in a Solo or Tourné; because, although you may have a hand "without four," you may find a Wenzel in the Skat, and if it is the club Jack you lose three multipliers at once.

**BIDDING.** The players must be familiar with the manner of computing the various games in order to bid with judgment, and without hesitation. Suppose you hold the three highest Matadores with an average hand, not strong enough in any one suit to play a Solo, but good enough for a Tourné. Your smallest possible game will be diamonds with three; which will be worth 5 multiplied by 4; 1 for the game, and 3 for the Matadores, 20 points. If you can get the game on any bid less than 20 you are absolutely safe, provided you can reach 61 in your tricks. But the opposition of another player may irritate you, [reizen,] and provoke you to bid 24, or even 28, in the hope of turning a heart or a spade. If you go beyond 20, and turn a diamond, you must either find the fourth Matadore in the Skat, or make your adversaries schneider, in order to secure another multiplier. If you fail, you lose 24, or 28, according to your bid.

The great difficulty in Skat is to judge the value of a hand, so as neither to under nor overbid it, and also to get all out of it that it is worth. A person who plays a Frage in hearts when he could easily have made it a Solo, reduces the value of his game just eighty per cent. A player with the four Wenzels, A K Q 9 8 of diamonds, and a losing card, would be foolish to play a diamond Solo with five, schneider announced, worth 72; while he had in his hand a sure Grand, with four, schneider announced, worth 140. Of course the schneider is not a certainty. The risk is that the Ten of diamonds will be guarded, and that an Ace and a Ten will make, both of them on your losing card, or one of them on the diamond Ten. A careful player would be satisfied with 100 on such a hand, for if he fails to make the announced schneider, he loses everything.

A player is not obliged to play the game he originally intended to, if he thinks he has anything better; but he must play a game worth as much as he bid, or the next higher, and having once announced his game, he must play it.

Suppose Vorhand has a spade Solo with two, and on being offered 33 says, "Yes," thinking the bidder will go on to 36, instead of which he passes. It is very probable that the bidder has a spade Solo without two, and will defeat a spade Solo announced by Vorhand. If Vorhand has almost as good a game in hearts, he should change, hoping to make schneider, or to find another Matadore in the Skat. If he loses the game, a heart Solo with two costs 30 points; but as Vorhand refused 33, and the next best game he could have made with a heart Solo is 40, that is the amount he loses, although he refused only 33.

**Method of Bidding.** The Vorhand always holds the play, and the Mittelhand always makes the first bid, or passes, the Hinterhand saying nothing until the propositions made by the Mittel-

hand have been finally refused or passed by the Vorhand. The usual formula is for the Vorhand to say, "How many?" or, "I am Vorhand," whereupon the Mittelhand bids or passes. If Vorhand has as good a game as offered him he says, "Yes," and Mittelhand must bid higher or pass. If Vorhand has not as good a game he may either pass, or bluff the bidder into going higher by saying, "Yes." As soon as one passes, the other turns to the Hinterhand, who must either make a higher bid than the last, or pass. The survivor of the first two must either say, "Yes," to the offers made by Hinterhand, or pass. The final survivor then announces his game. It is usual for the last one to pass to signify that he is done by pushing the skat cards toward the survivor, indicating that they are his, and that he is the player. If a player is offered a game equal to his own he may still say, "Yes," but if he is offered a better game, and still says, "Yes," he runs the risk of being compelled to play.

The old German way of bidding, adopted at the Skat Congresses in Altenburg, Leipzig and Dresden, was to bid in suits; a bid of club Solo outranking one of spade Solo, no matter what it was worth. This has long been obsolete, the objection to it being that a player might get the play on a game of much inferior value. A player with a spade Solo, six Matadores, and schneider announced could offer only a spade Solo, without mentioning its value, and although his game was worth 99, he could be outbid by an offer of Nullo, which was then worth only 20. This is contrary to the spirit of the game, which requires that the person offering the game of the greatest value shall be the player. The rank of the bids in the old German game was as follows, beginning with the lowest :—

Frage, in the order of the suits.  
 Tourné, in the order of the suits.  
 Grand Tourné.  
 Solo in diamonds, hearts and spades.  
 Nullo, worth 20.  
 Solo in clubs.  
 Grand Solo, worth 16.  
 Null ouvert, worth 40.  
 Grand ouvert.

The multipliers were the same as those used in the modern game, but the player had no means of using them in his bids. It will be observed that the modern value of the various games seeks to preserve the old rank by assuming the lowest possible bid on any given game.

In some parts of Germany it is still the custom to reckon Solos at the tourné values, simply adding one multiplier for "out of



hand." Thus a spade Solo with two would be reckoned; "with two, one for game, one for out of hand; four times seven, or twenty-eight." Note that seven is *tourné* value for spades.

**THE SKAT CARDS.** The successful bidder determined, the skat cards are pushed towards him, and the manner in which he uses them limits the game he is allowed to play. While the player must win or lose a game worth as many as bid, he may attempt to win as many more as he pleases. If he has got the play on a bid of ten, that does not prevent him from playing a club Solo, with *schneider* announced. But if he has bid or refused eleven, and plays a *tourné* in diamonds, he must make *schneider* or play with or without two *Matadores* in order to bring his multipliers up to three. If both these fail him he loses 15, the next higher game than his bid possible in a diamond *tourné*.

As *Frage* is no longer played on account of its small value, if the player takes both the skat cards into his hand at the same time, without showing them, his game must be a *Gucki Grand*, unless he has previously announced that it is a *Gucki Nullo*. His game announced, he lays out any two cards he pleases for his skat, so as to play with ten only.

If the player turns over either of the skat cards, his game is limited to a *tourné*. If he turns a Jack, he may change to *Grand*, but not to *Grand Ouvert*. Neither *schneider* nor *schwarz* can be announced in any game in which the skat cards are used. A *tourné* player must lay out two skat cards to reduce his hand to ten cards.

If the player neither turns over nor takes into his hand either of the skat cards, he may play any of the suit Solos, *Grand Solo*, *Grand Ouvert*, *Nullo*, or *Null Ouvert*. He may announce *schneider* or *schwarz* in any Solo.

Any player looking at the skat cards before the beginning of the play is debarred from bidding that deal, and is penalised ten points in the score. In addition to this penalty, either or the other players may demand a fresh deal. If a player looks at the skat cards during the play of a hand the play is immediately stopped, and if he is the single player he can count only the points taken in up to that time, exclusive of the skat. These points are deducted from 120, and his adversaries claim the difference. The game is then settled, according to this count, exactly as if the hand had been played out. If an adversary of the single player looks at either of the skat cards during the play of a hand, the single player may at once stop the game, and his adversaries can count only the points they have taken in in tricks up to that time. If they have no tricks they are *schwarz*; if they have not 30 points they are *schneider*.

When four or more play, any person holding no cards may be penalised ten points for looking at the skat cards.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The successful bidder having disposed of the skat cards and announced his game, the Vorhand leads any card he pleases for the first trick. Vorhand should be careful not to lead until the player has laid out or discarded for the Skat in a Gucki or a Tourné. Players must follow suit if they can, but are not obliged to win the trick. Having none of the suit led, they may trump or discard at pleasure. The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits. The winner of the first trick leads for the next, and so on, until all the cards have been played, or the game is acknowledged as won or lost, and abandoned. In a Grand, if a Jack is led, players must follow suit with the other Jacks, they being trumps.

**Abandoned Hands.** If the single player finds he has overbid himself, or sees that he cannot make as good a game as bid, he may abandon his hand to save himself from being made schneider or schwarz, provided he does so before he plays to the second trick. A Solo cannot be abandoned in this manner, as the rule is made only to allow a player to get off cheaply who has been unlucky in finding nothing in the Skat to suit his hand. For instance: A player has risked a Tourné with a missing suit, and turns up that suit. He can abandon his hand at once, losing his bid or the next higher game, but escaping schneider.

**Irregularities in the Hands.** If, during the play of a hand, any person is found to have too many or too few cards, the others having their right number, it is evident that there has been no misdeal if the pack is perfect and there are two cards in the Skat. If the player in error has too few cards, probably from having dropped one on the floor, or having played two cards to the same trick, he loses in any case, but the adversary may demand to have the hand played out in order to try for schneider or schwarz, and the last trick, with the missing card, must be considered as having been won by the side not in fault. If the player in fault is opposed to the single player, his partner suffers with him. If the player discovers his loss, he is not allowed to pick the card from the floor and replace it in his hand if he has in the meantime played to a trick with a wrong number of cards.

**Playing Out of Turn.** The usual penalty in America for leading or playing out of turn is the loss of the game if the error is made by the adversaries of the single player. If by the player himself, the card played in error must be taken back, and if only one adversary has played to the false lead, he may also take back his card. If both have played, the trick stands good. The single player suffers no penalty, as it is only to his own disadvantage to expose his hand.

**The Revoke.** If a player revokes, and he is one of the adversaries of the single player, the game is lost for the player in error ;

but he may count the points in his tricks up to the time the revoke occurred, in order to save *schneider* or *schwarz*. In *Nullo*s, the game is lost the moment the revoke is discovered.

**Seeing Tricks.** The tricks must be kept separate as they are taken in, and any player is allowed to look at the last trick turned and quitted. Any player looking at any other trick but the last may be penalized ten points.

**Playing Ouverts.** The rules of the game require *Ouverts* to be exposed face upward on the table before a card is played.

**SCORING.** The score should always be kept by the player sitting on the right of the first dealer. This will mark the rounds. The score sheet should be ruled in vertical columns, one for each player at the table.

Each player is charged individually with his losses and gains, the amounts being added to or deducted from his score, and a plus or a minus mark placed in front of the last figure, so that the exact state of each player's score will be apparent at a glance.

The score of the single player is the only one put down, and it is charged to him as a loss or a gain at the end of each deal.

If there are four players, a line is drawn under every fourth amount entered in each person's account. If three play, the line is drawn under every third amount. This system of scoring will show at once whose turn it is to deal, if the total number of amounts under which no line is drawn are counted up. For instance: Three persons play; A dealt the first hand. In the first three columns are shown the amounts won and lost in the three rounds, while the last three columns show the manner in which these losses and gains were entered on the score sheet:—

Points won and lost.			Score Card.		
1st Round.	2nd Round.	3rd Round.	A	B	C
A won 33	A lost 16	C lost 36	+ 33	+ 40	+ 55
C won 55	B won 40	B won 48	+ 17	+ 88	+ 67
C won 12	A lost 24	C lost 12	— 7		+ 31
					+ 19

At the end of the second round a line was drawn under A's account, which then contained three items; and after the first game in the third round a line was drawn under C's account.

If we suppose the game to be stopped at this point, the scores would be balanced as follows:

We take the three scores and bring them down on one line. We draw a line under them, and proceed as follows: First we take

A, who has lost 7 to B, and from whom B has also won 88. This gives us 95 minus for A and 95 plus for B. We then compare A and C, and find that A owes C 26; put down as minus for A, plus for C. We now compare B and C, and find that B wins the difference, which is 69 points; put down plus for B, minus for C. Then we add up to see that the scores balance.

A	B	C
- 7	+ 88	+ 19
- 95	+ 95	+ 26
- 26	+ 69	- 69
- 121	+ 164	- 43

The same method may be used when four play; but some prefer to call the lowest score zero, and so make all the others plus. Suppose the final scores were as follows:

A	B	C	D
+ 186	+ 42	+ 344	+ 116
+ 144	0	+ 302	+ 74 = 520
+ 4	4	4	4
+ 576	0	+ 1208	+ 296
- 520	- 520	- 520	- 520
+ 56	- 520	+ 688	- 224

If B is zero, his points are to be taken from those of each of the others, as B is plus. If the low score is a minus, the points must be added to each of the others. The three totals are added, and found, in this case, to be 520, which is the total of B's loss. We now multiply the scores by the number of players engaged, in this case four, and from the product we deduct the 520 already found. Then the scores balance.

When Skat is played for the League stake, which is one-fourth of a cent a point, the results may be found in a still shorter way by adding up all the scores and taking an average, this average being the sum divided by the number of players. Take the results just given for example:—

A	B	C	D
186	42	344	116 = 688 ÷ 4 = 172
172	172	172	172
+ 14	- 130	+ 172	- 56

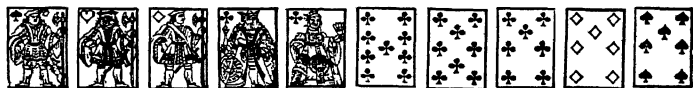
The average is simply deducted from each score, and the remainder is the amount won or lost, in cents.

**CHEATING.** As in all games in which the cards are dealt in groups, the greek will find many opportunities in Skat. The clumsiest shuffler can usually locate some of the Wenzels at the top or the bottom of the pack, before presenting it to be cut, and if the players do not insist on the cards being dealt always in the same manner, the sharper can secure to himself two or more Wenzels, either in his hand or in the Skat. Any person who deals the cards sometimes three at a time, and again five at a time, should be stopped immediately, and no such excuses as changing his luck should be listened to for a moment. Any person who habitually picks up the cards with their faces towards him, and straightens them by lifting them from their positions in the pack, should be stopped at once, and requested to straighten the cards face down.

Dealing seconds is very difficult when the cards have to be "pinched" in threes and fours. A second dealer holding back a Wenzel on the top may give his adversary two underneath without knowing it. Marked cards are of advantage only when the dealer plays, and are of little use beyond telling him what he can turn up for a trump, or what he will find in the Skat. The rule for having four in the game, if possible, is one of the greatest safeguards, unless the dealer is in secret partnership with one of the players.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** The chief things to master in Skat are the values of the hands, the principles of bidding on them, the best methods of playing them, and the proper methods of combining forces with your partner for the time being, in order to defeat the single player.

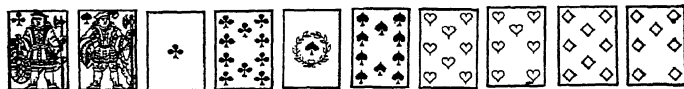
**Bidding.** Some persons attach a great deal of importance to the odds for and against certain cards being in the Skat. If a player without three is forced to risk finding a Matadore in the Skat, it is usually enough for him to know that the odds are about 3 to 1 against it. It is much more important for him to consider what cards may make against him, and what they would count. It is often necessary to estimate very closely the number of points that must fall on a certain number of leads. For instance: You are Vorhand, and hold these cards:—



Even if you find the Ace and Ten with the best Wenzel in one hand against you, you have an almost certain club Solo, for if you lead a Wenzel, your adversary must either take it, or give you the Ace or Ten. If he wins it, and his partner gives him a Ten of

another suit, and they then proceed to make both the Aces and Tens of your weak suits, that will give them only 56 points, and you will make every other trick. The only thing that could defeat you is for one player on the fourth trick to lead a suit of which his partner had none. This would require one player to have all the spades and the other all the hearts, which is almost impossible.

Another familiar example is the following: You are Vorhand with these cards:—



Although you cannot possibly win more than six tricks, and must lose every trick in the red suits, you have an invincible Grand; because the adversaries have not a sufficient number of Fehlkarten to give you to avoid adding 16 points to the 46 you already have in your hand, which must make you 62 before they get a trick.

It is better to bid on a doubtful Solo than on a risky Tourné, and if you have a choice of two numerically equal suits, it is better to bid on a suit containing small cards in preference to one containing A 10. In bidding Tournés, you must remember that the more cards you hold of a suit, the less your chance to turn up one.

It is not good play to bid a Solo on four or five trumps unless you have some aces in the other suits. A Grand may be bid even without a trump, if you have the lead, and hold four aces, or three aces and four Tens. A Grand with any two Wenzels is safe if you have two good suits. A Nullo should never be bid unless the player has the Seven of his long suit.

A certain amount of risk must be taken in all bids, and a player who never offers a game that is not perfectly safe is called a *Maurer*; one who builds on a solid foundation. The player who offers the most games will usually win the most unless he is a very poor player.

**Leading.** The single player should almost always begin with the trumps, in order to get them out of his way. With a sequence of Wenzels, it is a common artifice to begin with the lowest, hoping the second player may fatten the trick by discarding a Ten or Ace, under the impression that the Hinterhand can win it. This style of underplay is called *Wimmelfinte*, and the Mittelhand should beware of it. With only one Wenzel and the Ace and Ten, it is better to begin with a small trump. If you find all the trumps in one hand against you, or tenace over you, stop leading trumps, and play forcing cards.

If you have no Wenzels it is usually best to lead your smallest trumps. If you have only Ace Ten and small trumps, and know

the adversaries have one Wenzel and one trump better than your small one, lead your Ten, so that they cannot make both trumps. In playing for a schneider, it is often advisable to continue the trumps, even after the adversaries are exhausted, so that they shall not know which suit to keep for the last trick.

**Laying out the Skat.** In a Frage or a Tourné, some judgment is required in discarding for the Skat. It is often necessary to lay aside the Ace and Ten of trumps if there is any danger that the adversaries may catch them. Unguarded Tens should always be laid out, and it is a good general principle to get rid of one suit entirely, so that you can trump it. It is a common practice to put in the Skat the Ace and Ten of a suit of which you hold also the King. When you lead the King, if Mittelhand has none of the suit he is sure to fatten the trick for his partner, thinking he must have Ace or Ten. With the Ten, King, and small cards of a plain suit, lay the Ten and King in the Skat.

**The Adversaries** should combine against the single player by getting him between them if possible. If you sit on the left of the player, lead your short suits up to him; but if you sit on his right, lead your longest suit through him. Try to force out his trumps on your plain-suit cards if you can, and avoid giving him discards of his weak suits. With a long trump suit, it is often advantageous to lead it through the player, but seldom right to lead it up to him.

In Solos, the adversaries should lead Aces and winning cards, and change suits frequently. If you are playing against a Grand, and have two trumps, one of them the best, lead it, and then play your long suit; but if you have the two smallest trumps, lead the long suit first, and force with it every time you get in.

The partners should always scheme to protect each other's Tens by keeping the Aces of plain suits. For this reason it is very bad play to fatten with the Ace of a suit of which you have not the Ten, or to play an Ace third hand when there are only small cards in the trick, and the Ten of the suit has not been played and you do not hold it.

If the player is void of a suit, continue leading it, no matter what you hold in it. This will either weaken his trumps, or, if he is between you, will give your partner discards.

If the player leads a Wenzel, it is usually best to cover it if you can; but do not play the club Jack on the diamond Jack unless you want the lead very badly.

When the single player does not lead trumps, but plays his Aces and Tens, the Germans call it "*auf die Dörfer gehen*;" that is, getting to the villages, or getting home; equivalent to our expression, "getting out of the woods," or "getting in out of the rain." When the single player runs for home in this way, it is usually best to lead trumps through him at the first opportunity.

In playing against a Nullo, the great point is to give your partner discards. If you find that the player's long suit is yours also, continue it until your partner has discarded an entire suit if possible. If you then have the small card of the discarded suit, you may defeat the Nullo at once.

**Fattening.** The Germans call this Wimmeln, or "swarming" the points together in one trick. It is always advisable to get rid of Tens in this way, or Aces of suits in which you hold both Ace and Ten; but it is bad play to fatten with the Ace of a suit of which you have not the Ten, unless the trick wins the game from the player, or saves a very probable schneider.

The following *Illustrative Hands* will give the student a very good idea of the manner in which the various forms of the game are played, showing the difference in the play of a Tourné, Solo, and Grand.

**A TOURNÉ.** A, Vorhand, has refused ten with the following cards, Hinterhand having passed without a bid:—



A concludes to play a Tourné, and turns the heart ♡ Q, finding the ♦ King in the Skat. He lays out the ♠ 10 and ♠ 9 in the Skat, and expects to make 12 points; a heart Tourné, with one Matadore. The play is given in the margin. A is the player, and is also Vorhand, with the lead for the first trick. Hearts are trumps.

### A TOURNÉ.

	A	B	C	A wins.
1	♣ J	♡ 7	J ♦	4
2	♡ Q	♡ A	♡ 8	—
3	♠ K	9 ♦	Q ♦	7
4	♡ J	J ♠	A ♠	—
5	♡ 10	♡ 9	7 ♠	10
6	A ♦	♣ 7	8 ♦	11
7	7 ♦	K ♠	10 ♦	—
8	♣ K	♠ 10	♣ 9	—
8	♡ K	Q ♠	8 ♠	7
10	♠ A	♣ Q	♣ 8	14
♠ 10 and ♠ 9 in the Skat.				10
A wins 63				

The manner in which A exhausts the trumps, and makes both his Ace and King of diamonds, should be carefully studied. At trick 8, if he put on the ace of clubs, B might have the 8, and he would lose both his King and the Queen on the Ten, giving him only 60 points. It must be remembered that A knows every card out against him, because he has seen the skat cards. A wins his 12 points; a heart Tourné with one.

**A SOLO.** Vorhand has refused a bid of 18, and announces spade Solo with the following cards:—





C had had one club, or if A had led anything but the club Ten. A Grand with three Matadores is worth 4 times 20 or 80 points, which is what B loses, although he may have bid only 10 or 12 to get the play.

## A GRAND.

	A	B	C	B wins.
1	♣ 10	♣ A	J ♦	—
2	8 ♠	A ♦	7 ♦	11
3	♥ A	9 ♣	10 ♠	—
4	♣ 7	10 ♦	9 ♦	10
5	♣ 8	♥ J	Q ♦	5
6	♣ 9	J ♠	♥ 9	2
7	♥ 7	K ♦	♥ Q	7
8	♣ Q	♣ J	♥ K	9
9	♣ K	A ♠	7 ♠	15
10	♥ 10	Q ♣	K ♠	—
♦ 8 and ♥ 8 in the Scat.				—
B wins 59				

**Text Books.**

Foster's Skat Manual, 1906. Eichhorn's American Skat, 1898. Lehrbuch des Skatspiels, by K. Buhle. 1891. Deutsche Skatordnung, by K. Buhle. 1888. Scatspiel. (Anon.) Von Posert, Quedlinburg. 1879. Encyclopædia der Spiele, by Fr. Anton. 1889. Skat, by F. Tschientschy. 1888. Skat, by L. V. Diehl. 1891. Skat, by E. E. Lemcke. 1887.

All but the first two on the list treat of the old game, bidding by suits, and making no mention of Guckis; but some

of them, especially Buhle's, contain some very fine examples of good play. The first two on the list and the last two are in English. All the others are in German.

## AMERICAN SKAT.

In this variation, now so largely played, the highest bidder always sees the skat before announcing his game. Although a gucki, it need not be a grand, but may be solo or nullo if he likes. If he wins the game he announces the scores as usual; but if he loses he always loses double. He may announce schneider or schwarz after discarding for the skat. If he makes an announced schneider, it doubles the value of his game, instead of simply adding a multiplier. An announced schwarz trebles it.

For example: Spade solo with 1, schneider announced. His game is 1 for game, 1 for schneider, without 1,  $3 \times 11 = 33$ , doubled for announcing schneider, 66. If lost, it costs 132. If he makes schwarz after announcing schneider, it adds one multiplier, 77. The smallest possible game is a diamond with or without 1, worth 18; 36 if lost. The largest game possible to lose is a grand with four, schwarz announced, costing 1,008.

# THE LAWS OF SKAT.

## THE GAMES.

1. The following are the unit values of the various games :—

Frage shall not be allowed. Tournée in diamonds 5, in hearts 6, in spades 7 and in clubs 8. Solo in diamonds 9, in hearts 10, in spades 11 and in clubs 12. Turned grand 12, gucki grand 16, solo grand 20 and open grand 24. Gucki nullo 15, open gucki nullo 30, solo nullo 20, open solo nullo 40, and revolution, if played, 60. Uno and duo, if played, shall be worth 20, or if played open 40.

2. When there are trumps, the unit value of the game shall be multiplied as follows: 1 for game; 2 for schneider; 3 for announcing schneider, or for making schwarz without having made any announcement; 4 for schwarz after having announced schneider; and 5 for announcing schwarz. To each of these multipliers shall be added one for each matadore, "with" or "without."

3. In tournées, if the player says "passt-mir-nicht" to the first card and takes the second, he loses double if he loses his game. In guckis, whether grand or nullo, the player loses double if he loses his game.

4. The value of Ramsch shall be 20 points, to be charged to the player losing the game. If one player takes no trick, the loser shall be charged 30 points. If two players take no trick, the loser shall be charged 50 points. The winner of the last trick takes the skat cards. If there is a tie between two for high score, the winner of the last trick shall be the loser. If the last trick is taken by the low score, and the others are tied, the two high scores lose 20 points each. If all three are tied at 40 points each, there is no score.

5. In all games which are played "open," the hand of the single player must be laid face up on the table before either adversary plays a card; but the adversaries shall not be allowed to consult, neither can they dictate to the player what cards he shall play.

## FORMATION OF TABLE.

6. Any number from three to six may form a table, but there shall be only three active players in each deal, and they shall be known respectively as Vorhand, Mittelhand, and Hinterhand. Those who hold no cards shall share the fortunes of those opposed to the single player whose score is put down.

7. There shall be as many deals in each round as there are players at the table, and no person shall be allowed to withdraw from the game during a round unless the others consent to a substitute and such substitute be found.

8. Newcomers can enter the table only after the conclusion of a round and with the consent of the other players. The new candidate for play must take his seat so that he shall have the deal.

9. If seats are drawn for, the lowest skat card shall have the first choice. The next lowest shall sit on his left, and so on. In cutting, the cards and suits rank as in play. The one drawing the lowest card shall deal the first hand, and the score shall be kept by the player on his right.

10. The game shall come to an end only at the conclusion of a round, and any player wishing to stop must give notice before the beginning of a round.

#### CARDS.

11. There are thirty-two cards in the pack, the rank and value of which are as follows: Jack 2; ace 11; ten 10; king 4; queen 3; the nine, eight and seven having no counting value.

12. The suits shall always outrank one another in the same order; clubs, spades, hearts and diamonds. The four jacks, or Wenzels, which are always the four best trumps, shall outrank one another in the same order.

13. In Nullo, the cards rank: A K Q J 10 9 8 7, and the suits and jacks are all of equal rank.

#### DEALING.

14. When four or more play at the same table, the dealer takes no cards, but gives cards to the two sitting immediately on his left and to the one next him on his right.

15. When only three play, Hinterhand shall deal the cards.

16. The deal passes in regular order to the left.

17. After being thoroughly shuffled, the pack must be presented to the pone (the player sitting on the dealer's right) to be cut, and at least three cards must be left in each packet. Any player may demand a right to shuffle the cards before they are dealt, but the dealer shall have the last shuffle before presenting the cards to be cut. If any card is exposed in cutting, there must be a new cut.

18. The dealer shall give each active player cards, three at a time for the first round, face down, beginning on his left. He shall then lay aside, face down, two cards for the skat. Each player shall then receive four cards at a time for the second round, and finally three cards at a time for the last round.

19. If any card is found faced in the pack, or if the pack be proved incorrect or imperfect, there must be a new deal. An imperfect pack is one in which there are duplicate or missing cards, or cards so torn or marked that they can be identified by the backs.

20. Should a player deal out of his turn, the deal must stand if it is complete; otherwise there must be a new deal by the right dealer. When the deal stands, the next deal must be by the player who should have dealt, and subsequent deals must be so arranged that there shall be the right number to each round. A player dealing out of turn may be penalized 10 points.

#### ERRORS IN DEALING.

21. There are no misdeals. No matter what happens, the same dealer must deal again if it was his proper turn to deal.

22. If a card is exposed by the dealer during the deal, there must be a new deal; or if the cards of the players become confused, so that the dealer cannot separate them.

23. If the dealer gives too many or too few cards to any player, or neglects to lay out the skat cards in their proper turn, or does not give the right number of cards in each round, or gives three to one player and four to another, or fails to present the pack to be cut, there must be a new deal, and the dealer is charged 10 points for the error.

#### THE SKAT CARDS.

24. Any active player taking up or seeing either or both the skat cards when he is not entitled to do so shall be debarred from bidding that deal. If any but an active player look at either of the skat cards, 10 points shall be deducted from his score.

25. If any Kiebitz (an onlooker not belonging to the table) looks at either of the skat cards, he may be called upon to pay the value of the game.

26. If an active player look at the skat cards during the play, he not having laid out those cards from his own hand, his game is lost if he is the single player. If he is opposed to the player, the player's game is won, but it may be played out to see if he can make *schneider* or *schwarz*.

27. Should an active player take one or both the skat cards into his hand by mistake, before the bidding begins, the dealer shall draw from his hand, face down, enough cards to reduce his hand to ten, and the player in fault shall be charged 25 points penalty, and be debarred from bidding for that deal. If, in three-hand, the player in fault is the dealer, *Vorhand* shall draw.

28. Should the successful bidder take both the skat cards into his hand together, or pick them up together, he shall be obliged to play a *Gucki Grand*, unless he has announced to play *Nullo*. Should he put the first card into his hand without showing it, he shall be obliged to turn up the second card and play *Passt-mir-nicht*.

29. The player may turn up either of the skat cards; but should he expose both he must play the suit of higher value.

30. Should he turn a jack, he may either play in suit or announce a turned Grand.

31. A player turning up a seven cannot announce a Nullo unless it has been previously agreed to play turned Nullos, which are worth 10 points.

32. The player who takes the skat cards must lay out two cards in their place before a card is led. Should he neglect to lay out for the skat before he plays to the first trick; or should he lay out more or less than two cards, and not discover the error until the first trick has been turned and quitted, he shall lose his game.

#### BIDDING.

33. All bidding shall be by numbers representing the value of some possible game, and the lowest bid allowed shall be 10.

34. Mittelhand must bid to Vorhand, and Vorhand must either undertake as good a game as that offered him, or pass. If Vorhand passes, Hinterhand bids to Mittelhand, and Mittelhand must either undertake as good a game as that offered, or pass. If Mittelhand passes, when bidding to Vorhand, Hinterhand must bid to Vorhand: but Hinterhand is not allowed to say anything until either Mittelhand or Vorhand has passed.

35. Any figure once named cannot be recalled. A player having once passed, cannot come into the bidding again.

36. The survivor of the bidding shall be known as the Player, and shall have the privilege of naming the game to be played; the two other active players being his adversaries.

37. If no bid is made, and Vorhand will not undertake to play any game against the two others, they must play Ramsch.

#### ANNOUNCEMENTS.

38. The player, if he does not use the skat cards, may announce any suit for the trump, or he may play a Grand or Nullo.

39. If he wishes to announce schneider or schwarz, he must do so when he names the game to be played, and before a card is led. All Open Grands are compulsory "schwarz announced."

40. The manner of taking up the skat cards, when the player uses them, is sufficient announcement for a Tournee, Passt-mir-nicht, or Guckser; but a Gucki Nullo must be announced before the skat cards are touched, and open Gucki Nullo must be announced before the skat cards are seen.

41. The player is not allowed to announce either schneider or schwarz in any game in which he uses the skat cards.

42. The adversaries cannot announce schneider or schwarz under any circumstances.

43. No player but Vorhand can announce Ramsch, and then only when no bid has been made.

## PLAYING.

44. In Tournee, but not in Solo, Grand, or Nullo, the player may, in order to avoid the possibility of being made schneider, abandon his game as lost before playing to the second trick. The adversaries are then bound to score it as a "game" lost, even if they could have made the player schneider.

45. No matter who is the single player, Vorhand shall always lead for the first trick. The winner of one trick leads for the next, and so on, and each player in turn must follow suit if he can.

46. If, during the play of the hand, any player is found to have a wrong number of cards, the others having their right number, only those who have their right number can win the game. If it is the player who has a wrong number, his game is lost. If it is one of his adversaries, the player's game is won.

47. If the single player leads out of turn, the cards must be taken back if the trick is not complete and the adversary who has not played demands it. If both adversaries have played to the false lead, the trick stands. If an adversary has played to his false lead, the player cannot take it back unless the other adversary permit it.

48. If an adversary of the player leads out of turn, and the player calls attention to it, the player may immediately claim his game as won and abandon the hand; or he may insist that the play proceed with a view to making the adversaries schneider or schwarz. Whether he proceeds or not his game is won, and he may either let the false lead stand, or insist on a lead from the proper hand.

49. If, during the progress of the hand, the player lays his cards on the table, face up, and announces that he has won his game by reaching 61 or 91, whichever may be necessary to make good his bid, and it is proved that he is mistaken, he loses his game, even if he could have taken up his cards again and won it.

50. If an adversary lays his cards on the table, face up, and claims to have already defeated the player's game, all that adversary's cards shall be taken by the player and counted with the tricks already taken in by the player. If the adversary be found to be in error, the player shall score his game as won, even if he would have lost it had it been continued.

51. If the single player gives up his game as lost, and lays his cards on the table, the adversaries shall take all such cards and add them to their own, and count their cards to see if they have also made the player schneider.

## THE REVOKE.

52. Should the single player revoke, and not discover the error before the trick is turned and quitted, he loses his game. If he discovers the error and corrects it in time, there is no penalty; but any adversary who plays after him may amend his play.

53. If either adversary of the player revokes, the player may claim his game as won; but he may insist on playing the hand out to see if he can make schneider or schwarz. Even if the single player has overbid his hand, he wins his game if either adversary revokes.

## LOOKING BACK.

54. Any active player may see the last trick turned and quitted, provided no card has been led for the next trick. Should a player look back at any other trick, or count his cards, he loses the game; but either of the others may insist on playing on to see if they can make schneider.

55. If an adversary of the player tell his partner how many points they have taken in, or ask him to fatten a trick which is his, or call attention in any way to the fact that the partner's play should be thus or so, the single player may at once claim his game as won, and abandon his hand.

## SCORING.

56. The single player wins his game if he reaches 61 points. He wins schneider if he makes 91. He wins schwarz if he gets every trick.

57. If the adversaries reach 30, they are out of schneider. If they reach 60, they defeat the player. If they get to 90, they make him schneider; and if they win every trick they make him schwarz.

58. The value of the game having been calculated according to Law No 2, the amount won or lost shall be entered on the score pad under the name of the individual player, and each following item shall be added to or deducted from the previous total, so that the last entry shall at all times show the exact state of the player's score.

59. At the end of the sitting each player wins from or loses to each of the others at the table the full amount of his score.

60. In every case in which a player loses his game, he loses what he would have won if he had been successful, regardless of the amount he may have bid; but,

61. If the player fails to win a game equal to the amount he has bid, he loses the value of the next higher game which would have made his bid good; because in no case can a player lose less than he bid, and in every case must he lose some multiple of the game which he declared to play.



## FROG.

This is a very popular game in Mexico, and seems to be an elementary form of Skat, which it resembles in many ways. Even the name may be a corruption of the simple game in Skat, which is called "frage." The chief differences are that there are four cards added to the pack for frog, and that the players win or lose according to the number of points they get above or below 61, instead of computing the value of the game by matadores.

**Players.** Three, four, or five can play; but only three are active in each deal. If four play, the dealer takes no cards. If five play, he gives cards to the two on his left and one on his right.

**Cards.** There are thirty-six cards in the pack, which rank: A 10 K Q J 9 8 7 6. Each Ace is worth 11, Tens are worth 10, Kings 4, Queens 3, and Jacks 2. This gives us 120 points in the pack, and the object is to get 61 or more.

**Dealing.** Any one can deal the first hand, after which the deal passes to the left. Three cards are given to each player the first round, then three for the widow, and then two rounds of four cards each to the players, so that there are three hands of eleven cards each, and three in the widow.

**THE GAMES.** Each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left, can offer to play one of three games, and the highest offer must be accepted. A player cannot increase his own bid unless he is overbid. The highest bidder becomes the single player, opposed to the two others.

**Frog.** In this, hearts must be trumps. The single player turns the widow face up to show what it contained, and then takes the three cards into his hand. He must then discard to reduce his playing hand to eleven cards again. Any points in the cards he lays away will count for him at the end of the play.

The player on the dealer's left always leads for the first trick, any card he pleases. The others must follow suit if they can, but they are not obliged to head the trick. If a player cannot follow suit, he must trump, and if the third player cannot follow suit either, he must play a trump, but he is not obliged to over-trump unless he likes.

The eleven tricks played, each side turns over the cards taken in and counts the points. For every point the single player gets over 60 he must be paid a counter by each of the others who held cards. But if he does not get 60, he must pay each of the others at the table, including those who held no cards, if any, a counter for every point his adversaries get over 60.

**Chico** outbids Frog. The player offering this game can name any suit for the trump except hearts, but he must not touch the widow, although the points in it will count for him at the end. Each point under or over 60 is worth two counters in Chico.

*Grand* outbids Chico, and is the highest bid possible. Hearts must be trumps, and the player offering this game must not touch the widow until the play is finished. Every point under or over 60 in a *Grand* is worth four counters.

The bidder must play the game he names. He cannot bid *Frog* and play *Chico*, or bid *Chico* and play *Grand*. The settling up of the scores at the end, if the payments are not made at once in counters, is the same as in *Skat*.

---

## CRIBBAGE.

Cribbage is not only one of the oldest of the games upon the cards, but enjoys the distinction of being quite unlike any other game, both in the manner of playing it, and in the system of reckoning the points. It is also peculiar from the fact that it is one of the very few really good games which require no effort of the memory; judgment and finesse being the qualities chiefly requisite for success.

There are two principal varieties of the game; *Five* and *Six-card* Cribbage; and these again are divided according to the number of players. The old writers agree in speaking of the five-card game as the more scientific; but the modern verdict is in favour of the six-card game, which is certainly the more common and popular. The skill in *Five-card* Cribbage is limited to laying out for the crib and securing the "go"; but in *Six-card* Cribbage, while the scientific principles applicable to the crib remain the same as in the five-card game, there is abundant room for the display of skill all through, the hand being as important as the crib, and the play sometimes more important than either. The six-card game will be first described.

**CARDS.** Cribbage is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which have no rank except the order of their sequence; K Q J 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 A, the Ace being always the lowest, either in cutting or in play. The cards have also a counting or pip value, the three court cards, K Q J, and the 10 being worth ten points each. All other cards, including the Ace, retain their face value. There are no trumps, and the four suits are therefore equal in value at all times.

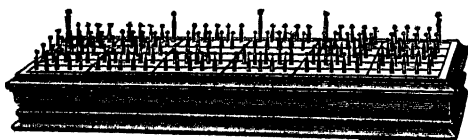
**MARKERS.** The game is 61 points, and is scored or "pegged" on a cribbage board, which has a double row of 30 holes on each side, and a game-hole at each end. The players are each provided with two pegs, and they score the points as they accrue by advancing their pegs from left to right according to the number of points they make. For instance: One player makes 6

for his first count. He places one of his pegs in the sixth hole from the left-hand end of the board. Then he makes 4, and places the second peg four holes in advance of the first, which will show that his total score is ten points. The third time he makes 2, which he scores by lifting out the back peg and putting it two holes in advance of the first one. This system of pegging not only shows the total number of points made by either player, but enables the adversary to check the count, as a glance at the distance between the two pegs will show the number of points pegged last time.

When a player reaches the extreme right of the board, 30 points, he crosses over to the inner row of holes, and goes down from right to left. On reaching the end of the second row he has still one more to go to get into the game-hole, which is in the middle of the board.

When one player reaches his game-hole before the other turns the corner, it is called a *lurch*, and counts two games.

The pegs are so often lost or mislaid that it is much more convenient to use a *pull-up* cribbage board, in which every hole is provided with its own peg, which may be raised to indicate the count. The back pegs can be either left standing or pushed down again.



The board is always placed midway between the players.

If three persons play, a triangular board is necessary. This is provided with three sets of holes and three game holes.

When a cribbage board is not at hand, the game may be kept by ruling a sheet of paper into ten divisions, and marking them with the figures 1 to 0 on each side :

0	6	8	7	9	5	4	3	2	1
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0

Each player being provided with two coins, one silver and one copper, (or different sizes,) the copper coin can be advanced from point to point to count units, and the silver coin will mark the tens.

**PLAYERS.** Cribbage is distinctly a game for two players, although three may play, each for himself, or four, two being partners against the other two. When two play, one is known as the *dealer*, and the other as the non-dealer, or the *pone*.

**CUTTING.** The players cut for the choice of seats, and for the first deal. The lowest cut has the choice, and deals the first hand. The Ace is low. If a player exposes more than one card he must cut again. Ties are also decided by cutting again.

**STAKES.** Cribbage is played for so much a game, lurches counting double. Players may either settle at the end of each game, or score on a sheet of paper. In the pull-up cribbage boards there are nine extra pegs for counting games won. These are placed in a line with the player's game hole at each end.

**DEALING.** The cards are shuffled and presented to the pone to be cut, and he must leave at least six cards in each packet. Six cards are dealt to each player, one at a time in rotation, beginning with the player on the dealer's left if there are more than two. No trump is turned, and the remainder of the pack is placed face downward at the end of the cribbage board on the dealer's left.

**Irregularities.** It is a misdeal if any card is found faced in the pack, or if the pack is found to be imperfect, and there must be a fresh deal by the same dealer. Any previous cuts or scores made with the imperfect pack stand good. A player dealing out of turn may be stopped before the non-dealer lifts his cards from the table. The penalty for dealing out of turn is two points, if the error is detected in time; otherwise the deal stands good.

If the dealer neglects to have the pack cut, exposes a card in dealing, gives too many or too few cards to any player, deals a card incorrectly, and fails to remedy the error before dealing another, or exposes one of his adversary's cards, the non-dealer scores two points by way of penalty. He also has the option of demanding a fresh deal by the same dealer, or of letting the deal stand. If the error is simply an irregularity in the manner of dealing, or an exposed card, the pone must decide without looking at his cards. If either player has too many or too few cards, the pone may look at the hand dealt him before deciding whether or not to have a fresh deal; but if it is the pone himself that has too many or too few cards, he must discover and announce the error before lifting his cards from the table, or he will not be entitled to the option of letting the deal stand. If the pone has too many cards he may return the surplus to the top of the pack, without showing or naming them. If the dealer has too many, the pone may draw from his hand face downward, returning the surplus to the top of the pack; but the pone may not look at the cards so drawn unless the dealer has seen them. If there are too few cards, and the pone elects to have the deal stand, the deficiency must be supplied from the top of the pack.

**THE CRIB.** The cards dealt, each player takes up his six cards and examines them with a view to laying out two cards, face downward, for the crib; leaving himself four cards with which to play. The four cards which form the crib, two from each hand, always belong to the dealer, and it is usual for each player, in discarding for the crib, to slip his two cards under the end of the cribbage board opposite to that occupied by the remainder of the pack.

Cards once laid out for the crib, and the hand removed from them, cannot be taken up again. A penalty of two points may be scored by the adversary for each card so taken up again, whether it is returned to the player's hand or not. If either player confuses his cards in any manner with those of the crib, his adversary scores two points, and may also claim a fresh deal.

If it is not discovered until he comes to lay out for the crib, that a player has too many cards, the same rules apply that are given for misdealing; but if he has too few cards there is no remedy, as he has lifted his hand. He must lay out two cards for the crib and play with what remain, his adversary scoring two points penalty at the same time.

**THE STARTER.** Both players having discarded for the crib, the non-dealer cuts the remainder of the pack, and the dealer lifts the top card from the portion left on the table, turning it face up. The two portions being again united, the turned card is placed face up on the pack, and is known as the starter, because it forms the starting-point in the count for every hand and crib. At least four cards must be left in each packet in cutting for the starter. If the starter is found face up, there must be a new deal.

If the starter is a Jack, the dealer immediately pegs two points *for his heels*. If he does not peg these two holes before he plays a card the score is lost. If the Jack of the same suit as the starter is found in the hand or crib of any player, it is called *his nobs*, and when the hand is reckoned up after the play is over, one point may be scored for it.

If the dealer exposes more than one card after the pack has been properly cut, his adversary may choose which of the exposed cards shall be the starter.

In order to understand the motives which govern the players in discarding, and the influences which the starter has upon the value of the hands and crib, it will be necessary to describe the objects of the game, before giving the method of play.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The chief object in Cribbage is to form and to preserve various counting combinations. As these combinations occur in the course of play, or are shown in the hand or crib after the play is over, their value in points is pegged on the cribbage board, and the player who first pegs a

sufficient number of these combinations to reach a total of 61 points, wins the game.

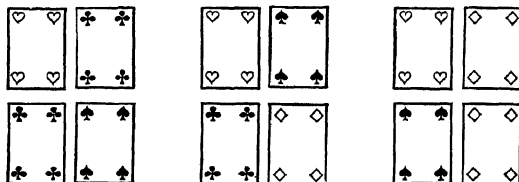
There are five principal varieties of these counting combinations: Pairs, Triplets, Fours, Sequences, and Fifteens; besides some minor counts which will be spoken of in their proper place.

The various counting combinations in Cribbage may arise in two ways. They may be formed by combining the cards played by one person with those played by his adversary; or they may be found in the individual hand or crib after the play is over. In the latter case the starter is considered as part of each hand and crib, increasing each of them to five available counting cards.

**Pairs.** A pair is any two cards of the same denomination, such as two Fives or two Queens, and its counting value is always the same, 2 points. **Triplets**, usually called Pairs Royal, Proils, or Prial, are any three cards of the same denomination, such as three Nines. Their value is the number of separate pairs that can be formed with the three cards, which is three, and the combination is therefore always worth 6 points. The different pairs that can be formed with three Nines, for instance, would be as follows:—



**Fours**, sometimes called Double Pairs Royal, or Deproils, are any four cards of the same denomination, such as four Fours, and their counting value is the number of separate pairs that can be formed with the four cards, which is six. The combination is therefore always worth 12 points. The different combinations of four cards, arranged in pairs, is as follows:—

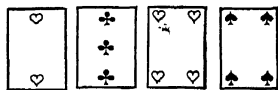


Whether the foregoing combinations are formed during the play of the hand, or found in the hand or crib after the play is over, their counting value is exactly the same.

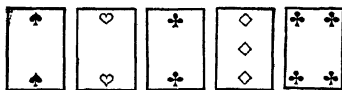
**Sequences.** Any three or more cards, following one another in numerical order, will form a sequence. A sequence may also run into the court cards, such as 9 10 J, 10 J Q, or J Q K; but Q K A is not a sequence in Cribbage. The counting value of a

sequence is one point for each card in it. Sequences formed in the course of play must always be single, although the cards forming them need not fall in regular order. Those found in the hand or crib may be double, and those formed with the aid of the starter may be treble or quadruple.

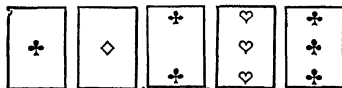
The method of computing the value of double and treble sequences should be thoroughly understood, in order that such combinations may be counted at sight. A few examples will show that each combination belongs to a certain class, to which the same counting value is always attached. These classes are distinguished by the number of duplicates of the sequence cards.



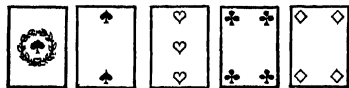
If you hold three cards which form a sequence, and have also a duplicate of any one of them, no matter which, it is evident that by substituting the card of equal value you can form another sequence. Such combinations are therefore always worth 8 points, 6 for the *double run*, as it is called, and 2 for the pair, no matter what the cards are that form the combination.



If the five cards in the hand and starter together contain a run of three with two duplicates, it is evident that three separate sequences can be formed by using each of the duplicates alternately. Such combinations are always worth 15 points; 9 for the triple run of three, and 6 for the pair royal.



If the duplicates are of two different cards, no matter which, it will be found that four different sequences of three cards each can be formed by changing the Aces and Threes alternately. Such combinations are therefore always worth 16 points: four runs of three, worth 12, and 4 points for the two separate pairs.



If the five cards contain one sequence of four, and one duplicate, the combination will always be worth 10 points; 8 for the double run of four, and 2 for the pair.

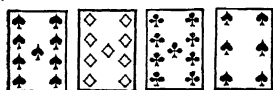
The foregoing should be thoroughly familiar to every player, so that he may know the exact value of the combination the moment he sees the length of the sequence and the number of duplicates.

**Two-card Fifteens.** Any combination of two or more cards, the total face value of which is exactly 15, is called *fifteen-*

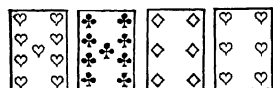
**two**, because each fifteen so formed is worth two points in the pegging. There are only three combinations of two cards which will form fifteen; a Five with any court card or Ten; a Nine and a Six; an Eight and a Seven. The manner of counting duplicates is the same as that employed for the pairs and sequences, and the player should be equally familiar with each variety of combination. The fifteens formed by **two cards** only are the simplest, and should be studied first.



It is obvious that if there is in the hand or the starter a duplicate of either of the cards forming the fifteen, no matter which, another fifteen can be formed, and the combination will therefore always be worth 6 points; 4 for the two fifteens, and 2 for the pair. It must not be forgotten that in the case of **tenth cards**, as they are called, the duplicates may not form pairs, as for instance with K J 5. The fifteen is duplicated, but there is no pair.

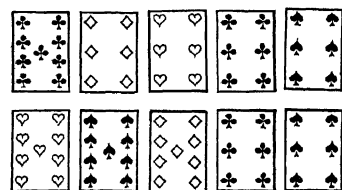


If there are two duplicates of either card, the combination will always be worth 12 points; 6 for the three fifteens, and 6 more for the pair royal.



If the duplicates are of two different cards, the combination is still worth 12, because four different fifteens can be formed by combining each Nine with each Six separately,

and there are two single pairs.



The same is true of any combinations of two-card fifteens in which all five cards are of value; they are both of the same pegging value, 20 points. If there are three duplicates of one card in the original fifteen, the four separate fifteens will be worth 8, and the double pair royal 12.

If there are two duplicates of one card, and one of the other, six separate fifteens can be formed by combining each Nine with each Six, pegging 12; and the pair royal of one card with the single pair of the other will add 8 more.

**Three-card Fifteens** may be formed in fifteen different ways, ranging from 10 4 A, to 5 5 5. If you hold any of these combinations, and have a fourth card which is a duplicate of any of the three forming the fifteen, the value of the combination will

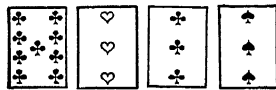


depend on how many cards you can replace with the duplicate card.



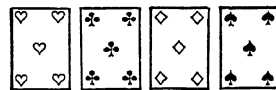
"Fifteen-two, fifteen-four, and a pair."

If you have an extra tenth card, you can replace the other tenth card once only, and the total value of the combination is therefore 6 points, which is expressed by the formula;



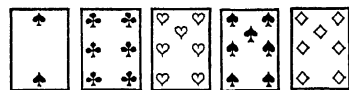
is therefore worth 12 ; 6 for the three fifteens, and 6 more for the pair royal.

If your combination was 9 3 3, and you had another 9, the same thing would be true ; but if your duplicate is a Three, there are two cards which can be replaced, and the combination



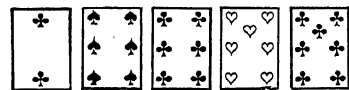
for the double pair royal.

If your combination is one in which all three cards can be replaced with the duplicate, making three extra fifteens, it must be worth 20 altogether ; 8 for the four fifteens, and 12



6 for the three fifteens, and 6 more for the pair royal.

If you have two duplicates of any one card in the original combination, there are only two extra fifteens, and the combination will be worth 12 ;

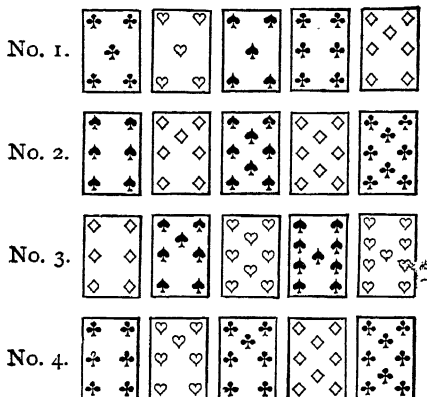


put the first Seven back again with the new Six. This will make the combination of the same value as if you had three duplicates of one card, 12 points ; 8 for the four fifteens, and 4 for the two single pairs.

If you have duplicates of two different cards you can form four fifteens ; because you can replace the Seven first, and then the Six, and then

**Combinations.** The beginner's greatest difficulty is in counting hands which contain all three varieties of counts ; pairs, sequences, and fifteens. But if he is familiar with the values of the various combinations taken separately, he will have no difficulty in computing them when they are found together. Some regular order should be observed in going over the hands, so that nothing shall be forgotten. The majority of players begin with the fifteens, as they are more liable to be overlooked, and then reckon the value of the runs and pairs together.

Take the following examples :—



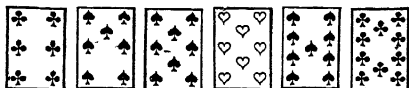
No. 1 contains a fifteen in addition to the three runs of three and the pair royal, and is therefore worth 17 altogether. Nos. 2 and 3 each contain three fifteens; but No. 2 is worth 21 points on account of the three runs of three and the pair royal, while No. 3 is worth only 16; a double run of four and a single pair. No. 4 contains four fifteens in addition to the four runs of three and two single pairs, and is therefore worth 24 points.

The best combination that can be held in hand or crib is three Fives and a Jack, with the Five of the same suit as the Jack for a starter. We have already seen that the four Fives by themselves are worth 20, to which we must add the four extra fifteens made by combining the Jack with each Five separately, and one more point for his nobs, 29 altogether. If the Jack was the starter, the combination would be worth 30 to the dealer, but his heels would have to be counted before a card was played.

**Flushes.** In addition to the foregoing combinations, if all four cards in the hand are of the same suit the player can peg four points for the flush; if the starter is also the same suit, five points. A flush does not count in the crib unless the starter is the same suit, and then it counts five points. Flushes are never made in play.

**Laying Out for the Crib.** With this knowledge of the objects of game, and the various counting combinations, it will be seen that each player should keep the cards which count the most for him, or which are most likely to form good combinations with different starters.

Suppose the non-dealer holds these cards:—



If he puts the two Eights in his adversary's crib, he not only gives him two very good cards, which go to form a great many valuable combinations, but he leaves himself absolutely nothing but 2 points for a single fifteen, formed by the 9 and 6. It would be a little better, but still very bad play, for him to discard the 8 and 6, leaving himself a sequence of four cards and a fifteen, 6 points altogether. He might do a little better by discarding the 10 and 8, leaving himself a run of four, and two fifteens, 8 points altogether. If he discards either the 10 and 9, or the 10 and 6, he will leave himself a double run of three, a pair, and two fifteens, 12 altogether. Of these two discards, that of the 10 and 6 is better than the 10 and 9, because the 10 and 9 might help to form a sequence in the adversary's crib, whereas the 10 and 6 are so far apart that they are very unlikely to be of any use.

Cards which are likely to form parts of sequences are called *close cards*, and those which are too widely separated to do so are called *wide cards*.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The crib laid out, and the starter cut, the pone begins by playing any card he pleases. The card he selects he lays face upward on the table on his own side of the cribbage board, and at the same time announces its pip value; two, five, or ten, whatever it may be. It is then the dealer's turn to play a card from his hand, which is also laid face upward on the table, but on the dealer's side of the cribbage board. Instead of announcing the pip value of this second card, the dealer calls out the total value of the two cards taken together. The pone then lays another card on the table face upward and on the top of the first, which is not turned face down, and at the same time announces the total pip value of the three cards so far played; the dealer plays again, and so on.

If at any time the total pip value of the cards played is exactly 15 or 31, the one who plays the card that brings it to that number pegs two points for it at once. If any counting combination, such as a pair, pair royal, or sequence, is formed by the cards played, its value is pegged by the person that plays the card which completes the combination; but neither player is allowed to play a card which will make the total pip value of the cards played pass 31. The method of forming and pegging these various combinations in play will be better understood if they are described separately. A card once played cannot be taken up again, unless it passes 31.

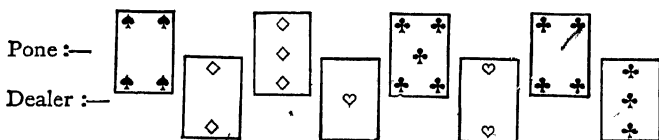
**Pairs.** If the first card played by the pone should be a 6, and the dealer had a 6 also, the latter would probably play it, announcing: "Twelve, with a pair," and pegging two holes. If the pone held a third six he would immediately play it, announcing: "Eighteen, with a pair royal," and would peg six holes for the three pairs which can be formed with the three Sixes, although he did not hold all of them. If the dealer was fortunate enough to hold the fourth Six he might rejoin with: "Twenty-four, with a double-pair-royal." This would entitle him to peg twelve more holes, although he had already pegged the single pair.

**Sequences.** Suppose the first card played by the pone was a 4. The dealer plays a 2, announcing: "Six." The pone plays a 3, announcing: "Nine, with a run of three," and pegging three holes for the sequence formed in play. The dealer plays an Ace; "Ten, with a run of four," and pegs four holes for the sequence of four cards made in play, all of which are face upward on the table, although he held only two of them.

**Fifteens.** The pone then plays a 5, which, added to the 10 just announced by the dealer, makes 15, with a run of five cards; seven holes to peg altogether. (This is quite independent of the sequence previously scored, just as the double pair royal was of the previous single pair.) The dealer now plays a deuce, and announces seventeen. This card does not form any sequence with those that have gone immediately before it, because if the order of play is retraced it will be found that another deuce is encountered before we reach the Four. This illustrates the rule already given, that sequences formed in play must always be single, and cannot be reckoned with substitute cards, like pairs royal. If they could, the last player in this case might claim a double run of five and a pair.

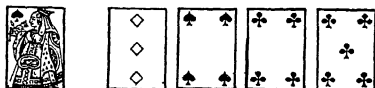
The pone now plays another 4, which forms the sequence afresh if we go back to the third card played. He announces: "Twenty-one, with a run of five," and pegs five holes more. The dealer plays a 3, also claiming a run of five, which he pegs, and as that is the last card to be played in that hand he also pegs one hole for *last card*.

The total score of the dealer is now 10 points, and that of the pone is 15. The cards they held, and the order in which they were played is as follows:—



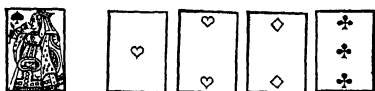
**SHOWING.** In order to illustrate the manner of counting the hands, which is called showing, let us suppose the starter to be a Queen, and that the pone discarded an Ace and a Ten for the crib, the dealer laying out two Jacks.

The non-dealer always has the first show, as an offset to the advantage of the dealer's crib. The pone therefore shows his hand, which, combined with the starter, is as follows:—



This is worth 10 holes; the run of three with one duplicate is always worth 8, and the fifteen formed by the starter and the Five counts 2 more. This puts the pone's total score to 25 points.

The dealer then counts, showing his hand first. This, with the starter, is as follows:—



This is worth 14 holes. In addition to the run of three with one duplicate, three fifteens can be formed by combining the starter and a Three with each of the deuces, and then taking the starter and the Ace with both the deuces together. This puts the dealer's total score to 24, with the crib still to count. This is as follows, with the starter:—

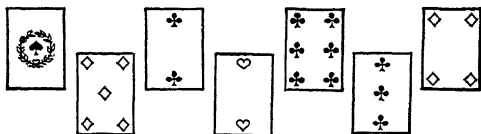


This is worth 9 holes; 8 for the run of three with one duplicate, and 1 for his nob. There are no fifteens, and the Ace is worthless. This puts the dealer three holes round the corner, and on the homestretch for the game hole.

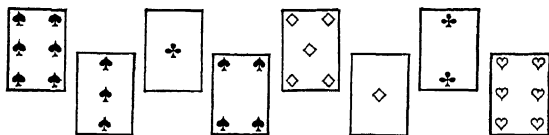
The deal now passes to the player that was the pone, and the next crib will belong to him.

Beginners often experience difficulty in deciding when a run has been made in play, and when it has not. If there is any dispute about it, the cards should be placed as shown in these diagrams, and if any duplicate is encountered before the run is complete, it cannot be pegged.

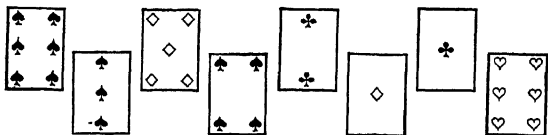
Take the following examples :—



There is no sequence, because we encounter a duplicate deuce before we reach the Five. If the last player had a Five to play now, it would make a run of five cards, stopping at the deuce of hearts. Take the following :—



There is no sequence ; but if the pone had played his Five for his second card, the dealer would have pegged two runs ; one of four, and one of six, besides the last card ; the pone making one run of five and a pair, as follows :—



It will be seen that if the dealer had not played his Ace and kept his Six at the last, the pone would have pegged eleven holes on him, instead of seven.

**Go, and Thirtg-one.** When a person has no card which he can play without making the total pip value of all the cards played more than 31, he must say to his adversary: "Go." That is, "Go on and play, for I cannot." If his adversary has no cards left, the player must say "go" to himself. When a person is told to go, he must play as many cards as he can without passing 31. If he reaches 31 exactly, he scores two points ; if he cannot quite reach it, he scores one point for the go. The principle is that if 31 cannot be made by either player, the one playing the card that brought the count nearest to it shall count one for it, even if he has told himself to go. There is no count for "last card" if it makes 31. But the "last card" counts if it makes 15.

If a player tells another to go when he can still play himself, he forfeits two points, and his adversary may, if he chooses, take back the cards to the point where the error occurred and have them played over again. The same penalty can be enforced against a player who pegs for a go when he can still play.

Suppose the first card played is a Jack. The dealer, holding two Nines, an Eight, and a Five, plays the Five, and pegs 2 for the fifteen. The pone plays a Nine, announcing the total as twenty-four. The dealer cannot pair this Nine, because it would run the count past 31, neither can he play the Eight, so he says, "Go." The pone pegs the go without playing, which shows that he is also unable to play, having nothing so small as a Seven.

Both then turn down the cards already played, and the one whose turn it is to play begins all over again with his remaining cards or card, announcing its face value, his adversary playing after him until their cards are exhausted or they reach another 31.

To continue the foregoing example, let us suppose the dealer to play one of his Nines. The pone plays a Jack, and announces "Nineteen." The dealer plays his remaining Nine, and calls "Twenty-eight." The pone tells him to go, and he pegs one. These three cards are turned down. The pone then plays a Ten, and the dealer marks one for the last card. The hands and crib are then shown.

If either player can reach exactly 31, he scores two points for it, whether he has been told to go or not. Suppose the pone begins with a Nine. The dealer plays a Six and pegs 2 for the fifteen. The pone pairs the Six, calls "Twenty-one," and pegs 2 for the pair. The dealer with two Fives and a Four in his hand, plays the Four, and calls "Twenty-five," hoping the pone has no small card, which will allow the dealer to make a run of three with one of his Fives if he is told to go. But the pone plays a Five, calling: "Thirty, with a run of three." The dealer tells him to go, and he plays an Ace, pegging two holes for the 31. The cards are all turned down, and the pone having no cards, the dealer plays his two Fives, and pegs a pair and the last card. The pair counts in this case because the adversary has no cards to interfere with it. A run of three might be played and scored in the same way, because the score for combinations made in play are determined by the order in which the cards are played, irrespective of who plays them.

**Irregularities in Hands.** If a player is found to have too many or too few cards, after he has laid out for the crib, his adversary pegs two points, and may also claim a fresh deal. If the deal is allowed to stand, superfluous cards must be drawn at random by the adversary, who may look at the card or cards so drawn before placing them in the pack. If either player is found to have too few cards after having laid out for the crib, he has no

remedy. His adversary pegs two points, and the short hand must be played and shown for what it is worth.

***Irregular Cribs.*** If the superfluous card is found in the crib, and the non-dealer had the short hand, the dealer may reckon all the combinations he can make in the six-card crib; but if it was the dealer who had the short hand, the superfluous crib is void. If the crib contains a superfluous card, both the players having their right number, the non-dealer pegs two holes for the evident misdeal, and the crib is void. If both players have their right number, and the crib is short, it must be shown for what it is worth; but the non-dealer pegs two holes for the evident misdeal.

***Irregular Announcements.*** There is no penalty if a player announces a wrong number as the total of the cards played, provided he does not peg an erroneous fifteen or thirty-one. If the following player does not correct the announcement, but plays and adds to it, the error cannot be rectified. If any holes are pegged for an erroneous announcement, the adversary may demand that they be taken down again, and may add the number to his own score.

***Miscounting.*** If a player over-counts his hand, crib, or play, and pegs the points erroneously claimed, his adversary may call attention to the error, demand that the superfluous points be taken down again, and may add them to his own score as penalty. Should a player neglect to peg the full value of his hand, crib, or play, his adversary may add the neglected points to his own score, after pointing out the omission. Should a player be mistaken in exacting either of these penalties, he must not only take down what he pegged, but allow his adversary to peg the same number as penalty.

None of these corrections can be claimed until the player in error has pegged and quitted the score; that is, removed his fingers from the front peg. The claim should always be prefaced by the word *Muggins*. If the error is one of omission in play, the adversary must play his own card before claiming muggins. If it is in the hand or crib, the adversary must wait until the points claimed are pegged and quitted. If there are no points claimed, he must wait until the cards are turned face down, thus acknowledging that there is apparently nothing to score. A player is not allowed to tell his adversary whether or not he has counted his hand or crib correctly, until it is pegged.

***Nineteen.*** As it is impossible to hold 19 in hand or crib, it is a common practice for a player, when he has nothing at all to score, to announce, "Nineteen." The numbers twenty-seven, twenty-six and twenty-five are also impossible.



**Pegging.** Neither player is allowed to touch the other's pegs. If the score is erroneous, the player in fault must be called upon to remedy it himself. A player whose pegs are touched by his adversary can score two holes for penalty. If a player removes his adversary's front peg, the latter may immediately claim the game. If a player displaces his own front peg, he must place it behind the other. If both players displace their front pegs, as by accident, they may agree to replace them where they believe them to have stood; but if they cannot agree they must call the game void.

**Pegging Out.** In pegging during the play, the first man to reach his game hole wins, no matter what either may have in hand or crib. If neither can peg out in play, the non-dealer has the first show. If he cannot show out, the dealer proceeds to count his hand and then his crib. If he cannot show out there must be a new deal.

**CHEATING.** The greatest advantage at Cribbage is to secure good starters, and for this purpose the greek adopts various methods of trimming and marking the cards so that he may secure a starter exactly suited to his hand. After trimming certain cards a trifle longer or shorter than others, the pack to be cut may be presented to the pone in such a manner that he will unconsciously lift them either by the ends or the sides, according to the wish of the dealer, and so uncover a starter exactly suited to the dealer's hand or crib. When the sharper has the cut, he can of course uncover any card he pleases. With marked edges, the pone can cut down to a card of any desired denomination. Some audacious gamblers make it a rule to get a starter by simply removing the top card and turning up the next one. It is needless to say that the second card has been carefully pre-arranged. Any person who fingers the pack longer than necessary in cutting starters, or who cuts sometimes by the edge and sometimes by the side, will bear watching. Marked cards and second dealing are great weapons in a game where so much depends on a knowledge of the adversary's hand, and on securing good counting cards for yourself.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** In the six-card game the hand is more valuable than the crib, because you know what it contains, whereas the crib is largely speculative. In the five-card game, in which there are only three cards in the hand and four in the crib, it is usual to sacrifice the hand very largely for the possibilities of the crib, because of the much larger scores that can be made with five cards, the starter and four in the crib.

**Baulking.** In both games it is the duty of the pone to baulk the dealer's crib as much as possible, by laying out cards which are very unlikely to be worth anything, either in making fifteens or in filling up sequences. Pairs it is impossible to provide against, and

the chance of making a flush is remote, but should be avoided if there is any choice. The best baulk is a King and Nine; tenth cards and Aces are also very good cards to lay out. Cards which are at least two pips apart, called *wide cards*, are better than *close cards*, as the latter may form sequences. Fives are very bad discards, and so are any cards that form a five or a fifteen.

**The Crib.** In laying out for his own crib, the dealer should preserve his own hand as much as possible; but other things being equal, the best cards to lay out are pairs, close cards, and cards that form fives, such as Fours and Aces. If these elements can be combined, so much the better. An Eight and a Seven, for instance, are not only close cards, being only one pip apart, but form a fifteen. The same is true of a trey and deuce.

**Keeping.** In selecting the hand to keep, much depends on the score. Early in the game you want a counting hand; near the end, especially if you have only four or five points to go, you want a pegging hand; that is, one with every card different, so that you can pair several cards, or make fifteens with almost anything that the pone may lead. In keeping a counting hand, much depends on whether it is good in itself, or needs a starter. In reckoning on the possibilities of the starter, it must never be forgotten that there are sixteen tenth cards in the pack, and that they are therefore the most probable starters of all. It is better to keep sequences open at both ends than those open in the middle. With two Sevens and two Eights, either a Six or a Nine will make your hand worth 24; but with two Eights and two Sixes, nothing but a Seven will improve your hand more than 4 points. Sequences are the best to keep, especially those of three cards with a duplicate. After them pairs royal are valuable, and next to them cards which will make a number of fives in various combinations, such as two Threes and two deuces.

**Leading.** There are two systems of playing, known as *playing off*, and *playing on*, and they are selected according to the player's position in the score. Long experience has shown that in six-card Cribbage the average expectation of the non-dealer for his hand and play is 12 points; and for the dealer, in hand, crib, and play, is 17. This being so, each player having had a deal, their scores should be about 29. If a player is 29 or more, he is said to be *at home*; and if he is seven or more points ahead of his adversary on even deals, he is said to be *safe at home*. When a player is safe at home, he should play off; that is, take no chances of scoring himself that might give his adversary a chance to make a still better score. This is usually found in the method of playing sequences. A player who avoids playing cards that might lead up to a run is said to play off. If he invites the run, hoping to make it longer himself, he is said to play on. When a

player is behind, it is better for him to play on, and to seize every chance to score, especially with sequences. As it is considered an advantage to be ahead on the first deal, most players prefer a forward game on the opening hand.

**Playing Off.** In this it is best to play cards on which it is unlikely that your adversary can score. Lead Aces, Twos and Threes, which cannot be made into fifteens. Do not pair his cards unless you have a card which will make you a double pair royal, (without passing 31,) if he should make a pair royal on you. Do not play close cards which he may turn into sequences.

Never play a card which will allow the adversary to make a double score, such as a pair and a fifteen, or a sequence and a fifteen at the same time. Such as the following are all bad plays: 9 on 3; 7 on A; 6 on 3, 4, or 5; 5 on 5; 4 on 7; 3 on 9; A on 7. All these expose you to the immediate rejoinder of a double count. Of course, if you have the card to make a pair royal in return, that is another matter, and is playing on, not playing off.

Do not play a card which brings the pip count to 5 or 21 if you can help it; because any tenth card will enable your adversary to peg two holes. Be a little wary about pairing the first card played, unless you have a third of the same denomination. If you have a choice between a pair and a sequence, your decision will depend on whether you are playing off or on. If you are playing off, make the pair, and take no chances of long runs.

**Playing On.** In this you play to give your adversary a count, hoping to make a better yourself. It is always advantageous to play one of a pair, and to begin with one end of a sequence. If he pairs your first card, you can reply with a pair royal. If he plays to make a sequence, you can sometimes hold him off until you get the score, and he will be unable to continue the run without passing 31. Play one of two cards that form a five, such as 3 and 2; 4 and A. If he plays a tenth card to it, you can peg fifteen. In playing on, you should make all the sequences possible, taking chances of your adversary's being able to continue the run. If you think he is leading you on, you must be guided by the state of the score as to how much you can risk.

Toward the end, you must reckon pretty closely how many points you can afford to risk your adversary's making without putting him out. If you have enough in your hand to get out on the show, you should not attempt to make a single point in play. Pair nothing, for he might come out with a pair royal; make no runs, for he might extend them. But if you have not enough to show out, you must take every chance to peg the difference, because if you cannot get out in play and first show, the dealer has not only both hand and crib against you, but the first show on the next deal. In six-card Cribbage, the usual pegging for the play is

five holes for the dealer, and four or five for the non-dealer. By adding this expectation to your show, you can see how many you can hope to peg yourself, and how many the dealer will probably be on hand, crib and peg altogether. The hands should average 7 points, and the cribs 5.

---

## FIVE-CARD CRIBBAGE.

In this form of the game only five cards are dealt to each player, one at a time. Two of these are laid out for the crib, and the three remaining are used in play, exactly as in the six-card game.

**Three for Last.** The non-dealer on the first hand of each game is allowed to peg three holes as a compensation for the advantage his adversary derives from having the first deal. Although the rules allow these three to be pegged at any time during the game, they should be put up immediately, in order to avoid disputes.

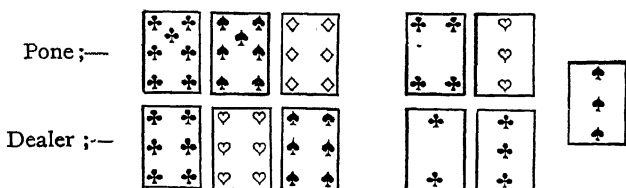
There is no further play after a go is declared, or either player has reached 31. The score for 31 is two holes; and for the go, one hole. Great importance is attached to the score for the go at five-card Cribbage, because so little is made in play that every point counts.

**The Crib.** This is the most important thing in the five-card game, and it is much more important to baulk your adversary's crib than to preserve your own hand. The best baulking cards are a King with a 10, 9, 8, 7, 6 or A. Never lay out a Jack, nor two cards which form a five, nor any pair, nor any two close cards. In laying out for your own crib, Fives, Sevens and Eights are the best. Any pair, any two cards that make five or fifteen, and any close cards are also good. Keep pairs royal and runs in your hand, and do not forget that a flush of three counts in the hand; but the starter must agree to make a flush in the crib.

**Playing Off and On.** The pegging in play is usually small; 2 for the dealer, and an average of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  for the non-dealer, hence the importance of the go. The average hand is a little less than 5, and the crib about 5. The player is at home if he has pegged 17 in two deals, his own and his adversary's. He is safe at home if he is 7 ahead, or his adversary is 7 behind.

In Five-card Cribbage, more than any other game, it is true that a game is never won until it is lost. Take the following example, in which the pone is 56 up, and the dealer has pegged

only 5 holes altogether. The separated cards show those laid out for the crib, and the odd card is the starter.



The pone leads a Seven, and afterwards pairs the dealer's Six, pegging to 58. The dealer pegs 6 for the pair royal, and is told to go. This enables the dealer to make a double pair royal and 31, pegging fourteen holes more. (The last card does not count when a go or 31 is pegged). On the show the pone has only a pair, which puts him to 60, within one of the game hole. The dealer shows 12 in hand and 17 in crib, making him 54 up. In the next deal the player who wanted one could not peg, his adversary securing a fifteen and a go, and showing out with a pair and a fifteen, 61 up and game.

## THREE-HANDED CRIBBAGE.

Five cards are dealt to each player, and then another, face down, for the foundation of the crib. Each player then lays out one card to make the dealer's crib up to four. The starter is cut by the player on the dealer's left, and the game proceeds as at six-card Cribbage, the eldest hand having the first show, the dealer the last.

## FOUR-HANDED CRIBBAGE.

When four play, they cut for partners, choice of seats, and deal; the two lowest pairing against the two highest, and the lowest taking the first deal and crib. The game is usually 121 points up, or twice round the board, and only one player on each side keeps the score.

Five cards are dealt to each player, one at a time, and one of these is discarded from each hand to form the crib, leaving four cards with which to play. The right-hand adversary of the dealer cuts for deal; the left-hand adversary for the starter. The eldest

## 410 (*Cribbage.*) *FOUR-HANDED GAME.*

hand plays first, and all pairs, sequences, and fifteens are scored by the side making them. If a player says "go," his left-hand neighbour must play, or pass the go to the next player on his left. In this way it may pass entirely round the table to the last player, who will then peg for it.

At this game there is a great deal more in the play than in either hand or crib. The average hand and crib is the same as at six-card Cribbage, 7 for the hand and 5 for the crib, but the play for the partners will run to 8 or 10 holes. Either side should be at home with 48 to 50 on two deals; four individual hands of 7 each, four plays of five each, and one crib of 5,

---

## SEVEN-CARD CRIBBAGE.

This form of the game for two players differs from the others only in the number of cards dealt to each player, which is seven. Two are laid out for the crib, and five kept for playing. There being six cards in each hand, with the starter, the counting combinations sometimes run into high figures, and it is therefore usual to play the game 121 or even 181 points up.

---

There are no authoritative *LAWS* for Cribbage, but the foregoing descriptions contain all the regulations in force at the best clubs.

---

## TEXT BOOKS.

The Cribbage Player's Handbook, by Walker.  
Bézique and Cribbage, by Berkeley.  
Pocket Guide to Cribbage, by "Cavendish."  
Bohn's Handbook of Games.  
Cribbage, by Rawdon Crawley.  
Dick's Handbook of Cribbage.

## PIQUET.

Piquet is supposed to have been introduced during the reign of Charles VII., and was designed as a motif for a ballet of living cards which was given in the palace of Chinon. Of the etymology of the word piquet, little or nothing is known, but the game itself is one of those perennials that have survived much more pretentious rivals, and, thanks to its intrinsic merits, it has never since its invention ceased to be more or less *à la mode*.

There are several varieties of Piquet, but the straightforward game for two players, sometimes called *Piquet au Cent*, or 100 points up, is the most common and popular, and will be first described.

**CARDS.** Piquet is played with a pack of thirty-two cards, all below the Seven being deleted. The cards rank: A K Q J 10 9 8 7, the Ace being the highest both in cutting and in play. There is no trump in Piquet, and all suits are equal in value. Two packs are sometimes used, one by each player in his proper turn to deal.

The cards have a certain pip-counting value, the Ace being reckoned for 11, other court cards for 10 each, and the 7 8 9 10 for their face value.

**MARKERS.** As the scores are not put down until the end of the hand or play the game is usually kept on a sheet of paper, or it may be marked on a cribbage board.

**PLAYERS.** Piquet is played by two persons, who sit opposite each other. They are known as the dealer, and the elder hand or pone.

**CUTTING.** They cut for seats and cards, the lower cut having the choice, and dealing the first hand. If a player exposes more than one card the lowest of those exposed must be taken as his cut. Ties are decided by cutting a second time.

**STAKES.** Piquet is played for so much a game of 100 points; but if the loser has not reached 50 points he is lunched, and loses a double game.

**DEALING.** The cards shuffled, they are presented to the pone to be cut, and at least two cards must be left in each packet. Twelve cards are dealt to each player, either two or three at a time; but whichever method is first selected must be maintained throughout the game. In England the cards are always dealt by twos. No trump is turned. The remaining eight cards are placed face downward on the table, the five top cards being laid cross-wise on the three at the bottom. These eight cards are called the *talon* or stock. Each player deals in turn.

**Irregularities in Dealing.** If the pack is proved to be imperfect the deal is void, but all previous scores or cuts made with that pack stand good. A misdeal does not lose the deal under any circumstances. If a card is found faced in the pack there must be a fresh deal with the same cards. If a player deals out of turn, and detects the error himself before he sees any of his cards, he may insist on his adversary's dealing, even if the adversary has seen his cards. As the deal is a disadvantage the adversary is not bound to correct the player in error.

If the dealer gives too many or too few cards to either player a new deal is at the option of the adversary. The error will of course be detected when it is found that there are only seven cards in the talon. If the non-dealer elects to have the deal stand, the error in the player's hand must be remedied in the discard, as will presently be described, and the stock must be divided 4-3 or 5-2, according to which player has too many cards.

**Carte Blanche.** The cards dealt, each player takes up his twelve cards and sorts them into suits. If the pone finds himself without a K Q or J, he should immediately claim 10 points for carte blanche. If the dealer holds carte blanche, he does not declare it until the pone has discarded.

**DISCARDING.** The five cards on the top of the talon belong to the pone, and he may discard from his hand any number of cards from one to five, and replace them by an equal number from the top of the stock. He must take at least one card, and he must take from the talon in the natural order of the cards. If he has elected to let a deal stand in which he has been given thirteen cards, he is entitled to four cards only from the talon, and must in all cases leave himself with twelve cards after his discard and draw are completed. If he does not take all five cards, he must announce distinctly how many he leaves, for if he fails to do so the dealer is not liable for having too many cards.

The dealer then discards, first declaring carte blanche if he holds it. In England, he need not draw at all, in France he must draw at least one card. Besides the three cards which belong to him, he is entitled to take as many as he pleases of those left by the pone, and in drawing from the talon he must take the cards in the order in which they come. If two cards are left by the pone, for instance, and the dealer wants three only, he must take the two left by the pone and one of his own three, leaving the two others face down on the table. The number of cards in hand after the discard and draw must be exactly twelve. Only one discard is allowed, and having been made it cannot be changed after the stock has been touched.

If the pone does not take all the cards to which he is entitled, he is allowed to look at those that remain of the first five that were on



the talon; but on no account may he look at any of the dealer's three. If the dealer leaves any cards in the stock, he has a right to look at them, but the pone may not see them until he has led for the first trick, or announced the suit he will lead. If he announces a suit, and after seeing the cards in the stock does not lead that suit, the dealer may call a suit. If the dealer does not look at the remaining cards the pone cannot see them either.

Each player keeps his discards separate from those of his adversary, and is allowed to refer to them at any time during the play of the hand, but on no account can he see his adversary's discards, unless that adversary has mixed with them one or more of the unseen cards that were left in the stock, and afterward picks up and looks at his discard, including the card which the other is entitled to see. For instance: The dealer leaves a card without looking at it. This he afterward mixes with his discard. Now, if he looks at his discard, of course he sees the card left in the stock, and the pone may demand to see not only the card left, but the entire discard. The same rule applies to the pone if he takes into his discards an unseen card of the stock.

**Irregular Discards.** If a player discards less cards than he intended, it is too late to remedy the error if he has touched the stock. If he discards too many cards, as the dealer frequently will by laying out five instead of three, he may take them back if he has not touched those in the stock, but if he touches any card in the stock, he must play with the short hand if there are not enough cards left in the stock to make his hand up to twelve.

**Irregular Drawing.** If the pone draws one of the three cards which properly belong to the dealer, he loses the game; and if the dealer draws any of the first five, before the pone has announced that he leaves them, the dealer loses the game. The dealer has no right to touch any part of the stock until the pone has discarded and drawn; but if the pone draws without making any announcement about leaving cards, the dealer has a right to assume that five cards have been taken, and that only three remain in the stock. For instance: The pone discards five cards, but draws four only, without saying anything. The dealer proceeds to discard and draw. He has of course taken one of the pone's cards, but it is too late to remedy the error or claim a penalty, and the pone must play with eleven cards. It is evident that the dealer will have too many cards, but as he has been led into the error by his adversary, he must be allowed to discard to reduce his hand to twelve.

If a player takes a card too many from the stock, he may replace it if he has not put it with the other cards in his hand. If he has seen it, he must show it to his adversary. If the superfluous card has been taken into the hand, the player must have too many

cards, and can score nothing that deal. This does not prevent the adversary from scoring anything he may have in hand or play, even if it is inferior.

If a player is found to have too few cards after the draw, he may still play and count all he can make, but he cannot win a capot, because he has no card for the last trick, which must be won by his adversary.

**The Stock.** If a player looks at one of his adversary's cards in the stock before or during the draw, he can count nothing that hand. If he looks at a card left in the talon after the draw, which he is not entitled to see, his adversary may call a suit from him as many times as he has seen cards. If a card of the talon is accidentally exposed, the player to whom it would naturally belong may demand a fresh deal.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** In order to understand the principles that guide players in discarding, the objects of the game must first be explained. There are three classes of counting combinations at Piquet, and the player that holds the better of each class, scores it. These combinations are: Point; Sequence; Fours and Triplets.

**The Point** is the suit having the greatest pip value, reckoning the Ace as 11, court cards as 10 each, and the 10 9 8 7 at their face value. If one player's best suit contains five cards, worth 48 points, and his adversary has a suit worth 51, the latter would be the only one to count, and it would be called the point for that deal.

The value of the point is the number of cards that go to make it. In England, they count a point containing the 7 8 and 9 as worth one less than the number of cards. This is a modern invention, unknown to the older writers on the game, and not always played.

**Sequence.** Three or more cards of the same suit, if next in value to one another, form a sequence. The French terms are generally used to designate the number of cards in the sequence: Tierce, Quatrième, Quinte, Sixième, Septième, Huitième. Many English works on cards erroneously spell quinte without the "e," and give "quart" for a sequence of four. If one is going to use the French language at all, it may as well be used correctly.

Sequences outrank one another according to the best card, if they are of equal length; so that a quinte to a King would be better than a quinte to a Queen; but a longer sequence always outranks a shorter one, regardless of the high cards. The player holding the best sequence is entitled to score it, together with any inferior sequences he may hold in other suits. Should his adversary hold intermediate sequences, they are of no value. For instance: One player holds a quinte to the Jack in spades, a tierce

to the Ten in hearts, and a tierce to the Nine in clubs; while the other holds a quatrième majeure (A K Q J) in hearts, diamonds, and clubs. None of the latter are of any value; but all those in the other hand are good. If the best sequence is a tie, no sequences can be scored by either player.

The value of a sequence is ten more than the number of cards that go to form it, provided that number exceeds four. A tierce counts 3 only, and a quatrième 4 only; but a quinte is worth 15, a sixième 16, and so on.

**Fours, and Triplets.** Any four cards of the same denomination, higher than a Nine, is called a Quatorze; three of any kind higher than the Nine is called a Trio, or sometimes a Brelan. As a trio is seldom mentioned without naming the denomination, it is usual to say; "Three Kings," or "Three Jacks," as the case may be. The 7 8 and 9 have no value except in point and sequence. The player holding the quatorze of the highest rank may score any inferior ones that he may hold, and also any trios. Should his adversary hold any intermediate ones, they are of no value. In the absence of any quatorze, the best trio decides which player shall count all the trios he may have in his hand, his adversary counting none. For instance: One player holds four Tens and three Jacks, his adversary holding triplets of Aces, Kings, and Queens. None of the latter would be of any value, as the lowest quatorze is better than the highest trio, and the player with the four Tens could count his three Jacks also. Pairs have no value.

The value of any quatorze is 14, as its name implies. Trios are worth 3 only.

In discarding, the object is to secure the best counting combinations, and also to retain cards which will win tricks in play. The combinations take precedence of one another in scoring, the first being always Carte Blanche, then the Point, then Sequence, and lastly the Quatorze or Trio.

**DECLARING.** Carte blanche must be announced and shown before a discard is made. Each player having discarded and drawn, the elder hand proceeds to announce any counting combinations he holds, which he must declare in regular order, beginning with the point. In announcing the point, the suit is not mentioned, only its value. The sequences are defined by the number of cards and the highest; "sixième to the King," for instance. The fours and trios are defined in the same way; "four Kings," or "three Jacks."

To each of these declarations, as they are made in regular order, the dealer must reply: "*Good*," "*Equal*," or, "*Not good*." If the point is admitted to be good, the holder scores it; not by putting it down on the score sheet, but simply by beginning his count with the number of points it is worth. If the point is equal,

neither player scores it, and secondary points have no value under any circumstances. If the point declared by the elder hand is not good, it is not necessary for the dealer to say how much better his point is; that will come later. To each of the other declarations replies are made in the same manner, except that fours and trios cannot be "equal." As each combination is admitted to be good, the elder hand adds it to his count. For instance: His point is 51, good; his sequence is five to the Ace, good; and his triplet of Aces is good. These are worth 5, 15, and 3 respectively, and his total count is 23, if he has no minor sequences or trios. This is not put down, but simply announced.

The strict rules of the game require the player whose combination is acknowledged to be good, to show it; but among good players this is quite unnecessary, for each usually knows by his own cards what his adversary should and probably does hold.

The elder hand having finished his declarations, and announced their total value in points, leads any card he pleases. If this card is a Ten or better, he claims one point for leading it, even if he does not win the trick, and he adds this point to his score.

An illustration will probably make the foregoing processes clearer. The elder hand, after the draw, holds these cards:—

♥ A K Q J : ♠ A K Q : ♦ A K Q 7 : ♣ A.

He announces: "Forty-one." "Not good." "Quatrième to the Ace," "Not good." "Quatorze Aces," which he knows is good; and which admits of his counting his triplets of Kings and Queens. These are worth collectively 20 points, and on leading one of his Aces he announces "Twenty-one."

The dealer, before playing a card, proceeds to claim the count for the combinations which are good in his own hand, which is as follows:—

♣ J 10 9 8 : ♦ J 10 9 : ♠ K Q J 10 9.

The point is worth 5; the quinte 15, the quatrième 4, and the tierce 3; 27 altogether. His trios of Jacks and Tens are shut out by the superior combinations in the elder hand.

Having claimed these 27 points, and their correctness having been admitted by the elder hand, the dealer proceeds to play a card. If either player has forgotten to declare anything before he plays, the count is lost.

**Sinking.** A player is not obliged to declare any combination unless he wishes to do so, and he may sink a card if he thinks it would be to his advantage to conceal his hand. Sinking is calling only part of a combination, as, for instance, calling 51 for his point when he really has 61; calling a quinte when he has a sixième, or a trio when he has a quatorze. Sinking is usually resorted to

only when the player knows from his own hand and discards that what he declares is still better than anything his adversary can hold; but it must be remembered that the part of the declaration which is sunk in this manner is lost.

**Irregular Declarations.** If either player claims a combination which he does not hold, and does not remedy the error before he plays a card, he cannot count anything that deal, losing any other declarations he may have made which are correct. His adversary then counts everything in his hand, whether his combinations were inferior or not. He also counts for what he wins in the tricks.

If the elder hand's declaration is admitted by the dealer to be good, it is good, even if the dealer afterward proves to have a better point, sequence, quatorze or trio. If any combination named by the elder hand is not actually his best, he cannot amend his declaration after the dealer has replied to it. This is in order to prevent a player from getting information to which he is not entitled. If he holds three Kings and three Tens, for instance, and announces the Tens in order to find out whether or not his adversary has three Queens or Jacks, and the dealer says: "Not good," the three Kings are lost, and the dealer scores his own trios.

It sometimes happens that in order to keep a good point or sequence, a player will discard one card of a quatorze originally dealt him; or one of a trio, of which he afterward draws the fourth. He can score only the trio, of course; but his adversary, having none of that denomination either in his hand or discards, knows that four were possible, and after playing a card he has a right to ask the suit of the card which was discarded.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The elder hand can lead any card he pleases, announcing the suit at the same time. The dealer is bound to follow suit, if able, but he is not obliged to win the trick. As there are no trumps, the higher card, if of the suit led, wins the trick. If the second player does not follow suit, the leader wins. The winner of one trick leads for the next, and so on until all twelve tricks are played.

Every time a card is played which is better than a Nine, the leader counts one for it, adding the number to the total value of his score as already announced. If the second player wins the trick with any card better than a Nine he also counts one; but if the trick is won by the player who led, there is no extra count for winning it. The winner of the *last trick* counts one for it, in addition to his count for winning it with a card better than a Nine. If the leader wins it, he gets the one extra.

If each player wins six tricks, there is no further scoring; but if either player wins the *odd trick* he adds to his score ten points

for *cards*, in addition to all other scores. If either player wins all twelve tricks, which would be the case in the example hand just given as an illustration, he adds to his score forty points for the *capot*; but this forty points includes the scores for the last trick and for the odd trick.

A card once laid on the table cannot be taken back, unless the player has renounced in error. There is no *revoke* in *Piquet*, and if a player has one of the suit led he must play it. If he fails to do so, when the error is discovered the cards must be taken back and replayed.

**REPIC.** If either player is able to reach 30 by successive declarations, beginning with the point, all of which are admitted by his adversary to be good, he adds 60 to his score, making it 90 instead of 30, and this is irrespective of what his adversary may have in minor or inferior combinations. The important thing to remember in *repic* is that declarations always count in regular order, *carte blanche* taking precedence of everything; then the point, sequences, and quatorze or trio. Suppose elder hand to hold the following cards:—

♥ K Q J 10 9; ♣ A K Q; ♦ A Q 9; ♠ Q.

If the quinte to the King is admitted good for the point, it must be good for the sequence also. That is 20. The four Queens must be good, as the adversary cannot have any quatorze. This makes the total 34, and 60 added for *repic*, 94 altogether, to which he will add one for leading the first card, if it is above a Nine.

Suppose the elder hand had the following cards:—

♥ A K Q J 8; ♣ A K; ♦ A K; ♠ A K 10.

If his point is good, that and his four Aces and Kings will make him 33 altogether; but his sequence is not good, because the dealer holds five diamonds to the Queen, which comes in order before the score for quatorze, and so saves the *repic*. Suppose that with the foregoing cards the elder hand was told that even his point was not good. He would count 29 for the 14 Aces, 14 Kings, and the card led. If the dealer had a *sixième* in diamonds, and a quinte in clubs, for instance, he would claim a *repic*, 96 points, in spite of the 29 announced by the elder hand; because point and sequence score before quatorze.

Equalities do not save the *repic*. Take the following hands:—

Elder:—♥ A J 10 9 8; ♣ 10; ♦ 10; ♠ A J 10 9 8.

Dealer:—♥ K Q; ♣ A K Q; ♦ A K Q J 7; ♠ K Q.

The point is equal. The *quatrième* to the Jack is not good and the four Tens are not good; so elder hand leads a card, and

counts, "One." The dealer then claims repic, 95 points, which is good, although the elder hand had an equal point.

**PIC.** If either player can reach 30 in hand and play combined, before his adversary scores anything, 30 are added for the pic. Pic can never be made by the dealer unless the elder hand leads a card smaller than a Nine; he must make repic if anything. To make pic the elder hand must reach 30 in the regular order of scoring. Suppose he holds these cards:—

♥ A 9; ♣ A K Q J; ♦ K Q J 10 9; ♠ K.

If the dealer acknowledges the point to be good, everything else in the hand must be good also. This will give the elder hand 27 before playing a card; 5 for the point, 15 and 4 for the sequences, and 3 for the Kings. By leading out the A K and Q. 3 more points are secured, the dealer having nothing to score, and so the elder hand reaches 30 and makes the pic, counting 60, and still having the lead. Equalities do not save pic.

According to the strict rules of the game, a player who is playing for pic is not allowed to count 30 at all, but must jump from his last count, 29, to 60, or he loses the pic; but this is seldom or never insisted on.

**SCORING.** The last card played, the total number of points made by each player are put down on the score sheet, or marked on a cribbage board, and if neither player has reached 100 points, the deal passes to the one who was elder hand on the last deal.

The order of scoring should be carefully observed, in order to determine which goes out first, and whether or not a player is lunched. Carte blanche, The Point, Sequence, Quatorze or Trio, Repic, Points for Leading or Winning, Pic, the Odd Trick, Capot.

If one player reaches 100 before his adversary has reached 50, it is a *lurch*, and counts a double game.

**Abandoned Hands.** If a player throws down his cards, he may still take them up again, unless he or his adversary have mixed their cards with the discards, or with the remainder of the talon.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** The chief points for the beginner are good discarding, and taking advantage of tenace positions in the play, so as to secure the count for cards which is often important.

**Elder Hand.** In discarding, the pone should consider what there may be against him. If it is unlikely that he will lose a pic or repic, he should try for the *point*, which very often carries with it the sequence. It must be remembered that there are only eight cards in each suit, and by comparing those that you hold with those that your adversary may hold it is comparatively easy, in the

majority of hands, to estimate the possible scores against you. Next to the point, the most important thing is the score for **cards**. The point will save pic and repic, but the cards will make the greatest difference in the score in the long run. Sequences are always valuable, especially those that are Ace high in the elder hand, because they enable him to win a succession of tricks in play.

The elder hand should risk a good deal if he has a fair chance to make a pic or repic, which will often settle the game. If there is any choice as to what to keep of two nearly equal chances, always preserve the combination that will be most likely to secure the count for cards.

In *Leading*, it is best to begin with the point, unless you know that you are leading up to tenace, or to high cards that will bring in a long adverse suit. The piquet player soon learns the importance of tenace and fourchette, and can sometimes see how things must be managed for five or six tricks ahead, so as to secure the odd trick. Tenace is the best and third-best of any suit, such as A Q, while a fourchette is any two cards within one of each other, such as K J, or Q 10, and the lead from such combinations should always be avoided. If you have the odd trick in hand, make it at once, before you risk anything else, because the only difference between the odd trick and eleven tricks is the count for each card led in the tricks.

*The Dealer.* The first thing to guard against is a long run of winning leads from the elder hand, which might make the odd trick, or even capot. As there are no trumps it is very important for the dealer to keep guarded Kings and twice-guarded Queens. The principal thing for the dealer to remember is that if he cannot stop a long suit in the elder hand, he will have to provide in advance for a certain number of discards, and these must be so planned that guards will be preserved in the other suits. He should also get his hand into such condition that when he does get into the lead, he will not have to lead away from tenaces or guarded Kings. Careful attention to his adversary's declarations, and a comparison of his own hand with his discards will usually guide the dealer to a correct conclusion as to what to keep and what to throw away in playing to tricks.

Mathematicians have exhausted their resources on Piquet, but their conclusions are of little use to the average player. The subject of discards has been very fully illustrated by examples from actual play, especially in the *Westminster Papers*, but no one has yet given us any simple rules like the *jeux de règle* at Écarté.

---





A announces 41 for his point, sequence of three to the Queen, four Aces, and says, "I play a club," which is his lead for the first trick. If the second player admits all these to be good he says nothing, but plays a card. In this case, Y would announce four to the King, and four to the Jack, and would play a spade, having no club. B would then announce three Kings, which are good on account of his partner's having four Aces; but both the sequences are shut out by Y's better declarations. The dealer, Z, then declares four to the Ten and three to the Nine, both those sequences being made good by his partner's holding the best sequence at the table.

The first trick played, each person at the table shows what he has claimed, in order that his adversaries may verify the count. A would then gather up the first trick, announcing the total score for his side, which would be 22; 4 for the point, 14 Aces, 3 Kings, and 1 for the card led. He would then play another club, announcing 22. This his partner would win but would not count, as he is on the same side that has already counted for the lead. If the play is followed up it will be found that A-B make a capot. The adversaries will then score 15 for their three sequences of four, and one of three.

No point of less than 30 can be announced.

***Pic and Repic.*** If one player, or two partners together, reach 20 in counting, without playing, they count 90 for the repic. If they reach 20 in declarations and play together, they count 60 for the pic. Carte blanche in the hand of one or other partner may count toward pic or repic; and if two partners each held carte blanche, they would be entitled to 90 points for the repic, no matter what the adversaries held, because carte blanche takes precedence of all other scores.

---

## PIQUET A ÉCRIRE.

This game somewhat resembles Skat in the manner of playing and settling. Any number from three to seven persons sit around the table; but only two play, and the losses of each individual are charged to him on a score sheet ruled off for the purpose. The players may take turns, each playing two deals, the first with the person on his left, and the second with the one on his right. Or it may be agreed that the loser in each deal shall give way to a new player, the winner of the majority of points in each deal to continue. The game is generally arranged for a certain number of tours or deals, at the end of which the scores are balanced and settled for.

## RUBICON PIQUET, FOR TWO PLAYERS.

The chief difference between this game and the usual form, Piquet au cent, is in the manner of declaring. The usual method in England and America is as follows:—

**The Point** is scored by the player holding the greatest number of cards in the suit, and the pip value is resorted to only to decide ties. This is done in order to conceal, if possible, the nature of the cards held. When the numerical value is asked, only the last figure is given, “seven,” for instance, if the point is 47.

If the point is good, the elder hand immediately names the suit. If it is not good, the suit is not named, and the elder hand proceeds to call his *sequences*. If they are good, the suits must be named; the same with quatorze and trio.

**Undercalling.** If a player holds an inferior sequence, quatorze or trio, which he knows is better than any his adversary can possibly hold, he may call it, and afterward score the better combination, provided he is correct in estimating the inferior one that he called as *good against the cards*. But if the adversary can demonstrate that the inferior announcement was not actually good against the cards, and that it was possible for him to hold a better, the score for the higher combination is lost. For instance: A player holds four Kings and three Aces, and on glancing over his hand and discards, sees that his adversary cannot hold any quatorze, so he declares the three Kings, instead of the four Aces. Suppose he mistook a Nine for a Ten, and overlooked the fact that his adversary might have had four Tens, the score for the four Kings would be lost, but the three Aces would be good if his adversary had discarded a Ten, and did not actually hold four. In the ordinary game, the higher combination is lost if it is not called.

In play, every card led, whatever its value, counts one, and winning the trick counts one also. The last trick counts two, and the capot forty. Pic and repic are reckoned as in the ordinary game.

**Scoring.** Instead of playing 100 points up, six deals is a game, each player dealing three times. The lower score is then deducted from the higher, and 100 points added to the difference to determine the value of the game, which is usually played for so much a point.

If the result of the six deals is a tie, two more deals must be played. If they also result in a tie, the game is void.

**Rubicons.** If either or both players fail to reach 100 points in the six deals, the one having the most is the winner, and adds to

his own score all the points made by the loser, with 100 in addition for game. For instance: A has 113 scored, and B 80. A wins  $113 + 80 + 100 = 293$  altogether. Again; A has 88, B has 84. A wins  $88 + 84 + 100 = 272$  altogether. Again: A has 180, B has 142. A wins the difference in the scores,  $38 + 100 = 138$  altogether.

### TEXT BOOKS.

*Jeux de Cartes*, by Jean Boussac.  
*Académie des Jeux*, by Van Tenac.  
*Académie des Jeux*, by Richard.  
*Règles de tous les Jeux*, by Dreyfous.  
 Bohn's Handbook of Games.  
*Piquet, and Rubicon Piquet*, by Berkeley.  
*Laws of Piquet*, by "Cavendish."

*Westminster Papers*, Vols. II. to IX. inclusive. There are excellent articles on the Laws in Vols. III. and VI., and on discards in Vol. VII.

---

## IMPERIAL,

### OR PIQUET WITH A TRUMP.

*Impérial* differs from *Piquet* in some minor details, although the leading principle is the same. There are no discards; sequences of court cards are the only ones that count; tierces are worthless; and a trump suit is added.

The *cards* rank K Q J A 10 9 8 7; the K Q J A and 7 of trumps are called honours, and in all sequences the four highest cards in the suit are the only ones that count.

**Counters.** Each player is supplied with six white and four red counters, which are passed from left to right as the points accrue. Each red is worth six white, and when all six white counters have been passed over, they must be returned, and a red one passed over in their place. When all the counters, four red and six white, have been passed over, the game is won.

**Dealing.** Twelve cards are given to each player, two or three at a time, and the twenty-fifth is turned up for the trump. If this is an honour, the dealer marks one white counter for it. There are no discards.

**Impérials.** Certain combinations of cards are known as impérials, and the player marks one red counter for each of them. The best impérial is *carte blanche*, which is sometimes marked as a double impérial, and worth two reds. A sequence of K Q J A in any suit is an impérial. An impérial *de retourne* may be formed in the dealer's hand if the turn-up trump completes his sequence or makes four of a kind. An impérial *tombée*, or *de rencontre*, is made when the player who holds the King and Queen of trumps catches the Jack and Ace from his adversary. Four Kings, Queens, Jacks, Aces, or Sevens in one hand is an impérial; but the Eights, Nines and Tens have no value.

**Declaring.** The elder hand announces his point, as in *Piquet*, and arrives at its value in the same way, reckoning the Ace for 11, etc. The dealer replies, "Good," or "Not good," as the case may be; but there are no equalities. If the point is a tie, the elder hand counts it. The point is worth a *white* counter. The impérials are then called, each being worth one *red* counter. The sequences are called first, that in trumps being "good" of course; then the fours are called, the best being four Kings, and the lowest four Aces. In plain-suit sequences there are no "equals," the elder hand counting ties as an offset to the advantages of the deal.

**Playing.** The elder hand leads a card, and the dealer then declares and marks any impérials he may have that are good; after which he plays a card. No impérials can be claimed or scored after the holder has played a card. The second player in each trick must win the trick if he can, either with a higher card or with a trump. For each honour in trumps in the tricks won the player marks a white counter at the end of the hand. The winner of the odd trick scores as many white counters as he has tricks in excess of his adversary. If either player makes *capot*, (all twelve tricks,) he scores two red counters.

**Scoring.** When one player reaches six white counters and changes them for a red, his adversary must take down any white counters he may have scored. For instance: The pone has 2 reds and 4 whites up; the dealer has 1 red and 5 whites. The pone scores two whites, reaching six, and advancing his score to 3 reds, which are sometimes called impérials. The dealer must take down his white counters, losing that count altogether, and leaving himself 1 red. The only exception to this is that at the beginning of the hand if both have impérials combinations in hand, neither side takes down its white counters.

In **Counting out** the following order of precedence must be observed: The turn-up trump, (if it is an honour). The Point. Impérial in hand, sequences first. Impérial *de retourne*. Impérial *tombée*. Honours in tricks. Odd tricks.

## CASSINO.

This is a very old and always popular game, which has lately been much improved by the introduction of the variations known as Royal and Spade Cassino, the latter especially being a very lively game. Like Euchre, Cassino is eminently respectable, and is one of the few games of cards that are unhesitatingly admitted to the domestic circle.

**Cards.** Cassino is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which have no rank in play, their pip or face value being the only element of importance. In cutting for positions at the table, or for partners in the four-handed game, the Ace is the lowest card, the others ranking upward to the King in the order of their sequence.

**Markers.** When a certain number of points is agreed on as a game, the score may be kept with counters, on a sheet of paper, or on a cribbage board. If each hand is a game in itself, it is settled for immediately, either in counters or in money.

**Players.** Any number from two to four may play, each for himself, or four may play two against two, partners sitting opposite each other. The players on the dealer's right and left are known as the pone, and the eldest hand respectively.

**Cutting.** The players draw from an outspread pack for positions at the table, the lowest card having the choice and dealing the first hand. If the first cut does not decide, those tying must cut again. If a player exposes more than one card he must cut again. The ace is low.

**Stakes.** Cassino may be played for so much a game, or so much a point; and it may be agreed that the game shall be a certain number of points, or shall be complete in one deal, or that the player making the majority of points on each deal shall score one, and the one first making a certain number in this manner, such as five, shall be the winner. If points are played for, the lower score is usually deducted from the higher, and the difference is the value of the game. It is sometimes agreed that if the winner has twice as many points as his adversary, he shall be paid for a double game.

**Dealing.** After the cards have been properly shuffled they must be presented to the pone to be cut, and he must leave at least four in each packet. Beginning on his left, the dealer distributes four cards to each player in two rounds of two at a time, giving two to the table just before helping himself in each round. No trump is turned, and the remainder of the pack is left face downward on the dealer's left. The four cards dealt to the table

are then turned face up, and the play begins. After the four cards given to each person have all been played, the dealer takes up the remainder of the pack, and without any further shuffling or cutting, deals four more cards to each player, two at a time, but gives none to the table. These four having been played, four more are dealt in the same manner, and so on, until the pack is exhausted, after which the deal passes to the left in regular rotation.

**Irregularities in the Deal.** If the pack is proved to be imperfect, or if a card is found faced in the pack there must be a fresh deal by the same dealer. If a player deals out of turn, he must be stopped before the cards on the table are turned face upward.

A misdeal loses the deal. It is a misdeal if the pack has not been cut, or if the cards are shuffled after the pack has been properly cut; or if the dealer deals a card incorrectly, and fails to remedy it before dealing to the next player; or if he deals too many or too few cards to any player or to the table.

If a card is exposed during the deal, an adversary may claim a fresh deal. If, after the cards on the table have been faced, a card is exposed by the dealer, or is found faced in the pack, the player to whom it would be dealt may reject it, and it must then be placed in the middle of the stock, and he must be given the top card. If a card is exposed in the last round, the dealer must take it, and must allow the player to whom it would have been dealt to draw a card from the dealer's hand, face downward. If he draws the exposed card, he must keep it.

If the dealer gives any player an incorrect number of cards in any round after the first, and does not detect and correct the error before he deals to the next player, the dealer cannot count anything that hand. The number of cards in each hand must be restored to four, either by drawing from them, face down, or adding from the stock. If any player lifts his cards before the dealer has helped all the players, including himself, a misdeal cannot be claimed.

**Objects of the Game.** The object in Cassino is to secure certain cards and combinations of cards which count toward game. These are as follows:—

	<i>Points.</i>
The majority of <i>Cards</i> taken in.	3
The majority of <i>Spades</i> taken in.	1
The Ten of diamonds, <i>Big Cassino.</i>	2
The deuce of spades, <i>Little Cassino.</i>	1
The <i>Ace</i> of any suit.	1
A <i>Sweep</i> of all the cards on the table.	1

The manner in which these points are secured will become apparent from the description of the method of playing the hands.

**Method of Playing.** Beginning on the dealer's left, each player in turn plays a card from his hand, placing it face upward on the table. Only one card can be played at a time, and each person must play in his proper turn until all four of his cards are exhausted. After receiving fresh cards, the eldest hand again plays first, and so on for every round. Under certain conditions, each player in his proper turn may take up certain cards from the table, together with the one played from his hand, turning them face downward in front of him. He is entitled to count all the points contained in the cards taken in or won in this manner. These conditions are : that he can match or *pair* a card or cards on the table ; that he can *combine* two or more cards on the table so as to make their total pip value equal to that of the card he plays ; or that he can *build* a card in his hand upon one on the table, so as to make their total pip value agree with that of a second card, still in his hand.

**Pairing.** If the person whose turn it is to play, holds in his hand any card of a similar denomination to any of those on the table, he may play the card from his hand, face upward, and then gather it in again, together with all similar cards, turning them face downward in front of him. For instance: He holds an Eight, and there are one or two Eights on the table. He plays the Eight from his hand, and then gathers in all of them.

**Combining.** If a player holds any card, not a K Q or J, the pip value of which is equal to that of two or more cards on the table, he may play the card from his hand, and then gather it in again, together with the two or three cards that collectively equal it in pip value. For instance: He holds a 9, and a 4, 3 and 2 are upon the table. He may combine these three cards, calling attention to the fact that their collective value is 9, and then play the 9 from his own hand, gathering in and turning down all four cards. An 8 and Ace, or 6 and 3 might be gathered in the same way ; or two such combinations might be gathered at the same time, 3, 2, 6, 7, for instance, which would make two nines ; all of which might be gathered by a player holding a 9 in his hand.

Pairs and combinations may be taken in together. For instance: Among the cards on the table are a 4, 6, and 10, and the player holds a 10. He can gather in not only the pair of Tens, but the combinations which equal a 10.

**Building.** A player may have in his hand two cards, the lower of which, if added to a card on the table, would build up its value to that of the higher card still in the player's hand. For instance: A player holds a 9 and 2, and there is a 7 on the table. He may place the 2 on the 7, announcing the total value ; " Nine," which will notify other players that those two cards can-



not be separated ; but he cannot take them in until it again comes round to his turn to play, because he is allowed to play only one card at a time, and he has played his card in making the build.

Should any other player following him hold a 9, he would be entitled to take in this build, but he could not separate the two cards forming it. A player holding either a 7 or a 2 could not touch either of the cards in the build, because they are no longer a 7 and 2, but a 9, for all practical purposes.

**Increasing Builds.** If any player held an Ace and a 10 in his hand, he could increase the 9 build to a 10 build, by putting his Ace on the 7 and 2, and announcing the total value, "Ten." Any following player would then be unable to win the build with anything but a 10, and the player who originally built it a 9 would lose it unless he also held a 10 in his hand. Should the build remain a 9 until it came round again to the player who originally built it, he could then take it in with his 9, or he might himself increase it to 10, if he had an Ace and a 10 in his hand ; but in order to do this the player must have in his hand the cards to win both the original and the increased builds. A player holding in his hand a 10, 3 and 2, but no 8, could not build a 5 on the table to an 8, and afterward advance it to 10. He must have the 2 3 8 and 10 all in his own hand to do this.

Some players imagine that a player cannot increase his own build in this manner, even if he has both the cards for the first and last build ; but there is no reason why a player should be denied a privilege which is freely granted to his adversary. If any player can legitimately make or increase a build, all may do so, provided they have the proper cards.

**Double Builds.** When two cards of the same denomination, or two builds of the same value are put together as one, they cannot be increased. For instance : A player holds 7 and 3, and there are upon the table a 5 2 and 4. He places his 3 on the 4, and gathers the 5 and 2 together, announcing the build as "Two Sevens." This cannot be increased to 8, 9, or 10 under any circumstances, and nothing but a 7 will win it.

Pairs may be doubled in the same manner. If a player has two Nines in his hand, and there is one on the table, he may build on the latter with one of his own, announcing, "Two Nines," which will prevent any player from building either of them to 10, and will entitle the builder to take in both cards with his third Nine when it comes round to his turn. Should any other player at the table hold the fourth Nine, he could of course take in the build.

It is necessary to distinguish between building and combining. In combining cards, those already on the table are gathered together ; in building, or increasing a build, a card must be played from the hand. If one player has made a build of any description,

it cannot be interfered with or increased except by other cards from a player's hand, those from the table not being available. For instance: One player has built a 5 by combining two Aces on the table with a 3 from his hand. On the table are also a 2 and 4 and a following player holds a 9 and 7. He cannot use the deuce on the table to increase the build from 5 to 7, nor the 4 to increase it to 9; because that would not be building from his hand; but as he held the 4 and 9 in his hand, he could build on the 5.

The simple rule to be remembered is that no combination of cards once announced, and left on the table, can be changed, except by the addition of a card from the hand of some player.

**Taking In.** Any player who has made a build is obliged either to win it, when it is next his turn to play, or to win something else, or to make another build. For instance: He has built a 5 into a 9 with a 4, and holds another 4; if another 5 appears on the table before it comes to his turn to play, he may build that into a 9 also, with his other 4, announcing, "Two Nines." Or if some player should lay out a 4 he could pair it and take it in, leaving his 9 build until the next round. In the same way a player may increase or win another player's build instead of taking in his own. An opponent's build may be increased by cards from the hand only.

In the four-handed game, partners may take in one another's builds, or may make builds which can be won by the card declared in the partner's hand. For instance: One player builds an 8, and his partner holds Little Cassino. If there is a 6 on the table, the Cassino can be built on it, and "two Eights," called, although the player has no 8 in his own hand; the 8 already built by his partner is sufficient. If a player has built a 9 which has been taken in by an adversary, he still holding the 9 he built for, his partner may build for the declared 9 in the same way.

**Sweeping.** If at any time a player is able to win everything on the table with one card, it is a sweep, and counts a point. For instance: He holds an 8, and there are upon the table four cards only:— 5 3 6 and 2. By combining the 6 and 2, and the 5 and 3, two Eights will be formed, and the sweep is made. Sweeps are usually marked by leaving the cards with which they are made face upward at the bottom of the tricks taken in by the player. Sweeps made by opposite sides are sometimes turned down to cancel one another.

**Trailing.** When a player cannot pair, combine, or build anything, he must play a card. This is called trailing, because he is simply following along waiting for opportunities. In trailing it is usually the best policy to play the smaller cards, except Aces and Little Cassino, because as other players will probably trail small cards also, these may be combined and won with the larger cards kept in the player's hand.

**Last Cards.** In the last round, all the cards remaining on the table are won by the player who takes the last trick, but it does not count as a sweep unless it would have been a sweep under any circumstances. The last trick is usually made by the dealer, who always keeps back a court card if he has one, to pair one already on the table.

**Irregularities in Play.** If any person plays out of his proper turn, the card so played is laid aside as exposed, until it comes to his turn, when it is simply placed on the table with the others. The player in error is not allowed to build or combine it, nor to win anything with it.

If a player gathers in a card which does not belong to the combination or build, he must not only return the card improperly taken up, but all others taken in with it, together with his own card, the latter, however, being laid out separately from the others. If the combination was his own build, it must be broken up; if an adversary's, it must be restored, and left as it was.

If a player takes in a build with a wrong card, or takes in a wrong combination, or gathers cards to which he is not entitled, the error must be challenged and proved before the next trick is taken in by another player, because only the last trick gathered can be seen.

If a player makes a build without the proper card in his hand to win it, on discovery of the error, the combination must be broken up, and the adversaries may take back the cards they have played in following the erroneous build, and may amend their play. If, however, another player has won the erroneous build, there is no penalty, nor any remedy.

**Showing.** After the last card has been played, each player counts his cards face downward, and announces the number. The player having the majority scores the three points for cards. If it is a tie, neither scores. The cards are then turned face up, and the spades counted and claimed; and then all the points for Casinos and Aces. It should be remembered that the total number of points to be made in each hand, exclusive of sweeps, is eleven, and the total of the claims made must agree with that number.

**Scoring.** There are several methods of scoring. The old way was to play 11 points up, deducting the lower score from the higher at the end of each deal. If one side reached 11 before the adversary reached 6, it was a lurch, and counted as a double game. The common method is to count every hand a game, and settle for it in counters.

## TWENTY-ONE POINT CASSINO.

This game is usually marked with counters, or pegged on a cribbage board. Nothing is scored until the end of the hand, when each side reckons and claims its points. In order to avoid disputes there should be a previous understanding as to what points go out first in a close game. In the absence of any agreement to the contrary, the points count out in the following order:—Cards first, then Spades, Big Cassino, Little Cassino, Aces, and Sweeps. If the Aces have to decide it, the spade Ace goes out first, then clubs, hearts, and diamonds. If the sweeps have to decide it, only the difference in the number of sweeps counts, and if there is none, or not enough, the game is not ended, and another deal must be played.

It is better to agree to *count out* in twenty-one point Cassino; each player keeping mental count of the number of cards and spades he has taken in, together with any "natural" points. The moment he reaches 21 he should claim the game, and if his claim is correct he wins, even if his adversary has 21 or more. If he is mistaken, and cannot show out, he loses the game, no matter what his adversary's score may be. If neither claims out, and both are found to be, neither wins, and the game must be continued to 32 points, and so on, eleven points more each time until one player claims to have won the game.

**Suggestions for Good Play.** The principal thing in Cassino is to remember what has been played especially in the counting and high cards; such as Aces, Eights, Nines, and Tens. In making pairs and combinations, give preference to those containing spades, and if you have to trail, do not play a spade if you can help it. If three Aces have been taken in, play the fourth, if you hold it, at the first opportunity, because it cannot be paired; but if there is another Ace to come, keep yours until you can make a good build with it. As between cards which were on the table and those trailed by an adversary, take in those trailed if you have a choice. Take in the adversary's build in preference to your own, if you can, and build on his build at every opportunity. If Big Cassino is still to come, avoid trailing cards that will make a Ten with those on the table. Go for "cards" in preference to everything else, and always make combinations that take in as many cards as possible. If you have a Nine, and the cards on the table are 2 2 5 7, take in the 2 2 5, in preference to the 2 7. It is considered bad policy to take in three court cards, as it stops all sweeps when the fourth appears.

## ROYAL CASSINO.

The only difference in this form of the game is that the three court cards, K Q J, have a pip value, and may be used in combining and building, whereas in the ordinary game they can be used only in pairs. The Jack is worth 11, the Queen 12, and the King 13; so that a 9 and 2 can be taken in with a Jack, or a 6 4 and 3 with a King. In the same manner a Queen will win a Jack and Ace, or a King will win a Jack and deuce. The aces are sometimes valued at 14 each.

---

## SPADE CASSINO.

In this interesting variation every spade counts one point toward game. The spade Jack counts one in addition to its being a spade, and the extra point so made takes the place of the count for "spades" in the ordinary game, so that 24 points are made in every hand, exclusive of sweeps: Cards 3; Big Cassino 2; Little Cassino 1; the four Aces 4; the spade Jack 1, and 13 spades. It must be remembered that the spade Jack and deuce count 2 points each, the extra point being for the spade.

The game is scored on a cribbage board, every point being pegged immediately; that is, every spade, every Ace, the Cassinos and the sweeps. There is nothing to count at the end of the hand but the cards. Sixty-one points is game, once round the board and into the game hole.

---

## DRAW CASSINO.

In this variation, no more cards are dealt after the first round, but each player keeps his hand filled to four cards by drawing one from the top of the stock as soon as he plays one from his hand. The stock is left on the table, face down, slightly spread, for convenience in slipping off the top card as it is drawn.

## CONQUIAN.

The etymology of this word is Spanish; *con quién*, "with whom," but of the game it stands for, little or nothing is known except that it is a great favorite in Mexico, and in all the American States bordering upon it, especially Texas. It is an excellent game for two players, quite different from any other in its principles, and requiring very close attention and a good memory to play it well. In its finer points, especially in the judgment of what the adversary holds or is playing for, it ranks with our best games, and will probably grow in popularity as it becomes better known.

**Cards.** Conquian is played with the Spanish pack, forty cards, the 8 9 10 of each suit being deleted. In America, it is much more common to play with a pack of forty cards from which the three court cards, K Q J, have been discarded, leaving each suit an unbroken sequence from the Ace to the Ten. Some persons play with the full pack, but it spoils the game; as it is then possible to win on a sequence of a single suit. There are no trumps, and the cards have no value as to rank, a sequence of 6 7 J being no better than one of 2 3 4. The Ace is not in sequence with the King.

**Counters.** Each player should be supplied with at least ten counters, which may be used in settling at the end of each deal.

**Players.** Conquian is played by two persons, one of whom is known as the dealer, and the other as the pone. If there are three at the table, the dealer takes no cards, and has no part in the game for that hand.

**Cutting.** Seats and deal are cut for, the lowest cut having the choice, and dealing the first hand. The Ace is low, the King high.

**Stakes.** Each deal is a game in itself, and the loser pays one counter for it. If the game is a tie, called a *tableau*, each puts up a counter for a pool, and the winner of the next game takes the pool, in addition to the counter paid by his adversary. If the next game is also a tableau, each player adds another counter to the pool, and so on until it is won.

**Dealing.** Ten cards are dealt to each player in five rounds of two at a time, and the twenty remaining in the stock are laid upon the table face down, between the players, but a little to the left of the dealer. The stock may be slightly spread, to facilitate the process of drawing cards from it.

**Objects of the Game.** The object of each player is to form triplets, fours, and sequences, by combining the cards dealt him with others drawn from the stock. These combinations are laid upon the table, face up, and the player wins the game who first succeeds in laying down eleven cards in this manner.

**Sequences** must be all of the same suit, and cannot be shorter than three cards. The Ace is not in sequence with the King, but the 7 is next below the Jack. A sequence once started can be added to from time to time as the cards are drawn from the stock,

**Triplets** are any three cards of the same denomination, and they may be increased to **Fours** at any time, by adding the other card.

**Borrowing.** A player with four of a kind on the table may borrow any one of the four to use in a sequence; but he cannot borrow one of three, because no combination may consist of less than three cards. In the same manner a player may borrow the card at either end of a sequence of at least four cards, if he can use it to make a triplet. He cannot borrow an intermediate card, nor one of a sequence of three cards only, because three cards must be left to maintain the sequence, but if he had a sequence of at least five cards on the table, he might borrow the top of it to make one triplet, and then the next card to make another triplet.

**Method of Playing.** The cards dealt, each player sorts his hand into sequences and triplets, and determines what cards he wants to complete his runs, so that he may be on the lookout for them. The pone then draws the top card from the stock and turns it face up on the pack. If this card can be used in combination with any of those in his hand, he draws it over to his side of the table, and takes from his hand the cards completing the combination of three cards, leaving them all face up. Even if he has cards enough in his hand to increase the combination to four or more cards, he should not show them. The cards drawn from the stock must never be taken into the hand.

Let us suppose the pone holds these cards:—♥ J 7 6 4; ♣ 5 3 2; ♦ K 7 5; and that the ♥ 5 is the first card he draws. He can use this card in three ways: By making a run of three with the ♥ 4 and ♥ 6; or a run with the ♥ 6 and ♥ 7; or a triplet with the two other 5's. In this case he would probably lay out the 6 and 7, and make the run of three. If he should draw the ♥ Q later on, he could use it by continuing the sequence with his Jack; or if the ♥ 3 appeared, he could use it with his ♥ 4.

**Passing.** If he cannot use the card drawn, or does not wish to, he draws it from its position on the top of the stock and places it between himself and the dealer, still face up. The dealer then decides whether or not he wants it, and if he does not he "passes" it by turning it face down, and pushing it to his right. Cards once passed in this manner cannot again be seen by either player. The player who passes the card turns up the next one on the stock. If he does not want it, he places it on the table between himself and his adversary, and if his adversary does not want it either, he turns it down and passes it to the pile of dead-wood, turning up the top card of the stock again. In this manner

It will be seen that each player has to decide on two cards in succession; the one drawn but not used by his adversary, and the one he draws himself. This is continued until the stock is exhausted, which ends the game.

**Discarding.** If a player uses any card drawn from the stock in this manner, it is obvious that he has too many cards, and in order to reduce his hand and show-downs to ten cards, he must discard something, unless he can show down everything remaining in his hand, in which case he would have eleven cards down, and win the game. In discarding, the card thrown out is placed at the disposal of the adversary, as if it were the card drawn from the stock, and if the adversary does not want it, he passes it and draws another. It should be observed that the player drawing the card from the stock always has the first refusal of it. This is sometimes very important, as both players often need the same card.

In the foregoing example, the player's best discard would be his ♦ K, which is too far removed from the others in the suit to make a run possible, and there is no mate to it with which to start a triplet. If the adversary could use this King, he would have to discard in his turn, and the card so thrown out would be at the disposal of the other player, just as if it had been drawn from the stock.

**Forcing.** A player need not use any card drawn, but if he has upon the table any combination in which it can be used, his adversary may force him with it, even after it has been declined. For instance: A player has eight cards down, two sequences of four small cards each, and in his hand a pair of Kings. Another King will make him game; but if he has to depend on his sequences to put him out, he will have to get three more cards. Suppose he draws a card that will fit one of his sequences; it is to his advantage to pass it; but upon laying it on the table his adversary may take it up and force him with it, by placing it at the end of his sequence, at the same time saying: "Discard." In the same manner a player holding one of the cards of his adversary's show-down sequence or triplet may force after using a card, by placing his discard on his adversary's sequence, instead of laying it on the table. If it is laid on the table, the adversary may pass it at once, by turning it down, and it is then too late to compel him to use it. Suppose you think your adversary holds two cards of an unplayed sequence, and has a triplet on the table. If you can use one of those sequence cards in his hand to advantage, and can force him by giving him the fourth card of his triplet, which is of no use to you, you should do so; but you must remember that you cannot force except after using a card yourself,



because you are not allowed to discard under any other circumstances.

If a player looks at any of the cards that have been passed and turned down, his adversary may take up and examine the remainder of the stock, but without disturbing the position of the cards therein, and without showing them. If a player looks at any of the cards in the stock except the one he draws, his adversary may look at all of them. If a player draws out of turn, his adversary simply claims the card.

**Showing.** After the last card is drawn from the stock and passed, each player shows the remainder of his hand, and as neither can combine his cards so as to get eleven down, it is a tableau, and each puts a counter in the pool for the next hand. The deal passes from one player to the other in rotation as long as they continue to play.

**Suggestions for Good Play.** Observation of the cards passed will usually show what the adversary is keeping, and what he has no chance for. Toward the end of the stock each player should know what the other holds in his hand by the cards which have not appeared in the drawing. If a player has not a good chance to get eleven down himself, he should play for a tableau, by using nothing that will compel him to discard cards which may put his adversary out. It should be remembered that a player cannot get eleven down in one suit, and careful observation of the cards passed will often show that his runs are blocked, the cards necessary to continue them having been turned down.

One peculiar feature of the game is that a player cannot block his adversary and at the same time win the game, because so long as he holds up the card that his adversary wants he cannot get eleven down himself. His only chance is that he may be able to use the card that his adversary needs. For instance: He holds two 8's, one of which will make his adversary eleven down by completing a sequence. If there is another 8 to come, the player with the pair may use both his 8's, and win; but if there is no other 8 to come, it is impossible for the player with the two 8's to win without first putting his adversary out.

There are no *Text Books* on Conquian, and this is the first complete description of it ever published.

---

## PANGUINGUE

This is an extension of the game of conquian, so as to accommodate a varying number of players, and is rapidly becoming one of the most popular of all our round games.

**Cards.** Eight packs of cards, from which the 8's, 9's and 10's have been deleted, are thoroughly shuffled together. The seven is in sequence with the jack, and the ace is always the lowest card. It is sometimes the custom, especially in club play, to add a number of 3's, 5's and 7's of spades, to make the game livelier. All the 3's, 5's and 7's in the pack are called "valle" cards. All others are "non valle" (have no value).

**Markers.** Counters or chips of various values are necessary for the various partial payments during the play. The minimum is one white chip, which should equal the amount per point for which the game is played.

**Cutting.** Part of the pack is spread, face down, and the players draw for positions. The lowest card drawn is eldest hand for the first deal and chooses his seat. The next lowest sits on his left, and deals for the first game. The others sit anywhere.

**The Deal.** The eight packs and the extra spades, if any, being thoroughly shuffled together, the dealer takes a sufficient number from the top to deal each player ten cards, five at a time, beginning on his right and dealing from right to left. Any cards left over are returned to the stock and the top card is then turned face up on the table beside the stock for the next player on the right to decide whether he will use it or draw the top card from the stock, which is spread, so as to be easily drawn from. The player to the left of the winner of one hand deals next, so that the last winner shall become eldest hand.

**Objects of the Game.** Each player tries to form certain combinations or sets of not less than three cards, and the first player to get down eleven cards, one more than originally dealt him, all of which are matched up in sets, wins the game. There are four special classes of sets which are known as "conditions" and which are paid for as soon as they are shown during the progress of the play, and also paid for over again at the end of the play if held by the winner.

**The Sets.** These are of two kinds; sequences in the same suit, such as the 4 5 6 of clubs; or three or more of the same denomination, as three 4's. Either of these may be extended indefinitely, so that a player might lay down only one or two sets to win, such as five of a sequence and six of a kind. It is possible to win with eleven cards of the same denomination, as there are eight packs in play.

**Conditions.** These depend on the distinction between valle cards, the 3 5 and 7, and the non-valle cards, the A 2 4 6 J Q K. The spade suit also has a special value in some cases. There are four condition sets:

1. Any three non-valle cards of the same suit and denomination, such as three 6's of clubs, hearts or diamonds. The player showing then collects a chip from each of the others at once. If they are spades, two chips.

2. Any three valle cards of the same denomination, but not of the same suit, such as three 5's or 7's of clubs, diamonds and hearts. These pay one chip.

3. The A 2 3 of the same suit. These pay one chip. If spades, two chips.

4. The J Q K of the same suit. These pay one chip. If spades, two chips.

**The Play.** If the player to the right of the dealer can or wishes to use the exposed card, he draws it toward him and lays down from his hand the two or more cards that complete the set. He cannot take the exposed card into his hand and reserve it for future possibilities, as in Rum. If the set shown is a condition he is paid for it at once. Then he discards, to reduce his hand to ten cards again.

If he does not use the exposed card, he draws one from the top of the stock and takes it into his hand. He can then lay down any set or sets he wishes to, but it is unnecessary and unwise to do so unless it is a condition, for which he can get something. Whether he exposes a set or not, he must discard to reduce his hand to ten cards. The next player to his right then has the same choice, to use the last discard or to draw from the top of the stock. No one but the player immediately to the right of the discarder can take the card that is face up.

**Borrowing Cards.** As in conquian, a player with more than three cards in an exposed set may borrow one of them to complete another set, as long as he leaves a legitimate set intact. He can borrow the open end of a sequence, or any card of four-of-a-kind.

**Forcing Cards.** If a player has a set on the table which can be added to by any exposed card which he can use in his proper turn, he may be forced to use it at the request of any other player, even if it breaks up his hand with regard to the cards he has concealed. If he cannot show eleven down, he must discard.

**Added Payments.** If a player has a condition on the table, and adds to it, he is paid another chip for each card he adds, or he may split one to make a new condition. Suppose he has on the table a valle say the 3 in hearts, clubs and diamonds, and draws in his concealed hand two more 3's, both hearts. He collects a chip for three cards of the same suit and denomination.

**Game.** If a player has ten cards down, the player on his left is not allowed to discard a card that would make him eleven down unless he has nothing else in his hand, under penalty of having to pay the losses of all the others at the table as well as his own.

As soon as any player gets eleven down, he collects from each of the others one chip for the game, and also for all the conditions he has showing, if any.



## VINT.

While this game is by some persons thought to be the fore-runner of bridge, and might be classed as one of the whist family, it is at present so little known outside of Russia, where it is the national game, that the author has thought it best to group it with other games which are distinctly national in character.

Vint has been variously described as bridge without a Dummy and as auction whist. It resembles bridge in the making of the trump, and whist in the manner of the play.

**Cards.** Vint is played with the full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank from the A K Q down to the deuce. Two packs are generally used.

**Players.** A table is complete with four players, and if there are more than four candidates for play the selection must be made by cutting. All the rules for formation of tables, cutting, ties, etc., are the same as at bridge. The lowest cut takes the deal. Partners sit opposite each other.

**Dealing.** The dealer presents the pack to be cut, and then gives thirteen cards to each player, one at a time. No trump is turned. The deal passes to the left. All irregularities are governed by the same laws as bridge.

**Making the trump.** Each player in turn, beginning with the dealer, bids to make a certain number of tricks, from seven to thirteen, with a suit of his own choosing, which he names when he makes his bid. The suits outrank one another in the order of hearts, diamonds, clubs, and spades, hearts being the best. No-trumps are higher than hearts. A bid of seven tricks is usually called "one" in hearts, or whatever the suit may be. A bid of "two" means to win eight tricks, or two over the book.

**Bidding.** If a player wishes to go over the first offer made, he must either bid the same number of tricks in a better suit, or he must increase the number of tricks. No player can increase his own bid unless he is overbid in the interval, but there is no limit to the number of times that players may outbid one another. Observe that the dealer may bid or pass, and each player after him in turn may bid or pass. The highest bidder must abide by his announcement both as to the number of tricks and the suit.

**The Play.** No matter who dealt the cards, the player to the left of the highest bidder always leads for the first trick. Each player in turn must follow suit if he can, and the highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, trumps winning all other suits. The winner of one trick leads for the next, and so on. There is no Dummy hand as in bridge.

**Scoring.** Although the bidding is for so many "odd" tricks, or tricks over the book, every trick taken is counted when it comes to the scoring; but it is the number of tricks bid, and not the rank of the suit, that determines the value. Every trick won by the same partners—

In a bid of "one" is worth	10
In a bid of "two" is worth	20
In a bid of "three" is worth	30
In a bid of "four" is worth	40
In a bid of "five" is worth	50
In a bid of "six" is worth	60
In a bid of "seven" is worth	70

Both sides score. If the highest bid was "two in diamonds," and the bidder's side won nine tricks, they would score 9 times 20, or 180; while their adversaries would score 4 times 20, or 80.

As soon as either side reaches 500, they win the game, even if it is in the middle of a hand; but the hand must be played out in order to see how many points are won by each side. It should be observed that although the bidder's side may make nine or ten tricks the adversaries can win the game if they get enough to count out before the bidder, by reaching 500 first.

**Tricks and Honours.** The score for tricks and for honours must be kept separate, usually above and below the line, as at bridge. All trick points, which are the only ones that count toward game, are placed below the line; the honour points above.

For winning a game, 1,000 points are added in the honour column. The side that first wins two games of 500 points each adds 2,000 rubber points in the honour column.

**Slams.** If a little slam, 12 tricks, is made, but has not been bid, it is worth 1,000 points in honours. If a little slam, "six tricks," has been bid and is made, it is worth 5,000 more for bidding it, or 6,000 altogether. If a grand slam, 13 tricks, is made but not bid, it is worth 2,000 honour points. If a little slam is bid and a grand slam made, it is worth 7,000 altogether. If a grand slam is bid and made, it is worth 12,000 altogether.

**Lost Games.** If the bidder fails to make good, his adversaries score 100 times the value of the tricks as penalty, in the honour column; the scores for the tricks actually won standing at their regular value below the line. Suppose the bid to be three in diamonds, making the tricks worth 30 each, and that the bidder's side get the odd trick only. Although the bidder has failed to make good, he scores below the line for the seven tricks he took, at 30 each, and the adversaries score for the six they took, also at 30 each. Then, as the bidder fell short by two tricks of making good, his adversaries score these two tricks at 3,000 points each, penalty, in the honour column.

**Honours.** The honours are the A K Q J 10 of trumps and the four Aces, the Aces being always honours; but when there is a no-trump declaration they are the only honours. This makes the Ace of trumps count double, when there is a trump suit; once as one of the five honours in trumps, and once as an Ace.

Each honour is worth ten times as much as a trick. If the bid was three in clubs, the tricks would be worth 30 each and the honours 300 each. The side that has the majority of Aces and of honours scores for all they hold; not for the majority or difference. Suppose the bidder's side has three honours in clubs and three Aces; the other side must have only two honours and one Ace; therefore the bidder scores for six honours, at 300 each.

If the Aces and honours in trumps are so divided that each side has a majority of one or the other, they offset. Suppose the bidder to hold four Aces and two honours. The adversaries must have the majority of trump honours. Then the number of their trump honours, which is three, is deducted from the number of the bidder's Aces, four, leaving the bidder's side only one honour to the good. Three honours on one side and three Aces on the other would be a tie, and no honours to score.

If the Aces are a tie, the side that wins the most tricks scores them. Suppose the bidder has three honours and two Aces. He scores five honours if he wins the odd trick; otherwise he scores one only, the Aces being a tie and he having only one more honour than his adversaries.

In no-trump hands, the honours are worth 25 times the value of the tricks. If Aces are easy, neither side scores. If one has three Aces, they are all scored. Suppose the bid to have been "two at no-trumps," then the Aces are worth 25 times 20, and three of them are worth 1,500 points.

**Coronets.** A sequence of three or more cards in any suit, trumps or plain, held by an individual player, is a coronet. Three or four Aces in one hand is also a coronet. When there is a trump suit, three Aces, or three of a plain suit in sequence, are worth 500 in the honour column. Each additional card is worth 500 points more. A sequence of K Q J 10 9 would be worth 1,500. In the trump suit, and in all the suits when there are no trumps, these coronets are worth double, and each additional card is therefore worth 1,000 more.

**Rubbers.** As soon as one side wins two games, that ends the first rubber. The partners then change, without cutting, in such a manner that at the end of three rubbers each player shall have had each of the others for a partner. At the end of the third rubber, the losses and gains are ascertained for each individual, and settled for.

**Laws.** The laws that govern the game are almost identical with those for Bridge.

## PREFERENCE.

This is a simplified form of Vint, for three players, with a thirty-two-card pack. The cards rank: A K Q J 10 9 8 7, and the suits rank: Hearts, diamonds, clubs, and spades. Hearts are always *preference*. There are no hands played without a trump suit.

If four persons play, the dealer takes no cards. The three active players make up a pool, each putting in an equal amount at first, and the bidder putting into it as many as he bids for the privilege of naming the trump suit.

Any one may deal the first hand, after which the deal passes to the left. Three cards are given to each player the first round, then two are laid off for a widow, then four to each player, and then three to each. Beginning on the dealer's left, each player in turn may name the trump if he thinks he can take at least six of the ten tricks to be played for. Bids outrank one another in the order of the suits, hearts being preference always. The number of tricks is not mentioned. In case there are no bids, each in turn has a second chance to bid for the widow. These bids are made in counters, to be put into the pool. The highest bidder takes the widow, lays out two cards, and then names the trump suit.

The players agree upon a value for the tricks won, and payments are made from the pool accordingly. These payments may vary according to the rank of the trump suit.

---

## RED DOG.

Any number can play, with a full pack of cards, each contributing one counter to the pool. When the entire pool is won, a fresh pool must be made up. Five cards are dealt to each player, one at a time. The remainder of the pack is placed in the middle of the table, face down. The player to the left of the dealer looks at his cards. If he passes, he pays a counter forfeit to the pool.

Each player has one chance to bet or pass. Then the cards are all gathered up and the deal passes. If a player bets, he can bet from one chip up to as many as are in the pool. He bets that he holds a card of the same suit as that on the top of the stock, but of higher rank, the cards ranking from the ace and king down to the deuce. The bet made, the dealer turns the top card face up.

Suppose it is the club ten. If the better can show a higher club, he wins from the pool as many chips as he bet. If he fails his bet goes into the pool. The turned card and the better's hand are then thrown into the discard, without showing any more cards, and it is the turn of the next player to bet or pass. It is clear that two fairly high cards in two suits are a safe bet, while four aces would be a certainty. Remembering cards shown is a feature.



## ODD GAMES.

---

There are quite a number of odd games of cards, which come and go as favourites from time to time, and pass round the world from one country to another under many different names. The origin of most of these games is lost in the weedy undergrowth of variations, but the chief family trait in some of them can be traced back to the alpha of cards.

Among the oldest of games was Ombre, immortalised by Pope, the only survivor of which is a variation played by the older Germans, under the name of Solo; a game which still faintly resists the exterminating influence of Skat. The ancient and honourable games of Comète, Hoc, and Nain Jaune survive to the present day in a large and prosperous family, ranging from Commit to Fan Tan, the latter being to-day quite a favourite among those who like simple and amusing games, free from mental effort. Fan Tan is unfortunately named, as many persons confuse it with the Chinese banking game, and it would be much better under its older name, Play or Pay.

Among the many games of which everyone has heard, and which many thousands have been advised to play, is one which, strange to say, is not to be found described in any work on card games, and that is Old Maid. There was a time when the result of this game was supposed to be final and conclusive, and parties of young men have been known to substitute a Jack or King for the discarded Queen, in order to learn what the future had in store for them. Under such circumstances the game became Old Bachelor, of course.

For those who believe in the verdict of the cards, there are other sources of information. Fortune telling, whether for the purpose of amusement or self-deception, has undoubtedly interested many persons in all stations of life ever since Eittella first explained the art, away back in the sixteenth century. The meanings attached to the cards individually, and the manner of their arrangement, is all that can be given in a work of this kind. The qualifications for success in foretelling the future do not depend so much on the cards as on good judgment of human nature, unlimited assurance, a glib tongue, and a certain amount of ingenu-

ity in making a connected story out of the disjointed sentences formed by the chance arrangement of certain cards, to which an arbitrary or fanciful meaning is attached.

Speculation is considered by some persons an excellent training school for the commercial instincts of the younger members of a family, teaching them to form correct estimates as to the value of certain articles offered for sale in a fluctuating market. Authors is a very good game for the family circle, and does not require special cards, the ordinary pack being easily adapted to the distinctions of the game.

Patience, or Solitaire, has probably claimed the attention of every card-player at some time or other, and one cannot fail to be impressed by the number and ingenuity of the patience games which have been invented. One of the most expensive works on cards ever published is devoted exclusively to Solitaire.

Among all these odd games one should be able to find something to amuse all sorts and conditions of card-players. The only apparatus required in any of them is a pack of cards and a few counters, and for the latter corn or coffee-beans will form an excellent substitute.

---

## SIX BID SOLO.

This is the American development of the old German game of heart solo, and somewhat resembles Frog, which has already been described. Six-bid solo is a very popular game in our western states.

**Cards.** The pack is thirty-six cards, which rank A 10 K Q J 9 8 7 6. These cards have a counting value, aces being worth 11 each, tens 10, kings 4, queen 3 and jacks 2. The value of the entire pack is therefore 120, and the object of the player is to get at least 60 of those points in play.

**Players.** Three take an active part, but if there is a fourth at the table, when he deals he takes no cards, but is paid if the bidder fails, without having to pay if the bidder wins.

**Counters.** It is necessary to have chips of some sort in order to pay the various games, or else some careful book-keeping will have to be done.

**Objects.** The object of the game is to secure the privilege of playing a certain game, in which the bidder thinks he can secure the necessary 60 points out of the 120 in the pack. There

are six games, or bids, outranking one another according to their value in payments.

**Dealing.** The cards may be thrown round, or cut for the first deal, which is really unimportant. After the pack has been properly shuffled and cut, the dealer gives four cards to each player, including himself; then three to each and three to the table for the "widow," then four to each player again.

**Bidding.** The player to the left of the dealer has the first bid and may name any one of the six following games, which he will undertake to make against two adversaries, or be set back a certain amount. The lowest bid is

**Solo.** If no one bids higher, the player names any suit but hearts for the trump, and the player to the left of the dealer leads any card he pleases. At the end of the play, the bidder adds the cards in the widow to the tricks he has taken in. For every point he has taken in beyond 60, he gets 2 chips from each opponent. If he fails to reach 60, he pays 2 to each.

**Heart Solo.** This is a better call than solo. If the bidder takes in more than 60 points he is paid 3 chips for each. He loses 3 for each point below 60.

**Misere.** There being no trumps, the player undertakes to avoid taking in a single counting card in play, those in the widow being disregarded. This game wins or loses 30 chips as a lump payment.

**Guarantee Solo.** The player may name any suit for trumps. If he calls hearts, he must take in at least 74 points; any other suit, 80 points. This game wins or loses 40 chips.

**Spread Misere.** There are no trumps and the widow is disregarded. The player to the left of the bidder leads, the second player plays and then the bidder lays his cards on the table, face up; but plays them to suit himself. This game wins or loses 60 chips.

**Call Solo.** The bidder may ask for any card he wishes, and if it is not in the widow it must be given him in exchange for any card he pleases. The trump is then named, and the bidder must take every trick. If he named hearts, the game is worth 150; if any other suit, 100 only.

## AUTHORS.

This game was originally played with cards bearing the names of various authors, and other famous personages, arranged in groups, but the game is much simpler when played with an ordinary pack of fifty-two cards.

Any number of persons can play. The cards are shuffled and spread, and the person drawing the lowest card deals the first hand. The ace is low. Each player then deposits a counter in the pool, and the cards are distributed one at a time until the pack is exhausted. If some players have a card more than others it makes no difference.

The *object* of the game is to secure tricks consisting of four cards of the same denomination, such as four 6's or four K's, and the player having the most tricks of this kind wins the pool. Ties divide it.

The player on the left of the dealer begins by *asking* for a certain card, which must be of the same denomination as one already in his hand. For instance : He holds the spade Ten. He may ask any one at the table for either of the three other Tens ; but he must designate the suit, and must ask a particular player for the card wanted. If the player asked has the card, he must immediately surrender it, and the player to whom it is given can then ask again—any player for any card, always provided that the asker has one of the same denomination in his own hand.

If the person asked has not the card demanded, the privilege of asking is transferred to him, and he may ask any person at the table for any card of the same denomination as one already in his own hand. If he has just been asked for a Ten, for instance, and has a Ten, but not of the suit asked for, he might turn upon his questioner and get a Ten from him, if he could guess the right suit.

As soon as any player gets together four cards of the same denomination, he lays them face down upon the table in front of him, and they form a trick.

A good memory is necessary to play this game well, as it is very important to recall who has asked for certain cards, and which players were unable to supply them. It is a legitimate artifice in the game to ask for a card you already have in your own hand, although you know it will lose your guess, because it may be the only way to prevent another player from drawing several valuable cards from you. For instance : You hold the Fives of diamonds and spades, and have asked for and received the Five of clubs. If you ask for the heart Five, and miss it, the player with that card may draw all yours ; but if you ask for the spade Five, and he gets into the ask, he will at once betray the fact that he holds the fourth Five by asking you for the club Five ; but he will never

think of asking you for the spade Five, because you asked for it yourself. If you can get into the ask again you can immediately make a trick in Fives.

---

## SPECULATION.

Any number of persons less than ten can play, each contributing an agreed number of counters to the pool, the dealer paying double. The full pack of fifty-two cards is used, and the cards rank from the A K Q down to the 2.

In *dealing*, the cards are distributed from left to right, one at a time, until each player has received three. The next card on the top of the pack is turned up, and the suit to which it belongs is the trump, and forms the basis of speculation for that deal. If the turn-up card is an ace, the dealer takes the pool immediately, and the deal passes to the left. If the turn-up is a K Q or J, the dealer offers it for sale, before a card is looked at, and he may accept or refuse the amount offered. Whether the card is sold or not, all the cards that have been dealt out are turned face up, and the highest card of the turn-up suit wins the pool. If the card is not an honour, the dealer proceeds to sell it before any player is allowed to look at any of the cards dealt. If any one buys the dealer's turn-up card, the purchaser places it on his own cards, leaving it face up. Whether it is sold or not, the elder hand proceeds to turn up the top card of his three. If this is not a trump, the next player on his left turns up his top card, and so on until a trump is turned that is better than the one already exposed. The player who possesses the original turn-up, does not expose any more of his cards until a better trump is shown. As soon as a better trump appears it is offered for sale, and after it is sold or refused, the cards are turned up again until a better trump appears, or all the cards have been exposed. The holder of the best trump at the end takes the pool.

---

## OLD MAID.

Strange to say, this oft-quoted and continually derided game is not mentioned in any work on cards, a singular omission which we hasten to supply.

Any number of young ladies may play, and a pack of fifty-one cards is used, the Queen of hearts having been deleted. Any player can deal the cards, which are distributed one at a time until the pack is exhausted; if every player has not the same number it

does not matter. Beginning with the eldest hand, each player sorts her cards into pairs of the same denomination ; such as two Fives, two Jacks, etc., and all pairs so formed are laid upon the table face down, without showing them to the other players. All the cards laid out in this manner are left in front of the player, in order to discover errors, if any. Three of a kind cannot be discarded, but four of a kind may be considered as two pairs.

The discarding of pairs complete, the dealer begins by spreading her remaining cards like a fan, and presenting them, face downward, to her left-hand neighbour, who must draw one card at random. The card so drawn is examined, and if it completes a pair, the two cards are discarded. Whether it forms a pair or not, the player's cards are spread and presented to the next player on the left, to be drawn from in the same manner.

This process of drawing, forming pairs, and discarding is continued until it is found that one player remains with one card. This card is of course the odd Queen, and the unfortunate holder of it is the Old Maid ; but only for that deal.

---

## LIFT SMOKE.

The number of players must be limited to six, each of whom deposits a counter in the pool. A full pack of fifty-two cards is used. The cards rank from the ace down to the deuce, as at Whist. If there are four players, six cards are dealt to each, one at a time ; if five play, five cards to each, and if six play, four cards to each. The last card that falls to the dealer is turned up for the trump, and the remainder of the pack is placed in the centre of the table as a stock to draw from.

The eldest hand leads for the first trick, and the others must follow suit if they can. The highest card played, if of the suit led, wins the trick, and trumps win all other suits. The winner of each trick draws the top card from the talon, and leads again. When any player's cards are exhausted he withdraws from the game, and the others continue. The player who remains to the end, having a card when his adversary has none, wins the pool. If two players remain with a card each, the winner of the trick draws from the stock, and the card so drawn wins the game, his adversary having none.

---

## EARL OF COVENTRY.

This game is sometimes called Snip Snap Snorem, by those who are not of a poetical turn of mind. Any number of persons may play, and a full pack of cards is dealt out, one at a time. If

some players have a card more than others, it does not matter. The eldest hand lays upon the table any card he pleases, and each player in turn pairs or matches it, if he can, with another of the same denomination, accompanying the action with a rhyme. Suppose the first card played is a King; the person playing it would say: "There's as good as King can be." The first player to lay down another King would say: "There is one as good as he." The player holding the third King would say: "There's the best of all the three," and the holder of the fourth would then triumphantly exclaim: "And there's the Earl of Coventry."

The fortunate holder of the Earl of Coventry in each round has the privilege of leading a card for the next trick, and the first player to get rid of all his cards wins one counter from the others for every card they hold. The words, "Snip, Snap, Snorem," may be substituted for the foregoing rhymes if time is short.

*Jig* is a variation of Earl of Coventry in which the next higher in sequence and suit must be played, if the player has it, until four cards are shown. The one who lays down the last of the sequence of four cards starts a fresh sequence, and the winner is the one who can first get rid of all the cards originally dealt him. All the others then pay him a counter for each card they have left.

---

## COMMIT.

The etymology of this word has been quite overlooked by those who have described the game. The word is from the French, *comète*, a comet; but instead of being an equivalent in English, it is simply a phonetic equivalent; Commit, instead of Comet. Tenac informs us that the game was invented during the appearance of Halley's comet; and the idea of the game is that of a string of cards forming a tail to the one first played, a feature which is common to quite a number of the older games of cards.

Commit is played by any number of persons, with a pack of fifty-one cards, the Eight of diamonds having been deleted. The players draw for positions at the table and for the first deal, and make up a pool. The cards have no value except the order of their sequence in the various suits. The ace is not in sequence with the King, but below the 2. The dealer distributes the cards, one at a time to each player in rotation, as far as they will go, leaving any odd cards on the table face downward, to form what are known as *stops*. As it is desirable to have a number of these stops, it is usual to give only nine cards to each when there are five players.

The eldest hand begins by leading any card he pleases, which

he lays face upward in the centre of the table. If he holds any other cards in sequence above it, he must play them, and when he can no longer continue the series, he says aloud: "Without the Jack," or whatever the card may be that he fails on. The player on his left must then continue the sequence in the same suit, if he can; or he must say: "Without the Jack." When the sequence reaches the King, it is stopped, and the player who held the King receives a counter from each player at the table. The same player then begins another sequence with any card he pleases. If a sequence is opened with an ace, a counter may be demanded from each player at the table.

If a sequence is stopped, which it will be if the card necessary to continue it is in the stock, or if the diamonds are run up to the Seven, the person who plays the last card before the stop is entitled to begin another sequence. Should any player who is unable to continue a sequence in his proper turn, hold the Nine of diamonds, he may play that card, and the player following him is then at liberty to continue the original sequence or to play the Ten of diamonds, following up that sequence. When the Nine of diamonds is played, the holder receives two counters from each player at the table; but if it is not got rid of in play, the holder of it must pay two counters to each of the other players.

The first player to get rid of all his cards wins the pool, and the cards remaining in the other hands are then exposed. Any player holding a King must pay a counter for it to each of the other players.

---

## MATRIMONY.

Any number of persons may play, and a full pack of fifty-two cards is used. Each player should be provided with an equal number of counters, to which a trifling value may be attached. A strip of paper is placed in the centre of the table, marked as follows:—

Matrimony.	Intrigue.	Confederacy.	Pair.	Best.
------------	-----------	--------------	-------	-------

Any King and Queen is *Matrimony*; any Queen and Jack is *Intrigue*; any King and Jack is *Confederacy*; any two cards of the same denomination form a *Pair*, and the diamond ace is always *Best*.

The players draw, and the lowest card deals; ace is low. The dealer then takes any number of counters he chooses, and distributes them as he pleases on the various divisions of the layout.

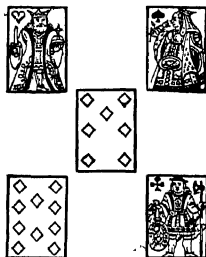


Each player then takes a number of counters one less than the dealer's, and distributes them according to his fancy.

The cards are then cut, and the dealer gives one to each player, face down; and then another, face up. If any of the latter should be the diamond ace, the player to whom it is dealt takes everything on the layout, and the cards are gathered and shuffled again, the deal passing to the left, the new dealer beginning a fresh pool. If the diamond ace is not turned up, each player in turn, beginning with the eldest hand, exposes his down card. The first player to discover Matrimony in his two cards, takes all that has been staked on that division of the layout. The first to discover Intrigue or Confederacy, takes all on that, and the first player to expose a Pair takes that pool. The ace of diamonds is of no value except as one of a pair, if it is one of the cards that were dealt to the players face down. The pool for it remains until the card is dealt to some player face up. Any of the pools which are not won must remain until the following deal, and may be added to.

## POPE JOAN.

This game is a combination of the layout in Matrimony, and the manner of playing in Commit. There are a great many ways of dividing the layout, but the following is the simplest. Five cards are taken from an old pack, and are laid out in the centre of the table, or their names are written on a sheet of paper.



The cards are thrown round for the deal, and the first Jack deals. The cards are distributed one at a time, the full pack of fifty-two cards being used. The following table will show the number of cards to be given to each player, and that left in the stock to form stops.

3	Players,	15	cards each	7	in the stock.
4	"	12	"	4	"
5	"	9	"	7	"
6	"	8	"	4	"
7	"	7	"	3	"
8	"	6	"	4	"

Before the deal, the dealer must dress the layout, by putting one counter upon the Ten, two upon the Jack, three upon the Queen, four upon the King, and five on the Pope, which is the Seven (or the Nine) of diamonds.

The eldest hand begins by leading any card he pleases, and if he has those in sequence and suit with it and above it, he continues to play until he fails. He then says "No six," or whatever the card may be that he stops on. The next player on his left then continues the sequence if he can, or if he cannot, he says, "No six," also, and it passes to the next player. If no one can continue, the card must be in the stock, which remains on the table face down and unseen. When one sequence is stopped in this manner, the last player has the right to begin another with any card he pleases.

The object of the game is twofold; to get rid of all the cards before any other player does so, and to get rid of the cards which appear on the layout. If the duplicate of any of those cards can be played, the holder of the card at once takes all the money staked upon it; but if he fails to get rid of it before some player wins the game by getting rid of all his cards, the player who is found with one of the layout cards in his hand at the end must double the amount staked on that card, to which the next dealer will add the usual contribution.

The player who first gets rid of all his cards collects from the other players a counter for every card they hold. These cards must be exposed face up on the table, so that all may see who has to double the various pools. If any of the layout cards are in the stock, the pool simply remains, without doubling.

There are a great many variations of Pope Joan. Sometimes a layout very similar to that in Matrimony is used, Pope taking the place of Pair, and Game that of Best. A trump is turned by the dealer, and Matrimony is King and Queen of trumps, Intrigue Queen and Jack of trumps, Confederacy, King and Jack of trumps. The player holding these cards will of course be able to play both of them if he can play one in a sequence, and will take the pool for the combination. If he holds one card and another player holds the other, they divide the pool. If one of the cards is in the stock, the pool remains. In some places it is the custom to remove the Eight of diamonds, as at Commit, to form an extra and known stop. The player first getting rid of his cards takes the pool on

Game, and the holder of Pope takes that pool if he can get rid of the card in the course of play, if not, he must double the pool, just as with the honours in trumps.

## NEWMARKET,

### BOODLE, MICHIGAN, OR STOPS.

This game, which is sometimes called Boodle, is Pope Joan without the pope. The four cards forming the layout are the ♠A, ♣K, ♦Q, ♠J; but there is no ♦7. Each player puts a counter on each card in the tableau, the dealer two. The whole pack is dealt out, one card at a time, an extra hand being dealt out, one card at a time, an extra hand being dealt to the dealer's left for a "widow" to form "stops." The dealer is usually allowed to sell this hand without looking at it, if he does not care to exchange his own for it. The other players bid for it. The player to the left of the dealer plays the first card.

He must begin with the lowest card in his hand of the suit which he selects. He is not restricted as to suit, but must play all he has in sequence, and then name the card that he fails on. If any other player has that card, the sequence must be continued until it gets up to the ace, or a stop is reached, when no one can play. The player coming to a stop must change the suit, if he can, and begin with the lowest card he holds in it.

If, in the course of play, any of the four cards on the layout can be got rid of, the player holding them takes the pool in that card. If he is left with the card in his hand at the end it remains until the next deal. The first player to get rid of all his cards receives one counter from the other players for each card they hold, and the usual chips are placed on the cards in the tableau again, whether those already placed there have been won or not.

**SPIN** is Newmarket, with one variation. The player holding the diamond ace is allowed to play it in order to get the privilege of stopping one suit and opening another. For instance: The sequence in spades has run to the Nine, and one player holds both spade Ten and diamond ace. If this player saw that another was very likely to win the game at any moment, and he had a pool card to play, he might stop the spade sequence by playing both the Ten and the diamond ace together, announcing *Spin*. He can then play a pool card, or begin a new sequence with the lowest of the suit in his hand. He cannot play the diamond ace unless he can play to the sequence first.

**SARATOGA.** This varies from Newmarket only in the method of making up the pool. Instead of leaving the players to distribute their stakes at pleasure, each is compelled to place an agreed amount on each of the pool cards, as at Pope Joan.

## POCHEN.

This is a round game for any number of players from three to six, with a thirty-two-card pack. The layout has a centre division for pools and seven other divisions round it, marked, respectively, A, K, Q, J, 10, Marriage, Sequence. Each player dresses the layout by placing a counter in each of the eight divisions. The dealer then gives cards three and then two at a time, as far as they will go equally, turning up the next for the trump.

The holders of the five highest trumps show them and take the corresponding pools, Ace of trumps the A pool, etc. If any player holds both K and Q of trumps, he takes the pool for marriage. The player holding the highest and longest sequence in any suit takes the pool for sequence; but the sequence must be at least three cards. Pools not won remain until the next deal.

After the pools round the edge are all decided, the players bet for the centre pool, or pochen. Any player with a pair, or three of a kind, wishing to bet on them, puts as many counters as he pleases into the centre pool, and any player willing to bet against him must put in a like amount. There is no raising these bets, and the players in order to the left of the dealer have the first say as to betting, or passing. The higher pair wins. Threes beat pairs, and four of a kind is the best hand possible.

This pool settled, the play of the cards follows. Eldest hand leads any card he pleases and each in turn to the left must follow in sequence and suit, playing the 10 on the 9, the J on the 10, etc., until the K is reached. The player who has the King, or the highest card, if the King is in the stock, starts again with any card he pleases. Any player who cannot continue the sequence in his turn must pass that round.

As soon as one player gets rid of his last card the game is at an end and every player at the table must pay him a counter for each card held. The deal then passes to the left and the layout is dressed for the next hand.

---

## RANTER GO ROUND.

This is a round game for any number of players who make up a pool or stake to be played for. A full pack of fifty-two cards is used and each player has three markers. The dealer gives one card to each, face down. This card is examined and if it is not satisfactory it is passed to the player on the left, the object being to avoid holding the lowest card at the table.

If the player on the left holds any card but a king, he is obliged to exchange. If the one who is forced to exchange gives an ace

or a deuce, he announces it; but the player who demands the exchange is not allowed to say what he gives, as the card may be passed on. Each player in turn to the left may exchange, or he may pass, which means that he is satisfied with his card.

When it comes round to the dealer, he cannot exchange; but he may cut the pack and take the top card. All the cards are then turned face up, and the lowest shown loses a counter. The deal passes to the left. When all the players but one have lost all their markers, the survivor takes the pool.

---

## FIVE OR NINE.

This game, which is sometimes called Domino Whist, is simply Pope Joan or Matrimony without the layout. Any number of persons may play, and the full pack of fifty-two cards is used, the cards being dealt in proportion to the number of players, as at Pope Joan.

The eldest hand must begin by laying out the Five or Nine of some suit to start the first sequence. If he has neither of those cards he must pass, and the first player on his left who has a Five or a Nine must begin. The next player on the left must then continue the sequence in the same suit if he can, but he may play either up or down, laying the card on the right or left of the starter. If a Five is led, he may play a Four or a Six. Only one card is played at a time by each person in turn. Any person not being able to continue the sequence may start another if he has another Five, but he cannot start one with a Nine unless the first starter in the game was a Nine. He is also at liberty to start a new sequence with a Five or Nine instead of continuing the old, but he must play if he can, one or the other. If he is unable to play, he must pay one counter into the pool, which is won by the first player who gets rid of all his cards. The winner is also paid a counter for every card held by the other players.

---

## FAN TAN.

This is the simplest form of Stops, and requires no layout. Any number of players can take part, and a full pack of fifty-two cards is used. The players cut for deal and seats, low having the choice. Ace is low. The players are provided with an equal

number of counters, and before the cards are dealt, each places an agreed number in the pool. All the cards are dealt out. If some have more than others it does not matter.

The eldest hand begins by playing any card he pleases, and the next player on his left must either play the card next above it, or put one counter in the pool. Only one card is played at a time, and after the sequence has arrived at the King it must be continued with the ace, and go on until the suit is exhausted. The person who plays the thirteenth card of any suit must start another sequence, in any suit and with any card he pleases. The player who first gets rid of all his cards takes the pool.

The great trick in this game is to provide for the last suit to be played, and in order to have the selection of the second suit it is usual for the eldest hand to begin with the higher of two cards next in value to each other, which will make him the last player in that suit. Each suit is turned face down as it is exhausted.

---

## SOLITAIRE.

All games of Solitaire are played with the full pack of fifty-two cards. The games may be roughly divided into two classes; those in which the result is entirely dependent on chance, and cannot be changed by the player after the cards have been shuffled and cut; and those which present opportunities for judgment and skill, the choice of several ways to the same end being offered to the player at various stages of the game. The first class is of course the simplest, but the least satisfactory, as it is nothing more than a game of chance.

Of the many hundreds of patience games, it is possible to give only a few of the best known.

**TAKE TEN.** Shuffle and cut the cards, and deal out thirteen face upward in two rows of five each, and one row of three. Any two cards, the pip value of which equals 10, may be withdrawn from the tableau, and others dealt from the top of the pack in their places. Only two cards may be used to form a 10. The K Q J 10 of each suit must be lifted together, none of these cards being touched until all four of the same suit are on the table together. When no cards can be lifted, the game is lost.

The object in most patience games is to arrange the cards in sequences. An ascending sequence is one in which the cards run from A 2 3 up to the King; and a descending sequence is one in which they run down to the ace. Sequences may be formed of one suit or of mixed suits, according to the rules of the game.

**THE CARPET.** Shuffle and cut the pack. Deal out twenty cards in four rows of five cards each, face up. This is the carpet. Any aces found in it are taken out and used to form a fifth row, either at the bottom or the side. The holes made in the carpet by removing the aces are then filled up from the pack. Cards are then taken from the carpet to build upon the aces in ascending sequence, following suit, and the holes in the carpet are continually filled up with fresh cards from the top of the pack. As other aces appear they are laid aside to start the sequence in the suit to which they belong. When you are stopped, deal the cards remaining in the pack in a pile on the table by themselves, face upward. If any card appears which can be used in the ascending sequences, take it, and if this enables you to make more holes in the carpet, do so. But after having been driven to deal this extra pile, holes in the carpet can no longer be filled from the pack; they must be patched up with the top cards on the extra pile until it is exhausted.

**FOUR OF A KIND.** Shuffle and cut the pack, then deal out thirteen cards face down in two rows of five each and one row of three. Deal on the top of these until the pack is exhausted, which will give you four cards in each pile, face down. Imagine that these piles represent respectively the A 2 3 4 5 in the first row; the 6 7 8 9 10 in the second, and the J Q K in the third. Take the top card from the ace pile, turn it face upward, and place it, still face upward, under the pile to which it belongs. If it is a Jack, for instance, it will go face up under the first pile in the third row. Then take the top card from the second pile, and so on, keeping the left hand as a marker on the pile last drawn from. When you come to a pile which is complete, all the cards being face up, you can skip it, and go on to the next. If at the end you find that the last card to be turned up lies on its proper pile, and needs turning over only, you win; but if you have to remove it to another pile, you lose.

**TRY AGAIN.** Shuffle and cut the pack, and deal the cards face upward into four heaps. You are not obliged to deal to each pile in succession, but may place the cards on any of the four piles, according to your judgment or pleasure. In dealing out in this manner it is not good policy to cover one card with a higher, unless you are compelled to do so. Every time you come to an ace, separate it from the others, placing it in a new row, as a foundation for an ascending sequence, which may be continued regardless of the suit of the cards used. The top cards of the four piles are used to build up the sequence. After an ace has appeared, the player may examine the cards in any or all of the piles, but their order must not be disturbed. The object in looking at the cards is to select the pile which is least likely to stop you, or the one having the fewest cards in it.

**TAKE FOURTEEN.** Shuffle and cut the pack, and deal the cards one at a time, face upward, into twelve piles, and continue dealing on the top of these twelve until the pack is exhausted. This will give you four piles which contain one card more than the others. Then take off any two of the top cards which will make 14, reckoning the Jack as 11, the Queen as 12 and the King as 13, all the others at their face value. Only two cards must be used to make 14. If you succeed in taking off all the cards in this manner, you win. You are at liberty to look at the underneath cards in the various piles, but you must not disturb their positions.

**THE IDIOT'S DELIGHT.** This is supposed to be the best of all solitaires. A full pack of 52 cards is thoroughly shuffled, cut and then dealt face up. Nine cards are placed in a row from left to right. Upon these eight cards from left to right, then seven, six, and so on down to one. There will now be a triangle of 45 cards, with a row of nine at the top and a file of nine at the left. The remaining seven cards are placed apart, all face up, and can be used at any time the player wishes.

As soon as an ace is free at the bottom of any vertical file, it is placed above the triangle, to be built upon in suit and sequence up to the king. It is not compulsory to build. Only one card may be moved at a time from one file to another, and only the bottom card of the file. All cards so moved must be placed on a card of a different color, and in descending sequence; such as a red seven on a black eight. If a card cannot be so placed it cannot be moved except to go into a space. Spaces are made by getting all the cards away from one vertical file to other files, or to the aces. Cards once built on the aces cannot be taken back again under any conditions.

Spaces may be filled by any card, but it is obvious that kings cannot be moved except into spaces. The object is to get the entire fifty-two cards built up on the aces. This should be done about once in every three or four attempts.

---

## KLONDIKE.

This game is sometimes mistakenly called "Canfield", but that is a distinct game, described elsewhere, in which there are separate piles for stock and foundations.

Shuffle the full pack of fifty-two cards, cut and turn up the top card. Lay six more cards in a row to the right of the first card, but all face down. Upon the second card of this row place another



card face up, and then cards face down on the remaining five of the top row. On the third pile from the left, place another card face up, and then four more face down to the right. Continue this until you have seven cards face up, which will give you twenty-eight cards in your layout.

Take out any aces showing, and place them in a row by themselves for "foundations." Build up on these aces in sequence and suit to kings. On the layout, build in descending sequence, red on black, black on red, turning up the top card when any pile is left without a faced card upon it. If there is more than one card face up on any pile, they must be removed together or not at all. Spaces may be filled only with kings.

The stock is run off three cards at a time, and any card showing can be used. The pack can be run through in this manner until no cards showing can be used, but there must be no shuffling or rearrangement of the cards. Sometimes it is the rule to run through the pack once only, turning up one card at a time.

The object of the game is to see how many cards can be built on the ace row. A better average can usually be obtained when the pack is run off three at a time with the privilege of running through again and again as long as any card can be used.

---

## FORTUNE TELLING.

Whatever the arrangement employed for laying out the tableau in fortune telling, the result of the reading will always be dependent on the person's ability to string together in a connected story the meanings which are attached to the various cards. According to Eittella, the father of all fortune telling, only 32 cards should be used, and it is essential that they should be single heads, because a court card standing firmly on its feet is a very different thing from one standing on its head. If single-head cards are not at hand, the lower part of the double-head cards must be cancelled in some manner.

The following are the interpretations of the various cards, the initial *R* meaning that the card is reversed, or standing on its head.

**HEARTS.** Ace. The house, or home.

King. A benefactor. *R*. He will not be able to do you much good, although he means well.

Queen. Everything that is lovely in woman. *R*. You will have to wait awhile for the realization of your hopes.

Jack. A person who may be useful to you. *R.* He will not prove of much account.

Ten. A pleasant surprise.

Nine. Reconciliation.

Eight. Children.

Seven. A good marriage. *R.* Fair to middling.

**CLUBS.** Ace. Profits from business or gambling.

King. A just man, who has taken a fancy to you. *R.* Something will interfere with his good intentions.

Queen. Your best girl. *R.* She is jealous.

Jack. A probable marriage. *R.* It may have to be postponed.

Ten. Success in business. If followed by  $\diamond 9$ , the note will not be paid when it is due; if followed by the  $\spadesuit 9$  you will lose the entire account.

Nine. Success in love.

Eight. Great anticipations.

Seven. Trifling love affairs. *R.* They will get you into trouble.

**DIAMONDS.** Ace. A letter, or a written notice.

King. A person to beware of. *R.* Will annoy you in any case.

Queen. A shrew or gossip. *R.* She will make you tired.

Jack. A bearer of bad news. *R.* Worse than you expected.

Ten. An unexpected journey.

Nine. That expected money will not come to hand.

Eight. Some surprising actions on the part of a young man.

Seven. Success in lotteries, gambling or speculation. *R.* The amount will be very small.

**SPADES.** Ace. Love affairs.

King. Police or sheriffs. *R.* Loss of a lawsuit.

Queen. A gay and deceptive widow. *R.* She's fooling thee.

Jack. Disagreeable young man. *R.* He will do you an injury or injustice of some kind.

Ten. Prison.

Nine. Vexatious delays in business matters.

Eight. Bad news. If followed by the  $\diamond 7$ , quarrels.

Seven. Quarrels which will be lasting unless the card is followed by some hearts. *R.* Family rows.

**COMBINATIONS.** 4 aces, death; 3 aces, dissipation; 2 aces, enmity.

4 Kings, honours; 3 Kings, success in business; 2 Kings, good advice.

4 Queens, scandal; 3 Queens, dissipation; 2 Queens, friendship.

4 Jacks, contagious diseases; 3 Jacks, idleness; 2 Jacks, quarrels.

4 Tens, disagreeable events ; 3 Tens, change of residence ; 2 Tens, loss.

4 Nines, good actions ; 3 Nines, imprudence ; 2 Nines, money.

4 Eights, reverses in business or love ; 3 Eights, marriage ; 2 Eights, trouble.

4 Sevens, intrigues ; 3 Sevens, pleasure ; 2 Sevens, small affairs and gossip.

**THE CONSULTATION.** There are several ways of telling fortunes, but one example will suffice. The most important thing is to know what your client wants to be told, and the next is to be sure that she cuts the cards with her left hand.

The cards are shuffled, presented to be cut, and then counted off into sevens, every seventh card being laid face up on the table, the six intermediates being placed on the bottom of the pack each time. When twelve cards have been obtained in this manner, they are laid out in a row, and examined to see if the card representing the questioner is among them. If not, they must be gathered, shuffled, cut, and dealt again. A married man with light hair would be the  $\diamond$  K, with dark hair, the  $\clubsuit$  K. If he claims to be single, the  $\heartsuit$  J. If your client is a woman, the  $\heartsuit$  Q will do for blondes, the  $\clubsuit$  Q for brunettes. Do not ask if she is married, and take no notice of rings.

Having obtained the necessary twelve cards, the more you know about the consultant's history, hopes, and prospects, and the better you can judge her character, the less attention you need pay to the cards, and the more satisfactory the result of the consultation will be. It is not necessary to stick too closely to the meanings of the cards, nor to their combinations ; the great thing is to tell your client what she wants to hear.

In order to confirm the truth of the pleasing story you have built upon the twelve cards, they must be gathered together, shuffled, presented to be cut with the left hand, and then divided into four packets of three cards each. The first packet is for the Person, the second for the House, the third for the Future, and the fourth for the Surprise. Each packet is successively turned up, and its contents interpreted in connection with the part of the questioner's life which it represents. In case there should be nothing very surprising in the last pack, it is well to have a few generalities on hand, which will be true of a person's future six times out of ten. The expert at fortune telling has a stock of vague suggestions, supposed to be given by the cards, which are so framed as to draw from the client the drift of her hopes and fears. The scent once found, most of the fortune telling is in the nature of confirming the client's own views of the situation. Nevertheless, when well done, by a good talker, fortune telling is very amusing, especially in a small company.

## BANKING GAMES.

---

There are two distinct classes of banking games; those that can be played without any apparatus but a pack of cards and some counters; and those which require a permanent establishment and expensive paraphernalia. Among the first, probably the best known banking games are: *Vingt-et-un*, *Baccara*, *Blind Hookey*, and *Fan Tan*, the latter requiring only one card, the face of which is never seen. In the second class, which are often called table games, probably the best known are: *Faro*, *Keno*, *Roulette*, *Rouge et Noir*, and *Chuck Luck*.

Each of these games has a number of offshoots, and the distinctions between the original and the variation are sometimes so minute as to be hardly worth mentioning. As a matter of reference, and for the convenience of those who hear these variations spoken of, their names and chief characteristics are here given.

Banking games, properly so-called, are those in which one player is continually opposed to all the others. In round games, each player is for himself, but no player is selected for the common enemy. In partnership games, the sides are equally divided, and any advantage in the deal or lead passes alternately from one to the other. In other games, the single player that may be opposed to two or three others usually takes the responsibility upon himself, and for one deal only, so that any advantage he may have is temporary. In banking games, on the contrary, one player is selected as opposed to all others, and the opposition is continual. If there is any advantage in being the banker, it is supposed to be a permanent one, and if the banker has not been at any special expense in securing the advantages of his position he is obliged to surrender it from time to time and give other players a chance. This is the rule in *Vingt-et-un*, *Baccara*, and *Blind Hookey*. If the banker is not changed occasionally, he retains his position on account of the expense he has been put to to provide the apparatus for the play, as in *Faro*, *Keno*, *Roulette*, and *Rouge et Noir*. To justify this expenditure he must have some permanent advantage, and if no such advantage or "percentage" is inherent in the principles of the game, any person playing against such a banker is probably being cheated.

At Monte Carlo, everything is perfectly fair and straightforward, but no games are played except those in which the percentage in favour of the bank is evident, and is openly acknowledged. In Faro there is no such advantage, and no honest faro bank can live. It is for that reason that the game is not played at Monte Carlo, in spite of the many thousands of Americans who have begged the management to introduce it. The so-called percentage of "splits" at Faro is a mere sham, and any candid dealer will admit that they do not pay for the gas. Roulette, Rouge et Noir, Keno, and Chuck Luck are all percentage games, although the banker in the latter is seldom satisfied with his legitimate gains.

The peculiarity about all percentage banking games is that no system, as a system, will beat them. The mathematical expectation of loss is so nicely adjusted to the probabilities of gain that the player must always get just a little the worst of it if he will only play long enough. Take any system of martingales, and suppose for the sake of illustration that in 1000 coups you will win 180 counters. The mathematical expectation of the game is such that just about once in a thousand coups your martingale will carry you to a point in which you will lose 200 counters, leaving you just 20 behind on every 1000 if you keep on playing. Every system has been carefully investigated, and enormous labour has been expended on the compilation of tables recording for a long series of time every number rolled at Roulette, and every coup raked in at Rouge et Noir, and the result of all systems is found to be the same, the bank succeeds in building up its percentage like a coral island, while the player's money disappears like water in the sand.

---

## VINGT-ET-UN.

Any number of persons may play Vingt-et-un, and a full pack of fifty-two cards is used. The *cards* have no rank, but a counting value is attached to each, the ace being reckoned as 11 or 1, at the option of the holder, all court cards as 10 each, and the others at their face value.

The cards are thrown round for the first deal, and the first ace takes it. The dealer is also the banker. Each player is provided with a certain number of *counters*, usually 25 or 50, and a betting limit is agreed on before play begins. The players on the dealer's right and left are known as the pone and the eldest hand respectively.

The *object* of the game is to get as near 21 as possible in the total pip value of the cards held.

**Stakes.** Before the cards are dealt, each player except the dealer places before him the amount he bets upon his chances for that deal. This amount may be either at the option of the player, within the betting limit, or it may be a fixed sum, such as one counter. In one variation each player is allowed to look at the first card dealt him before making his bet, and before receiving a second card. When it comes to the dealer's turn, he does not stake anything upon his card, but he has the privilege of calling upon all the others to *double* the amount they have placed on theirs. Any player refusing to double must pass over to the dealer the stake already put up, and stand out of the game for that hand.

Another variation is to allow any player whose second card is of the same denomination as the first to separate them, and to place upon the second card a bet equal in amount to that upon his first card, afterward drawing to each separately, as if they were two different hands.

**Dealing.** The bets made, the cards are shuffled and presented to the pone to be cut; four must be left in each packet. Two cards are given to each player, including the dealer, one at a time in two rounds. If the dealer gives too many cards to any player, either in the first deal or in the draw, he must correct the error at once. If the player has seen the superfluous card he may keep any two he chooses of those dealt him. If the dealer gives himself too many he must keep them all. The last card in the pack must not be dealt. If there are not enough cards to supply the players, the discards must be gathered up, shuffled together, and cut.

**Naturals.** The cards all dealt, the dealer first examines his hand. If he has exactly 21, an Ace and a tenth card, which is called a natural, he shows it at once, and the players must pay him twice the amount they have staked in front of them, unless they also have a natural, when it is a stand-off. If the dealer has not a natural, each player in turn, beginning with the eldest hand, examines his two cards to see how nearly their total value approaches 21. If he has a natural, he exposes it immediately, and the dealer must pay him double the amount staked. It is sometimes the rule for the holder of a natural, the dealer having none, to take the stakes of all the other players; but this variation is not in favour.

**Drawing.** No natural being shown, each player in turn may draw another card, or stand on the two dealt him, which are not shown under any circumstances. If he is content, he says: "I stand." If he wants a card he says: "One," and the dealer gives it to him, face up. If the pips on the card drawn, added to those

already in his hand, make his total greater than 21, he is *crévé*, and passes over to the dealer his stake, throwing his cards in the centre of the table, still face down. If the total is not 21, he may draw another card, and so on until he is *crévé* or stands. The first player disposed of in this manner, the dealer goes on to the next one, and so on until he comes to himself. He turns his two cards face upward, and draws or stands to suit himself. If he overdraws, all the other players expose their first two cards to show that they have 21 or less, and he then pays each of them the amount they have staked. If he stands, either before or after drawing, the others expose their cards in the same way, and those that have the same number are tied, and win or lose nothing. Those who have less than the dealer lose their stake; those that have more than the dealer, but still not more than 21, he must pay. When the result is a tie, it is called *paying in cards*.

**The Banker.** The banker for the next deal may be decided upon in various ways. The old rule was for one player to continue to act as banker and to deal the cards until one of his adversaries held a natural, the dealer having none to offset it. When this occurred, the player who held the natural took the bank and the deal until some one else held a natural. Another way was to agree upon a certain number of rounds for a banker, after which the privilege was drawn for again. Another was for one player to remain the banker until he had lost or won a certain amount, when the privilege was drawn for again. The modern practice is for each player to be the banker in turn, the deal passing in regular rotation to the left. When this is done there must be a penalty for dealing twice in succession, and it is usually fixed at having to pay ties, if the error is not discovered until one player has drawn cards. If before that, it is a misdeal.

**Pools.** Vingt-et-un is sometimes played with a pool. Each player contributes one counter at the start, and the pool is afterward fed by penalties. Every player who is *crévé* puts in a counter; all ties with the dealer pay one, and the dealer pays one for any irregularity in dealing. The pool may be kept to pay for refreshments, like the kitty in Poker, or it may be won by the first natural shown, as may be agreed.

**Probabilities.** The only point in the game is for a player to know what hands to stand on, and what to draw to. The dealer is guided by the cards dealt to other players, and by what they ask for. The other players should stand on 17, but draw on 16. In practice it has been found that the odds are about 2 to 1 in favour of drawing at 16; 3 to 1 for drawing at 15. The rules for drawing, etc., are more fully described in connection with the very similar game of Baccara.

## MACAO..

In this variety of Vingt-et-un only one card is dealt to each player; court cards and tens count nothing, and the Ace is always worth one. The number to be reached is 9, instead of 21, and if a player has a 9 natural, he receives from the banker three times his stake; if an 8 natural, he receives double, and for a 7 natural, he is paid. If the banker has an equal number of points natural, it is a tie; and if the banker has a 7, 8, or 9 natural he receives from each of the others once, twice, or three times the amount of their stakes. If none of these naturals are shown, the players draw in turn, as at Vingt-et-un, and the dealer receives from those who have less points than he, or who are *créve*, and pays those who have more, but have not passed 9.

---

## FARMER.

Any number of persons may play. All the 8's and all the 6's but the ♡ 6 are discarded from a pack of fifty-two cards. All court cards count for 10, the ace for 1, and all others at their face value. A pool is then made up by each player contributing one counter. This is the farm, and it is sold to the highest bidder, who must put into it the price he pays for it. He then becomes the farmer, and deals one card to each player, but takes none himself.

The object of the players is to get as near 16 as possible, and each in turn, beginning on the dealer's left must take at least one card. After looking at it he may ask for another, and so on until he is *créve* or stands. Should a player overdraw himself, he says nothing about it until all are helped, when the hands are exposed. Any player having exactly 16 takes the farm and all its contents. If there is more than one 16, that which is made with the assistance of the ♡ 6 wins, otherwise the one which is made with the fewest cards. If this is a tie the eldest hand wins. If no one has exactly 16, the farm stays with its original owner deal after deal, until exactly 16 is held by some player.

Whether any one wins the farm or not, when the hands are exposed all those who have overdrawn must pay to the one who owned the farm at the beginning of that deal, as many counters as they have points more than 16. These payments do not go into the farm, but are clear profits. Those who have less than 16 pay



nothing to the farmer; but the one who is nearest 16 receives a counter from each of the others. Ties are decided by the possession of the ♡ 6, or the fewest cards, or the eldest hand, as already described. If the farm remains in the same hands, the farmer deals again, and collects his profits until he loses his farm. When the farm is won, it is emptied, and re-sold as in the beginning.

---

## QUINZE.

This is a form of Vingt-et-un for two players, but the number to be reached is 15 instead of 21. Court cards are reckoned as 10, and the ace as 1 only. Each player stakes an agreed amount every time, and the dealer then gives one card to his adversary and one to himself. The pone may stand on the first card, or draw; but he does not say anything if he overdraws. The dealer then draws or stands, and both show their cards. The one nearest to 15 wins; but if the result is a tie, or if both have overdrawn, the stakes are doubled, and another hand is dealt, the deal passing from player to player in rotation.

---

## BACCARA.

This very popular variation of Vingt-et-un originated in the south of France, and came into vogue during the latter part of the reign of Louis Philippe. It is neither a recreation nor an intellectual exercise, but simply a means for the rapid exchange of money, well suited to persons of impatient temperament. The word "Baccara" is supposed to mean "nothing," or "zero," and is applied to the hands in which the total pip value of the cards ends with a cypher.

There are two forms of the game in common use; Baccara a deux tableaux, and Baccara chemin de fer. The first will be first described.

**Players.** Baccara may be played by any number of persons from three to eleven. Those first in the room have the preference, and should immediately inscribe their names. The first eleven form the table, and the privilege of being the banker is sold to the highest bidder; that is, to the one that will put up the most money to be played for. The remaining ten persons draw for choice of seats at the table, the first choice being for the seat immediately on the right of the banker, then for the first seat on his

left. Five players are arranged on each side of the banker in this manner, right and left alternately, according to the order of their choice. Sometimes an assistant or croupier is seated opposite the banker, to watch the bets, gather and shuffle the cards, etc. A waste basket is placed in the centre of the table for the reception of cards that have been used in play.

If no one bids for the bank, it must be offered to the first on the list of players; if he declines, the next, and so on. The amount bid for the bank is placed on the table, and none of it can be withdrawn, all winnings being added to it. If no bid is made, the banker may place on the table any amount he thinks proper, and that amount, or what remains of it after each coup, is the betting limit. When the banker loses all he has, the bank is sold to the next highest bidder, or offered to the next player on the list. If the banker wishes at any time to retire, the person taking his place should begin with an amount equal to that then in the bank.

**Counters.** Each of the players should be provided with a certain number of counters, all of which must be sold and redeemed by the banker or his assistant.

**Cards.** Three packs of fifty-two cards each are shuffled together and used as one. The players shuffle as much as they please, the banker last, and the banker then presents them to any player he pleases to have them cut. The banker may burn one or two cards if he pleases; that is, turn them face upward on the bottom of the pack.

**Object of the Game.** The court cards and Tens count nothing, but all others, including the Ace, are reckoned at their face value. The object is to secure cards whose total pip value will most closely approach the number 8 or 9. An 8 made with two cards is better than a 9 made with three.

**Stakes.** Each player in turn, beginning with the first one on the right of the banker, and after him the first one on the left, and so on, right and left alternately, can bet any amount he pleases until the total amount bet equals the capital then in the bank. When this amount is reached it is useless to place further bets, as they may not be paid. For this reason Baccara is a very slow game when there is not much money in the bank. After all the players have made what bets they wish, outsiders may place bets on the result if they choose to do so.

Either the players or the gallery may bet on either side of the table, which is divided down the middle by a line dividing it into two parts, right and left; hence the name, Baccara a deux tableaux. A person wishing to bet on both sides at once places his money *à cheval*; that is, across the line. If one side wins and the other loses, a bet placed in this manner is a stand-off; if both sides lose, the bet is lost, and if both win the bet is won. A common form

of dishonesty at Baccara, and one for which a distinguished Englishman was recently tried, is to place a stake very close to the line, and if it is seen that the side on which it is placed has probably lost, to push the stake onto the line, so that it may be saved if the other side wins. The Englishman in question worked this little game on the Prince of Wales for some time before he was detected.

When the banker loses, he pays the players in their order, right and left alternately, beginning with those who hold cards, until his capital is exhausted. Any further bets are disregarded. If any player bets on the opposite side of the table to that on which he is seated, his bet is not paid until all five of the players on that side have been settled with, because such a bet is regarded as that of an outsider, not belonging to that side of the table. If the player actually holding cards is not the one nearest the banker, he is still the first one to be paid, and then those beyond him in order. For instance: The third player holds cards; after him the fourth and fifth are paid, and then the first and second, each alternately with a player on the other side of the table.

**Banco.** Each player in turn, beginning with the one to whom cards will be dealt first, has the right to go banco; that is, to challenge the banker to play for his entire capital at a single coup. Such a proposition takes precedence of all others. If the bank loses such a coup, it must be put up to the highest bidder again, or offered to the next player on the list. If it wins, the same player, or any other player, may make a similar offer for the next coup, which will now be for double the first amount, of course; but no player is allowed to offer banco more than twice in succession.

**Dealing.** The cards cut, the banker takes a convenient number of them in his hand, or better, spreads them face downward on the table, and slips off the top card, giving it to the player next him on the right, face down. The next card he gives to the player on his left, and the next to himself. He gives another card to the right, to the left, and to himself, and then the players take them up and examine them. Ten cards must remain in the stock for the last deal.

**Irregularities.** After the first card is dealt no bets can be made or changed. The cards must be so held that they shall be at all times in full view of the players. Any card found faced in the pack is thrown in the waste basket. Any card once separated from the pack must be taken. If neither of the players want it, the dealer must take it himself. If the cards are dealt irregularly the error may be rectified if they have not been looked at; but any player may amend or withdraw his bet before the cards are seen. If the error is not detected in time, the player who holds cards may play the coup or not as he pleases, and all bets on his side of

the table are bound by his decision. If a player holds one card too many, he may refuse the coup, or retain whichever two of the three cards he pleases, throwing the third into the waste basket, not showing it. If the banker has too many cards, the players may amend their bets, and the banker's cards are then exposed, and the one taken from him which will leave him with the smallest point, the drawn card being thrown in the waste basket. If the banker gives himself two cards while either player has been given one only, the player must be given another card, and the banker must also take another. If the players have not amended their stake before the error was corrected, the first two cards dealt to the banker are thrown in the waste basket, and the third is his point for that deal. If the banker gives the second card to either player before dealing the first to himself, he must give the second to the other player also, and then take his own. This single card must then be thrown in the waste basket, but the banker may play out the hand as if he had two cards which counted 10 or 20 ; that is, *baccara*.

**Showing.** If any of the three persons holding cards finds he has a point of 8 or 9, it must be shown at once, and the two other hands are then exposed. If the banker has 8 or 9, and neither of the others has so many, the bank wins everything on the table. If either player has more than the banker, all the bets on that side of the table must be paid. If either player has as many as the banker, all the bets on that side of the table are a stand-off. If either player has less than the banker, all the bets on that side of the table are lost. If a player wrongly announces 8 or 9, he cannot draw cards unless his point was 10 or 20.

**Drawing.** If none of the three can show 8 or 9, the banker must offer a card to the player on his right. The card must be slipped off the pack and offered face down. If the player on the right refuses, it is offered to the player on the left, and if he also refuses, the banker must take it himself. If the player on the right takes it, the player on the left may ask for a card also ; but whether he does so or not, the banker is not obliged to draw unless he chooses, after the first card offered has been taken by either player. When the card is taken it is turned face up, and left on the table in front of the person to whom it belongs. Only one card may be drawn by any player, and all the hands are then exposed. Ties are a stand-off. The banker pays all bets on the side that is nearer 9 than himself, and wins all on the side which is not so near 9 as himself. The players on the opposite sides of the table have nothing to do with each other ; each wins or loses with the banker alone.

It should be observed that if a player had 4 originally, and draws a 9, his point is not 13, but 3, because all 10's count for nothing. There is no such thing as being *crève*, as at *Vingt-et-un*.

**Irregularities.** If the banker gives two cards, face up, to the player on his right, the player may retain which he pleases, throwing the other into the waste basket. If two cards are given to the player on the left, he may select which he pleases, and the banker must take the other.

**Order of Playing.** The coup finished, and all bets paid, the cards which have been used are all thrown into the waste basket, and the stakes are placed for the next coup. The banker deals again, from the top of the stock, without any further shuffling or cutting of the cards. If the player on the right won the first coup, the banker deals to him again; but if he lost, the banker deals to the next player beyond him; that is, the second from the banker, on his right. The same with the player on the left. If the player on the right or left wins the second coup, the cards are dealt to him again for the third coup; if he loses they are dealt to the next player beyond him, and so on, until all five players have held cards and have lost a coup, after which the banker deals to the one nearest him again.

It will thus be seen that there are in each coup only two active players, and that all stakes made upon the game are made upon the result of their hands.

**Suggestions for Playing.** In justice to those backing him, the player is supposed to draw or not to draw, according to the laws of probabilities, which are exactly the same as in Vingt-et-un. If he has four points, which would be 5 below 9, he should draw; just as he would if he had 16 at Vingt-et-un, which would be 5 below 21. If he has 5 or more, he should stand; but if he has 5 exactly it is a matter of judgment, drawing a card being sometimes good play, especially if it is likely to lead the banker to overdraw himself. In some clubs there is a law that a player must draw if his point is less than 5, and must stand if it is more than 5, or he must pay a fine.

As no one is backing the banker, he is at liberty to play as badly as he pleases, and he is really the only one that has an opportunity to exercise any judgment in the matter of drawing. If a player refuses a card, the banker may be able to judge whether or not he has 6 or 7 by his habit of drawing or not drawing at 5. If he is known to be a player who draws at 5, it is useless for the banker to stand at 5, unless he thinks he can beat the player on the other side of the table, and there is more money on that side. If the player demanding a card has been given a 10, the banker should stand, even at 3 or 4. If he has been given an ace, the banker should stand at 4; if a 2 or 3, the banker should stand at 5; if the player is given a 4, the banker should draw, even if he has 5. If a player has drawn a 5, 6 or 7, the banker should draw, even if he has 5 or 6. If the player draws an 8 or 9, the banker should stand at 4 or 5, sometimes even with 3.

It must be remembered that the banker should have a sharp eye to the relative amounts staked on each side of the table, which will often decide which player he should try to beat. For example: The banker has 5, and the player on his right has drawn a 10, the one on his left a 7. The banker has an excellent chance to win all the bets on the right, and should have a certainty of standing off with them, and unless those on the left very much exceeded them, the banker would be very foolish to risk losing everything by drawing to 5, simply to beat the player on his left.

**BACCARA CHEMIN DE FER.** In this variation, each player in turn on the left becomes the banker, taking the deal as soon as the first banker loses a coup. The banker gives cards only to the player on his right, and to himself. If this player will not go banco, each of the others in order beyond him may do so. If no one goes banco, each player in turn to the right makes what bets he pleases, within the limit of the bank's capital. If the banker wins the coup, he deals again, and so on until he loses, when the deal passes to the player on his left. The banker, after winning a coup, may pass the deal to the player on his right, if he chooses to do so, provided that player will put up an amount equal to that then in the bank. When this player loses a coup, the bank must go to the player to whom it would have gone in regular order; that is, the one on the left of the player who transferred his privilege.

Six packs of cards are generally used in Chemin de Fer, and the cards are placed in a wooden box, from which each dealer takes as many as he wants.

**CHEATING.** Baccara is honeycombed with trickery. Dishonest players, in collusion with the banker, have certain means of informing him of their point, so that he may win all the money staked upon that side of the table by the other players. This may be done in many ways. The player may ask the one sitting next him whether or not he should draw, which shows that he has 5. Or he may make a movement as if to expose his first two cards, and then correct himself. This shows the banker that the player has baccara, and is pretending that he thought he had 9. In addition to this system of communication, which Parisians call *tiquer*, marked cards, second dealing, and prepared stocks which can be palmed on the true cards, or substituted therefor, are all in common use. If Baccara is honestly played it is one of the fairest of all banking games, but the opportunities for cheating are so many and so easily availed of, and the money to be won and lost is so great, especially at Chemin de Fer, that few who know anything of cheating at cards can resist the temptation to practice it at Baccara.

*The Laws* of Baccara are very long and complicated. As no official code exists, and as each gambling club makes its own house rules, it is not necessary to give them here, the directions contained in the foregoing description being sufficient for any honest game.

**Text Books.** The following will be found useful:—  
*Théorie Mathématique du Baccara*, by Dormoy.  
*Baccara Experimental*, by Billard.  
*Traité Théorique et Pratique Baccara*, by Laun.  
*Westminster Papers*, Vols. X. and XI.

---

## BLIND HOOKEY.

This game is sometimes called Dutch Bank. Any number of persons may play, and a full pack of fifty-two cards is used. The cards rank from the A K Q down to the deuce. Any player may shuffle, the dealer last. The pack is then cut, and the re-united parts are placed in the centre of the table. The players then cut it into several packets, none less than four cards, all of which remain on the table face down. Some player then pushes one of the packets toward the dealer, and bets are then made on the others. Any player, except the dealer, can bet what he pleases on any packet.

After all the bets are made all the packets, including the dealer's, are turned face up, exposing the bottom card of each. Any packet disclosing a card lower than the dealer's loses all bets placed upon it. Any packet showing a card better than the dealer's wins from him. The dealer takes all ties. The deal then passes to the next player on the left. Sometimes only three packets are cut, one of which is pushed to the dealer.

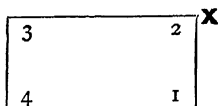
This game is a great favourite with card-sharpers, especially on ocean steamers. They use packs in which the cards are trimmed long and short, so that a confederate may cut them by the ends or by the sides for high or low cards, afterward pushing one of the high cuts toward the dealer.

## CHINESE FAN TAN.

This is apparently the fairest of all banking games, there being absolutely no percentage in favour of the banker except that the players have to do the guessing.

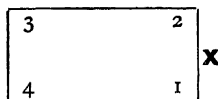
The one who is willing to put up the largest amount of money to be played for is usually selected as the banker. He is provided with a large bowlful of beans, counters, buttons, small coins, or some objects of which a large number of similar size and shape can be easily obtained. An oblong card is placed in the centre of the table, and the players stake their money upon its corners or upon its edges. These corners are supposed to be numbered in rotation from 1 to 4, the figure 1 being on the right of the banker.

A bet placed on any of the corners takes in the number it is placed upon and the next higher also; so that a bet upon the corner 1 would be upon the numbers 1 and 2; upon 2 it would be upon 2 and 3; and upon 4 it would be upon 4 and 1.



In the illustration the bet would be upon 2 and 3.

If the bet is placed upon the edge of the card, it takes in the next higher number only.



In the illustration the bet is upon the number 2, and no other.

After all the bets have been placed, the banker takes a large handful of the beans or counters from the bowl, and places them on the table, counting them off rapidly into fours. The number of odd counters remaining decides which number wins; if none remain, 4 wins. If there were 2 or 3 counters over, the banker would pay all bets on the corners 1 and 2, even money. If there were 2 over, he would pay all bets on the edge of the card between 1 and 2 at the rate of three for one, and so on. The counters are then returned to the bowl, and bets are placed for another coup.

Sometimes the banker will draw a handful of beans from the bowl and place them upon the table, covering them with a saucer or with his cap. He then bets any player that there will be 1, 2,



3, or 4 left, the player taking his choice, and being paid three for one if he guesses correctly.

In spite of the fact that this game is apparently perfectly fair for all concerned, the author has never seen an American who could win anything at it while a Chinaman was the banker.

---

## FARO.

This is one of the oldest banking games, and is supposed to be of Italian origin. It belongs to the same family as Lansquenet, Florentini, and Monte Bank. Under the name of Pharaon, it was in great favour during the reign of Louis XIV., and came to America by way of New Orleans. As originally played, the dealer held the cards in his left hand, and any bets once put down could not again be taken up until they were decided. In addition to splits, the dealer took hockelty.

As now played, Faro requires extensive and costly apparatus, the engraved counters used being often worth more than their playing value.

A full pack of fifty-two cards is shuffled and cut by the dealer, and then placed face upward in a dealing box, the top of which is open. The cards are drawn from this box in couples, by pushing them one at a time through a slit in the side. As the cards are withdrawn in this manner a spring pushes the remainder of the pack upward. The first card in sight at the beginning of each deal is called *soda*, and the last card left in the box is *in hoc*.

The first card withdrawn is placed about six inches from the box, and the second is laid close to the box itself.

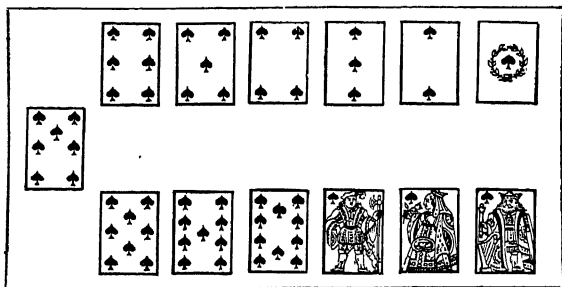


Every two cards withdrawn in this manner are called a *turn*, and there are twenty-five turns in each deal, Soda and Hoc being dead cards. In making the first turn, the Soda begins the pile farther from the box, and the next card taken out is called a *loser*, which is placed close to the box. The card left face upward in the box is the *winner* for that turn, so that there must be a winner and a loser for every turn; the loser outside the box, and the winner left in it. On the next and all following turns, the

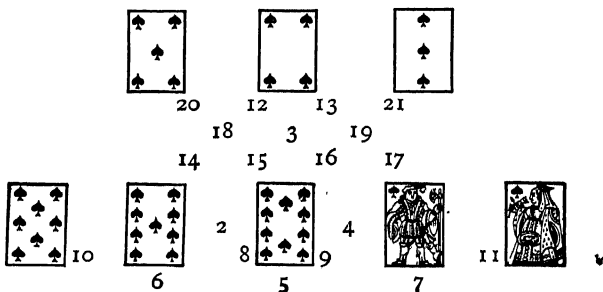
winning card on the previous turn will be placed on the same pile as the Soda, so that it shall be possible at any time to decide which cards have won, and which have lost.

The *Object of the Game* is for the players to guess whether the various cards on which they place their money will win or lose. They are at liberty to select any card they please, from the ace to the King, and to bet any amount within the established limit of the bank.

*The Layout.* All bets are made with counters of various colors and values, which are sold to the players by the dealer, and may be redeemed at any time. These counters are placed on the layout, which is a complete suit of spades, enamelled on green cloth, sufficient space being left between the cards for the players to place their bets. The ace is on the dealer's left.



There are a great many ways of placing bets at Faro. For instance: A player may make bets covering twenty-one different combinations of cards, all of which would play the Ten to win, as follows:—



If the first bet is supposed to be flat upon the Ten itself, 2, 3 and 4 would take in the card next the Ten; 5 the cards on each side with the Ten; 6 and 7 the three cards behind which the bets are placed, the Ten being one in each instance; 8 and 9 take in the Ten and the card one remove from it in either direction; 10 and 11 are the same thing, but placed on the other card; 12 to 17 inclusive take in the various triangles of which the bet is the middle card; 18 and 19 take in the four cards surrounding them; 20 and 21 are *heeled* bets, the bottom counter being flat on the corner of the card, and the remainder being tilted over toward the card diagonally across from the one on which the bet is placed, playing both cards to win. In addition to these twenty-one bets, others might be made by heeling bets that would take certain cards to lose, and the Ten to win. Bets may also be *strung* behind odd or even cards on the side next the dealer. These show that the player bets the next case card that comes will win if it is an even card, and lose if it is odd; that is, if he places his string behind an even card.

If the player thinks a card will win, he bets it *open*, that is, with nothing but his counters. If he wants to play a card to lose, he *coppers* it, by placing a checker or button on his chips. If a player wishes to reach two cards widely separated, such as the deuce and Seven, and has not money enough to bet on both; he can ask the dealer for a *marker*, which is a flat oblong piece of ivory. This is placed on the card to be played with the same money, and the dealer may either trust his memory for the bet, or place another marker on it.

After the dealer has waved his hand preparatory to pushing the top card from the box, no bet can be made or changed. After the turn is made, the dealer first picks up all the bets he wins, and then pays all he loses, after which he waits for the players to rearrange their bets for the next turn. Between each turn a player may make any change he pleases. A lookout sits on the right of the dealer to see that he pays and takes correctly, and to watch that no bets are changed, or coppers slipped off, during the turn.

**Splits.** If two cards of the same denomination win and lose on the same turn, it is a split, and the dealer takes half the bets on the split card, no matter whether it is bet to win or lose. Splits should come about three times in two deals if the cards are honestly dealt. In "*Stuss*" (dealt without a box), the bank takes splits.

**Keeping Cases.** As the cards are withdrawn from the box they are marked on a case-keeper, which is a suit of thirteen cards, with four buttons running on a steel rod opposite each of them. As the cards come out, these buttons are pushed along, so that the player may know how many of each card are still to come, and what cards are left in for the last turn. In brace games, when

the cards are pulled out two at a time to change the run of them, the case-keeper is always a confederate of the dealer, and is signalled what cards have been pulled out under the cards shown, so that he can secretly mark them up. A bet placed or left upon a card of which none are left in the box is called a *sleeper*, and is public property; the first man that can get his hands on it keeps it.

When only one card of any denomination is in the box, it is obvious that such a card cannot be split, and that the bank has no advantage of the player. Such cards are called *cases*, and the betting limit on cases is only half the amount allowed on other cards. It is not considered *comme il faut* for a player to wait for cases, and those who play regularly usually make a number of small bets during the early part of the deal, and then bet high on the cases as they come along. A player who goes upon the principle that the dealer can cheat those who bet high, and who follows and goes against the big bets with small ones, or who plays one-chip bets all over the board, hoping to strike a good spot to fish on, is called a piker; and when a game runs small this way, the dealers call it a *piking game*.

**Keeping Tab.** In addition to the case-keeper, score sheets are provided on which the players may keep a record of what cards win and lose on each turn. These tabs are printed in vertical columns, about five deals to a sheet. A dot indicates the soda card; a dash, hoc. All winners are marked with a down stroke, and all losers with a cypher. The diagram in the margin will give a very good idea of a faro tab for a complete deal. The Queen was soda, the Five split out, and the Eight was in hoc.

A	o o I o
2	o I I I
3	o o I I
4	I o o o
5	o o X
6	I I I I
7	o I I o
8	I I o -
9	o I o I
10	o o o o
J	I I I o
Q	. o I o
K	I o I I

**Systems.** On the manner in which the cards will go, a great many systems of play are based. There are sixteen different ways for a card to "play," which are simply the permutations of the stroke and the cypher arranged in rows of four at a time. If a player is betting *three on a side*, he will take each card as it becomes a case, and bet that it either wins three times and loses once, or loses once and wins three times. In the foregoing deal he would have bet on the A 3 4 6 9 J to lose on the fourth card out of the box, and would have bet on the case cards of the 2 7 8 10

Q K to win. The Soda, it must be remembered, is really a winning card. Of these bets he would have won 5 out of twelve, taking back his money on the 8, as that card was left in hoc. Playing *break even*, these bets would have been exactly reversed, as all the cards would have played either to win and lose an equal number of times, or to *win* or *lose out*; that is, to do the same thing all four times.

Another favourite system is colours. The player takes some definite card, such as the soda, or the first winner or loser, as his starter, and whatever the colour of the third card of each denomination, that is, the card that makes it a case, he plays it to win or lose, according to the system of colours he is playing. Many players reverse on the last turn.

When a player bets one card to lose and another to win, and loses both bets on the same turn, he is *whipsawed*.

**The Last Turn.** If three different cards are left in for the last turn, the players can *call the turn*, naming the order in which they think the cards will be found. Suppose the three cards left in the box are the 9 8 2, these may come in six different ways:—

9 8 2    9 2 8    8 9 2    8 2 9    2 9 8    2 8 9

The odds against any one of these ways are 5 to 1; but the dealer pays 4 for 1 only. In calling the turn, the bet is strung from the selected loser to the selected winner. If the third card intervenes, the bet is strung away from it, to show that it goes round the layout to the other card.

If there are two cards of the same denomination in the last turn, it is called a *cat-hop*; and as it can come only three ways, the dealer pays 2 for 1. Suppose the cards are 8 8 5, they can come:—

8 8 5    8 5 8    5 8 8

If three cards of the same denomination are left, the call is by the colour, and is paid 2 for 1. Suppose two black and one red card are left. These may come:—

B B R    B R B    R B B

The bets are placed on the dealer's right for red first; on his left for black and red, and in front of him for two blacks.

**CHEATING.** If Faro were honestly played, it would be one of the prettiest banking games in the world; but unfortunately the money to be made at this game is so great that the richest prizes in the gambling world are offered to the men who can so handle the cards as to "protect the money of the house." All systems are not only worthless, but dangerous to use, when opposed to the skill of the modern faro dealer. A first-class "mechanic" can get from one to two hundred dollars a week, and a percentage of the profits; but it is hardly necessary to say that he is not paid that amount simply for pulling cards out of a box. Before venturing to "buck the tiger" get some one to show you how fifty-three cards are shuffled up, so as to make the last turn come the way that

there is most money in it for the house. Watch the movements carefully, so that you will know them the next time you see them in a fashionable house, which you imagine to be "dead square." If you see a dealer with a shuffling board as thick as his dealing box, don't play against that game. If you see a dealer take up the cards already taken from the box, slipping them one under the other, as if to straighten them up, the sooner you cash your chips the better, for you are up against a brace game, no matter where it is dealt.

The proprietors of some fashionable "clubs," especially at watering places, pretend to be above all such things as cheating at faro, and get indignant at the suggestion of the possibility of there being anything crooked in their establishments. The author has but one reply to all such. If it is true that there is nothing unfair in your game, let me put a type-writer girl in the dealer's place to shuffle and pull out the cards, and let your men just see to paying and taking bets.

The boast of all these fashionable gambling houses is that they never won a man's money except in a square game. Strange to say, this is generally true, and the explanation is very simple. If you are losing there is no necessity to cheat you, so you lose your money in a square game. If you are winning, it is the bank's money, and not yours, that they would win if they started to cheat you; and as the dealer is paid to "protect the money of the house," as they call it, he is perfectly justified in throwing the harpoon into you for a few deals, just to get his own money back; but he is very careful not to cheat you out of any of your own money. You may lose if you like, but you cannot win; faro banks are not run that way.

---

## ROUGE ET NOIR,

### OR TRENTE-ET-QUARANTE.

The banker and his assistant, called the croupier, sit opposite each other at the sides of a long table, on each end of which are two large diamonds, one red and the other black, separated by a square space and a triangle. Any number of persons can play against the bank, placing their bets on the colour they select, red or black.

Six packs of fifty-two cards each are shuffled together and used as one, the dealer taking a convenient number in his hand for each deal. The players having made their bets, and cut the cards, the dealer turns one card face upward on the table in front of him,

at the same time announcing the colour he deals for, which is always for *black first*. The dealer continues to turn up cards one by one, announcing their total pip value each time, until he reaches or passes 31. Court cards and Tens count 10 each, the ace and all others for their face value. Having reached or passed 31 for black, the *red* is dealt for in the same manner, and whichever colour most closely approaches 31, wins. Suppose 35 was dealt for black, and 38 for red; black would win. The number dealt must never exceed 40.

The colour of the first card dealt in each coup is noted, and if the same colour wins the coup, the banker pays all bets placed on the space marked *Couleur*. If the opposite colour wins, he pays all bets in the triangle marked *Inverse*. All bets are paid in even money, there being no odds at this game.

Although black is the first colour dealt for, both it and inverse are ignored in the announcement of the result, red and colour being the only ones mentioned, win or lose.

If the same number is reached for both colours, it is called a *refait*, and is announced by the word, "Après," which means that all bets are a stand-off for that coup. If the refait happens to be exactly 31, however, the bank wins half the money on the table, no matter how it is placed. The players may either pay this half at once, or may move their entire stake into the first prison, a little square marked out on the table, and belonging to the colour they bet upon. If they win the next coup, their stake is free; if not, they lose it all. Should a second refait of 31 occur, they would have to lose a fourth of this imprisoned stake, and the remainder would be moved into a second prison, to await the result of the next coup, which would either free it or lose it all.

**Probabilities.** It has been found that of the ten numbers that can be dealt, 31 to 40, the number 31 will come oftener than any other. The proportions are as follow :—

31-13 times,	36-8 times,
32-12 times,	37-7 times,
33-11 times,	38-6 times,
34-10 times,	39-5 times,
35-9 times,	40-4 times.

The 31 refait also comes oftener than any other. Although the odds against it are supposed to be 63 to 1, the bankers expect it about twice in three deals, and each deal will produce from 28 to 33 coups.

---

## ROULETTE.

It is probable that more money has been lost at the wheel than at any other gambling game in the world. In conjunction with Rouge et Noir, it forms the chief attraction at Monte Carlo, and other public gambling casinos. The rage for these games was so great, and the trickery connected with them so common, that they were banished from France by the law of 18 juillet, 1836, and had to take refuge in Baden and Homburg. Before that time the public revenue from the gaming houses amounted to five or six millions a year, all of which was lost by closing them up. The evil was not exterminated, however, for there are to-day hundreds of gambling hells in Europe, which make up for the brevity of their existence by the rapidity with which they fleece their patrons.

In America, the wheel has always been popular, but Rouge et Noir is practically unknown, the reason being that in the latter game there is no variety, and therefore no chance for the player to exercise any judgment, or to play any "system" in making his bets, as he can in Faro.

**The Wheel.** The roulette wheel is turned by a small cross-bar rising from its axis. The surface of the wheel slopes from the axis to the outer edge, which is divided into small square pockets, coloured alternately red and black, and each having a number just above it, on the surface of the wheel. These numbers may be in any order, according to the fancy of the maker of the wheel, and they may run from 1 to 27, to 30, to 33, or to 36. In addition to the numbers there are zero marks, which are called *single* and *double 0*, and *Eagle Bird*. All three of these are used in American wheels, and they are green, so that they win for neither colour. In some of the European wheels there are two zeros, the single o being red, and the double o black. The single o also counts as "odd," and as below 19; while the double o is "even," and above 18. Bets on odd or even, above and below, are not paid, however, but must remain on the table until the next roll, when the player either gets back twice his money or loses it all. At Monte Carlo there is only one zero, which is green, and takes everything but bets on itself. The numbers on the wheel are arranged as follows at Monte Carlo, the heavy type being the black:—

o 32 **15** 19 **4** 21 **2** 25 **17** 34 **6** 27 **13** 36 **11** 30 **8** 23 **10** 5 **24**  
16 **33** 1 **20** 14 **31** 9 **22** 18 **29** 7 **28** 12 **35** 3 **26**.

The pockets on the edge of the wheel are at the bottom of a sort of circular valley, the centre of which is formed by the revolving wheel, and the outer slope by a stationary but rising margin of



border, at the top of which is an overhanging edge, under which the banker spins a small ivory ball, always in the direction opposite to that in which the wheel is turning. As the ball loses its momentum it strikes some little brass ridges, which cause it to jump onto the wheel, and then to run into one of the pockets. The number, the colour, odd or even, and whether above or below, is immediately announced by the banker, and all bets are taken and paid accordingly.

**The Layout.** The wheel is sunk in the middle of a long table, on each end of which is a layout, and on these layouts all bets are placed. The divisions are as follows:—

The heavy faced type indicates the black numbers:

0								
Passe			1	<b>2</b>	3	Manque		
			<b>4</b>	5	<b>6</b>			
			7	<b>8</b>	9			
			<b>10</b>	11	<b>12</b>			
Pair			<b>13</b>	14	15	Impair		
			16	<b>17</b>	<b>18</b>			
			19	<b>20</b>	21			
			<b>22</b>	23	<b>24</b>			
Noir			25	<b>26</b>	27	Rouge		
			<b>28</b>	<b>29</b>	30			
			<b>31</b>	32	<b>33</b>			
			34	<b>35</b>	36			
P 12	M 12	D 12				P 12	M 12	D 12

Bets may be made on the following chances:

1. **En plein.** Flat upon any number, which pays 35 for 1. The betting limit at Monte Carlo is 180 francs.
2. **A cheval,** on the line between two numbers, which pays 17 for 1. Betting limit on this chance is 360 francs.

3. *Un carré*, on a cross line, taking in four numbers. This pays 8 for 1. Limit is 750 francs.

4. *Transversale*, at the end of any three numbers, and taking them in horizontally. Pays 11 for 1. Limit is 560 francs.

5. *Transversale Six*, placed on the line at the end, taking in the three numbers horizontally above and below. This pays 5 for 1. Limit is 1,200 francs.

6. *Bas*. At the bottom of any of the three vertical columns, taking in the twelve numbers. This pays 2 for 1. Limit is 3,000 francs.

7. *Bas à cheval*, between any two of these columns. This pays  $\frac{1}{2}$  for 1. Limit is 3,000 francs.

8. *Premier, Milieu, Dernier*. Bets placed in the spaces marked P 12, M 12, and D 12, are upon the first, middle and last twelve numbers; that is, from 1 to 12, 13 to 24, and 25 to 36 respectively. This pays 2 for 1. Limit is 3,000 francs.

A cheval between any two of the last mentioned, pays  $\frac{1}{2}$  for 1.

In addition to the foregoing, all the following chances may be bet upon. They all pay even money. The limit is 6,000 francs.

9. *Impair*. That the number will be odd.

10. *Pair*. That the number will be even.

11. *Manque*. That the number will be from 1 to 18.

12. *Passe*. That the number will be from 19 to 36.

13. *Rouge* or *Noir*. Red or Black.

The foregoing are the payments at Monte Carlo; but wheels with less numbers are scaled down accordingly. The players can bet on the zero if they choose, and they will be paid if it comes up, 35 for 1, but all other bets are lost. In wheels with two zeros, red and black, the bank wins on the colour which does not come, and the bets on the right colour are neither paid nor taken, but must remain until the next turn of the wheel. This is now the practice at Monte Carlo, with the single-zero wheels.

*Systems*. As at Faro, gamblers at Roulette are never tired of devising systems to beat the game; but none of them are of any further use than to afford a little passing amusement to their inventors. Persons who are interested in systems will find in the *New York Sun*, July 5, 1896, a very interesting tabulation of every roll of the ball at Monte Carlo for seven successive days, 4,012 in all, of which 120 were zeros. If they can find a system that will beat the wheel for seven days, and have a return ticket, Monte Carlo will take care of all their spare cash.

One curious fallacy about some systems is to imagine that they will win if the player will quit when he is a certain amount ahead, and not play again until next day. Until some rule can be given by which the exact hour can be fixed to begin play, all such sys-

tems must be delusions, as there is no reason why a second man should not begin where the first left off, and therefore no reason why the first should not continue playing all the time.

It is in the interest of the proprietors of all gambling houses to pretend to be afraid of systems. The word is passed round, and the deluded gamblers think they have found the thread which has held the sword of Damocles above the banker's head so long. As a matter of fact, there is no one so welcome at a gambling house as a player with a system. A man may be fortunate enough for a long time to guess right oftener than he will guess wrong, and a lucky man in good guessing form is a very dangerous customer, that no cold deck will beat; but a man with a system surrenders to a double foe; the inevitable percentage of the game, and the skill of the banker, who can beat any system if the player will only promise to stick to it.

## KENO, OR LOTTO.

This game is played with a large number of cards, on which are printed various permutations of the numbers 1 to 90, taken five at a time; but each of the five numbers selected for one combination must be in a separate division of tens, such combinations as 2 4 8 16 18 not being allowed on any card, because the 2 4 and 8, for instance, are all in the first ten numbers of the 90. These cards have each a number, printed in large red type across the face of the other figures. The following might be a keno card, No. 325 :—

1		26		45	53		77	
	10	28	3	2	5	62	79	83
4	12		37			67		90

Some cards have more than three rows of figures on them, but none have more than five in one row.

The cards are left on the tables in large numbers, and any number of persons may play. Each selects as many cards as he wishes, or thinks he can watch, and places upon them their price, usually twenty-five cents each. An assistant comes round and calls out the numbers of all the cards to be played, and they are "pegged" on a large board provided for the purpose.

Ninety small ivory balls, with flattened surfaces to carry the numbers, are placed in a keno goose, which looks like a coffee urn with the spout at the bottom. This spout can be screwed out to

put in the balls, and is controlled with a spring cut-off like a powder horn, which lets out only one ball at a time. When all the cards have been pegged, the goose is rapidly revolved several times back and forth, and then a number is taken out, and placed in a little tray with ninety depressions in it, numbered in regular order, which hold the balls as they come from the goose. The keno roller calls each number distinctly, and the players who find it on their cards cover it with a button. The first player to get a horizontal row of five numbers covered in this manner, calls out "Keno!" or bangs the table with a card, and that stops the game. An assistant comes round to the table and calls out the number of the card; if it has been paid for and pegged, he proceeds to call the numbers forming the keno, and these are checked by the roller from the balls on the tray. If everything is correct, the player is given all the money paid by the other players for their cards, less the ten per cent which goes to the house. If two kenos are made on the same number, they divide the pool equally.

As an illustration of the profitable nature of the game for the house, it may be remarked that if ten men were to play keno for a dollar a card, and each of them made keno ten times, they would all be "dead broke;" because on each of the hundred kenos at ten dollars each, the bank would have taken out its dollar percentage.

## CHUCK-LUCK.

This game is sometimes called *Sweat*, and again, but erroneously, *Hazard*. It is played with three dice, which are usually thrown down a funnel in which several cross-bars are placed. The player is offered five different forms of betting, all of which appear on the *Layout*, and which cover all the combinations possible with three dice.

HIGH.					SINGLE NUMBERS.						LOW.				
					1	2	3	4	5	6					
18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3
180	60	29	18	12	8	6	6	6	6	8	12	18	29	60	180
ODD.					RAFFLES.						EVEN.				
					1	2	3	4	5	6					

The Raffles are sometimes indicated by a representation of one face of a die. Bets on single numbers pay even money, if the

number bet on comes up on the face of any of the three dice. If it comes up on two of them, such as two deuces, it pays double; but if all three dice are alike it is a *raffle*, and the house takes all bets not placed on raffles. Bets on the numbers from 18 to 3 are upon the total count of the pips on the upper faces of the three dice. The small figures under these numbers show the odds paid; 14, for instance, pays twelve for one. All raffles pay 180 for one; the same as 18 or 3.

Bets on High and Low, Odd or Even, pay even money. High throws are all above 10, and low throws are all below 11. This would be perfectly even betting if the house did not take raffles. Some houses allow a player to bet on raffles generally; that is, to bet that a raffle of some kind will come. Such bets are paid 30 for 1.

The percentage of the house, even in a square game, may be seen from the following table, which gives the odds against the event, and the odds which the house pays:—

The odds against	3 or 18	are	215	to	1	; the house pays	180
"	"	4	" 17	"	71	" 1	" 60
"	"	5	" 16	"	35	" 1	" 29
"	"	6	" 15	"	20 $\frac{1}{2}$	" 1	" 18
"	"	7	" 14	"	13 $\frac{1}{2}$	" 1	" 12
"	"	8	" 13	"	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	" 1	" 8
"	"	9	" 12	"	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	" 1	" 6
"	"	10	" 11	"	7	" 1	" 6

**Cheating.** There are endless ways of swindling at Chuck-luck, the most modern being to turn the dice over after they have reached the table through the funnel. This is done by an apparatus under the cloth, the dealer looking down the funnel to see how the dice lie, and then adjusting them to suit himself. Another method is to hold out one die, throwing only two down the funnel, and slipping the third down the outside, turning it so that when it is combined with the two already in the funnel it will beat the big bets on the layout. Raffles can be forced in this way whenever the two dice in the funnel are paired.

## RONDEAU.

This game is played on a pocket billiard table. The banker asks for bets on the *inside* and *outside*, and the amounts staked on each side must balance. So long as they do not balance, the banker must ask for what he wants: "Give me fourteen dollars on the outside to make the game," etc. As soon as the amounts balance, and no more bets are offered, he says: "Roll. The game is made."

A round stick, about a foot long, is placed behind nine small ivory balls. Any person may roll. He takes his stand at one corner of the table and rolls the balls across the table to the pocket diagonally opposite him. At least one ball must go into the pocket and one must be left out, or they must be rolled over again. The number of balls left outside the pocket, odd or even, decides whether the inside or the outside bets win; and after the banker has deducted his ten per cent, the players who have backed the winning side get their money.

---

### **MONTE BANK.**

The money staked by the banker is piled upon the table, so that all players may see what is to be won. The banker takes a Spanish pack of forty cards, shuffles them, and offers them to the players to be cut. Holding the pack face down, the banker draws two cards from the bottom and places them on the table, face up, for the "bottom layout." He then draws two cards from the top of the pack for the "top layout."

The players can bet on either layout, and after all the bets are placed the pack is turned face up. The card that shows is called the "gate." If it is of the same suit as either of the cards in the top layout, the banker pays all bets on that layout. If there is a card of the same suit as the gate in the bottom layout, the banker pays that also. If there is no card of the same suit as the gate in either of the layouts, the banker wins from that layout; so that he may win or lose from either or both on the same gate.

The pack is then turned face down, the gate is drawn off and thrown aside and two fresh layouts are made, as before and the bets placed before the new gate is shown. This is continued until the pack is exhausted.

---

### **THREE-CARD MONTE.**

This is a purely gambling game, chiefly useful for separating fools from their money. The dealer takes three cards, slightly bent lengthwise, so as to be more easily picked up by the ends. One of these is shown, and the players are told to watch it. After a few skilful passes, the three cards come to rest on the layout, and the players are asked to bet that they can pick out the card shown.

If the dealer will lay two to one, it is a fair gamble; but if he lays even money only, the player is betting two to one against himself. There are endless ways of pretending to mark the shown card, so that it may be known by the back; but the dealer or his confederate always knows that this is done, and the mark is shifted during the passes.

## UNDER AND OVER SEVEN.

This game is played with a layout, divided and marked as follows:—

<i>U</i>	<i>7</i>	<i>O</i>
EVEN	3 TO 1	EVEN

The players can bet on any of the three spaces. Two dice are thrown by the banker, and if the number thrown is *under* seven he pays all bets upon the U, even money, taking all those upon 7 and O. If the throw is *over* seven, he pays all bets upon the O, taking all those upon U and 7. If seven is thrown, he pays all bets upon that number, three for one, and takes all upon U and O.

As there are 36 possible throws with two dice, 15 being under and 15 over seven, the percentage in favour of the banker is always 21 to 15, on U and O. As there are only 6 ways out of 36 to throw seven, the odds against it are 5 to 1; but the banker pays only 3 for 1. In spite of this enormous percentage in his favour, he frequently adds to his revenue by skilful cheating.

---

## LANSQUENET.

This is a banking game for any number of players, with a pack of fifty-two cards. After the pack has been shuffled and cut, the dealer lays off two cards, face up for "hand cards." He then deals a card for himself and one for the players, also face up. If either of these is of the same denomination as either of the hand cards, it must be placed with them, and another card dealt; because all bets must be made on single cards.

Having two cards, one for the players and one for himself, the banker turns up cards one at a time. If he draws the same denomination as the players' card, he wins all the bets upon it. If he draws his own denomination, he loses all bets upon the other card. If he draws a card that matches neither, and is not in the hand cards, it is placed on the table, and the players can bet upon it.

As soon as the players' card is matched, the banker withdraws both cards, but he cannot withdraw his own card. All cards matching the hand cards must be placed with them.

## TABLE GAMES.

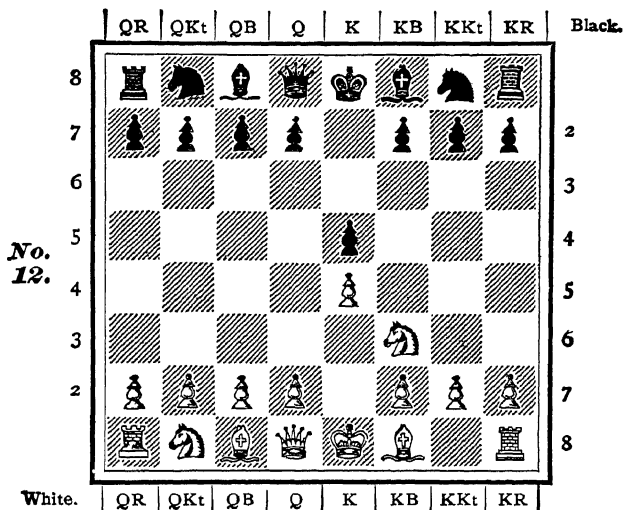
---

The common form of folding chess-board provides a field for three of our best known games; Chess, Checkers, and Backgammon, which are generally spoken of as "table games," although, strictly speaking, Backgammon is the only game of Tables. These three games were probably played long before history noticed them, and they have survived almost all ancient forms of amusement.

*Chess* is not only the most important of the three, but the most widely known, and possesses the most extensive literature. According to Chatto, it is probable that all games of cards owe their origin to chess, cards themselves having been derived from an old Indian variation of chess, known as the Four Kings. Chess is also the most fascinating of the table games, its charm being probably due to the fact that, like whist, it is a game that no man ever mastered. Whether or not this is in its favour is an open question. The amount of study and practice required to make a person proficient in chess brings a serious drain upon the time, and the fascinations of the game are such that once a person has become thoroughly interested in it, everything else is laid aside, and it is notorious that no man distinguished as a chess-player has ever been good for anything else.

Mr. Blackburne, the English chess champion, regards the game as a dangerous intellectual vice which is spreading to rather an alarming extent. Discussing the matter, after his game with Mr. Bardeleben, he said: "I know a lot of people who hold the view that chess is an excellent means of training the mind in logic and shrewd calculation, provision and caution. But I don't find these qualities reflected in the lives of chess-players. They are just as fallible and foolish as other folks who don't know a rook from a pawn. But even if it were a form of mental discipline, which I doubt, I should still object to it on the ground of its fatal fascination. Chess is a kind of mental alcohol. It inebriates the man who plays it constantly. He lives in a chess atmosphere, and his dreams are of gambits and the end of games. I have known many an able man ruined by chess. The game has charmed him, and, as a consequence, he has given up everything to the charmer. No, unless a man has supreme self-control, it is better that he should not learn to play chess. I have never allowed my children to learn it, for I have seen too much of its evil results. Draughts is a better game, if you must have a game."





In Diagram No. 12, for instance, both the Pawns that have been moved would be spoken of as on K 4. The Knight that has been moved is on K B 3, because it is a white Knight. If it was a black Knight it would be on K B 6, reckoning from the black side of the board for the black pieces. In order to test your understanding of this system of notation, which is very important in following published games or problems, take the board and men, white side next you, and set up the following position, remembering that when no number is given, the piece stands upon the square originally occupied by the piece which gives its name to the file :—

Black men ;—King on Q R's ; Queen on Q Kt's ; Pawns on Q R 2, and Q Kt, 3 ; Rook on Q R 3.

White men ;—King on Q Kt 5 ; Queen on Q B 6.

Now look at Diagram No 11, and see if you have it right.

In addition to the notation of position, there is that of action. If a dash is placed between the initials of the piece and the definition of the square, it shows first the piece moved, and then the square to which it is moved. In Diagram No 11, for instance, Black's only move to cover the check would be given : Q-Q Kt 2 ; and White's continuation would be given ; Q-K 8.

The first of these might be abbreviated by saying, Q-Kt 2, because there is only one Kt 2 to which the Queen could be moved.

The moves of the white pieces are always given first, either in the left hand of two vertical columns, which are headed "White," and "Black" respectively; or above a line which divides the white move from the black, the latter form being used in text-books, the former in newspapers. The moves in Diagram No. II would be as follows, supposing the white Queen to arrive from K8 in the first place :—

<i>White.</i>	<i>Black.</i>	
1. Q-B 6, ch	Q-Kt 2	Or this; 1. $\frac{Q-B 6, ch}{Q-Kt 2}$
2. Q-K 8, ch	Q-Kt's	

When the abbreviation "ch," is placed after a move, it means "check." If it is a mate, or a drawn game, or the player resigns, the word follows the move. When the King castles with the King's Rook, which is the shorter move for the Rook, it is indicated by the sign O-O. When the King is castled with the Queen's Rook, which is the longer move for the Rook, the sign O-O-O is used.

A cross, x, placed after the piece moved shows that it captured something, and the letters following the cross do not give the square to which the piece is moved, but show the piece that is captured. K B x Q P, for instance, would mean that the adversary's Queen's Pawn was to be taken from the board, and the King's Bishop was to occupy the square upon which the captured Queen's Pawn had stood.

Beginners usually have some difficulty in following the moves of the Knights, because it frequently happens that the same square can be reached by either of them. The Bishops cannot be confused in this way, because they never change the colour of the square they stand upon. In some sets of chessmen the Knights are distinguished by putting a small crown on the King's Knight, but this is never done in the regulation Staunton model. The beginner will find it very convenient, when following out the play of published games, to screw off the bottom of one white and one black Knight, and to exchange the bases. The white King's Knight will then have a black base, and the black King's Knight will have a white base, and they can be easily identified at any period of the game.

**GERMAN NOTATION.** Many of our standard chess books, and some of the best edited chess columns, are in German, and the student should be familiar with the German notation, which is much simpler than the English.

The white men are always considered as the side nearer the player; the vertical columns are designated from left to right by

the letters a b c d e f g h ; and the horizontal rows by the numbers 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8, beginning at the bottom, or white side. The pieces are designated by one capital letter only, as follows :—

- K for König, or King.
- D for Dame, or Queen.
- T for Thurm, or Rook.
- L for Läufer, or Bishop.
- S for Springer, or Knight.

The Pawn is called a Bauer, but when it is moved no initial is given, simply the square it comes from. In Diagram No. 12, for instance, the English notation for the first two moves made by white would be :—P-K 4, and K Kt-B 3, or, Kt-K B 3. The German notation would be :—e 2-e 4 ; and S g 1-f 3. The move of the Knight, it will be observed, gives the initial of the piece and the square upon which it stands, and then the square to which it is moved. A capture is indicated by the letter “n” taking the place of the dash. If the white Knight took the black King’s Pawn in Diagram No. 12, for instance, the move would be recorded : S f 3 n e 5, that is, the Springer at f 3 “nimmt” whatever it found at e 5. A check is indicated by a plus sign, +, following the move. In Diagram No. 11, for instance, the last move of the white Queen would be : D e 8-c 6 + ; and Black’s reply would be : D b 8-b 7.

**THE OPENINGS.** Time and experience have shown that it is best for each player to adopt certain conventional openings, in order to develop his pieces. White always has the advantage, usually believed to be equal to 55%, counting drawn games as one half. This is because White can usually take more risks in offering a gambit than Black can in accepting it, and the best judges say that they would rather give a Knight and take the white pieces, than give Pawn-and-move and take the black. *Gambit* is a term used in Italian wrestling, and means that the adversary is given an apparent advantage at the start, in order more successfully to trip him up later on.

There are a great many chess openings, all of which have been analysed as far as the tenth move, including every possible variation on the way. The student who wishes to study them in detail should procure Freeborough’s “Chess Openings,” or Cook’s “Synopsis.” In these works, if either side has an advantage before the tenth move, it is indicated by a plus sign ; if the position is equal, it is so marked.

In studying openings, the student should be careful always to play with the winning side next him ; that is, never study how to play a losing game. If the variation ends with a plus sign, showing a win for the white, play it over with the white men next you.

In selecting openings for general use in play, if it is one for the white men, take those openings that have the greatest number of variations ending in favour of white. The Ruy Lopez is a very good opening for beginners, and the Evans' Gambit may be studied later. The French Defence and the Petroff are good openings for Black.

The theory of opening is to mobilise your forces for the attack in the fewest possible moves. Lasker thinks six moves should be enough for this purpose, and he recommends that only the King's and Queen's Pawns should be moved, after which each piece should be placed at once upon the square from which it can operate to the best advantage. He thinks the Knights should be first brought out, and posted at B 3, and then the K's B, somewhere along his own diagonal. The great mistake made by beginners is that they rush off to the attack and try to capture some of the adverse pieces before they have properly prepared themselves for re-inforcement or retreat. It should never be forgotten that the game is not won by capturing the adversary's pieces, but by checkmating his King.

Take the board and pieces, arrange them with the white men next you, and play over the following simple little game. Remember that the figures above the line are for the white men; those below for the black.

1  $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$     2  $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-Q3}$     3  $\frac{Kt-QB3}{P-KR3}$     4  $\frac{B-B4}{B-Kt5}$

The third move made by Black accomplishes nothing, and is simply a waste of time. He should have continued by bringing his Knights into play. His fourth move is also a mistake; he should develop the Knights before the Bishops.

5  $\frac{Kt \times P}{B \times Q}$     6  $\frac{B \times KBPch}{K-K2}$     7  $\frac{Kt-Q5 \text{ mate}}{}$

On his fifth move, Black jumps at the chance to win White's Queen, but this is not of the slightest benefit to him, because the object of the game is not to win the Queen, but to mate the King. At the seventh move the beginner will see that the black King cannot move out of check, neither can he move into check by taking the Bishop. He has no piece that can capture the Knight that gives the check, and nothing can be interposed, so he is mated, and White wins.

Here is another simple little game. Take the black pieces this time, but make the white men move first, of course.

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 1 \quad \frac{P-K4}{P-K4} & 2 \quad \frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3} & 3 \quad \frac{Kt \times P}{Kt-QB3}
 \end{array}$$

You don't take the King's Pawn ; it is much more important to develop your pieces rapidly.

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 4 \quad \frac{Kt \times Kt}{QP \times Kt} & 5 \quad \frac{P-Q3}{B-QB4} & 6 \quad \frac{B-Kt5}{Kt \times P}
 \end{array}$$

White's sixth move is bad, and you immediately take advantage of it. If he takes your Knight with his Pawn, you will take his K B P with your Bishop, and say "Check." If he takes the Bishop you win his Queen. If he moves his King you check again with your other Bishop, which will force him to take your black Bishop, and lose his Queen.

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 7 \quad \frac{B \times Q}{B \times Pch} & 8 \quad \frac{K-K2}{B-Kt5 \text{ mate}}
 \end{array}$$

If the beginner will examine the position, he will find that there is no way of escape for the King, and Black wins.

Openings are usually divided into five principal classes : Those in which the first piece developed is the *King's Knight* ; those in which the *King's Bishop* is the first piece brought into play ; those in which a *Gambit* is offered on the second move, usually a sacrificed Pawn ; those which are called *Close* openings, securing a good defensive game for the black pieces ; and those which are *Irregular*.

In the following outline of fifty of the openings, only the first four moves are given, and usually only one variation is selected, the object being more to give the student an idea of the development than to exhaust the subject. The arrangement is alphabetical, that being more convenient in a book of reference. For the continuations the student is recommended to study "Freeborough," or the "Handbuch des Schachspiels."

Allgaier Gambit :—

$$\begin{array}{llll}
 1 \quad \frac{P-K4}{P-K4} & 2 \quad \frac{P-KB4}{P \times P} & 3 \quad \frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KKt4} & 4 \quad \frac{P-KR4}{P-Kt5}
 \end{array}$$

Boden-Kieseritzky Gambit :—

$$\begin{array}{llll}
 1 \quad \frac{P-K4}{P-K4} & 2 \quad \frac{B-B4}{Kt-KB3} & 3 \quad \frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt \times P} & 4 \quad \frac{Kt-B3}{Kt \times Kt}
 \end{array}$$

Berlin Defence:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{B-B4}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{Q-K2}{Kt-QB3}$	4 $\frac{P-QB3}{B-B4}$
-----------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

Blackmar Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	2 $\frac{P-K4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-KB3}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt \times P}{B-B4}$
-----------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------

Calabrese Counter Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{B-B4}{P-KB4}$	3 $\frac{P-Q3}{Kt-KB3}$	4 $\frac{P-B4}{P-Q4}$
-----------------------	------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------

Centre Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Q \times P}{Kt-QB3}$	4 $\frac{Q-K3}{B-Kt5 \text{ ch}}$
-----------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Centre Counter Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-Q4}$	2 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{Q-Q \text{ sq}}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{Kt-KB3}$
-----------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------

Classical Defence, to K. B. opening:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{B-B4}{B-B4}$	3 $\frac{P-QB3}{Kt-KB3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$
-----------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

Cunningham Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{B-K2}$	4 $\frac{B-B4}{B-R5 \text{ ch}}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------	----------------------------------

Cochrane Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KKt4}$	4 $\frac{B-B4}{P-Kt5}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

Danish Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-QB3}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{B-QB4}{Kt-KB3}$
-----------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------

English Opening:—

1 $\frac{P-QB4}{P-QB4}$	2 $\frac{P-B4}{P-B4}$	3 $\frac{P-Q3}{Kt-KB3}$	4 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{P-Q3}$
-------------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

Evans' Gambit:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{P-QKt4}{B \times KtP}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	---------------------------------

**Evans' Gambit Declined :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{P-QKt4}{B-Kt3}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------

**Fianchetto Opening :—**

1 $\frac{P-K3}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-QB4}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{P-Q4}$	4 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$
-----------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------------------

**Fianchetto Defence :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-QKt3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-K3}$	3 $\frac{B-Q3}{B-Kt2}$	4 $\frac{Kt-K2}{Kt-KB3}$
-------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------	--------------------------

**Four Knights :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{Kt-B3}{Kt-B3}$	4 $\frac{B-Kt5}{B-Kt5}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

**French Defence :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{Kt-KB3}$	4 $\frac{B-KKt5}{B-K2}$
-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

**From Gambit :—**

1 $\frac{P-KB4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P \times P}{P-Q3}$	3 $\frac{P \times P}{B \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3}$
------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------

**Giuoco Piano :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{P-B3}{Kt-B3}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

**Greco-Counter Gambit :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KB4}$	3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Q-B3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q3}$
-----------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------

**Hampe-Allgaier Gambit :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{P-B4}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt-B3}{P-KKt4}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------

**Hungarian Defence :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{B-K2}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q3}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

**Irregular Openings :—**

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-QB3}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{Kt-B3}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt \times P}{B-Q3}$
-----------------------	------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------

Irregular Openings cont'd :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-Q3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{B-Q3}{Kt-QB3}$	4 $\frac{P-QB3}{P-K4}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-QB3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{B-Q3}{Kt-QB3}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{Kt-QB3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-K4}$	3 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$	4 $\frac{P-KB4}{Kt-Kt3}$

Jerome Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{B \times P \text{ ch}}{K \times B}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	--

Kieseritzky Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KKt4}$	4 $\frac{P-KR4}{P-Kt5}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

King's Bishop's Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{Q-R5 \text{ ch}}$	4 $\frac{K-B \text{ sq}}{B-B4}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------

King's Bishop's Pawn Game :—

1 $\frac{P-KB4}{P-K3}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{P-K3}{B-K2}$	4 $\frac{B-K2}{P-QKt3}$
------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------

King's Knight Opening. Irregular Defences :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KB3}$	3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Q-K2}$	4 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-Q4}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Q-B3}$	3 $\frac{Kt-B3}{P-B3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{B-Q3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{Kt-KB3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{Kt-B3}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{B-B4}$	3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Q-K2}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{B-Kt3}$

King's Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-Q4}{Q-R5 \text{ ch}}$	4 $\frac{K-K2}{P-Q4}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-KR4}{P-Q4}$	4 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P}$



King's Gambit cont'd :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KKt4}$	4 $\frac{B-B4}{B-Kt2}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-KR4}{B-K2}$	4 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	------------------------	---------------------------

King's Gambit Declined :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P \times QP}{Q \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{Q-K3}$
-----------------------	------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------

Max Lange's Attack :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{B-B4}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{\text{Castles}}{Kt-B3}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------------

Muzio Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KKt4}$	4 $\frac{B-B4}{P-Kt5}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

Petroff's Counter Attack :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{P-Q3}$	4 $\frac{K-KB3}{Kt \times P}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------------

Philidor's Defence :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-Q3}$	3 $\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt \times P}{P-Q4}$
-----------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Pierce Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{P-B4}{P \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt-B3}{P-KKt4}$
-----------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------

Queen's Pawn Counter Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P \times P}{B-Q3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-K5}$
-----------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------

Queen's Gambit :—

1 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	2 $\frac{P-QB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-K3}{P-K4}$	4 $\frac{B \times P}{P \times P}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------------

1 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	2 $\frac{P-QB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	4 $\frac{P-Q5}{P-KB4}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

1 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	2 $\frac{P-QB4}{P \times P}$	3 $\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-K3}$	4 $\frac{P-K3}{Kt-KB3}$
-----------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

Queen's Pawn Game :—

1	$\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	2	$\frac{P-K3}{P-K3}$	3	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3}$	4	$\frac{B-K2}{B-K2}$
---	---------------------	---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	---------------------

Ruy Lopez :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3	$\frac{B-Kt5}{P-QR3}$	4	$\frac{B-R4}{Kt-B3}$
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	-----------------------	---	----------------------

Salvio Gambit :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	3	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-KKt4}$	4	$\frac{B-B4}{P-Kt5}$
---	---------------------	---	----------------------------	---	-------------------------	---	----------------------

Scotch Game :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3	$\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$	4	$\frac{Kt \times P}{B-B4}$
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	---------------------------	---	----------------------------

Sicilian Defence :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-QB4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-QB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3	$\frac{Kt-B3}{P-K3}$	4	$\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$
---	----------------------	---	-------------------------	---	----------------------	---	---------------------------

Staunton's Opening :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3	$\frac{P-B3}{P-B4}$	4	$\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q3}$
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	---------------------	---	---------------------

Steinitz Gambit :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-QB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3	$\frac{P-KB4}{P \times P}$	4	$\frac{P-Q4}{Q-R5ch}$
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	----------------------------	---	-----------------------

Three Knights' Game :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-KB3}$	3	$\frac{Kt-B3}{P-Q3}$	4	$\frac{P-Q4}{P \times P}$
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	----------------------	---	---------------------------

Two Knights' Defence :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{Kt-QB3}$	3	$\frac{B-B4}{Kt-B3}$	4	$\frac{Kt-Kt5}{P-Q4}$
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------	---	----------------------	---	-----------------------

Vienna Opening :—

1	$\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2	$\frac{Kt-QB3}{B-B4}$	3	$\frac{P-B4}{P-Q3}$	4	$\frac{Kt-B3}{Kt-KB3}$
---	---------------------	---	-----------------------	---	---------------------	---	------------------------

Zukertort's Opening :—

1	$\frac{Kt-KB3}{P-K3}$	2	$\frac{P-Q4}{Kt-KB3}$	3	$\frac{P-K3}{P-QKt3}$	4	$\frac{B-K2}{B-Kt2}$
---	-----------------------	---	-----------------------	---	-----------------------	---	----------------------

**GAMES AT ODDS.** Between unequal players it is a common practice for the stronger to give the weaker some advantage. Very few are able to give a Queen, or even a Rook, but a *Knight* is quite common, and one who can concede a Knight to the weakest players in a club is usually spoken of as, "a Knight player." The most common odds between nearly equal players is *Pawn and Move*; and with a player not strong enough to give a Knight, *Pawn and Two Moves*. The Pawn removed in each instance is Black's K B P, and the Knight is usually the Q Kt. Here are a few examples of the openings in games at odds:—

Pawn and Move:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{Q-R5ch}{P-KKt3}$	4 $\frac{Q-K5}{Kt-KB3}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-Q3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{Kt-QB3}{Kt-B3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q5}{Kt-K4}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{Kt-QB3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P-K5}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{B-QKt5}{Q-Q2}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{Kt-QB3}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$	4 $\frac{P-KB4}{Kt-B2}$

Pawn and Two Moves:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-K3}$	3 $\frac{B-Q3}{P-B4}$	4 $\frac{P-Q5}{P-Q3}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-K3}$	3 $\frac{P-QB4}{P-B4}$	4 $\frac{P-Q5}{P-Q3}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q3}$	3 $\frac{P-KB4}{P-K3}$	4 $\frac{B-Q3}{Kt-K2}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-Q4}{Kt-QB3}$	3 $\frac{P-Q5}{Kt-K4}$	4 $\frac{P-KB4}{Kt-B2}$

Odds of Queen's Knight:—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{Kt-B3}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P \times P}{P-K5}$	4 $\frac{Kt-K5}{Q \times P}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{P-KB4}{P-Q4}$	3 $\frac{P \times QP}{Q \times P}$	4 $\frac{Kt-B3}{P-K5}$

Odds of King's Knight :—

1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{B-B4}{P-QB3}$	3 $\frac{Kt-B3}{Kt-B3}$	4 $\frac{P-Q4}{P-Q4}$
1 $\frac{P-K4}{P-K4}$	2 $\frac{B-B2}{Kt-KB3}$	3 $\frac{P-Q2}{B-B4}$	4 $\frac{0-0}{0-0}$

In order to give the student an idea of the value and popularity of the various openings, the following table of the results of 1500 games may be useful. It is from the chess columns of the New York Sun :—

OPENINGS.	FIRST PLAYER.			TOTAL PLAYED.	PER CENT. WON BY FIRST PLAYER.	PER CENT. TOTAL GAMES PLAYED.
	WON.	LOST.	DREW.			
Ruy Lopez.....	145	103	58	306	57	20
Queen's Pawn (a).....	97	63	39	199	48	13
French Defence.....	84	48	39	171	60	11
Vienna.....	47	34	15	96	57	6
Sicilian Defence.....	40	29	10	79	57	5
King's Gambit.....	36	32	11	79	52	5
Giucoco Piano.....	36	32	10	78	52	5
Evans.....	34	20	12	66	61	4
Irregular.....	29	31	14	74	49	5
Scotch.....	22	26	9	57	47	4
Zukertort.....	23	17	11	51	56	3
Two Knights Defence.	16	20	10	46	46	3
Staunton's.....	19	15	5	39	55	3
Fianchetto.....	13	14	2	29	48	2
Petroff Defence.....	15	9	3	27	61	2
Centre Gambit (b) ....	11	11	4	26	50	2
Philidor Defence.....	8	9	3	20	47	1
Miscellaneous.....	22	29	6	57	44	4
Total.....	697	542	261	1500	....	....

The first player won 55.2 per cent. of games played, counting drawn games as one-half.

(a). Includes Queen's Gambits and Queen's Gambits declined.

(b). Includes Centre and Counter Centre Gambits.

**THE MIDDLE GAME.** After a little experience with openings, the player will usually select one or two which he feels

that he can handle better than others, and will make a specialty of them. Having mastered a number of variations, and learned the object of them in forming his pieces for attack or defence, he will naturally be led to the study of the middle game. In this there are a few general principles which should be steadily kept in view. For attack, the player should secure command of a wide range of the board; but for defence he should concentrate his forces as much as possible. He should be careful not to get his pieces in one another's way, and not to leave pieces where they can be attacked and driven back by inferior pieces, because that entails a loss of valuable time. A player should never exchange a man in active service for one that is doing nothing. If several lines of play are open, the one offering the most numerous good continuations should be selected. When a player is not ready for attack, he should develop his pieces, and remember that the more of them he can get to bear on the enemy's King, the better. Supporting pieces should be placed where they are not easily attacked, because good players attack the supports first, so as to isolate the advance guard. Beginners are usually in too great a hurry to give check; the best players do not check until they are ready to follow it up with a mate, or a winning position, or can gain time in developing their pieces.

**END GAMES.** There are certain positions in which apparently equal games are not necessarily drawn, and there are others in which a player with a decided advantage cannot win, within the fifty moves which are allowed him, unless he knows exactly how to proceed. If a player is not well up in endings he may lose many a game which could be won if he only knew how to win it. The following games may be abandoned as *drawn* :—

King and Bishop against a King.

King and Knight against a King.

King and two Knights against a King.

King and Queen against two Rooks.

King and Queen against King and two Bishops.

King and Rook against King, Rook and Pawn.

King and Rook against King and Bishop.

King and Rook against King and Knight.

King and Rook against King, Rook and Bishop.

The following games can be *won* :—

King and Queen, or King and Rook, against a King.

King and Queen against King and Rook.

King and Queen against King and Bishop.

King and Queen against King and Knight.

King and Queen against King and Pawn.

King and two Rooks against King and Rook.

King and two Bishops against a King.

King Bishop and Knight against a King.

In order to master all these endings, the student should take up *Staunton's Handbook*, or the *Lehrbuch des Schachspiels*, in which they are given very fully. For the beginner only one or two of the most common and important are necessary.

K and Q, or K and R, against K. All that is necessary is to drive the King to the edge of the board, which may be done by holding him below a certain parallel with the Q or R, and then getting your own King in front of him; a check will then drive him one line further back, and when he arrives at the edge of the board, and can no longer go back, he is mated.

K and Q against K and R. Freeborough has devoted an entire volume to this ending, which may be very much prolonged by a skilful player. The object is to drive the King to the edge of the board, and then to get the Rook in such a position that it must be sacrificed to save the mate, or that the mate can be accomplished with the Rook on the board. The player with the Queen must be on his guard against stalemate in this ending.

K and Q against K and B, K and Kt, or K and P. This is easy enough for the Queen if the player is careful to avoid stalemate.

K and two R's against K and R. This can be won easily by forcing an exchange of Rooks.

K and two B's against K. In this position the King must be ruled off into a corner by getting the Bishops together, protected by their King. Start with the men in the following position :—

Black K on his own square. White King on K B 6; white Bishops on K B 4 and K B 5. White to move and win. The mate can be accomplished in six moves, as follows :—

- |   |                                   |                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 $\frac{B-B7}{K-B \text{ sq}}$             | 2 $\frac{B-Q7}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$  | 3 $\frac{K-Kt6}{K-B \text{ sq}}$ |
| 4 $\frac{B-Q6 \text{ ch}}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$ | 5 $\frac{B-K6 \text{ ch}}{K-Rsq}$ | 6 $\frac{B-K5 \text{ mate}}{}$   |

K, B and Kt against K. This is one of the most difficult endings for a beginner, but is very instructive, and should be carefully studied. Set up the men as follows :—

Black King on K R sq. White King on K B 6, white Bishop on K B 5, and white Knight on K Kt 5; White to move and win. The object is to drive the King into a corner of the board which is commanded by the Bishop, as he cannot otherwise be mated.

- |  |                                 |                                 |  |
|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| 1 $\frac{Kt-B7 \text{ ch}}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$ | 2 $\frac{B-K4}{K-B \text{ sq}}$ | 3 $\frac{B-R7}{K-K \text{ sq}}$ | 4 $\frac{Kt-K5}{K-B \text{ sq}}$           |
| 5 $\frac{Kt-Q7 \text{ ch}}{K-K \text{ sq}}$  | 6 $\frac{K-K6}{K-Q \text{ sq}}$ | 7 $\frac{K-Q6}{K-K \text{ sq}}$ | 8 $\frac{B-K6 \text{ ch}}{K-Q \text{ sq}}$ |

- 9  $\frac{K-B6}{K-B \text{ sq}}$     10  $\frac{B-B7}{K-Q \text{ sq}}$     11  $\frac{Kt-Kt7 \text{ ch}}{K-B \text{ sq}}$     12  $\frac{K-B6}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$   
 13  $\frac{K-Kt 6}{K-B \text{ sq}}$     14  $\frac{B-K6 \text{ ch}}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$     15  $\frac{Kt-B5}{K-R \text{ sq}}$     16  $\frac{B-Q7}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$   
 17  $\frac{Kt-R6 \text{ ch}}{K-R \text{ sq}}$     18  $\frac{B-B6 \text{ mate}}{K-R \text{ sq}}$

If, at the fourth move, the black King does not go back to the Bishop's square, but goes on to the Queen's square, hoping to cut across to the other black corner of the board, the continuation will be as follows, beginning at White's fifth move :—

- 5  $\frac{K-K6}{K-B2}$     6  $\frac{Kt-Q7}{K-B3}$     7  $\frac{B-Q3}{K-B2}$     8  $\frac{B-Kt5}{K-Q's}$   
 9  $\frac{Kt-K5}{K-B2}$     10  $\frac{Kt-B4}{K-Q \text{ sq}}$     11  $\frac{K-Q6}{K-B \text{ sq}}$     12  $\frac{Kt-R5}{K-Q \text{ sq}}$   
 13  $\frac{Kt-Kt7 \text{ ch}}{K-B \text{ sq}}$     14  $\frac{K-B6}{K-Kt \text{ sq}}$     15  $\frac{Kt-Q6}{K-R2}$     16  $\frac{K-B7}{K-R \text{ sq}}$   
 17  $\frac{B-B4}{K-R2}$     18  $\frac{Kt-B8 \text{ ch}}{K-R \text{ sq}}$     19  $\frac{B-Q5 \text{ mate}}{K-R \text{ sq}}$

**PAWN ENDINGS.** There are a great number of these, many being complicated by the addition of Pawns to other pieces. The following example, which is a position that often occurs, should be understood by the beginner :—

Put the black King on K B square ; the white King on K B 6, and a white Pawn on K 6. If it is Black's move, White can win easily ; but if it is White's move it is impossible to win, because whether he checks or not the black King gets in front of the Pawn and either wins it or secures a stalemate.

Put the Pawn behind the King, on K B 5, and White wins, no matter which moves first, for if Black moves he allows the white King to advance to the seventh file, which will queen the Pawn. If White moves first, and the black King keeps opposite him, the Pawn advances. If Black goes in the other direction, the white King goes to the seventh file and wins by queening the Pawn.

If the white King and Pawn are both moved one square further back, the King on K B 5, and the Pawn on K B 4, the win will depend on the move. If it is White's move he can win by advancing the King ; but if it is Black's move he can draw by keeping his King always opposite the white King. If the Pawn advances, he

will get in front of it, and if the King is afterward advanced, he will get in front of it ; winning the Pawn or securing a stalemate.

**THE KNIGHT'S TOUR.** Owing to the peculiarity of the Knight's move, many persons have amused themselves in trying to cover the entire chess board with a Knight, touching the same square once only, and returning to the starting-point again. There are several ways of doing this, one of the simplest being the following :—

14	29	34	55	12	27	24	49
35	56	13	28	33	50	11	26
30	15	54	51	58	25	48	23
41	36	57	32	61	52	63	10
16	31	40	53	64	59	22	47
37	42	1	60	19	62	9	6
2	17	44	39	4	7	46	21
43	38	3	18	45	20	5	8

**TEXT BOOKS.** Among the very large number of works on Chess there is abundant room for choice, but the following works are considered standard authorities on the game :—

Freeborough's Chess Openings, 1896.

Cook's Synopsis.

Minor Tactics of Chess, by Young and Howell.

Modern Chess Instructor, by W. Steinitz.

Common Sense in Chess, by E. Lasker.

Walker's Treatise on Chess, 1841.

Handbuch des Schachspiels.

Lehrbuch des Schachspiels, by J. Dufresne.

Teoria e Pratica del Giuoco degli Schacchi.

British Chess Magazine.

Chess Player's Chronicle.

Chess Monthly.

*Westminster Papers*, 1868 to 1879.

Of these works, "Minor Tactics" will be found most useful to the beginner, as it simplifies the openings by grouping them, and concentrates the attention on the essential points of chess strategy.



## CODE OF CHESS LAWS.

### ADOPTED BY THE FIFTH AMERICAN CHESS CONGRESS.

**Definitions of Terms Used.** Whenever the word "*Umpire*" is used herein, it stands for any Committee having charge of Matches or Tournaments, with power to determine questions of chess-law and rules; or for any duly appointed Referee, or Umpire; for the bystanders, when properly appealed to; or for any person, present or absent, to whom may be referred any disputed questions; or for any other authority whomsoever having power to determine such questions.

When the word "*move*" is used it is understood to mean a legal move or a move to be legally made according to these laws.

When the word "*man*" or "*men*" is used, it is understood that it embraces both Pieces and Pawns.

**The Chess-Board and Men.** The Chess-board must be placed with a white square at the right-hand corner.

If the Chess-board be wrongly placed, it cannot be changed during the game in progress after a move shall have been made by each player, provided the men were correctly placed upon the board at the beginning, *i. e.*, the Queens upon their own colours.

A deficiency in number, or a misplacement of the men, at the beginning of the game, when discovered, annuls the game.

The field of the Standard Chess-board shall be twenty-two inches square.

The Standard Chess-men shall be of the improved Staunton Club size and pattern.

**First Move and Colour.** The right of first move must be determined by lot.

The player having the first move must always play with the white men.

The right of move shall alternate, whether the game be won, lost or drawn.

The game is legally begun when each player shall have made his first move.

Whenever a game shall be annulled, the party having the move in that game shall have it in the next game. An annulled game must be considered, in every respect, the same as if it had never been begun.

**Concessions.** The concession of an indulgence by one player does not give him the right of a similar, or other, indulgence from his opponent.

**Errors.** If, during the course of the game, it be discovered that any error or illegality has been committed, the moves must be retraced and the necessary correction made, without penalty. If the moves cannot be correctly retraced, the game must be annulled.

If a man be dropped from the board and moves made during its absence, such moves must be retraced and the man restored. If this cannot be done, to the satisfaction of the Umpire, the game must be annulled.

**Castling.** The King can be Castled only :

When neither the King nor the Castling Rook has been moved, and

When the King is not in check, and

When all the squares between the King and Rook are unoccupied, and

When no hostile man attacks the square on which the King is to be placed, or the square he crosses.

In Castling, the King must be first moved.

The penalty of moving the King prohibits Castling.

**En Passant.** Taking the Pawn "*en passant*," when the only possible move, is compulsory.

**Queening the Pawn.** A pawn reaching the eighth square must be at once exchanged for any piece (except the King) that the player of the Pawn may elect.

**Check.** A player falsely announcing "check," must retract the move upon which the announcement was based and make some other move, or the move made must stand at the option of the opponent.

No penalty can be enforced for any offence committed against these rules in consequence of a false announcement of "check," nor in consequence of the omission of such announcement, when legal "check" be given.

**"J'adoube."** "J'adoube," "I adjust," or words to that effect, cannot protect a player from any of the penalties imposed by these laws, unless the man or men touched, obviously *need* adjustment, and unless such notification be distinctly uttered *before* the man, or men, be touched, and only the player whose turn it is to move is allowed so to adjust.

The hand having once quitted the man, but for an instant, the move must stand.

Men overturned or displaced accidentally may be replaced by either player, without notice.

A wilful displacement, or overturning of any of the men, forfeits the game.

**Penalties.** Penalties can be enforced only at the time an offence is committed, and before any move is made thereafter.

A player touching one of his men, when it is his turn to play, must move it. If it cannot be moved he must move his King. If the King cannot move, no penalty can be enforced.

For playing two moves in succession, the adversary may elect which move shall stand.

For touching an adversary's man, when it cannot be captured, the offender must move his King. If the King cannot move, no other penalty can be enforced. But if the man touched can be legally taken, it must be captured.

For playing a man to a square to which it cannot be legally moved, the adversary, at his option, may require him to move the man legally, or to move the King.

For illegally capturing an adversary's man, the offender must move his King, or legally capture the man, as his opponent may elect.

For attempting to Castle illegally, the player doing so must move either the King or Rook, as his adversary may dictate.

For touching more than one of the player's own men, he must move either man that his opponent may name.

For touching more than one of the adversary's men, the offender must capture the one named by his opponent, or if *either* cannot be captured, he may be required to move the King or capture the man which can be taken, at the adversary's option; or, if *neither* can be captured, then the King must be moved.

A player moving into check may be required, by the opposing player, either to move the King elsewhere, or replace the King and make some other move—but such other move shall not be selected by the player imposing the penalty.

For discovering check on his own King, the player must either legally move the man touched, or move the King at his adversary's option. In case neither move can be made, there shall be no penalty.

While in check, for touching or moving a man which does not cover the check, the player may be required to cover with another piece, or move the King, as the opposing player may elect.

**Touching the Squares.** While the hand remains upon a man, it may be moved to any square that it commands, except such squares as may have been touched by it during the deliberation on the move; but if all the squares which it commands have been so touched, then the man must be played to such of the squares as the adversary may elect.

**Counting Fifty Moves.** If, at any period during a game, either player persist in repeating a particular check, or series of checks, or persist in repeating any particular line of play which

does not advance the game; or if "*a game-ending*" be of doubtful character as to its being a win or a draw, or if a win be possible, but the skill to force the game questionable, then either player may demand judgment of the Umpire as to its being a proper game to be determined as drawn at the end of fifty additional moves, on each side; or the question: "Is, or is not the game a draw?" may be, by mutual consent of the players, submitted to the Umpire at any time. The decision of the Umpire, in either case, to be final.

And whenever fifty moves are demanded and accorded, the party demanding it may, when the fifty moves have been made, claim the right to go on with the game, and thereupon the other party may claim the fifty move rule, at the end of which, unless mate be effected, the game shall be decided a draw.

**Stale-Mate.** A stale-mate is a drawn game.

**Time Limit.** The penalty for exceeding the time limit is the forfeiture of the game.

It shall be the duty of each player, as soon as his move be made, to stop his own register of time and start that of his opponent, whether the time be taken by clocks, sand-glasses, or otherwise. No complaint respecting an adversary's time can be considered, unless this rule be strictly complied with. But nothing herein is intended to affect the penalty for exceeding the time limit as registered.

**Abandoning the Game.** If either player abandon the game by quitting the table in anger, or in any otherwise offensive manner; or by momentarily resigning the game; or refuses to abide by the decision of the Umpire, the game must be scored against him.

If a player absent himself from the table, or manifestly ceases to consider his game, when it is his turn to move, the time so consumed shall, in every case, be registered against him.

**Disturbance.** Any player wilfully disturbing his adversary shall be admonished; and if such disturbance be repeated, the game shall be declared lost by the player so offending, provided the player disturbed then appeals to the Umpire.

**The Umpire.** It is the duty of the Umpire to determine all questions submitted to him according to these laws, when they apply, and according to his best judgment when they do not apply.

No deviation from these laws can be permitted by an Umpire, even by mutual or general consent of the players, after a match or tournament shall have been commenced.

The decision of the Umpire is final, and binds both and all the players.

**RULES FOR PLAYING THE GAME AT ODDS.**

I. In games where one player gives the odds of a piece, or "the exchange," or allows his opponent to count drawn games as won, or agrees to check-mate with a particular man, or on a particular square, he has the right to choose the men, and to move first, unless an arrangement to the contrary is agreed to between the combatants.

II. When the odds of Pawn and one move, or Pawn and more than one move are given, the Pawn given must be the King's Bishop's Pawn when not otherwise previously agreed on.

III. When a player gives the odds of his King's or Queen's Rook, he must not Castle (or more properly speaking leap his King) on the side from which the Rook is removed, unless before commencing the game or match he stipulates to have the privilege of so doing.

IV. When a player undertakes to give check-mate with one of his Pawns, or with a particular Pawn, the said Pawn must not be converted into a piece.

V. When a player accepts the odds of two or more moves, he must not play any man beyond the fourth square, *i. e.*, he must not cross the middle line of the board, before his adversary makes his first move. Such several moves are to be collectively considered as the first move of the player accepting the odds.

VI. In the odds of check-mating on a particular square it must be the square occupied by the King mated, not by the man giving the mate.

VII. The player who undertakes to win in a particular manner, and either draws the game, or wins in some other manner, must be adjudged to be the loser.

In all other respects, the play in games at odds must be governed by the regulations before laid down.

**RULES FOR PLAYING CORRESPONDENCE AND CONSULTATION GAMES.**

I. In playing a game by correspondence or in consultation, the two parties shall always agree beforehand in writing or otherwise as to the persons who are to take part in the contest, as to the time and mode of transmitting the moves, as to the penalties to be inflicted for any breach of the contract, and as to the umpire or referee.

II. In games of this description each party is bound by the move dispatched; and in this connection the word move refers to what is intelligibly written, or delivered *viva voce*.

In any game the announcement of a move which does not include the actual transfer of a man from one square to another.

shall be considered as a move not intelligibly described within the meaning of this section.

III. Each party must be bound by the move communicated in writing, or by word of mouth, to the adversary whether or not it be made on the adversary's board. If the move so communicated should prove to be different from that actually made on the party's own board, the latter must be altered to accord with the former.

IV. If either party be detected in moving the men when it is not their turn to play, or in moving more than one man (except in castling) when it is their turn to play, they shall forfeit the game, unless they can show that the man was moved for the purpose of adjusting or replacing it.

V. If either party has, accidentally or otherwise, removed a man from the board, which has not been captured in the course of the game, and made certain moves under the impression that such man was no longer in play, the moves must stand, but the man may be replaced whenever the error is discovered.

VI. If either party permit a bystander to take part in the contest, that party shall forfeit the game.

---

The foregoing laws differ very slightly from those of the British Chess Association, and it is to be hoped that an international code will be agreed upon before a second edition of this work is issued.

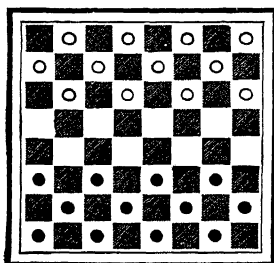
---

## CHECKERS, OR DRAUGHTS.

**The Board.** Checkers is played upon a board which is not more than sixteen, nor less than fourteen inches square, and is divided into sixty-four smaller squares of equal size. These squares are of different colours, alternately light and dark, and the board must be so placed that each player shall have a light square at his right on the side nearer him.

**The Men.** Each player is provided with twelve men, which are circular in form, one inch in diameter, and three eighths thick. The men on one side are red or black; those on the other white or yellow. The men must be placed on the *black* squares.

**Diagrams.** For convenience in illustrating games and problems the men are always shown as placed on the white squares, type made in that manner being more easily read. The following diagram will show the proper arrangement of the men at the beginning of the game, if the white squares are supposed to be black ones:—

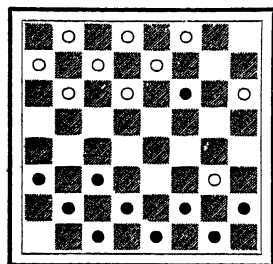


**Two Move Restriction.** It has lately become the custom in important tournaments to write an opening and second move, such as 10-14, 22-17 on a slip of paper; 10-14, 24-19 on another, and so on for all possible openings. These are placed in a hat and when the players face each other, a slip is drawn. If it is 11-15, 22-18, the game must be opened with those moves. When these players start the second game, the one who was second player on the first game begins with 11-15, and his opponent must play 22-18. The same opening is never again used by the same pair, the object being to diversify the play and drive contestants out of their favourite ruts.

**The Players** are designated by the colour of the men with which they play, White or Black, and Black always has the first

move. In a series of games each player in turn takes the black men and the move. It is usual to draw for the first game, one player concealing in each hand a man of different colour, and offering the choice of hands to his adversary. Whichever colour the chosen hand contains the chooser must take for the first game.

**The Moves.** The men never leave the colour of the squares on which they are originally set up, so that they always move diagonally. At the beginning of the game the men move only one square at a time, and always forward, and can be placed only on squares which are unoccupied. If an adverse piece stands upon a square to which a man might be moved, and there is a vacant square beyond, the man must jump



No. 1.

over the adverse piece to the unoccupied square, at the same time removing from the board the piece so jumped over. In the position shown in Diagram No. 1, for instance, it being White's turn to move, he must jump over the black man, removing it from the board. Black will then have a choice of two jumps, over one man or over two, and will of course select the jump toward the right of the board first, and then over the second man, removing both from the board. A

man may jump over and capture several men at one move, provided there are vacant squares between them, and beyond the last man.

**Huffing.** If a player who can capture a piece neglects to do so, his adversary has the choice of three things:—To compel the player to take back his move and capture the piece; to huff (remove from the board,) the man that should have captured the piece; or to let the move stand, and go on with his own move. A huff does not constitute a move; the piece is simply removed from the board as a penalty, but the penalty must be enforced before the player exacting it makes his own move.

**Kings.** When a man arrives at any of the four squares on the edge of the board farthest from the side on which he started, he becomes a King, and is *crowned* by putting another man of the same colour on the top of him. In diagrams, kings are distinguished by putting a ring round the single man. ☉ ☚. Kings can move either backward or forward, but only one square at a time. If a man arrives at the king-row by capturing an adverse piece, that ends the move, and the newly made king cannot move again, even to capture another piece, until his adversary has moved. [See notes to Diagram No. 7.]



ings, take those that show the greatest number of wins for the side you propose to play. In all checker books there are marks at the foot of the column to show which side has an advantage, if any exists, at the end of each variation. The Alma, for instance, shows a great many more winning variations for the black men than for the white, and is consequently one of the best openings for Black.

Any person who plays correctly can always be sure of avoiding defeat; that is, no one can beat him if he makes no slips, and the worst he can get is a draw. It is a common error to suppose that the first move is an advantage. [See Illustrative Game No. 7.]

The strategy of the game consists in so deploying your men that alluring openings are left for your adversary. These openings are always pitfalls of the most dangerous character, and whenever you think a good player has made a mistake and left you a chance, you should examine the position with great care, or you will probably walk into a trap. The first of the example games given in this work is a case in point. White's move, 27 24, is apparently the best possible, yet it immediately and hopelessly loses the game. Sometimes these traps are set very early in the opening, and sometimes after the pieces have been pretty well developed.

There are many cases in which a good player may take advantage of the weakness of an adversary by making moves which are really losing moves, and which would lead to immediate defeat if he were opposed by an expert. But if he feels that his adversary is not skilful enough to take advantage of these losing moves, a winning position may sometimes be rapidly obtained by departing from the regular development of the opening.

The beginner should be satisfied with learning only one or two forms of the openings, committing to memory as many variations as possible. When he meets with a line of play that beats him, he should study out the variation in his text books, and see at what point he made the losing move. To be perfect in any one opening a person must know at least five hundred variations by heart; but if he finds himself caught in a variation which he does not remember, or has never learned, he should trust to good judgment rather than to defective memory.

**The End Game** usually resolves itself into one of four well-known positions. These four positions are those in which there is a win for one side or the other owing to the peculiar position occupied by the opposing forces, although they may be numerically equal. Every checker player must know these four positions thoroughly, or he may abandon many a game as drawn which he could win, and may lose many a game which he could draw. These four positions are here given as they are usually found in the books, but the player must be able to recognize at once any

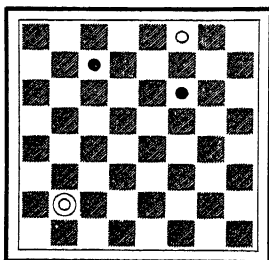
## 530 (Checkers.) THE FOUR POSITIONS.

position which resembles them, or can be made to lead up to them. The student will find many games marked as "won" in which he cannot see any winning position unless he is familiar with the four endings. The expert strives to exchange his men so as to bring about one of these positions, after which he knows he has a won game, although his less skilful adversary may be unconscious of his advantage.

### *First Position.*

Black to move and win.

WHITE.

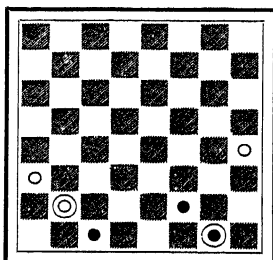


BLACK.

### *Second Position.*

Black to move and win.

WHITE.

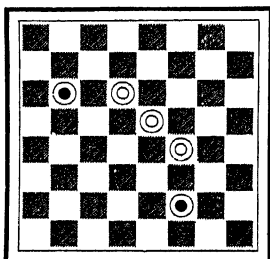


BLACK.

### *Third Position.*

Either to move ;  
White to win.

WHITE.

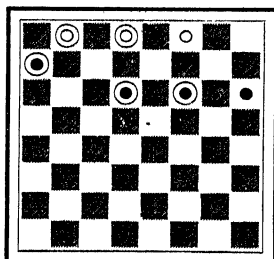


BLACK.

### *Fourth Position.*

Black to play and win.  
White to play and draw.

WHITE.



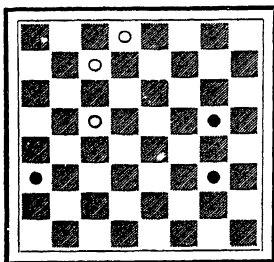
BLACK.

The first position is one of the most common endings on the checker board, and should be very thoroughly understood. The letters in the margin refer to the variations. There are a great many minor variations, for which the student must be referred to Janvier's Anderson, page 265.

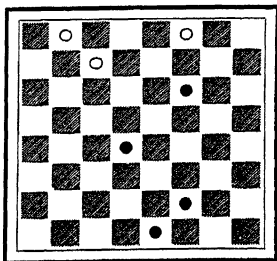
# THE FOUR POSITIONS. (Checkers.) 531

<b>First Position.</b>	5- 1	10-15	3- 7	10-15	14 10	27-32
27-32	6 9	B 9 5	24 19	24 28	28-32	19 23
8 11	15-18	15-18	7-10	15-19	27 24	5- 1
32-27	17 13	5 9	19 23	28 32	1- 5	6 9
11 7	18-15	1- 5	10-15	19-24	10 6	32-28
27-23	9 14	9 6	23 27	32 28	W wins	23 27
7 10	1- 5	18-15	15-19	11-16	—	W wins
22-26	14 17	21 17	27 32	28 19	Var B:	—
A 10 6	15-10	5- 1	19-24	16-23	5- 1	—
26-31	17 22	6 9	32 28	12 8	6 10	<b>Fourth Position.</b>
6 9	10-14	15-18	24-27	23-18	W wins	Black
31-26	22 25	9 5	28 32	8 4	—	to play
9 6	5- 1	18-22	27-31	18-14	Black	28-24
26-22	25 22	17 14	32 28	4 8	to move	32 28
6 10	1- 6	1- 6	31-27	6- 1	6- 1	24-20
23-18	22 25	5 1	28 32	8 11	18 15	28 32
10 6	6-10	6- 2	27-23	14- 9	C 1- 6	22-18
18-14	25 22	1 5	32 28	13 6	14 10	31 27
6 1	10-15	22-17	23-18	1-10	6- 9	23-19
22-18	22 25	14 9	28 24	11 16	23 19	27 31
1 6	15-18	B wins	18-14	10-15	24-27	19-24
18-15	25 21	—	24 19	16 20	15 18	32 27
6 1	B wins	Var B.	6-10	15-19	D 27-32	24-28
15-10	—	9 14	19 23	B wins	19 24	27 32
1 5	Var A.	1- 5	10-15	—	9- 5	18-22
10- 6	30 25	21 17	23 27	—	10 14	31 27
5 1	23-18	5- 1	15-19	<b>Third Position.</b>	32-28	22-26
14-13	10 6	17 13	27 32	White	24 27	30 23
1 5	18-14	1- 5	19-24	to move	—	28-24
6- 1	6 1	14 17	32 28	18 15	Var C.	B wins
5 9	26-30	15-10	24-27	A 6- 1	1- 5	—
1- 5	25 21	B wins	28 24	14 9	14 10	White
9 13	30-25	—	27-32	24 28	24-28	to play
10-14	1 5	<b>Second Position.</b>	32-27	24-28	23 19	31 27
13 9	25-22	1- 5	28 32	23 19	28-32	23-19
14-18	5 1	8 11	27-24	1- 5	15 18	27 31
9 6	22-18	5- 9	32 28	9 6	32-27	19-24
18-15	1 5	11 15	24-19	B 28-32	10 6	32 27
30 25	18-15	9-14	28 32	19 24	27-32	24-20
15-18	5 1	15 11	19-15	5- 1	19 23	27 32
6 10	15-10	14-18	32 28	24 19	5- 1	22-18
5- 1	1 5	11 16	15-10	W wins	6 9	31 27
25 21	10- 6	18-15	28 24	—	W wins	28-24
1- 5	5 1	16 20	10- 6	Var A.	—	27 31
10 6	14-10	15-11	24 19	24-28	Var D.	18-23
18-15	1 5	20 24	14-10	23 27	9- 5	31 26
21 17	6- 1	19 24	6- 1	10 6	Drawn	

**Traps.** The beginner should be on his guard against being caught, "two for one," especially in such positions as those shown in Diagrams Nos. 6 and 7.



No. 6.



No. 7.

In No. 6, White will play 19 16, forcing you to jump, and will then play 27 23, forcing you to jump again. In No. 7, White will play 30 26, making your man a King. He will then play 32 28, and wait for your newly made King to jump. This will give him three of your men, and he will catch the other before it gets to the king row.

Another common form of trap is to get a player into such a position in the end game, when he has only one or two men, that he cannot get to the king row without being caught; sometimes because he is driven to the side of the board by the man following him, and sometimes because the man meeting him can head him off. The adversary can do this only when he has "the move."

**Theory of the Move.** When the position is such that you will be able to force your adversary into a situation from which he cannot escape without sacrificing a piece or losing the game, you are said to have the move; and if he does not change it by capturing one of your men he must lose the game. As the move is often of the greatest importance in the end game, every checker-player should understand its theory, so that he may know when it is necessary to make an exchange of men in order to secure the move, and when he should avoid an exchange which would lose it. The move is only important when the number of men on each side is equal.

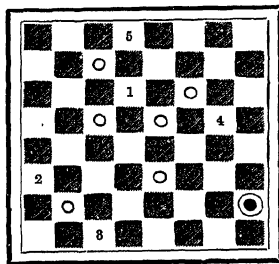
In order to calculate the move, the board is supposed to be divided into two systems of squares, sixteen in each. The first system is formed by the four vertical rows running from your own side of the board, as shown by the dotted lines in Diagram No. 8. The second system runs from your adversary's side of the board, as shown in Diagram No. 9.

**LOSING GAME.** In this variety of Draughts, the object is to give away all your men before your adversary can give away his, or to block yourself so that you cannot move. The secret of success in Losing Game is to get your men on such squares that they cannot be made to jump to the king row. These squares will be the row next you on your own side of the board, and every second row from that, horizontally. Get your men on those squares as soon as possible, and do not be in too great a hurry to capture your adversary's men.

**POLISH DRAUGHTS.** Although intended for a special board of 100 squares this game can be played on a common checker board. It differs from ordinary draughts in two particulars:

Although the men can move only forward, they can take backward, and Kings can go any distance at one move.

If in taking a piece, a man arrives at the king row, that does not end the move if he can capture another piece by jumping backward out of the king row again. As this brings him away from the king row before the move is complete, he will not be a king until he can get to the king row at the end of a move.



No. 12.

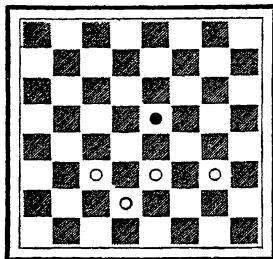
Kings can go any number of squares in a straight line, and can capture any piece which is on the diagonal, not protected by another piece behind it. Kings can also go on for any number of squares beyond the captured piece, and then turn a corner to capture another piece. In Diagram No. 12, for instance, the black King could capture all six of the white men by going over the first one only, and then turning to the left, and continuing to turn to the left after every capture, as shown by the squares with the numbers on them,

which indicate his five successive turning-points.

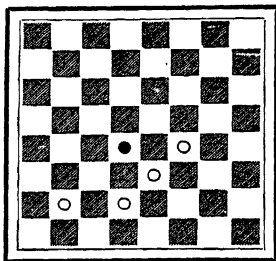
**DEVIL AMONG THE TAILORS.** This is hardly a variation of the game of Draughts, although it is played on a checker board. Four white men, the tailors, are placed upon 29, 30, 31 and 32; and one black man, the devil, on 1. The men can move only one square at a time, diagonally; the white men forward only, the black man forward or backward. There is no jumping or capturing, and the object of the tailors is to pin the devil in, so that he cannot move. If the black man can reach the free country behind the white men, he wins the game.

The game is a certainty for the white men if properly played. At the end of four moves they should be lined up on squares 25, 26, 27, 28 and whichever end the devil attacks, the tailors should move in from the other end.

There are two critical positions.



No. 13.



No. 14.

In Diagram No. 13, if White moves 24 19 he loses, because Black goes to 11, and as the tailors advance to head him off, he goes back to 15 and 18, and then gets round by going to 14. White's proper play is 22 18, after which 26 22 will re-form his line.

In Diagram No. 14, if White moves 26 22, or 19 15, he loses immediately. In the first case Black will run to 15 and 11, and either get round or double back to 18. In the second case Black will get round by way of 7, or get through.

### CHECKER LAWS.

1. The Standard board must be of light and dark squares, not less than fourteen inches nor more than fifteen inches across said squares.
2. The board shall be so placed that the bottom corner square, on the left hand, shall be black.
3. The Standard men, technically described as White and Black, must be light and dark (say white and red, or yellow and black), turned, and round, not less than one inch, nor more than  $1\frac{1}{8}$  inches in diameter.
4. The men shall be placed on the black squares.
5. The black men shall invariably be placed upon the real or supposed first twelve squares of the board; the white upon the last twelve squares.
6. Each player shall play alternately with the white and black men, and lots shall be cast for the colour only once, viz., at the beginning of the play—the winner to have his choice of taking black or white.

7. The first play must *invariably* be made by the person having the black men.

8. At the end of five minutes [if the play has not been previously made], "Time" must be called by the person appointed for that purpose, in a distinct manner; and if the play is not completed in another minute, the game shall be adjudged lost through improper delay.

9. When there is only *one way* of taking *one or more* pieces, time shall be called at the end of one minute, and if the play is not completed in another minute, the game shall be adjudged lost through improper delay.

10. Either player is entitled, on giving intimation, to arrange his own or his opponent's pieces properly on the squares. After the first move has been made, however, if either player touch or arrange any piece without giving intimation to his opponent, he shall be cautioned for the first offence, and shall forfeit the game for any subsequent act of the kind.

11. After the pieces have been arranged, if the person whose turn it is to play *touch* one, he must either play it or forfeit the game. When the piece is not playable, he forfeits according to the preceding law.

12. If *any part* of a playable piece is moved over an angle of the square on which it is stationed, the move must be completed in *that* direction.

13. A capturing play, as well as an ordinary one, is completed whenever the hand has been withdrawn from the piece played, although one or more pieces should have been taken.

14. The Huff or Blow is to remove from the board, before one plays his own piece, any one of the adverse pieces that might or ought to have taken but the Huff or Blow never constitutes a play.

15. The player has the power to *huff, compel the capture, or let the piece remain on the board*, as he thinks proper.

16. When a man first reaches any of the squares on the opposite extreme line of the board, it becomes a King, and can be moved backward or forward as the limits of the board permit, though not in the same play. The adversary must crown the new King, by placing a captured man on the top of it, before he makes his own move.

17. A player making a false or improper move forfeits the game to his opponent.

18. When taking, if either player removes one of his own pieces, *he* cannot replace it; but his *opponent* can either play or insist on the man being replaced.

19. A Draw is when neither of the players can force a Win.

When one of the sides appears stronger than the other, the stronger is required to complete the Win, or to show a decided advantage over his opponent within forty of his own moves—to be counted from the point at which *notice* was given,—failing which, the game must be abandoned at Drawn.

**20.** Anything which may annoy or distract the attention of the player is strictly forbidden; such as making signs or sounds, pointing or hovering over the board, unnecessarily delaying to move a piece touched, or smoking. Any *principal* so acting, after having been warned of the consequence and requested to desist, shall forfeit the game.

**21.** While a game is pending, neither player is permitted to leave the room without giving a sufficient reason, or receiving the other's consent or company.

**22.** A player committing a breach of any of these laws must submit to the penalty, which his opponent is equally bound to exact.

**23.** Any spectator giving warning, either by sign, sound, or remark, on any of the games, whether played or pending, shall be expelled from the room.

**24.** Should any dispute occur, not satisfactorily determined by the preceding laws, a *written statement of facts* must be sent to a disinterested arbiter having a knowledge of the game, whose decision shall be final.

#### TEXT BOOKS.

Spayth's Checkers for Beginners.

Game of Draughts, John Robertson.

Janvier's Anderson.

Bowen's Bristol.

Bowen's Cross.

Bowen's Fife.

E. T. Baker's Alma.

Scattergood's Game of Draughts.

Lyman's Selected Problems.

Backgammon and Draughts, by Berkeley.

Anderson's Checkers.

Dunne's Draught Proxis.

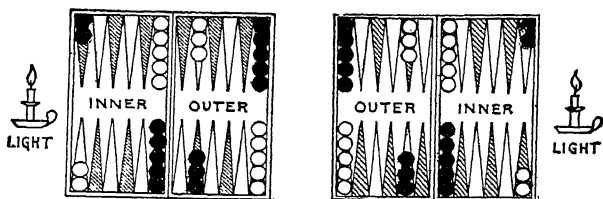
Kear's Sturges.

## BACKGAMMON.

### OR TRIC-TRAC.

Backgammon is played by two persons, each of whom is provided with fifteen men, two dice, and a dice-box. The men on each side are of different colours, black and white, and the players are distinguished by the colour of the men with which they play. The board is divided into two tables, *inner* and *outer*, and at the beginning of the game the men may be set up in either of the positions shown in the diagram.

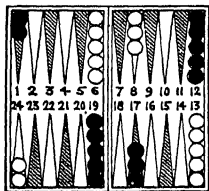




It will be observed that the black men on any point have exactly the same number of white men standing opposite them. In one table there are only two upon one point, and in the other there are only three upon one point. The table with the two men is always the *inner table* while the one with three is always the *outer table*. This distinction is important, and may be remembered by observing that the number of letters in the words *in* and *out* are two and three respectively.

In setting up the men the inner table is always placed *toward the light*, whether it be a window or the gas. Each player must always have the majority of his men, five and three, on the side nearer him; and the minority, five and two, on the side farther from him. The side of the *inner table* which is nearer the player will always be his *home table*. In all the illustrations in this work you are supposed to be playing with the black side next you, and with your inner or home table on your *left* hand.

The raised portion or hinge of the board, which divides the inner from the outer tables, is known as the *bar*, and the points, or *fleches*, in each player's home table are numbered from 1 to 6, reckoning from the outer edge toward the bar. These six points are spoken of as the Ace, Deuce, Trey, Four, Five and Six points respectively, and they correspond to the six faces on a single die. The points in the outer tables have no numbers, but the one next the bar on each side is called the *bar point*. In giving the moves of the men in a game, the names of the six points in the home tables are disregarded, and each player, Black and White, numbers the board from 1 to 24, starting from the square on which he has only two men. The notation for the black moves would be as shown in the margin; that for white being exactly opposite, of course.



The men on each side are always moved in the direction of their notation numbers. In all the following illustrations the black men move round the board from right to left, like the hands of a clock, while the white men go in the

opposite direction ; so that the two opposing forces are continually meeting and passing, like the people in the street.

The *Object of the Game* is for each player to move his men from point to point in order to get them all into his home table. It does not matter what part of the home table they reach, so that they get across the bar. The men are moved according to the throws of the dice, each player in turn having a throw and a move. After the men on either side are all home, they are taken off the board according to the throws of the dice, and the player who is the first to get all his men off the board in this manner wins the game.

If each player has taken off some of his men, the player getting all his off first wins a *hit*, which counts as a single game. If one player gets off all his men before his adversary has thrown off a single man, it is a *gammon*, and counts as a double game. If the loser has not only taken off none of his men, but has one or more men left on the side of the board farther from him when his adversary throws off his last man, it is a *backgammon*, and counts as a triple game. In America, gammons and backgammons are seldom played, every game being simply a hit. This spoils some of the fine points of the game, and entirely alters the tactics of the players, as will be seen when we come to the suggestions for good play.

*The Dice.* Although it is usual for each player to be provided with two dice, some players insist on the same pair being used by each player alternately; the claim being that luck will then run more evenly. At the beginning of the game each player makes a cast, either with one die or with two, as may be agreed, and the higher throw has the first play. In some clubs the player making the higher throw is allowed the option of playing the first cast, or of throwing again; but the general practice is to insist that the first cast is simply for the privilege of playing first, and that the dice must be cast again for the first move.

After each throw the dice must fall within the borders of the table on the caster's right, and each die must rest fairly and squarely on one of its faces. If it is *cocked* against a man, the edge of the board, or the other die, or if it jumps over the edge of the table in which it is thrown, both dice must be taken up and cast again. The caster must announce his throw as soon as made.

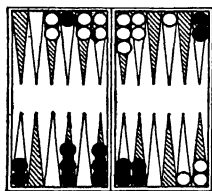
*The Moves.* As the men on each side are moved round the board in opposite directions to reach their respective homes, they are of course obliged to meet and pass a number of the adversary's men, and they must pick their way among them by going to points which are unoccupied by the enemy; for if there are two or more

of the enemy in possession of any point, that point is said to be *covered*, and must be jumped over. If only one adverse man occupies a point, it is called a *blot*, and the man may be captured, as will presently be explained.

The numbers that appear on the upper faces of the two dice, when they are thrown, are the number of points that each of any two men, or that any one man may be moved at a time. If a player throws four-deuce, for instance, he may either move one man four points and another two; or he may move a single man four points and two points, or two points and four points. He cannot lump the throw and call it six points, because if the fourth point from where the man stood was covered by two or more of the enemy, the four could not be played with that man. If the second point from where the man stood was also covered, he could not be moved at all, although the sixth point from where he stood might be unoccupied. If Black's first throw is five-deuce, for instance, he cannot move one of the two men on his adversary's ace point for the five, because the fifth point thence is covered. Neither could he move one of them two and then five, because the seventh point is covered also.

If a player throws *doublets*, that is, the same number on each die, he plays the throw twice over. If a player throws double fours, for instance, he can either move one man four points four times; or one man four points once, and another man four points three times; or two men four points twice; or two men four points each, and then two other men four points, always provided that the points moved to at the end of each four are not covered by the enemy.

If there is only one of the adversary's men on any point which can be reached by a throw of the dice, the blot may be hit, a man being moved to that point, and the adverse man taken from the board and placed upon the bar. In the diagram in the margin, for instance, it is White's play, and he has thrown six-four. Black has left a blot on White's four-point, and the single white man in the outer table can reach this with the six throw, taking up the black man, and placing it upon the bar. White now has a blot on his four point, which he should cover by playing in a man four points from the outer table, it being better to leave a blot there than at home.

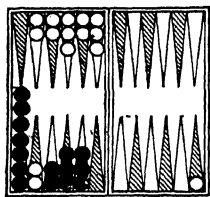


When a player has a man that has been hit, and placed upon the bar by the adversary, he must re-enter that man before he moves any others. He may choose for the purpose either of the numbers on the next throw of the dice, and must place his man on the point in the adversary's home table

which agrees with the number selected. Suppose that in the foregoing example, Black's next throw is five-deuce. He cannot enter the man on the five-point, because it is covered by the enemy: so he must enter upon the deuce point, which is not covered, and must move some other man five points for the throw upon the other die. If both the five and deuce points were covered, Black could not enter on either of them, and as he cannot play until the man on the bar is entered, the throw would be lost, and he would have to wait until his adversary threw and moved in his turn. If two men are upon the bar, both must be entered before any man can be moved. A man may enter and hit a blot at the same time.

If a player could get his men round the board without any of them being hit, seventy-seven points on the dice thrown would bring them all home; but as every man hit has to start all over again from his adversary's home table, it may take a great many throws to get all the men home. For this reason it is obvious that each player should leave as few blots as possible, in order to save his men from being hit; and at the same time he should strive to cover as many points as possible, in order to prevent his adversary from moving round the board freely. It is still more important to cover points in the home table, so that when an adverse man is hit he will have fewer points upon which to enter. It is, of course, unnecessary to say that one can always enter or play on points covered by his own men.

**Throwing Off.** When either player has succeeded in getting all his men home, he removes them from the board two or four at a time, according to the throws of the dice, provided he has men on the points in his home table corresponding to the numbers thrown. If not, he must move his men up toward the ace point. Doublets may take off four men if there are so many on the point. If there are no men on a number thrown, and the number is so high that the man farthest from the ace point cannot be moved up, that man may be taken off. In the diagram in the margin, for



instance, Black has all his men home, and is ready to throw them off. If he threw six-deuce, having no men on either point he would have to move up the deuce; but the farthest man from the ace point cannot be moved up six, so he can throw that man off. This must result in leaving a blot, no matter which man is played up the two Points, and White may hit this blot on his next throw. Should he do so, Black would have to throw an ace to re-enter, as all the other points in White's home table are covered, or "made up." Black could not throw off another man until the one

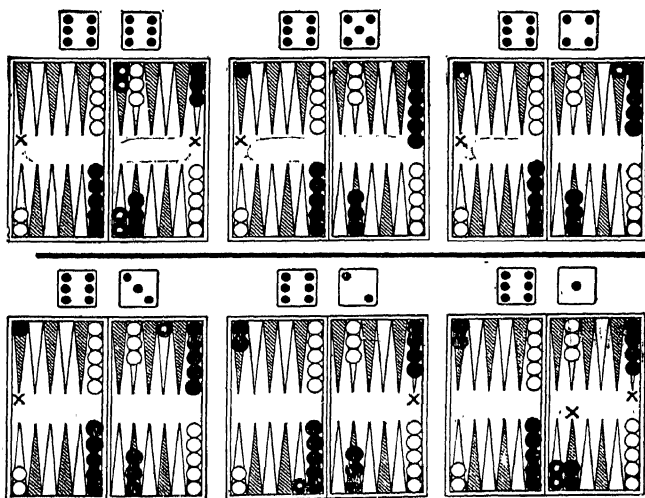
hit had not only been re-entered, but had made the circuit of the board and got home again.

A player is not obliged to throw off a man if he prefers to move, but he must do one or the other. In the foregoing diagram, for instance, if Black threw three-ace, he would be very foolish to take off two men, leaving a blot on his three point. He should move the ace from his four to his three point, and then take off the three, leaving no blots.

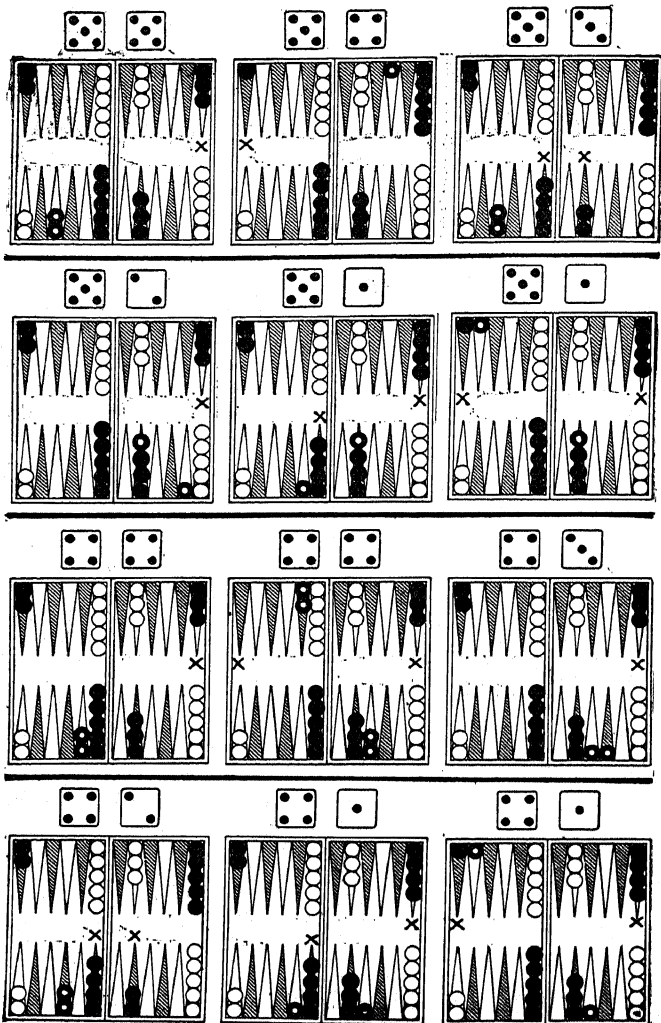
**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Always see that the men are properly set up. It would be a great help to many persons if the manufacturers of backgammon boards would print upon them a small diagram of the correct position of the men.

The first thing for the beginner to learn is the proper manner of playing the opening throws, and this should be practised with a board and men. In some cases there are several ways to play the same throw; double fours, for instance, it is said cannot be played wrong. All possible throws of the dice, from double six to double ace, and the various ways of playing them, are shown in the diagrams. Black men only are moved, and those with white centres have been brought from the points marked with a small cross x.

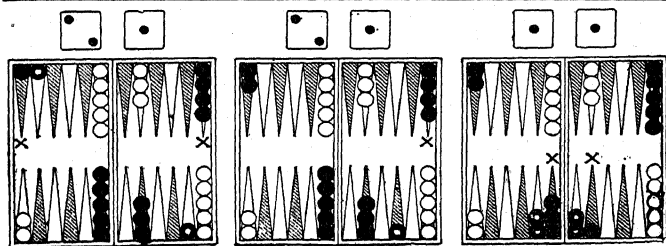
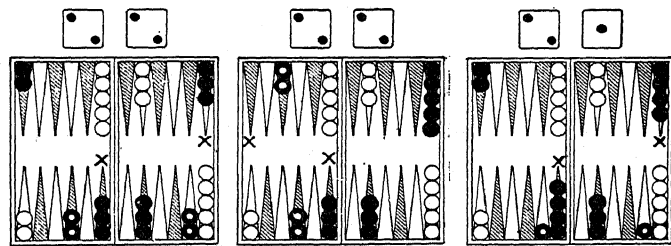
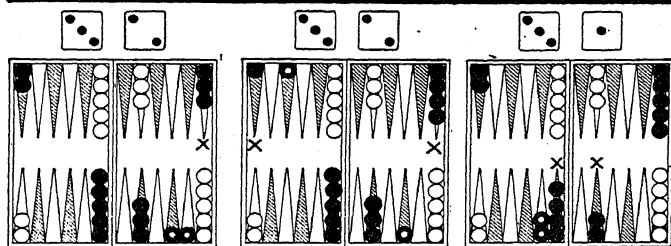
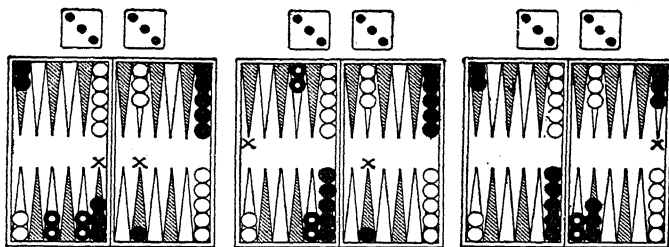
The best throws are those which cover the most points, take possession of your own or your adversary's five point, make up your own bar point, or make up points in your home table.



544 (Backgammon.) *OPENING THROWS.*

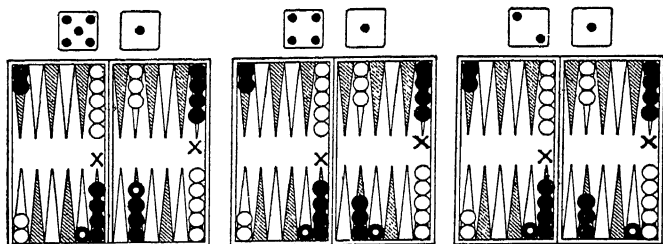


# OPENING THROWS. (Backgammon.) 545



Double aces are the best, because they make up two of the most important points at once. A first-class player will sometimes give an adversary the odds of a first throw of double aces. Double sixes is the next best, and five-ace is considered one of the worst.

Three of these throws require special mention, all of which would be very bad openings in the American game, for reasons which will presently be explained. These throws are five-ace, four-ace, and deuce-ace, when played as follows:—



These are all unfortunate opening throws, five-ace being especially bad, and the English players think the best, perhaps because the boldest way to play them is to leave one or two blots, one of which, however, lays the foundation for possession of your five-point on the next throw, always a great advantage if you can secure it. If neither of the blots are hit, the Englishman pushes forward in the hope of gammoning his adversary, and so winning a double game. In America, where gammons count no more than hits, nothing is to be gained by taking such chances, and the foregoing methods of playing these three throws would therefore be considered very bad.

**The English Game.** When the players count double and triple games, it is not an uncommon thing to play for the gammon, especially against inferior adversaries, or when one gets a decided advantage at the start. The first thing is to secure your own or your adversary's five point, or both, and if you succeed in that you should play a very forward game, and endeavour to gammon your opponent. After the five-points, secure your bar point, so as to prevent your opponent from "running" with double sixes. Some players think the bar point better than the five point, but it must be remembered that points in the home table are usually better than any outside. If you get the five and bar points made up, try for the four point, and after that you may take some risks to get your men home, and do not take up your opponent's men if you are ahead of him, because they may give you trouble when they re-enter in your home table.



**The American Game.** When a gammon or backgammon counts you nothing more if you win it, and costs you nothing more if you lose it, the tactics of the game are entirely changed. It is folly to take any risks for the sake of a gammon, and any plays which leave unnecessary blots are very bad; for which reason the three throws shown in the foregoing diagram would be absurd in the American game. On the other hand, you may risk being gammoned, or even backgammoned, if it is the only way to save the game. An Englishman cannot take this risk, for he might lose a triple game in attempting to save a single.

Secure the five point in your own and your adversary's home table as soon as possible, and then the bar and four points. After the first few throws the player should take a general survey of the board, in order to see whether he is ahead or behind, or if he has any advantage of position. He must then decide whether he will play a *backward* or a *forward* game. A glance at the relative positions of the men will usually show if one side is much more advanced than the other, without going into any minute calculations as to how many points nearer home one side may be.

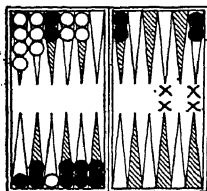
If, at the beginning of the game, one player makes two or three large throws in succession, while his adversary gets small throws only, the latter will have little chance of winning the game simply by running for home, whereas the former's best chance will be to follow up his early advantage and get home as fast as possible. The only hope for the man who is behind is that he can pick up some of his opponent's men, setting them back, and in order to do this he must keep behind his adversary, so as to meet as many of his men as possible.

This enables us to formulate the great principle of the American game, which is that when a player is ahead he should go ahead as fast as he can; and when he is behind, he should stay behind as long as he can. In the first place he is playing a forward, and in the second place a backward game.

**The Forward Game.** The great point in this game, after having obtained the advantage of several good throws in the opening, is to get home as rapidly as possible without unnecessarily exposing your men by leaving blots. Do not take up your adversary's men if you can help it, because by so doing you place obstacles in your own path, and assist him by allowing him to stay behind, which is just his game. Get past all his men if possible, especially if he has moved his two men out of your home table.

**The Backward Game.** Exactly the opposite tactics are of course the best for the player who is behind. He should keep two or three men in his adversary's home table, preferably on the ace and deuce points, in the hope of catching some of the enemy,

and setting them back. The result of these tactics, if successful, will be to offset the advantage of the adversary's high throws early in the game, because every man captured not only has to start his journey over again, but is liable to be picked up a second or third time. As it is to the advantage of the forward player to avoid picking up men, the one who is behind can leave blots with great freedom, and may even spread his men so that some of them must be taken up. This intense back game is peculiarly American, for in the English game such tactics would usually result in a gammon, and often in a backgammon, and the player dare not risk so much just to save a hit. In the back game it is very important to spread the men freely, so that they may act as *catchers*.



In the position shown in the margin, for instance, White has already thrown off three of his men, but one has been caught and set back. It is impossible for Black to win unless he can catch this man again, or capture one or two of those in White's home table, keeping White from throwing off any more men until Black gets home.

Suppose that in this position Black threw double threes. His play would be to separate all his men in the outer table, so that no matter what White might throw he could hardly escape being caught. The black men might be placed on the points marked with small crosses, and then if the white man cannot be caught and set back long enough for Black to get home, the game cannot be saved. If Black succeeds in picking up this man, he should then complete his home table as rapidly as possible, still keeping his outside men spread, and not disturbing the two men on White's trey point until necessary.

**Throwing Off.** Always throw off every man possible; never move up instead of throwing off, unless there are some adverse men in your home table. If you make a throw which will not take off a man, do not move two men, but move up and take off one man if possible.

**Chances.** Some players profess to attach great importance to the chances of the dice, but such matters are of little practical value except in a general way. It may be interesting to know that the odds were thirty-five to one against a certain throw, but that knowledge does not prevent your adversary from winning the game.

It should always be remembered that it is more difficult for your adversary to hit a man that is very close to him or very far from

<i>Single Die.</i>	<i>Double Dice.</i>
25 to 11 ag'st 1	30 to 6 ag'st 7
24 to 12 ag'st 2	30 to 6 ag'st 8
22 to 14 ag'st 3	31 to 5 ag'st 9
21 to 15 ag'st 4	33 to 3 ag'st 10
21 to 15 ag'st 5	34 to 2 ag'st 11
19 to 17 ag'st 6	35 to 1 ag'st 12

him, than one that is about half way. The odds against being hit by a given number, either on one or on both dice, are given in the margin. The throws given in the second column cannot be made without counting both dice, and a player is therefore safer when

it takes "double dice" to hit him.

## LAWS.

**1.** If the men are wrongly set up, the mistake may be remedied if the player in error has not moved a man, otherwise they must stand as set up.

**2.** If a player begins with less than the proper number of men, the error cannot be rectified after the player has made a throw for his move.

**3.** The players must each cast a single die for the privilege of first move, the higher winning. Ties throw again.

**4.** By mutual consent it may be agreed to let the higher throw play the points on his own and his adversary's die for the first move; otherwise he must throw again with two dice.

**5.** Each player must throw the dice into the table on his right hand, and if either die jumps into the other table, or off the board, both dice must be taken up and thrown again.

**6.** To constitute a fair throw, each die must rest flat upon the board, and if either die is "cocked" against the other, or against the edge of the board or of a man, both dice must be taken up and thrown again.

**7.** If the caster interferes with the dice in any way, or touches them after they have left the box, and before they come absolutely to rest and the throw is called by the caster, the adversary may place face upward on the die or dice so interfered with, any number he chooses, and the caster must play it as if thrown.

**8.** Before playing, the throw must be announced by the caster, and if the throw is played as called it stands good, unless an error in the call is discovered before the dice have been touched for the purpose of putting them in the box again.

**9.** If a player moves a man a wrong number of points, the throw being correctly called, the adversary must demand that the error be rectified before he throws himself, or the erroneous move stands good.

**10.** If a man wrongly moved can be moved correctly, the player in error is obliged to move that man. If he cannot be moved correctly, the other man that was moved correctly on the same throw must be moved on the number of points on the second die, if possible. If the second man cannot be so moved onward, the player is at liberty to move any man he pleases.

**11.** Any man touched, except for the purpose of adjusting it, must be moved if the piece is playable. A player about to adjust a man must give due notice by saying, "J'adoube." A man having been properly played to a certain point and quitted, must remain there.

**12.** The numbers on both dice must be played if possible. If there are two ways to play, one of which will employ the numbers on both dice, the other only one of them, the former must be played. If either, but only one, of the two numbers thrown can be played, the larger of the two must be selected.

**13.** If a player throws off men before all his men are at home, the men so thrown off must be placed on the bar, and re-entered in the adversary's home table, just as if they had been captured in the course of play. The same penalty attaches to throwing off men while one is on the bar.

---

## RUSSIAN BACKGAMMON.

In this variety of the game, no men are placed upon the board at starting, but each player enters his men by throws of the dice, and both players enter upon the same table, so that all the men on both sides move round the board in the same direction, and both players have the same home table, which is always the one opposite the entering table.

After having entered two men on the first throw, the player is at liberty either to continue entering his men with any subsequent throws, or to play the men already entered. In moving or in entering a player may capture any blots left by his adversary; but he cannot enter upon a point covered by two or more of the adversary's men. If a player cannot enter a fresh man with the throw made, he must play a man if he can. When a man is captured, he must be re-entered before any other man can be moved.

Except on the first throw of the game, doublets give the player a great advantage. He can not only play the upper faces of the dice twice over, as in the ordinary game, but the faces opposite them also, and can then throw again before his adversary. Should he again throw doublets, he would play both faces of the dice, and throw again, and so on. As the opposite face is always

the complement of seven, it is not necessary to turn the dice over to see what it is. A player throwing double four knows that he has four fours and four threes to play and will then get another throw. The upper faces of the dice must be played first, and if all four cannot be played the opposites and the second throw are lost. If the upper faces can be played, but not all the opposites, the second throw is lost.

If the first throw of the game made by either player is a doublet, it is played as in the ordinary game, without playing the opposite faces or getting a second throw.

The chief tactics of the game are in getting your men together in advance of your adversary, and covering as many consecutive points as possible, so that he cannot pass you except singly, and then only at the risk of being hit. After getting home, the men should be piled on the ace and deuce points unless there is very little time to waste in securing position.

#### TEXT BOOKS.

Backgammon, by Kenny Meadows, 1844.

Backgammon and Draughts, by Berkeley.

Pocket Guide to Backgammon, by "Cavendish."<sup>30</sup>

Bohn's Handbook of Games.

---

#### REVERSI.

This game requires a special board of sixty-four squares. Two players are each provided with thirty-two men which are red on one side and black on the other. The first player sets a man on any of the four squares in the middle of the board, and then his opponent places another man in the same four squares, each player having his own colour uppermost.

After the first move on each side, the object of each player is so to set his men that they shall be next to an opposing man, but with one of his own men in a direct line on the other side, horizontally, vertically, or diagonally, no matter how far off the man in line may be.

When a player succeeds in doing this, he reverses the colour of all the intervening men, turning them to his own side. A man placed at an angle may turn more than one line at a time. As soon as the board is filled, each man counts up his colour, and the one that has the majority wins the game.

## HALMA.

This is played on a board with 256 squares, each player having nineteen men of distinguishing colours. At the start the men are placed in an enclosure at the corner of the board, called a "yard." The object of the player is to get his men out of his own yard and into his adversary's.

The men move one square at a time, like a king at chess, unless a man gets to the square adjoining that occupied by another man with a space beyond it. Whether the adjoining man is his own or his adversary's, the player can hop over it into the vacant space beyond, and he can make as many hops as there are men and spaces. This being so, a player will try to make "ladders" with his own men, placing them in a line diagonally, with a space between each, and will then hop his men over them all. As soon as he gets all his men into his adversary's yard the game is ended. Special directions always come with the apparatus.

---

## GO-BANG.

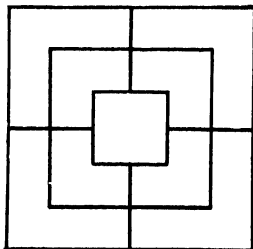
This is played on a board of 361 squares. Each player has his own coloured counters, and they draw for the first move. Each places a man in turn, and the first to get five men in a row, horizontally, vertically, or diagonally, wins the game.

---

## MORELLES,

### OR NINE MEN'S MORRIS.

This game, sometimes called *The Mill*, is played on a board ruled off into compartments, as follows :



Each player has nine men, of distinguishable colours. They draw for first move, and each in turn places a man on any one of the corners or intersections of the lines. As soon as either player gets three men in line, he can remove from the board any one of his adversaries' pieces that he pleases, provided the piece is not one of three that are already in a line. If there are no other men on the board, he can remove one of a line.

After entering all nine of his men, the player can shift them about, one at a time, but no man can be moved farther than to the adjoining corner or intersection, and that must be vacant. As soon as a new line is formed in this way, an adverse man can be lifted. It is possible for one man to move back and forth in such a manner as to continually form and reform a line of three. When one player has only three men left, he can jump any of them to any vacant space on the board, no matter how far off. As soon as either player is reduced to two men, the game is over and he has lost.

---

## DOMINOES.

Although properly a game for two persons, Dominoes is sometimes played by four, two being partners against the other two. There are also some round games in which any number from three to six may play, each for himself.

**The Sets.** A set of dominoes is a number of pieces of bone, usually about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches by  $\frac{3}{4}$ , and  $\frac{3}{8}$  thick. These bones have upon their faces the permutations of the numbers from six to blank, taken two at a time. Some sets begin at double nine, and others at double twelve; but the standard set is double six, and is composed of twenty-eight pieces.

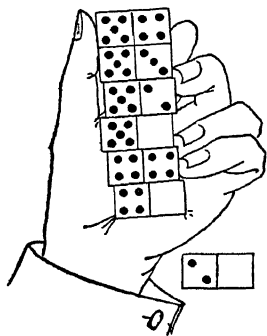
**The Suits.** All the dominoes with the same number upon either end belong to the same suit; the seven bones with a 4 forming the 4 suit; those with a 6 the 6 suit, and so on. The number of pips in each suit may be easily remembered by observing that the ace suit has the same number of pips as the pieces in the set, 28; and that each suit above the ace has seven pips more than the number of pieces in the set, while the blank suit has seven pips less, so that each suit progresses in regular order, seven pips at a time, as shown in the margin.

Blank	21
Ace	28
Deuce	35
Trey	42
Four	49
Five	56
Six	63

**Shuffling and Cutting.** Dominoes are provided with a small brass pin in the centre of the face, which enables one to spin

them round, push them about on the table, and so to shuffle them thoroughly. There are three methods of determining who shall have the first play, or *set*, as it is called : **1.** The player having the higher double ; or, failing any double in either hand, the *heavier* domino, that is, one with a greater number of pips on its face than any held by his adversary. **2.** One player selects any two dominoes, face down, and pushes them toward his adversary, who chooses one. Both are then turned up, and whichever gets the lighter domino has the first set. **3.** Each player draws a domino, face down, and the one getting the lower double sets first. If neither draws a double the lighter domino sets.

The dominoes are then shuffled again by both players, and each draws the number of pieces required by the game they are about to play. The dominoes remaining on the table are left face down, and form the *stock* or *bone-yard*. Each player should sort his dominoes into suits, and either leave them standing on their edges on the table with their faces toward him, or hold them in his hand. Few persons can hold more than six dominoes in this way, so the seventh is left upon the table, or is the first one set.



**Matching.** All games of dominoes are based upon the principle of matching, or following suit ; which requires that each domino played shall belong to the same suit as one of the exposed ends of the line of dominoes already played, and exposed upon the table. In playing a domino, it must be so placed that the end of it shall match and adjoin the exposed end of the line ; a six being played to a six, a four to a four, and so on. Each domino, as played, is laid face upward on

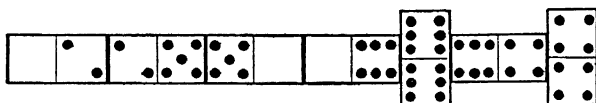
the table, the ends abutting, and doublets being laid across, or at right angles to the line.

The principal games are divided into two classes ; those in which the object is to *block* a player, so that he cannot follow suit, and those in which the object is to make the ends of the line some multiple of *five* or *three*. The Block Game will be described first.

**THE BLOCK GAME.** Each player draws seven dominoes, and the one whose turn it is to set lays down any domino he pleases. If a good player, he will select one of his longest suit, especially if he has three or more, and his object will be to get the line back to his suit as often as possible. If a player had to set with the hand of dominoes shown in the foregoing diagram, he



would select the 5-0, because he has four of the 5 suit, and three of the 0 suit. This would compel his adversary to play some domino having upon it a 5 or a 0. Let us suppose this adversary to hold the following dominoes :—6-6, 6-3, 6-1, 6-0, 5-1, 5-0. He would of course play the 6-0, in order to bring the line round to his long suit of 6's. As this would close the blank end of the line, the first player, whom we shall call A, would have to play on the 5 end, as he has no 6. In order to get the line back to his second longest suit, the blanks, he would play the 5-2, hoping to play 2-0 next time. His adversary, B, would play on this end if he could, but being unable to do so, he gets rid of his heaviest domino, playing the double six. A plays 2-0, and B should now bring in his suit of aces by playing 6-1, which would win the game; but for the sake of illustration we shall suppose that he foolishly plays 6-4. A plays his double four, and the dominoes on the table present the following appearance :—



B, having neither 4 nor 0 on any of his remaining dominoes, says : "*Go*," which signifies that he is blocked, and cannot play. A can now play at either end, and with either of two dominoes, but it would be bad policy to play the 4-5, because his adversary might be able to play to the 5; but it is a certainty that he cannot play to either 0 or 4. If A plays the 4-5, B gets rid of all his dominoes before A can play again. If A plays the 4-0 on the blank end, he will have to play again with his 4-5; but if he plays it on the 4 end he blocks himself.

Whether to block the game or not depends on the probable comparative value of the dominoes held by A and B. If A blocks the game by making both ends blank, both players show their remaining dominoes, and the one with the greater number of pips loses as many points as he has pips in excess of the other player. In order to judge whether to block or play, it should be remembered that as there are 147 pips in the entire set, the average value of each domino will be  $5\frac{1}{2}$ . If A blocks the game, he will have 17 pips left in his hand, which is above the average value of two dominoes; but his adversary will have four dominoes to count, and it is probable that they will be worth about 21 points. The fact that the seven dominoes already played are 13 pips above the average will reduce the probable value of B's dominoes to about 20. On the other hand, A knows that B has no blanks, which would slightly increase the weight of B's dominoes.

If A blocks the game, as he should do with the odds in his favour, he will win 7 points, the difference between his 17 and B's 24. If he does not block, he must follow the 4-0 with the 5-4. This will bring in B's ace suit, bringing him back to his long suit of 6's. When the 5-1 was played, A would have to say, "go," and B would continue with 1-1, 1-6, 6-3, claiming *domino*, all his pieces being exhausted. Although A can now play, it is too late, for when one player makes domino he counts all the pips remaining in his adversary's hand; in this case, 8 points for B.

Had B played properly, by putting down 6-1, instead of 6-4, A would have been compelled to play his 4-0, and B would have made both ends 6's, A saying, "go." By then playing his double ace, B would have made certain of domino next time by playing the 6-3, for even if A could play to the 3, he could not shut B out of the ace, and B's 5-1 would make him domino, winning 17 points.

The Block Game is sometimes played 50 or 100 points up, and at the end the winner takes the stakes, if any, or settles at so much a point for the difference between the scores.

In the *Four-handed Block Game* the players cut for partners, the two lowest playing against the two highest, and the lowest cut having the first set. Each player draws four bones, and the play goes round from right to left. When any player is blocked, and says "go," the one on his left must play or say "go," also. The game is at an end when one player gets rid of all his dominoes, or all four players are blocked. The pips remaining in the hands of the partners are then reckoned, and the side having the lower number wins the difference.

Another variation is for each to play for himself, but instead of playing only one domino at a time in each round, a player may go on as long as he can follow suit to either end of the line.

**DRAW GAME.** In this variation of the Block Game, each player has the option of drawing any number of dominoes from the bone-yard except the last two, which must always remain in stock. He may draw while he is still able to play, or not until he is blocked; but when he is blocked he is compelled to draw until he obtains a domino that can be played, or has drawn all but the last two in the bone-yard.

**MATADORE GAME.** This is another variety of the Block Game. Each player takes seven bones, and the highest double or the heaviest domino sets. The object is not to follow suit to the ends, but to play a number which will make the end and the number played to it equal *seven*. If the end is a 3, a 4 must be played; a 2 must be played to a 5, and an ace to a 6. Four dominoes in the set are trumps, or Matadores. These are the double blank, and the three dominoes that have seven on their

faces; 6-1, 5-2, and 4-3. Any of these trumps may be played at any time on either of the ends, in order to prevent a block; but the following player, if he does not play a trump also, must play the complement of seven to whichever end of the matadore is left exposed. Doublets are not placed crosswise, and count only for the suit to which they belong; a double three cannot be played to an ace, because it counts as three only. The trumps are usually placed at right angles to the line. The game is decided and settled for as in the ordinary Block Game.

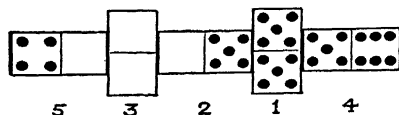
**SEBASTOPOL.** In this variety of the Block Game, four persons play. Each takes seven bones, and the double six sets. Nothing but sixes can be played until both sides and both ends of the first set have been played to. When these five dominoes have been set, any of the four ends may be played to. Each player in turn must play or say, "go." The game is decided and settled for as in the ordinary Block Game.

**BERGEN GAME.** Two persons play, each of whom draws six bones. The highest double sets, and scores two points for the *double header*. Two points are scored by the player making both ends of the line the same. If there is a doublet at one end, and one of the same suit at the other, it is a triple header, and counts three. Fifteen points is game. In addition to the headers, domino counts one. If both players are blocked, the bones are shown, and the one having the smallest number of pips and no doublet counts one toward game. If he holds a doublet, his adversary scores one; but if both hold doublets, the lower number of pips wins the point.

**DOMINO POOL.** Any number from three to six can play, and a pool is made up. They draw for the first set, and after shuffling again, each player takes such an equal number of bones as will leave at least eight in the stock. The leader plays anything he pleases for the first set, and each following player must follow suit if he can, to one end or the other. If a person cannot play, he says "go," and the player on his left plays or passes also. When one makes domino he wins the pool. If all are blocked, the smallest number of pips left in hand wins; ties divide.

**MUGGINS, OR ALL FIVES.** This is a game for two, three, or four players. The object is to make the two ends of the line some multiple of five, and for every five so made the player scores five points toward game, which is usually 100 up. If only one point is scored for each five, 20 or 21 may be game. Each player draws seven bones, and the highest double sets, each person afterward playing in turn. If double five is the first set it counts 10. The 5-0 played to this would count 10 for the second player, because one end of the line being 10 and the other 0, the total value of the two ends is still 10. Double blank played to

this would count 10 more. If 5-6 is now played on one end, and 0-4 on the other, the count will be 10 again, as shown on the diagram. The figures show the order in which the dominoes were played.



The highest possible score is 20 points, made with the 4-4 and 6-6, at different ends. If either player makes a multiple of five without noticing or claiming it, his adversary says, "*muggins*," and scores it himself. If a player makes an erroneous score, it must be taken down, and his adversary marks it as penalty.

When a player cannot follow suit, he must draw from the bone-yard until he gets a domino that can be played; but the last two in the stock must never be drawn. When one player gets rid of all his bones, he calls *domino*, and scores the nearest multiple of five that is found in the dominoes remaining in his adversary's hand. Remainders of 3 or 4 count as 5; those of 1 or 2 as nothing; so that 12 pips would count as 10; but 13 would count as 15. The players usually settle at the end of the game for the difference between their scores.

Muggins is sometimes varied by playing from both ends of the first doublet set, as well as from the sides. It is not necessary to play on the ends of the first set until one cannot play on the line; but any of the four points may be played to at any time. The end of the first doublet does not count in making multiples of five, but the ends of any dominoes played to it must be counted. If only one end of the first doublet has been played to, there will be three ends to count to make multiples of five; and if both ends of the first doublet have been played to, there will be four ends. Every count must take in all the ends that are in play. The highest count possible is 35; all four lines open, with the 6-6, 4-4, 5-5, and 0-5 at the ends.

**ALL THREES.** Muggins is sometimes played by making the object to get multiples of three at the ends, instead of multiples of five. Otherwise the game is the same as All Fives.

There are several *card games* with dominoes, but they are little used, and hardly worth description in a work of this kind.

## DICE.

Dice are probably the oldest gambling instruments in the world. Chatto thinks that man acquired the passion for gambling as soon as he could distinguish odd from even, or a short straw from a shorter. Simple gambling instruments were probably very early articles of manufacture, and Chatto says that it is not unlikely that after a simple dinner of mutton some enterprising gamester may have taken the small bones from between the shank and the foot, and after burning spots in them to distinguish one from the other, put them into a cow's horn and shaken them up, afterward rolling them upon the ground. From some such beginning *Astragali* was developed, a game which Dr. Thomas Hyde thinks was known at the time of the Deluge. Later on, other instruments were used in connection with dice, and so the earliest forms of Backgammon were developed.

Dice are still the favourite implements for deciding any matters of pure chance, such as raffling off a horse or a gold watch ; but the rules governing such lotteries are but imperfectly understood by people in general. There are also a number of smaller matters, such as the payment for refreshments or cigars, which are settled by thousands of persons every day, simply by throwing dice. The various methods of throwing, and the rules governing all such games are as follows :—

**THE DICE.** Although dice may be of any size, the standard pattern are half an inch square, of ivory or bone, with black spots one tenth of an inch in diameter. The opposite sides of the die always equal seven, and if the die is placed upon the table with the ace uppermost and the deuce nearest you, the four will be on the left and the three on the right. The positions of the three and four are sometimes reversed to enable sharpers to distinguish fair dice from those which have been doctored.

At the beginning of any dice game, it is quite unnecessary to examine the dice to be used, because they are always fair. Crooked dice are *rung in* during the game, and the player should make it a point to examine the dice frequently if he has any suspicions. First see that each die has all six figures upon it, for some dice are *dispatchers*, made with double numbers, so as to secure higher throws than the natural average. Double fives are great favourites with backgammon sharpers. The next thing is to place the dice together in pairs, to be sure that they are exactly the same height each way. If dice are not square they can be made to roll over and over on the same faces. The faces should then be tested to see that they are not convex, even in the slightest degree. Shaped dice are usually flat on the ace and six faces, especially in crap shooting. Each die should be held between the

thumb and forefinger at its longest diameter, to see if it has any tendency to swing on a pivot, for if it does it is loaded. Even if the dice are transparent, it is no guarantee that they are not loaded in the spots. Loaded ivory dice soon get discoloured, and the presence of any darkness in the corners is usually a sign of the presence of mercury. It is a mistake to suppose that loaded dice will always throw high or low; all they will do is to beat averages. Finally, the dice should be tested with a magnet, as they are sometimes made to work in connection with a battery concealed under the table.

**DICE BOXES.** Although the dice may be perfectly fair, the box may be "crooked." A fair box may be of leather, perfectly smooth inside, or it may be of bone, ivory or wood, with the interior "screwed" or grooved. If the upper edge of the inside presents a sloping flat surface, slightly roughened with sand paper, it will be just as well to refuse to allow such a box to be used, as your adversary is probably an expert at *securing*, which is a method of holding one of the dice securely against this upper edge while the others are shaken and rattled about in the usual manner. A person who is securing dice can be detected by the manner in which he holds the box, keeping his fingers, instead of his palm, over the mouth. When he turns the box face downward on the table, he will still have his fingers under it, and will withdraw them in regular order, the second and third fingers being first separated.

**THROWING DICE.** There are three methods of throwing dice: The first is to shake them in the box with the palm over the top, and then to shift the hold to the sides, completely exposing the mouth. The box is then turned mouth downward on the table, leaving all the dice completely covered. The box must be lifted by the person who is recording the throws, in a raffle, for instance, after the spectators have had time to assure themselves that all the dice are covered. If the caster has his fingers over the mouth of the box when he turns it over, or lifts the box himself, the throw is foul.

The second method is known as rolling, or the *long gallery*, and is generally used in poker dice and such games. After the box has been shaken, the caster holds it by the side, and gives it a twist and a push, which causes the dice to pour out, and roll along the table.

The third method is called *shooting*, and is always employed in craps. No box is used, the dice being held in the hand and rolled along the table or the ground. The crap shooter is obliged to shake the dice in his hand to show that he is not holding them with certain faces together, which is a common way of preventing or getting certain throws, especially with shaped dice.

Whichever method is employed, each die must lie flat upon one of its own faces after the throw, neither resting upon nor *cocked* against any other die or any obstruction upon the table or the ground. If any of the dice are cocked, all of them must be taken up and thrown again.

## RAFFLING.

In a raffle for prizes of any kind, each player has three throws with three dice. The rules already given for throwing dice from a box must be followed, the scorer placing the dice in the box before each throw, and lifting the box after it. The total of the three throws is recorded opposite the name of each player, and the highest throw wins. The odds against throwing a certain number or higher are shown in the margin.

IT IS ABOUT		AGAINST THROWING	
Even		32	or more
9 to 7		33	" "
11 to 6		34	" "
28 to 11		35	" "
3 to 1		36	" "
5 to 1		37	" "
7 to 1		38	" "
10 to 1		39	" "
16 to 1		40	" "
24 to 1		41	" "
39 to 1		42	" "
66 to 1		43	" "
116 to 1		44	" "
215 to 1		45	" "
422 to 1		46	" "
886 to 1		47	" "
2016 to 1		48	" "
5032 to 1		49	" "
14093 to 1		50	" "
45809 to 1		51	" "
183229 to 1		52	" "
1007768 to 1		53	" "
10077695 to 1		54	" "

Suppose the prize in a raffle is a horse which would be worth a hundred dollars to you. The highest throw so far is 42, and there are only twenty more chances to be thrown. It is 2 to 1 that 42 is not beaten or equalled because it is 39 to 1 that 42 is not thrown, and there are only 20 more chances to throw it. If 45 had been thrown, and there were still 21 chances to be thrown, you would be safe in paying liberally for the 45 chance. The great mistake that people make in buying or selling chances on throws already made in raffles is in thinking that because a certain number has not been thrown, that therefore it is likely to be. If there are 116 chances, they argue that 44 or better should be thrown, because that number or higher should come once in 116 times.

This is quite right at the beginning of the raffle, but it is not right to assume that because 100 of the 116 chances have been thrown without reaching 44, that the odds are only 15 to 1 that 44 will not be thrown in the remaining 16 chances. The odds are still 116 to 1 against 44, just as they were before the raffle began.

If you are going back to take into account the previous throws of the dice, you should know the 100 throws that were made with those dice before the raffle began.

### CRAP SHOOTING.

This game is a simple form of Hazard, and when played "on the square," is one of the fairest of all games, the percentage in favour of either side being very small. It is rapidly replacing Faro as the gambling game of America.

Any number of persons may play, and any one may be the caster for the first throw. Two dice are used. The players bet a certain amount of money, and the caster covers it, or as much of it as he can. If the caster does not take all the bets offered, players may back him against the other players. The bets made, the caster shoots. If the total of the two dice on the first throw is seven or eleven, it is called a *nick*, or *natural*, and the caster immediately wins the stakes. If the first throw is two, three or twelve, it is a *crap*, and the caster immediately loses. If the caster throws any number, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, or 10, that number is his *point*, and he must continue throwing until he throws the same number again, in which case he wins; or throws a seven, in which case he loses.

Two dice may come up in thirty-six different ways, each of which will produce one or more of eleven possible throws, running from 2 to 12. The most common throw is seven, because there are six ways that the two dice may come that will make seven; 6-1, 5-2, 4-3, 3-4, 2-5 and 1-6. The most uncommon are two and twelve, because there is only one way for each of them to come; double aces or double sixes. The numbers of different ways in which each throw may come are as follows:—

- 7 may come 6 different ways.
- 6 or 8 may come 5 different ways.
- 5 or 9 may come 4 different ways.
- 4 or 10 may come 3 different ways.
- 3 or 11 may come 2 different ways.
- 2 or 12 can come 1 way only.

When the caster makes his first throw, he has 8 chances out of 36 to get 7 or 11, which will win for him; and 4 chances out of 36 to throw 2, 3 or 12, which will lose for him. It does not follow from this that the odds are 2 to 1 in favour of the caster, because there are only 12 throws out of the 36 possible that will bring any "action" on the bets; so that the odds are 2 to 1 that the first throw will not settle the bets either way. After the first throw,



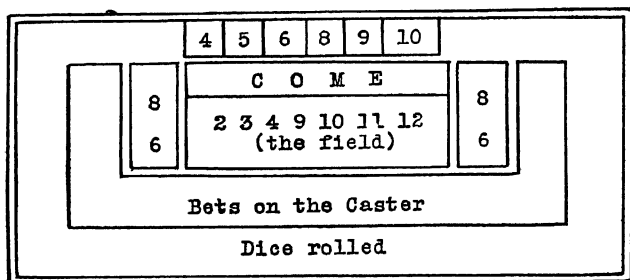
the caster's chances vary according to his point. If his point was six, he would have 5 chances out of 36 to throw it again, while the players would have 6 chances out of 36 to get a seven. If the player's point is four or ten, the odds will be 6 to 3 against him; because there are only three ways to get his point, while there are six ways to get a seven.

If the caster wins he shoots again, but when he loses he passes the dice to the next player in turn.

The old game of Hazard was a very complicated affair compared to modern craps, an intimate knowledge of odds and probabilities being requisite for success. The game was generally against the caster, and certain throws were barred when a certain number was the point. Those interested in the subject will find it exhaustively treated in George Lowbut's "Game of Hazard Investigated."

## THE MODERN GAME OF CRAPS.

Since craps became the leading indoor game for society, next to bridge, the professionals have taken it up to replace the once popular faro as a banking game. The house that runs the bank is supposed to have unlimited capital, and to take any bets made by the caster or spectators. Instead of rolling the dice on a table or on the floor, a professional layout is provided, which is a sort of open-top box, about 5 feet long and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  wide, with a border about 6 inches high all round it.



Any person wishing to try his luck as the caster, places his money in the space provided for that purpose, and any of the spectators who wish to back him place their money in the

same space. Those wishing to bet against the caster put their money in the space marked "Field" in the illustration, but there is no such mark in the actual layout. Bets placed in this space, or in either of those marked 8-6, win even money if any number in the space comes up. It will thus be seen that although the caster may lose on the first throw if he throws a crap (2, 3, or 12) players betting on the field would win. If the caster throws 7 and wins, all other bets on the layout are lost.

The dice are thrown out of hand, without a box, from one end of the layout, and must be thrown with sufficient force to rebound from the border at the opposite end, or the throw is foul. If the caster neither wins nor loses on his first throw he must have got one of the six numbers shown at the top of the layout. This is called his point, and the gamekeeper places a disc upon it, so that there shall be no mistake about the number he must get to win before he throws 7. If he throws 7 before he throws his point, the gamekeeper takes everything on the layout, regardless of where it is placed.

It usually takes from two to eight throws before the fate of the bets on the caster are settled. If he gets his point, all bets on the caster and all bets on the field spaces are paid. It will be noticed that 5 cannot win anything except for the caster, as his point. The caster continues to throw until he wins or loses. If he wins, he can throw again; but if he loses he must give way to any other player who wishes to cast.

The odds against the caster when he takes the dice for his first cast are 73 to 71, or nearly  $1\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. The odds against the players are taken to be about 2 per cent on the average. The odds against punters at Monte Carlo are  $1\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.

## POKER DICE.

If ordinary dice are used, the aces rank above the sixes, the deuces being the lowest. Any number of persons may play, and five dice are used. Each in turn takes the box and has three throws, the first being made with all five dice. After the first throw the caster may lay aside any of the five dice he chooses, putting the others back in the box for a second throw. The same process of selection is allowed for the third throw, any or all five of the dice being available for the last throw. The second and third throws have the same effect as the draw at Poker, except that the dice player may draw twice if he wishes to, and may put back all or any of the dice that he kept on the first or second throws, or he may stand pat on any throw.

The object of the game is to secure pairs, triplets, full hands, and four or five of a kind. Straights do not count in Poker Dice. Suppose the player's first throw to be a pair of sixes. He places them on one side, and picks up the three other dice, throwing them over again. If the second throw produced another six, it would be placed with the first pair, making a triplet, and the two remaining dice would be thrown again. Whatever they produced would be the final value of his hand. The player is not obliged to throw again, if he is satisfied with his first or second throw; neither is he obliged to leave any pairs or triplets. A player getting two small pairs on the first throw may put either or both of them back in the box again if he chooses.

In throwing for drinks or cigars, it is usual to throw *horse and horse*; that is, if several persons are in the game the highest man on each round goes out, ties shake it off immediately, one hand each. After it gets down to two men, they shake for the best two out of three hands, and if each wins a hand they are horse and horse, and throw a third to decide it. The last person to throw on each round follows his lead, throwing the first hand on the next round.

### GOING TO BOSTON.

This game is known in the colonies as Yankee Grab, or Newmarket. Each player has three throws with three dice, and the highest die in each throw is laid aside. If two are equally high, only one is retained. The others are returned to the box and thrown again. The higher of these two is retained, and the third die is thrown again. The final total of the three dice is the player's score, and the highest wins. In the colonies the ace counts as seven. The game is usually played for a pool.

### ACE IN THE POT.

Any number can play, and two dice are used. The game is for a pool, which is won by the final possessor of a single counter. At the beginning each player has two counters, and each in turn throws the two dice. If he throws an ace he pushes one of his counters into the pot; two aces gets rid of both. If he throws a six on either die, he passes a counter to his left-hand neighbour, who will have the next throw. Two sixes passes both counters if the caster still has so many. The players throw in turn until all the counters but one have been placed in the pot. If a player has no counters, the throw passes him to the next player on his left who has counters in front of him. The last counter of all cannot be put in the pot by throwing an ace; but it must be passed along

to the left when a six is thrown. The player with the last counter in front of him must throw both dice three times in succession, and if he succeeds in avoiding a six, he keeps the counter and wins the pool. If he throws a six, the player who gets the counter must throw three times, and so on, until some one throws three times without getting a six. Instead of a pool, it is sometimes agreed that the final holder of the last counter shall pay for the refreshments.

#### MULTIPLICATION.

Any number can play, and three dice are used. Each player throws in turn, and the highest die is left on the table; if two are equally high, only one remains. The two other dice are thrown again, and the higher left. The sum of these two is then added together, and the third die is thrown as a multiplier, the result of the multiplication being the player's score.

#### ROUND THE SPOT.

Any number can play, and three dice are used. Nothing counts but the spots that surround a centre one; so that ace, deuce, four, and six count as blanks. The trey counts as 2, and the five as 4. Each player has three throws with the three dice, and the highest total wins.

#### VINGT-ET-UN.

Any number of persons can play, making up a pool for the winner. A single die is used, and each player in turn throws as often as he pleases. The object is to get as near twenty-one as possible without passing it, and it is usually considered best to stand at 18, but to throw again at 17. If a player goes beyond 21, he is out of it. The one getting nearest 21 takes the pool; ties divide it.

#### CENTENNIAL.

Two persons or sides play with three dice. The object of the game is to secure pips on the dice, or multiples of pips, which will make the figures from 1 to 12 in numerical order, and afterward the numbers from 12 to 1 again. The first side to accomplish this wins the game. There must be an ace in the first throw or nothing counts; that obtained, any following numbers may be made singly, or by adding two or more together. Suppose the first throw is 4, 2, 1. The 1 and 2 will make 1, 2 and 3. Then the 4, 1, 2 will make 4, 5, 6 and 7. Each side continues to throw until it fails to score, when the box must be passed to the adversary. If a combination is overlooked by one side, the other may count it if it continues the sequence on their side.

## DROP DEAD:

This game was invented at the Coffee Club, New York. Any number can play, each in turn throwing five dice. Every throw that has a deuce or a five in it is void, and the deuces or fives are laid aside. The remaining dice are put back in the box and thrown again. When a cast is made with no deuce or five in it, all the spots face up on the dice are credited to the caster, and he throws again. As long as he has a dice left he continues to throw and add to his score, until all five dice have come up deuce or five. Then the next player takes his turn. The highest total wins whatever is at stake.

## PASSE DIX.

Any player can be the banker for the first round, and he holds his position as long as he wins. When he loses, he passes the box to the player on his left hand. He has three dice, which he throws in one cast, after the players have made their bets. If he gets ten or more, he wins. If he gets less than ten, he loses. His advantage lies in winning when he gets ten exactly; because that gives him nine throws that win for him out of the sixteen possible with three dice.

## SHUFFLE BOARD.

Shuffle Board is played on a table 30 feet long and 20 inches wide, with a gutter running all round it. The board is sprinkled with very fine sand. Four weights are used by each side, marked A and B to distinguish them. These weights are of iron or brass,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick. Five inches from each end of the board and parallel with it is the deuce line.

The object of the game is to push the weights from one end of the board to the other, each side playing one weight alternately until all four weights on each side are played. All pieces over the deuce line count 2, but if a piece hangs over the end of the board it is a *ship*, and counts 3. If there are no ships or deuces, the weight lying nearest to the deuce line counts one point. Only one ship or deuce can be counted in each round, so that only one side can score. The ship that overhangs the most, or the deuce nearest the edge, counts. Twenty-one points is game. The sides play from each end alternately.

*On ship board*, the pieces are wooden disks, six inches in diameter, marked with oughts and crosses. These are pushed along the deck with long sticks that have enlarged and flattened ends to fit the pieces. The object is to get each piece to settle fairly and squarely within the borders of some one of a number of spaces which are chalked out on a diagram about 10 feet by 6, which is about 30 feet from the player. These spaces are numbered from 1 to 10, and some of them are marked "minus." Each side has four shots with four separate pieces. Fifty points is game.

## BILLIARDS.

---

**THE TABLE.** The standard American billiard table for championship games is ten feet by five; but that in common use is nine by four and a half. The old tables for the four-ball game had only four pockets, but all modern pool tables have six. The English billiard tables are all twelve feet by six, with six pockets, which are used for both billiards and pool. The head of the table is the end from which the players make their opening shots, and the foot is that on which the red ball is spotted. The baulk is the space at the head of the table behind a line drawn from the second diamonds or "sights" through the white spot. The "D" is the semicircle on the baulk line on English tables.

American tables are made more difficult for championship games by drawing baulk lines 8 or 14 inches from the cushions, barring the rail nurse and the anchor shot. The English game is made difficult by making the cushions higher, the pockets narrower, and barring the spot stroke. The push shot is allowed in the English game, but in America it is permitted only in pool; never in the carrom game.

The American carrom game cannot be played on an English table on account of the pockets. If the English game is played on an American pool table the red spot should be only nine inches from the bottom rail, and the "D" should be drawn with a radius of eleven inches from the white spot on the baulk line. The D is never marked on an American table, but the opening shot in the three-ball game must be made from within a semicircle of six inch radius from the white spot. In the four-ball game, and in all forms of American Pool, the player may place his ball anywhere within the baulk line.

**THE BALLS.** The American standard balls are  $2\frac{1}{8}$  inches in diameter, while the English are only  $2\frac{1}{16}$ . Billiard balls should be carefully protected from sudden changes in temperature by being laid away in bran or sawdust in cold weather. It is a mistake to soak the balls in oil; all they need is to be wiped off with a damp cloth, and polished with chamois skin. The three balls employed in both the English and American games are known as the *red*, *white*, and *spot white*. In play they are distinguished as the

**cue ball**, which is the one struck by the player ; the **object ball**, which is the one that the cue ball first comes into contact with ; and the **carrom ball**, which is the second ball struck by the cue ball in making a carrom.

**THE SHOTS.** There are three shots common to billiards : The **carrom** or **cannon**, in which a count is made by the cue ball striking both the other balls on the table. The **winning hazard**, in which the object or the carrom ball is driven into a pocket. The **losing hazard**, in which the cue ball goes into a pocket after contact with another ball. There are five ways of making the principal shots at billiards, and they should be thoroughly mastered by every player. These are : The force, the follow, the draw, the mass, and the side stroke.

The first great principle in billiards is that the cue ball will always travel in the **direction** in which the cue is pointed. Holding the cue upward, downward or sidewise makes no difference ; the line of travel will be a prolongation of the line of the cue. In the three ways of striking the cue ball shown in the diagram in the margin, the ball will go in the direction of the arrow in each instance.



If the cue is held nearly level with the surface of the table the ball will be pushed or rolled along ; but if the cue is held perpendicularly, and the ball is struck directly on the top, the ball will be **pinched** to the table, as in the first figure in the margin, and will not move. If the ball is struck off the centre, as in the second figure, it will travel only a short distance, as a result of the cue's being forced past it toward the cloth, and will then return with a very strong retrograde motion after touching the object ball. If the cue strikes too near the top, the pinch will be too strong for the cue ball to reach the object ball, and if the cue is not held perpendicularly, the ball will not return. If the cue points toward the centre of the ball, as in the third figure, the ball will be driven forward, without any tendency to return after striking the object ball. The latter shot is useful in making a "close follow," to avoid making a foul.



**The Force Shot.** The beginner at billiards should strike his ball always exactly in the centre, until he learns the angles. With

moderate strength the effect of the stroke is to cause the ball to roll naturally along the cloth until it reaches the object ball, after which it will be deflected from its original course according to the angle at which the object ball is struck. If the cue ball is struck very hard, however, and very slightly below the centre, it will slide for a certain distance before beginning to roll, and if it reaches the object ball before this sliding motion ceases it will simply come to a stop, or go off at a right angle if the object ball is not struck exactly in the centre. This method of forcing a ball to go off at a right angle is called "screwing" in England.

**The Follow Shot.** If the cue ball is struck above the centre, the rolling motion is set up at once, no matter how hard the ball is struck, and the effect of contact with the object ball is simply to check the motion for a moment, after which the cue ball rolls forward again, deflected only by the angle at which the object ball was struck. The great art in making follow shots is to let the cue follow the ball, the tip passing at least three inches beyond where the ball stood, as shown by the dotted lines in the diagram.



When the balls are very close together the cue must be lifted, and the ball struck very much on one side, the cue being be-

hind the centre, as shown in the third position in the diagram of pinch shots.

**The Draw Shot.** This is exactly the reverse of the follow shot, the ball being struck below the centre, and the cue passing at least three inches beyond where the ball stood, as shown in the diagram. This gives the cue ball a retrograde motion, similar to that imparted to a child's hoop by spinning it backward while throwing it forward, so as to make it return. If the object ball is reached before this retrograde motion is exhausted, the effect will be to stop the forward motion of the cue ball, and to give what is left of the retrograde motion full play, making the cue ball return. The two great mistakes made by beginners in playing draw shots are that they pull the cue back, instead of driving it clear through the ball aimed at, and that they strike so hard that the forward motion of the cue ball is too strong for the retrograde motion to overcome it, or the object ball to stop it. It is never necessary to strike harder than sufficient to reach the object ball and get back to the carrom ball, unless one is playing for position.

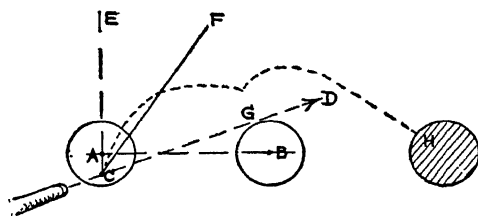


When the balls are so close together that to run the cue through the ball would make a foul shot, the draw may still be made by



pointing the cue off to the side, and pushing it past the cue ball, instead of through it. This will secure the retrograde motion, but accompanied by a great deal of twist, which must be calculated for if the cue ball is to strike a cushion. A short draw may also be made by using the pinch.

**The Massé.** Most players imagine this to be a very difficult shot, but it is extremely simple if the principle of the direction of the cue and the effect of the pinch are kept in view. If we place the three balls in a straight line, about four inches apart, we have the simplest form of the massé. To find the exact spot at which the cue ball must be struck, join the centres of the cue and object

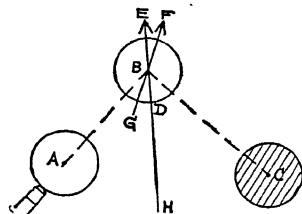


balls by an imaginary line A-B. At right angles to this will be a line A-E, and no matter which side of the ball B you wish to massé upon, your cue must strike the ball A somewhere on the line

A-E. Suppose you wish to massé to the left, as shown in the diagram. The pinch must be made on the ball about a quarter from the top, the cue being pointed in the direction in which you want the ball to go, which will be to the extreme edge of B, on the line C-D. The cue must be held at an angle of about 70 degrees. A firm but light blow with a well chalked cue will pinch your ball toward E; but the direction of the cue will propel it toward D. If the cue has been held at the right angle, and you have not struck too hard, the ball will feel the effect of these two forces equally, which will make it move toward a point half way between D and E, which will be F. The retrograde motion being stronger than the propulsion of the pinch, will gradually overcome it, and the ball will return toward G. Contact with the ball B will cause it to lose all but the forward motion, and it will roll easily toward H, making the carrom.

**The Side Stroke.** It is a popular delusion that the only way to change the course of a ball is by giving it "twist," "English," or "side." Side has little or no influence on the cue ball until it touches a cushion. Striking above or below the centre is all that is necessary. If it is required to vary the angle at which the object ball is to be struck, the distance below the centre will change the angle of direction in the cue ball without any side stroke. The art of accomplishing this is called *compensation*, an illus-

tration of which is given in the diagram, A being the cue ball, and B the object ball. This is a half draw or force shot, the ball being struck about half way between its centre and the cloth. If we draw imaginary lines connecting the centres of A-B and B-C, and bisect the angle, we get the point D, which the cue ball must strike to make the carrom. This will drive the object ball in the direction D-E; but if it is desirable that the object ball should go more in the direction



G-F, so as to secure a better position for the next shot, the cue ball will have to strike at G, which will make a draw shot, bringing it back in the direction H, securing the position, but missing the count. In this position the ignorant player puts on side, but all that is necessary to compensate for this deviation in the point of impact is to approach the point of the cue toward the centre of the ball the exact distance that the point G is from the point D. The higher the point of the cue is raised, the further the ball will go from the line D-H. If struck much above the centre, it will follow through the object ball, passing beyond the ball C altogether.

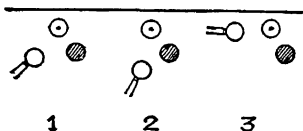
When side is put upon a ball, it spins in that direction. If it is struck on the left, and then goes to a cushion directly in front of it, it will tend to fly off the cushion toward the left, making the angle wider. If a ball spinning to the left goes to a cushion on the left, it will tend to make the angle smaller, and the effect so produced is called *reverse English*, which tends to slow the cue ball.

## THE AMERICAN GAME.

In the American game every carrom counts one point, and the number of points that will constitute a game must be agreed upon before play begins. The players string for the lead, the one bringing his ball nearer the head cushion having the choice of balls and of the first shot.

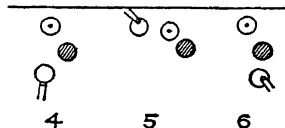
The great art in the American game is to keep the balls in front of you, so as to leave yourself a comparatively easy shot. Every time you get the cue ball between the two others you will find yourself in difficulties; but whenever both the balls are in front of the cue ball, there will be some chance to score. When there is a choice of several ways of making a shot, the balls being wide

apart, it will usually be found that one of them will bring the balls into better position than the others, and for that reason it is

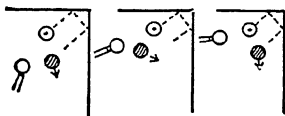


called a **gathering shot**. The expert tries to get the balls on the rail by a series of these gathering shots, and if any of the three positions shown in the diagram can be arrived at, a large run may be made by the **rail nurse**.

When the balls are not left in one of these positions they are said to **break**, but there are several positions in which they may be recovered by a kiss or a massé shot. In No. 4, the player must be careful to come back on the proper side of the carrom ball, so as to get back to position 2, if possible.

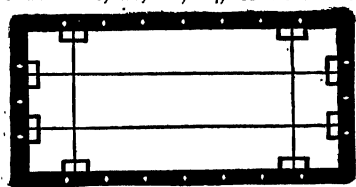


When the player reaches the corner, there are three principal positions for accomplishing the turn. In the first shown, the spot white must be touched very lightly on the left side, the cue ball going to the cushion with a strong English on the right side. In the second position, the red ball is barely touched. The third position is a light force shot but would be a half follow if the spot white were further out.



## BAULK-LINE BILLIARDS.

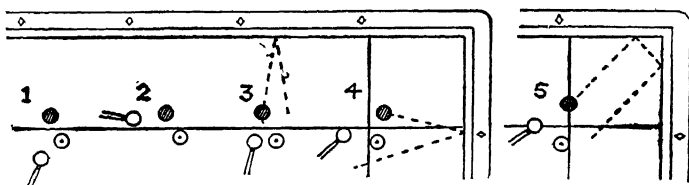
Professionals became so skilful in rail nursing that the baulk-line was introduced to keep the balls away from the rail. This is a chalk line, 10, 12, 14, or 18 inches from the cushions, according to agreement, dividing the table into eight baulk spaces, and eight anchor boxes.



It is foul if more than two successive shots are made on balls both of which are within any one of the sixteen interdicted spaces. Both balls being within the space, the striker can play on them once without sending either out; his next stroke must send at least one out. Should it return, and both balls

be again inside, he can play one shot, as before, without sending either out. This process may be repeated *ad libitum*. Should the second stroke fail to send a ball out it does not count, the striker's hand is out, and the next striker plays at the balls as he finds them.

The great art in baulk-line nursing is to get the object and carrom balls astride the line, and then to follow the principle of the rail nurse. The *anchor* shot is now barred in championship games. It consisted in getting two balls frozen to the cushion astride of one end of a line, and then just rubbing their faces with the cue ball. In the baulk-line nurse there are three principal



positions, and two turns, as shown in the diagram. In No. 3 the red ball must be driven to the rail and back with great accuracy, leaving the balls in position No. 1 again. The turns are very difficult. The anchor boxes are seldom used except in professional matches.

## CUSHION CARROMS.

This is a variety of the three-ball game in which a cushion must be touched by the cue ball before the carrom is completed. The cushion may be struck first, and the object ball afterward, or the object ball first, and then the cushion. In the *Three-cushion Carrom Game*, three cushions must be touched by the cue ball before completing the count. In the *Bank-shot Game*, the cue ball must strike at least one cushion before touching the object ball.

The *Four-ball Game* is now obsolete. It was first played on a table with corner pockets, and afterward on a carrom table, two red balls being used, one spotted on the red and the other on the white spot. Two carroms could be made on one shot.

The following are the most important *LAWS* of the carrom game, and are copied by permission from the 1922 edition of the "Rules Governing the Royal Game of Billiards," published by the Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co.

## AMERICAN BILLIARD LAWS.

1. Every game is begun by stringing for the lead—banking from the head to the foot rail and back. The player whose ball settles nearest to the head rail wins the choice of white balls and the right to elect whether to lead or make his opponent lead. Should the two white balls come in contact when stringing for lead, the player whose ball is clearly out of its true course or whose ball strikes the red ball when that ball is on its proper spot, forfeits the lead. When the contact of the balls is equally the fault of both players, or when the balls come to rest at an equal distance from the head cushion, the players shall string again.

2. The red ball is placed at the foot section of the table on a spot at the middle of a line drawn across the table at a right angle from the second diamond on each long rail, and one white ball is placed on a corresponding spot at the head of the table. A line across the head of the table at a right angle from the second diamond on each long rail is termed "the string."

3. Contestants play in rotation until a specified number of points constituting a game is completed.

4. The player leading must place his ball inside the string and within six inches to the right or left of the other white ball; and must make the cue ball strike the red ball first in order to effect a count. On any other than the opening shot, excepting when the balls are for any reason spotted, the striker may play upon either ball. When the object balls are spotted, the cue ball becomes in hand and the striker must play as on the opening stroke.

5. A ball is said to be in hand when a striker is about to open a game; when, after completing a carom, it jumps off the table, and when spotted after a freeze.

6. When a cue ball and an object ball are in fixed contact they are technically called frozen.

7. A carom counts one, and consists in hitting both object balls with the cue ball. Failure to hit either of the object balls constitutes a miss, and counts one for the opposing player. In a "dis-count" game a point so forfeited shall not be deducted from the score of the player giving odds. (Under amateur rules a miss is penalized by taking one point from the striker's score).

8. A foul ends an inning. No counts can be scored on foul strokes.

9. When a cue ball jumps from the table after counting, the stroke counts, the ball is placed on its proper spot, and the striker plays from the spot upon either object ball without regard to its location. The cue ball, when forced off the table by either a counting or non-counting stroke, is to be placed on the string spot

if vacant; if the string spot is occupied the ball is placed on the red spot, and if both the other spots are occupied the ball is placed on a spot at the center of the table. In case there is no center spot and occasion for one arises, the referee must place the ball destined for such spot as nearly as possible at the center of the table.

10. Jump shots are legitimate in all carom games. If an object or cue ball be forced off table, there is no penalty when a counting stroke is made, the count stands, the cue ball is placed on the head spot and the striker continues his inning, playing at either object ball without regard to its location.

11. All strokes must be made with the point of the cue, must be clean and distinct and a striker must keep one foot on the floor. A stroke delivered when a player has both feet off the floor is foul. A double stroke or one in which the cue is not withdrawn before the cue ball touches an object ball (a push shot) is foul.

12. In pocket billiards push shots are legitimate; double pushes are foul.

13. By using an arm or the body of a cue to lodge a cue ball against a rail, by picking up and by hand freezing a cue ball to a cushion and by, with a double push, placing the cue ball in a pocket game within a pocket opening where an opponent may not be able to shoot directly at any object ball, designing players have sought to evade or nullify the rules. They have said, "that is my shot" acknowledged a foul and accepted a penalty. Such safety tactics are reprehensible and not to be tolerated. They violate not only the rules, but every sense of sportsmanship.

In such and similar cases an opponent can exercise options of having the cue ball replaced, as nearly as possible, where it was before the foul was committed and compelling a fair stroke with the tip of the cue or of making the striker shoot and make the cue ball hit an object ball. Each failure to comply will entail another penalty for a foul.

No count shall be allowed on a compulsory stroke.

14. If, when in hand, the striker plays from any position not within the six-inch radius, it is a foul. No claim of foul can be made after the stroke. If the non-striker fails to warn the striker beforehand, the referee shall assume that the stroke was fair; and if the striker, having been warned, refuses to alter his play, unless he has meanwhile obtained from the referee a decision as to whether the ball was in or out, the referee shall assume that a foul was contemplated and perpetrated.

15. A ball is outside the string when the point of contact with the table is outside the string line.

16. If the striker delivers a stroke or touches an object ball while any ball is in motion, it is foul, except in case of a ball

which has come to a rest but which, without the fault of the striker, moves before he can check his stroke. In this case the ball so moving and all other balls affected by the stroke shall be replaced and the player shall repeat his shot.

17. If a player shoots with the wrong ball, the stroke is foul and such foul can be called at any time during a run, but the striker shall be entitled to all points made previous to the stroke in which he is detected.

The incoming striker shall have the option of playing with the balls as he finds them or of having the positions of the cue balls reversed. He must, however, begin his inning with his own ball.

18. A player who without detection has played with the wrong ball is debarred from enforcing a claim of foul in case his opponent in turn plays with the wrong ball. In case of a claim, which must not be entertained but which calls attention to an error of play, the striker may continue to play out his inning with the wrong ball or have the positions of the cue balls reversed.

A player who violates a rule shall not be permitted to obtain any advantage as a result of such offense.

19. It is foul if the striker plays directly upon any ball with which the cue ball is in fixed contact. In case of such contact, the striker shall have the option of playing directly upon the ball with which his own is not in contact, or he may, by a masse stroke, play away from the balls and effect a valid count providing the cue ball carom on both object balls, without regard for which it touches first, or he may play to a cushion and on the return of the cue ball may first hit either of the object balls; or he may have the balls spotted and play from the string, as in the opening stroke of the game.

In various cushion carom games the option is to play to a cushion or spot the balls.

Fouls must be promptly claimed.

If, however, the striker, after having made a foul ignores a call of time, or make a second stroke quickly, with apparent intention to evade a claim, he must be ruled against and both counts nullified.

20. It is foul to place marks of any kind upon cloth or cushions as a guide to play; to practice the string shot for lead, as the balls, up to the moment of banking, shall not be hit by either player and after banking shall not again be hit until the opening stroke is made.

21. It is foul if the striker, in making a shot, seek advice or assisted in any way by any other person, except that the marker or referee may, at his request, hand him the bridge or the long cue or mace or hold aside the gas fixture.

22. It is foul if a striker lift a ball from the table which such ball is in play.

23. When a freeze is established and a player asks to have the object balls spotted he may pick up his cue ball without incurring any penalty.

24. In all cases in which it is provided that balls must be transposed, replaced or cleaned such service must be performed by the referee and contestants must not be permitted to assist.

25. If during a game the table be cleaned, that work must be done by or under the supervision of the referee.

26. A striker is responsible for all accidents due to negligence or personal physical unsteadiness. If, while in the act of delivering a stroke he causes a piece of chalk or any substance to drop on the table and touch either a cue or object ball, he loses his inning. He has, however, the right to remove from the table any such substance for which he is responsible, if he can do so before it touches or obstructs any ball.

Should he attempt such removal and fail to prevent a foul which obstructs a ball or balls in motion, the opposing player may accept the position in which the balls rest or ask to have the obstructed ball or balls placed in a position which obviously would have obtained had there been no interference.

27. Any substance foreign to the game, for which a striker is not responsible, may, on request, be removed by the referee. If it be on the base of a ball or on the cloth where it cannot be removed without displacing a ball, the removal should not be made until the ball has changed position and the substance in question be distinctly visible. Even then the removal must be made without raising the ball off the table.

28. Balls disturbed by any agency other than a striker must be replaced and the striker permitted to retain his inning.

29. A touch is a shot. If a player prematurely touch the cue ball with the point of his cue and without force or direction to make it produce an impact on another ball, he makes a miss and must forfeit one point.

If after having made a premature stroke, he make a second or glaring foul strike, it shall be assumed that he does so to prevent his opponent from having a favorable position and the opposing striker shall have the option of playing on the balls as he finds them, or having them replaced as nearly as possible where they were when the second stroke was made.

Similar options obtain if a striker hinder or accelerate a cue ball in any foul manner; if with cue, hand or clothing he disturb one or both object balls; and if, while object balls are in motion, by any physical agency or by accident he impede or accelerate either or both.

30. If in the act of playing the player disturb any ball other than his own, he cannot make a counting stroke, and cannot play for safety. Should he, after having played a counting stroke,



disturb any ball before all the balls have come to rest, the count is void, his hand is out and the ball so disturbed is replaced. Should he, preparatory to playing, touch his own ball with cue or otherwise, it is a foul and he cannot play for safety and shall be penalized for a miss.

31. When the cue ball rests against an object ball or is nearly in contact with it, the player who has the inning must notify the opposing player and give him an opportunity to scrutinize the position.

32. Persistent playing for safety is not permitted. It is optional with the non-striker, should his opponent make a miss in each one of three successive innings, to accept the third miss, or to reject it and require his opponent to hit at least one object ball; and for this purpose the cue ball shall be replaced by the referee.

Special rules govern safety play in three cushion carom and pocket games.

---

## **THREE BALL CAROM GAME.** (Straight Rail.)

In the Three Ball Carom Game, the "crotch" is barred. The object balls shall be considered "crotched" wherever the centers of both lie within a  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inch square at either corner of the table, and when so crotched, but three counts are allowed unless one or both object balls be forced out of the crotch. In case of failure the player's hand is out and his opponent plays with the balls as he finds them.

In all other respects the general rules of billiards govern the three ball carom game.

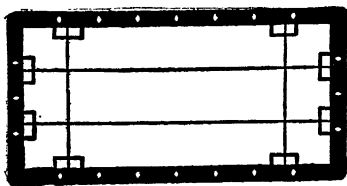
---

## **FOURTEEN-INCH BALK-LINE GAME.**

The balk-lines are drawn on a 5 x 10 table, from each of the first diamond sights on the end and side rails to the corresponding diamond sight on the opposite end or side rail. In the following diagram, the bed of the table shows the balk-line drawn 14 inches from the cushions.

In other respects the table is the same as that used in the three-ball game, with spots at either end for the red and white balls, and a centre spot for use when the other spots are occupied. The eight spaces defined by lines at the sides and ends of the table are the balk spaces. The large central space is not a balk, and there is no restriction as to the number of caroms that may be made therein.

580 (Billiards.) *FOURTEEN-INCH BALK LINE GAME.*



General rules of billiards govern the Fourteen-Inch Balk-Line Game. The special rules governing the latter are as follows:

SPECIAL BALK-LINE RULES.

1. The object balls are in balk whenever both have stopped within any one of the balk spaces. In such case the marker shall call "in," and when one or both object balls shall be driven out of balk space, the marker shall call "out."

2. A ball on the line is a ball in balk. A ball is on the line only when its centre or point of contact with the table touches this line.

3. When two object balls are on the same line, the striker shall have the option to determine in which balk they are to be called, and must then govern his play accordingly.

PLAYING IN AND OUT OF BALK.

4. But two shots are allowed when two object balls are within the same balk space; and unless on the second shot at least one of the object balls is driven out of the balk, this shot is void, the player's hand is out, and the incoming striker plays upon the balls as he finds them. If, on the second shot, the ball driven out returns to the same balk space, the rule applies as though it were in balk for the first time, and the player may continue in this way, sending a ball out and back, without further restriction under this rule.

BALLS "IN ANCHOR"

5. The object balls shall be considered as "In Anchor" when the centres of both balls lie within a space 7 inches in width and 7 inches in length, defined on one side by the cushion and on the other three sides by lines marked with chalk, and of which space the balk line, wherever it intersects a cushion, shall be the centre

## **EIGHTEEN-INCH BALK-LINE GAME. (Billiards.) 581**

from left to right. When the balls are so "anchored" the striker may have two consecutive shots but should he fail, on the second shot to force one or both of the object balls outside the "anchor" space, the second shot is void, and the incoming striker plays on the balls as he finds them. A ball driven out of and returning inside an "anchor" space is considered the same as "in" for the first time.

---

### **EIGHTEEN-INCH BALK-LINE GAME.**

#### **"One Shot in."**

The General Rules of Billiards and Special Rules for the Fourteen-Inch Balk-Line Game, with the following exceptions, govern the Eighteen-Inch Balk-Line "One Shot In" game of Billiards.

1. The lines are placed eighteen inches from the cushions.
  2. But one shot is allowed in balk and one shot in "anchor." Failure to drive at least one of the object balls out of balk or "anchor" invalidates the stroke. No count can be scored, the striker's hand is out and the incoming striker plays on the balls as he finds them.
- 

### **EIGHTEEN-INCH BALK-LINE GAME.**

#### **"Two Shots in."**

The General Rules of Billiards and Special Rules of the Fourteen-Inch Balk-Line Game with the following exceptions, govern the Eighteen-Inch Balk-Line "Two Shots In" game of Billiards:

1. The lines are placed eighteen inches from the cushions.
  2. When both object-balls are within one of the restricted spaces, only one carom may be scored without driving at least one of the object balls out of the space. If, on the second stroke, at least one of the object balls is not driven out, the shot is foul, the carom cannot be scored and the striker loses his inning. Should an object ball be driven out of the space and return, another carom may be scored, but again, on the second stroke, at least one object ball must be driven out, and this may be repeated without limit. Only two shots are allowed in balk or anchor spaces.
- 

### **CUSHION CAROM GAME.**

The specific Rules governing Cushion Caroms are as follows:

1. A counting stroke is complete when the cue ball has touched one or more cushions before effecting a carom, or when the cue-

## 582 (Billiards.) *THREE CUSHION CAROM BILLIARDS.*

ball, after striking one object-ball, touches one or more cushions before striking the second object-ball.

2. In case of doubt whether the cue-ball has touched a cushion before striking an object-ball, the decision of the referee must be against the striker.

3. Each cushion carom counts one for the striker. A miss of both object-balls counts one for the non-striker.

4. When the cue-ball is in contact with ("frozen" to) an object-ball, the striker may play to a cushion from the ball with which the cue-ball is not in contact, or he may play direct to a cushion; or he may have the balls spotted as at the opening of the game.

5. When the cue-ball rests against a cushion, the striker cannot play directly at that cushion, but must touch at least one other cushion before completing a valid carom.

In all other particulars this game is governed by the General Rules of Billiards.

---

## THREE-CUSHION CAROM BILLIARDS.

As Revised and Adopted at the National Three Cushion Tournament for the Championship held in Pittsburgh, Pa., October 3, 1921.

1. The game of Three-Cushion Caroms is governed by the general rules of billiards when not conflicting with the following rules:

2. A valid three-cushion carom is effected by making the cue ball touch three cushions before striking the second object ball.

3. Three cushions means three impacts.

4. The number of cushions required does not mean three different.

5. A count may be executed on one cushion.

6. Each carom counts one.

7. When the cue ball rests against a cushion the striker can play directly at that cushion but that shall not count as an impact.

8. In case of a freeze the striker has the option of playing away from the ball with which the cue ball is in contact or having the balls spotted as at the opening of the game.

### PLAYING FOR DELIBERATE SAFETY.

9. Playing deliberately for safety a striker must make the cue ball strike an object ball and then touch a cushion, or force the object ball against a cushion. Failure to do so will cause one point to be deducted from his score.

10. Only one deliberate safety play allowed without penalty.

## **FIFTEEN-BALL POCKET BILLIARDS. (Billiards.) 583**

11. After having once played for safety, the striker must play to count, or forfeit one point off his score for each additional consecutive safety.

12. For a deliberate safety miss a striker shall forfeit one point off his score. This too will count as safety play number one, meaning that subsequent consecutive safety shots must be penalized as provided for in rule eleven.

13. In case an object ball is frozen to a cushion, this cushion does not count except for the cue ball.

14. The cue ball may be driven from said object ball to the cushion upon which the object ball rests. Or the object ball to create a legal safety must be driven to another, a different cushion. That is in this case a second impact of the object ball on the cushion to which it is frozen will not be valid.

15. There shall be no penalties for misses; providing, however, the strokes are made with apparent honest intent.

16. Each and every penalty involving a forfeiture is to be deducted from the player's score if and when a score is made.

### **SHOOTING WITH THE WRONG BALL.**

17. If a player shoots with the wrong ball, the stroke is foul and such foul can be called at any time during a run, but the striker shall be entitled to all points made previous to the stroke in which he is detected and shall be penalized a safety.

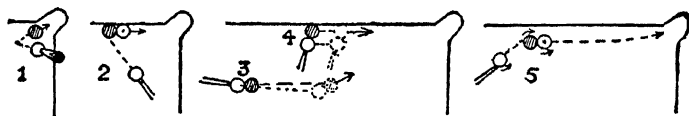
18. The incoming player shall have the option of playing with the balls as he finds them or of having the positions of the cue balls reversed. He must, however, begin his inning with his own ball.

---

## **FIFTEEN-BALL POCKET BILLIARDS.**

The most successful pool player is not the one who can make difficult winning hazards with the greatest accuracy, but he who thoroughly understands playing for position. If he is familiar with the principles of the force, the follow, the draw, and the side stroke, he should invariably be able to leave himself in a good position for each succeeding shot; but unless he plans for position in advance, he can never hope to be more than an average player. To attain to proficiency in this there is no better training than playing so many balls or "no count."

There are some shots peculiar to winning hazards which should be understood by every pool player, and they are illustrated in the accompanying diagrams.



**No. 1** is the *stirabout* and is a combination of the pinch and push shots. It is used when the cue and object balls are both very close to the pocket, but not in such a position as to allow the player to "cut" the ball in. The cue is held perpendicularly and as low down on the ball as it will hold without slipping off. The ball is then slowly rolled over with the point of the cue until the cue begins to descend on the other side. The cue ball is then pushed against the object ball, still with the point of the cue. **No. 2** will drive the spot white into the pocket if it is frozen to the red ball. **No. 3** is a very useful push shot when the balls are close together. The cue is kept steadily on the cue ball until the object ball has been pushed to one side. The moment the latter is at the proper angle to run into the pocket the cue is applied sharply, and then withdrawn. **No. 4** is a push shot used when the balls are frozen to the cushion. The cue ball must be kept in contact with the object ball until the latter has acquired sufficient momentum to reach the pocket. **No. 5** is a shot which was thought impossible until a few years ago. It depends on the communication of side to the object ball. The cue ball is struck very much on the side, almost like a *massé*, the spin thus given being communicated to the object ball and from that to the second ball, to which it must be frozen. The result will be that the second ball will make a slight curve on its way to the pocket.

**False Angles.** In playing bank shots it is sometimes necessary to make the object ball come back from the cushion at a smaller angle than the natural one. Some players imagine this can be done by putting side on the cue ball, but such is not the case. It is accomplished by striking so hard that the ball buries itself in the cushion, the result of which is that the angle of reflection is less than that of incidence. It is possible to drive an object ball to the rail at an angle of 60 degrees with such force that after crossing the table twice it will come off at a perfect right angle from the cushion. This is a very useful shot in banking for the side pockets, and also in playing for the 1 or 4 pin at Pin Pool.

The following **LAWS** for Fifteen-Ball Pocket Billiards are copied, by permission, from the 1922 edition of the rules published by the Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co.

This game of 15-Ball Pocket Billiards is played with fifteen numbered balls and one white ball not numbered. The latter is the cue ball, and the player plays with it from within the string at the head of the table, at the opening of the game, at any of the numbered balls, and afterward as he finds it on the table, his

object being to pocket as many of the numbered balls as he can, the number on each ball he pockets being scored to his credit; so that, not he who pockets the largest number of balls, but he whose score when added up, yields the largest total, wins the game. The fifteen balls are numbered from one to fifteen, respectively, and are usually colored. Before commencing the game these fifteen balls are placed in the form of a triangle upon the table, a triangular frame being employed for this purpose to insure correctness. The ball numbered fifteen is so placed upon the table as to form the apex of the triangle, pointing toward the head of the table, and in forming the triangle the fifteen-ball should rest as nearly as possible upon the spot known as the deep-red spot in the Three or Four-ball Games. The other balls should have their places in the triangle so that the highest numbers shall be nearest the apex, the lowest numbers forming the base.

The numbers on the balls pocketed count for the player who pockets them fairly, and as the sum total of all the numbers on the fifteen balls amounts only to one hundred and twenty, of which sixty-one is more than one-half, when only two persons are playing whoever makes the latter number is the winner of the game.

#### RULES FOR PLAY.

1. Should the player making the opening stroke fail to make at least two of the object-balls strike a cushion, or at least one object-ball go into a pocket, he forfeits three points and the next player plays. In the opening stroke all balls pocketed count for the player and he is not required to call any ball on this stroke.

In match or tournament games, when on the opening stroke the player fails to drive at least two object balls to a cushion or to pocket at least one object ball, the balls are set up again, and he forfeits two scratches, or six points, and must continue to play until he drives two or more object balls to a cushion, or at least one object ball into a pocket. For each failure to do so he forfeits six points.

2. After the opening stroke each player must either pocket a ball, make an object ball strike a cushion, or the cue ball strike a cushion after contact with an object ball, under penalty of forfeiture of three points. The player making three forfeitures in succession loses the game.

Should the striker pocket the cue ball during the game, and by the same stroke fail to drive one or more balls against a cushion or into a pocket he forfeits three only for the pocketing of the cue ball.

3. When two players only are engaged in a game, and one player's score amounts to more than the aggregate number on the balls credited to the other player added to that remaining on the table, the game is ended: the player whose score is higher than this total wins. But when more than two players are engaged

the game is ended only when the aggregate of numbers of the balls remaining on the table do not amount to enough to tie or beat the next lowest score. It is the duty of the game-keeper to proclaim when a game is won.

4. A forfeiture of three points is deducted from the player's score for making a miss; pocketing the cue ball; forcing the cue ball off the table; failure to make the opening stroke, as provided in Rule 1; failure either to make an object ball strike a cushion or go into a pocket as provided in Rule 2; playing out of his turn, if detected doing so before he has made more than one counting stroke; striking the cue ball more than once; obstructing the cue ball after a stroke; making a stroke when any of the balls are in motion; failing to have at least one foot on the floor while in the act of striking.

---

## AMERICAN PYRAMID 15-BALL POCKET BILLIARDS.

The game of American Pyramid Fifteen-ball Pocket Billiards is played with fifteen balls, numbered from 1 to 15 respectively, and a white cue-ball. The player opening the game plays from any point inside the string, and after the opening shot plays with the cue ball as he finds it. Each ball counts one point, and in match or two hand games the player first scoring eight balls wins game.

### THE RULES FOR PLAY.

1. In the opening stroke the cue ball, aimed directly or as the result of a bank shot, must strike the pyramid with force sufficient to cause at least two object balls to touch a cushion, or at least one object ball to go into a pocket. Failure to do either forfeits the stroke and one ball to the table.

In case of a forfeit by a player having no ball to his credit, the first ball scored by him shall be placed on the deep-red spot, or as near thereto as possible. All balls pocketed on the opening stroke count and need not be called.

In match or tournament games, when the player on the opening stroke fails to drive at least two balls to a cushion or one ball to a pocket, the balls are set up again, and the player forfeits one ball from his score, and must continue to play until he shall have made a legal leading stroke.

2. After the opening stroke the player must call the number of the ball he intends to pocket, but need not call the pocket. Should the called ball not be pocketed no ball pocketed on that stroke is counted, but must be placed on the deep-red spot, or as near as possible on a line below it; the player's hand is out, but



he incur no penalty. Should more than one ball be called, and one or more thus called should not be pocketed, none can be counted. Failure to hit a called ball involves no penalty, provided any other ball be hit.

3. One ball is forfeited if, after the opening stroke, the player fail to pocket a ball, or fail to make at least one object ball, or the cue ball, after hitting an object ball, strike a cushion. Should the player also pocket the cue ball after failure as above described he forfeits but one ball on the stroke.

4. When one or more balls, in addition to the ball called, are pocketed, the player is entitled to all pocketed.

5. When more than two players are engaged, the game is ended when the balls remaining on the table are not sufficient to tie the next lowest score; and all that may be depending upon the game shall be decided in accordance with the standing of each player when game is called.

6. A player forfeits one ball for making a miss, pocketing the cue ball, forcing the cue ball off the table, for failing as described in Rule 3, and for striking the cue ball twice

7. It is a stroke, and one ball is forfeited, if the striker touch the cue ball with his cue and make a miss, or touch it with his clothing, or any other object.

8. A stroke made when any ball is in motion is foul, one ball is forfeited, and the incoming striker may either have the balls replaced or play as he finds them.

9. When the cue ball is struck twice, the balls disturbed in consequence of the second stroke shall be replaced, or the incoming striker, if he choose, may play as he finds them; the striker forfeits one ball.

10. The rules of Pocket Billiards for the Championship, and the General Rules of Billiards, except as above specified, govern this game also.

---

## ROTATION POCKET BILLIARDS.

This game is played with the numbered balls from 1 to 15 and a white cue ball, as in Fifteen-ball Pocket Billiards, the object being to play upon and pocket the balls in their numerical order.

In "setting the balls" at the commencement of the game they are placed on the table in the form of a triangle or pyramid, the No. 1 ball at the apex, No. 2 and No. 3 in the second row, No. 4, 5 and 6 in the third row, No. 7, 8, 9, 10 in the fourth row, and No. 11, 12, 13, 14 and 15 in the last row.

The player opening the game plays from any point inside the string, and after the opening shot plays with the cue ball as he finds it.

In opening the game the order of play is determined by throwing out small numbered balls, as in Fifteen-ball Pocket Billiards, and he whose first play it may be strikes the cue ball from any point within the string line.

The opening stroke must be to strike the one-ball, and any ball or balls pocketed by the stroke, irrespective of its number, counts for the player, and he continues his hand until he fails to score, but in continuing he must play each time upon the ball bearing the lowest number on the table. Each player in turn is required to play on the ball bearing the lowest number on the table. After playing upon that ball, however, should any other be pocketed by the same stroke, irrespective of its number, it shall be placed to the player's credit so pocketing it.

If the line of aim at the ball required to be hit is covered by another ball, the player may resort to a bank play or *massé*, etc., but should he fail to hit the required ball he forfeits three, receiving a scratch.

The rules of Fifteen-ball Pocket Billiards and the General Rules of Billiards govern this game also, except where they conflict with the foregoing rules.

---

## KELLY ROTATION POCKET BILLIARDS.

This is a rotation game with hazardous additions. It can be enjoyed by from two to fifteen players.

It is played with the usual fifteen object balls, one cue ball and two sets of small balls.

When the object balls are framed they are placed on the table in the form of a triangle or pyramid, the No. 1 ball at the apex, No. 2 and No. 3 in the second row, Nos. 4, 5 and 6 in the third row, Nos. 7, 8, 9 and 10 in the fourth row, Nos. 11, 12, 13, 14 and 15 in the last row.

The striker opening the game plays from any point inside the string. After the opening shot each striker plays with the cue ball as he finds it.

On the opening stroke the cue ball must be played at the one ball. Failure to comply with this requirement entails a forfeiture. Any ball pocketed by a legitimate opening stroke, irrespective of its number, counts for the striker, who continues his hand until he fails to score. In continuing he must play each time upon the ball bearing the lowest number.

Each player in turn is required to play on the ball bearing the

lowest number. After playing upon the ball, however, should any other ball be pocketed by the same stroke, it shall be placed to the striker's credit.

If the line of aim at the ball required to be hit is covered by another ball, the player may resort to a bank or massé, etc., but should he fail to hit the required ball, he forfeits.

To start the game small numbered balls equal to the number of players are shaken from a bottle to the player. These establish the order of play. The player who gets No. 1 ball shoots first, and the others following according to the numbers they have drawn. The order thus established continues until each player has had an opening stroke, after which a rearrangement is made by a distribution of small balls.

Then from a bottle containing fifteen balls, numbered from one to fifteen, balls are distributed to the players, each of whom receives one. These small balls are held by the players, and determine the result of the game.

The play of each striker is to pocket a ball the number of which corresponds to the small ball which he holds. When this is accomplished the game automatically ends.

Should one of the players pocket a ball corresponding in number to a small ball held by another player, the player holding such small ball must immediately declare himself "dead," forfeit and surrender the small ball he holds.

Being "dead" does not put a player out of the game. Although deprived of a chance to win, he must continue to play in his turn. Should he "kill" one of the other players, the victim forfeits.

Should the fifteen object balls be pocketed without a decision, play begins again just as if there had not been a game played. Usually it is agreed, before the start of a game, that in the case of the fifteen balls being pocketed without a winner, the following game shall be a double header. In case such an agreement be not made, play proceeds under original conditions.

Failure to hit the lowest ball on the table entails a forfeiture. If the cue ball touch any object ball before hitting the lowest ball, the striker forfeits.

When the cue ball is frozen to an object ball bearing a number lower than that of any other ball on the table, the striker can shoot directly at any other object ball.

Whenever the lowest ball is pocketed by a foul strike or a stroke after which the cue ball also drops in a pocket, it and all other balls pocketed by such strokes must be returned to the table.

In such cases, the ball bearing the lowest number must be placed on the one ball spot. If that spot be occupied, the low ball must be placed in front of it so that a player may have a chance to shoot at such ball.

## 590 (Billiards.) *CONTINUOUS POCKET BILLIARDS.*

In like cases, balls other than the lowest must be placed in numerical order on a line from the one ball spot to the foot rail.

When the cue ball goes into a pocket and becomes "in hand," and the lowest object ball is within the string, the striker must *masse* or bank outside of the string for that ball.

In all cases not specifically covered by these rules, the General Rules of Billiards apply.

---

### CONTINUOUS POCKET BILLIARDS.

Continuous Pocket Billiards is played with fifteen numbered balls and one white ball, not numbered. The white is the cue ball. The numbered balls are object balls, to be directly or indirectly driven into pockets by the cue ball.

A line across the head of the table, at the right angle from the second diamond on each long rail is termed "the string." This line is necessary for the regulation of the cue ball "in hand" and determining whether or not object balls are in or out of "the string."

A spot is placed at the center of this line and designated the "Head" Spot. A spot is also placed at the center of a line across the foot of the table at a right angle from the second diamond at that end, and is designated as the "Foot" Spot.

A light pencil mark must be drawn from the foot spot directly back to the center diamond on the end rail. This line is necessary for absolute accuracy in spotting object ball.

Beginning a game or when the cue-ball is "in hand" a striker must play from on or within "the string" line.

A ball, the perpendicular center of which is on "the string" line, must be regarded within it.

The cue ball is "in hand" at the beginning of a game, also when forced off the table or pocketed and when, for any reason, fifteen balls are framed. It remains "in hand" and is not in play until forced from behind "the string" line by a stroke made with the point of a cue.

When not "in hand" the cue ball is at all times in play.

If during the progress of a game, when all the object balls on the table are within "the string," the cue ball becomes "in hand," the object ball that is nearest to "the string" must be moved to the foot spot. The cue ball can then be played from "the string" to the object ball so spotted.

Opening the game the striker plays with the cue ball from within "the string" at any of the object balls and afterwards as he finds the cue ball on the table.

The object balls are numbered one to fifteen respectively, and are usually colored. The numbers on the balls are simply used for specifying each ball which a striker aims to pocket and do not in any way affect the score of the player.

Before commencing the game these fifteen balls are placed in the form of a triangle upon the table, a triangular frame being employed to insure correctness.

The highest ball must be placed nearest the apex of the triangle and the lowest number at its base; the 15-ball must be placed at the apex and must rest on the spot known as the foot spot and the 1 and 5 balls at either corner of the base of the triangle.

Each and every ball counts one point, and the game shall consist of any given number of points, to be mutually agreed upon.

## ENGLISH PYRAMIDS.

This differs from the American game in several points. There are no "call shots," the player being entitled to every ball he pockets, whether he played for it or not. All balls in hand must be played from a D, 21 to 23 inches in diameter. There is no rule about driving two balls to the cushion on the opening shot. When all the red balls but one are pocketed, the red and white balls are used as cue balls alternately. If there are only two players, and only two balls on the table, the red and white, if either player makes a miss or goes in the pocket himself, that ends the game; but if there are more than two players another red ball is spotted, as in the American game. The baulk line is no protection, a player in hand being allowed to play on any ball on the table, even if it is behind the D.

## SHELL OUT.

This game should not be confounded with Black Pool. It is simply English Pyramids, but instead of making the player with the lowest score at the end pay for the table, each player equally shares the expense, and the balls are pocketed for so much apiece. If the amount of the shell-out was a shilling, and there were four players, any person pocketing a ball would receive a shilling out of each of the others, and would play again. A losing hazard or miss would compel the striker to pay a shilling to each of the others, instead of putting a ball back on the table. The last ball pays double.

## HIGH-LOW-JACK-GAME.

This game is played with a set of balls the same as used in Fifteen-Ball Pool.

Any number of persons may play, the order of play being determined by the rolling of the small numbered balls.

The fifteen-ball is High; the one-ball is Low; the nine-ball is Jack; and the highest aggregate is Game. Seven points generally constitute a game.

In cases where players have one and two to go to finish game, the first balls holed count out first, be they High, Low, or Jack.

In setting up the pyramid the three counting balls—High, Low, Jack—are placed in the centre, with High at the head of the three named balls, the other balls as in regular Fifteen-Ball Pool.

When players have each one to go, instead of setting up an entire frame of pyramids, a ball is placed at the foot of the table, in direct line with the spots, and at a distance from the lower cushion equal to the diameter of another of the pool balls. This ball must be pocketed by banking it to one or more cushions. The player who pockets the ball wins the game.

---

## FORTY-ONE.

Forty-One Game is played with a regular Fifteen-Ball Pool set of balls, the object of play being to pocket a sufficient number of the pool balls which added to the private small ball shall score exactly 41.

---

## CHICAGO POCKET BILLIARDS.

This game is played with the numbered pool balls from 1 to 15 and a white cue-ball, as in Fifteen-Ball Pool, the object being to play upon and pocket the balls in their numerical order.

The table is laid out for the game by placing the one ball against the end cushion at the first right-hand diamond sight at the foot of the table, the two-ball is placed at the centre diamond sight on same cushion; the remaining thirteen balls are placed in the order of their numbers at the succeeding diamond sights. The three sights on the end rail at head of the table are not occupied by any ball.

The opening stroke *must* be to strike the *one*-ball. If that ball is holed it is placed to the credit of the player, and he continues his hand until he fails to score, but in continuing he must play each time upon the ball bearing the lowest number on the table. After playing upon that ball, however, should any other be pocketed by the same stroke, irrespective of its number, it shall be placed to the player's credit so pocketing it.

If the line of aim at the ball required to be hit is covered by another ball, the player may resort to a bank play or massé, etc., but should he fail to hit the required ball he forfeits three, receiving a scratch.

---

## COW-BOY POCKET BILLIARDS.

1. The game is played by two or more contestants, on a pool table, with one cue ball and three colored balls numbered respectively 1, 3 and 5.

2. At the commencement of the game the ball numbered 1 shall be placed on the spot at the head of the table, the ball numbered 5 shall be placed on the centre spot, and the ball numbered 3 shall be placed on the lower spot, and whenever any object ball is pocketed or forced off the table it shall be replaced on the original spot, except as provided for in Rule No. 12.

3. The opening player may play from any point within the string line he may choose, but must play upon the No. 3 ball before striking any other, or forfeit his hand.

4. The winner is the player who first accomplishes the main object of the game, which is to score 101 points by the "Cow-Boy method," which is that the first 90 points may be scored by either carroms or the pocketing of one or more of the numbered balls, which shall count that number for the player; the scoring of a single carrom shall count 1, and a double 2.

5. On arriving at the exact number of 90 points, the contestant must next obtain 10 more points by carroms only; and having arrived at the score of 100, the last point must be obtained by playing the cue ball onto the No. 1 ball and thence into any pocket he may designate, without touching either of the other balls, however, and should the cue ball enter any other pocket, the hand is out and the run, if any, lost.

6. Any point made by a player and scored for him by either the marker or himself at the completion of any hand can never be lost, but should a player at any time make a scratch, miss or foul, any points previously made by him in that hand shall be lost and the hand shall pass.

7. At the completion of the first 90 points all the balls must come to rest on the table before the player makes his next stroke; otherwise the following stroke shall be a foul.

8. At the completion of 100 points the balls must all come to rest before the player makes his next stroke; otherwise the stroke is foul.

9. Should a player pocket the cue ball twice in succession without striking any object ball, he shall forfeit the game.

10. Should a player while upon his carroms pocket any ball, the hand is out, and he loses any points he may have made on that run.

11. Whenever, except on the final stroke, the cue ball is pocketed or forced off the table, the hand is out, the points scored on that run are lost, and the cue ball is in hand for the following player, who must play on a ball outside the string line, or else on some point of the cushion outside the line.

12. Should the spot on which any pocketed ball belongs be occupied, said ball shall be left off the table until the spot is free and the balls are at rest, with this exception—that should the 1 ball be pocketed, and its spot occupied, any player who is exactly 100, and whose turn it is to play, may demand that all the object balls be spotted and he shall play with ball in hand.

13. It is a foul if the player touch any ball with his person or clothing. It is a foul if he strike the cue ball twice or with anything but the point of the cue. It is a miss if he shoot without causing the cue ball to strike any object ball. It is a scratch if he cause the cue ball to enter a pocket except on the 101st point, or leave the table.

14. Carroms obtained by pushing during the first 90 points are legitimate, but not during the following ten points; and the 101st shot must be a clean stroke, and a push shot will not be allowed.

15. When a player is 100, should he fail to strike the 1 ball his hand is out and his run, if any, forfeited.

16. During the first 90 points, should the cue ball be frozen to an object ball, and if by a push causes the object ball to move, any resulting carrom shall be valid. If, however, the frozen object ball fails to move, it shall be considered as not having been touched except that should the cue ball strike a cushion, it shall not be a scratch.

17. Any cases not covered by these rules shall be governed as far as possible by the accepted rules of pool and four-ball billiards.



## SNOOKER POOL.

1. The game of Snooker's Pool is played by two or more players, either all against all or in partnership, with fifteen red balls, six pool balls, and one white ball as hereafter described. Any rest may be used.

2. To decide the order of play, as many pool balls as there are players or sides shall be put into a basket, shaken, and given out to the players by the marker.

The players play in the order in which the colors appear on the pool marking board. A player pocketing a ball scores its value as against each of the other players, and when penalized, pays the penalty to each of them. In a game where sides are formed a player either scores for his own side, or is penalized to the opposing side or sides.

3. When commencing a game the fifteen red balls shall be placed as in the game of Pyramids. For each of these balls pocketed, according to rule, the striker shall score one point. The pool balls to be used are the yellow, green, brown, blue, pink, and black, which shall be spotted as follows at the commencement of the game, and have the appended values when pocketed according to rule :

The Yellow ball shall be placed on the right hand spot of the baulk line and count two points;

The Green ball shall be placed on the left hand spot of the baulk line and count three points ;

The Brown ball shall be placed on the middle spot of the baulk line and count four points ;

The Blue ball shall be placed on the spot between the two middle pockets and count five points ;

The Pink ball shall be placed at the apex of the pyramid and count six points ;

The Black ball shall be placed on the billiard spot and count seven points.

The White ball shall be used in rotation by the various players taking part in the game solely as the striker's ball, and shall be played from the "D" at the start of a game by the first player, and at any other period of the game, after it has been off the table from any cause whatever.

4. The ball shall be struck with the point of the cue and not "pushed." If, after the striker's ball has been forced against an object ball, the point of his cue remain or come in contact with his ball, the stroke is foul. There is no difference between the act of striking and the act of aiming.

5. The "baulk" is no protection.

6. The striker must pocket a red ball before playing upon a pool ball; otherwise the stroke is foul, and after pocketing a red ball he must play upon a pool ball, an order of play that must be observed throughout each break so long as a red ball remains upon the table.

7. After pocketing a red ball the striker is at liberty to select the pool ball upon which he will play, but when there is no longer a red ball on the table, the pool balls must be played at and taken in their order of value from lowest to highest, save that the player pocketing the last red ball shall be allowed to select the first pool ball upon which he plays, which, if pocketed, shall be re-spotted and the pool balls played at in their order of value.

8. When playing on a pool ball the striker, if asked the question by a player taking part in the game, shall "declare" the ball selected.

9. Any number of red balls may be taken in one stroke; but, if a pool ball is taken in conjunction with a red ball, the stroke is foul. After pocketing a red ball only the pool ball aimed at may be taken.

10. A red ball once off the table shall not be brought into play again under any circumstances; but all pool balls pocketed shall be re-spotted in their original positions (save that the pink ball shall be placed on the pyramid spot), until Rule 7, as to playing upon the pool balls in rotation, comes into force. When the pool balls are being played upon in rotation, they shall not be re-spotted after being pocketed in proper order and according to rule.

11. No ball shall, under any circumstances, be taken up.

12. Should the spot allotted to any pool ball be occupied when it becomes necessary to re-spot it, it shall be placed upon the *nearest unoccupied spot*, and, failing that, as near as possible to its proper spot in the direction of the centre spot. If the middle spot of the baulk line is occupied, the brown ball after being pocketed shall, if possible, be placed on the left-hand spot of the baulk line, and, failing that, the rule as above applies.

13. If the striker's ball is touching another, such ball not being playable, and he disturb the ball touching his own, the stroke is foul.

14. Should the striker's ball be so placed that he cannot play direct on the object ball, he is said to be "snookered."

## FOUL STROKES AND PENALTIES.

15. Foul strokes are made or penalties incurred by (1) "Pushing" instead of striking the ball, or striking the ball more than once; (2) Playing out of turn; (3) Playing with both feet off the floor; (4) Playing before all the balls have become station-

ary, when off the table, or wrongly spotted; (5) Playing with the wrong ball; (6) Touching or moving any ball, except in the legitimate manner set forth in these rules; (7) Forcing any ball off the table; (8) Wilfully interfering with an opponent, or the run of the balls, and refusing to obey the referee's decision; (9) Missing, running a coup, striking the wrong ball, or pocketing the white ball; (10) Playing at or pocketing any ball except in the proper rotation; (11) Striking two balls, other than two red balls, simultaneously; (12) Giving an intentional miss; (13) Pocketing more than one ball — other than red balls — by one stroke.

16. If the striker "push" his ball or strike it more than once, he cannot score, but is subject to any other penalty that he may incur by the stroke.

17. If a player play out of turn, he shall forfeit his next turn, otherwise the sequence of turns shall not be altered. If the error be discovered during his break, he cannot score from the last stroke made, and the balls shall be replaced by the marker as nearly as possible in the positions they occupied before the stroke objected to. The striker shall be credited with any previous scores, but is subject to any other penalty he may incur.

18. The striker cannot score by a stroke made with both feet off the floor, but is subject to any penalty he may otherwise incur.

19. If the striker play before all the balls have ceased rolling, or before a pool ball has been re-spotted, or whilst any pool ball has been wrongly spotted, he cannot score, and the next player in rotation shall proceed from the position in which the balls have been left. The striker is subject to any penalty he may otherwise incur.

20. If the striker play with the wrong ball, he shall be penalized in the value of the black ball.

21. If the striker touch a ball in play otherwise than in the proper manner laid down in these Rules, he cannot score and the balls shall be replaced. After the balls are replaced the stroke must be played, if the striker was still in play when the ball was moved or touched, and he is subject to any other penalty he may incur. Should he touch a ball after the completion of any stroke, *i. e.*, when the balls have become stationary, his scores from previous strokes shall hold good.

22. If the striker force any of the red or pool balls off the table, he shall be penalized in the value of the ball or balls so forced off. Should the ball or balls forced off the table be struck out of order, or of inferior value to the ball that should have been struck, the latter ball shall govern the penalty. Should he force his own ball off the table, he shall be penalized in the value of the ball aimed at, unless another ball of higher value be first struck, in which case such higher ball shall govern the penalty.

23. If a player refuse to continue the game when called upon to do so, or intentionally obstruct an opponent, or wilfully interfere

with the running of the balls, he shall be penalized in the total value of all the balls remaining in play.

24. If the striker miss the object ball, or run a coup, or pocket the white ball, he shall be penalized in the value of the ball aimed at; but, if he strike another ball or balls, he shall be penalized in the value of the first ball so struck, unless the ball so struck is of lower value than the ball aimed at and missed, in which case the penalty is governed by the value of the ball aimed at. Should the striker in pocketing any ball hole the white, he cannot score, and is penalized in the value of the ball pocketed. Should the striker (excepting as provided in *Rule 9*) pocket a ball other than the one aimed at, he cannot score, and is penalized in the value of such ball unless the ball pocketed is of lower value than the ball aimed at, in which case the penalty is governed by the value of the ball aimed at.

25. If the striker play at or pocket a ball except in the proper rotation, he shall be penalized in the value of the ball so played at or pocketed unless the ball so played at be of lower value than the ball which should have been selected, in which case the penalty is governed by the latter ball.

26. If the striker strike simultaneously a pool ball and a red ball, or two pool balls, he shall be penalized in the value of the higher ball.

27. If the striker pocket the white ball after contact with another, he shall be penalized in the value of the ball struck, unless the object ball so struck be out of order, in which case the penalty shall be governed by the ball of the higher value.

28. Should the striker give an intentional miss, he shall be penalized in the value of the black ball, and be compelled to play the stroke again. No score can accrue from such stroke, but the striker shall be subject to any further penalty he may incur.

29. If the striker pocket more than one ball, other than red balls, in one stroke, he cannot score, and is penalized in the value of the highest ball pocketed.

30. In the absence of a referee the marker of the room shall decide all disputes that may arise; and, if he does not know of the matter in dispute, the majority of the onlookers shall decide.

---

## ENGLISH POOL.

This game is known in England as Colom-Ball, or Following Pool. The balls are placed in a pool bottle, and shaken up by the marker, who then gives one to each candidate for play in rotation. The player who receives the white ball places it on the

spot, and the one who gets the red ball plays from within the D at the head of the table. The marker calls the colour of the player whose turn it is, and notifies him which ball will play on him, so that he may play for safety if he can. The following are Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co.'s rules :

The WHITE BALL is spotted.

RED BALL plays upon	.....	WHITE.
YELLOW	"	.....RED.
GREEN	"	.....YELLOW.
BROWN	"	.....GREEN.
BLUE	"	.....BROWN.
PINK	"	.....BLUE.
SPOT-WHITE	"	.....PINK.
SPOT-RED	"	.....SPOT-WHITE.
SPOT-YELLOW	"	.....SPOT-RED.
SPOT-GREEN	"	.....SPOT-YELLOW.
SPOT-BROWN	"	.....SPOT-GREEN.
SPOT-BLUE	"	.....SPOT-BROWN, and
WHITE	"	.....SPOT-BLUE.

1. When coloured balls are used, the players must play progressively, as the colours are placed on the pool marking-board, the top colour being No. 1.

2. Each player has *three* lives at starting. No. 1 places his ball on the "winning and losing" spot, No. 2 plays at No. 1, No. 3 at No. 2, and so on—each person playing at the last ball, unless the striker's ball be in hand, when he plays at the nearest ball.

3. When a striker loses a life the next in rotation plays at the ball nearest to his own; but if this player's ball be in hand, he plays at the ball nearest to the centre of the baulkline, whether it be in or out of baulk.

4. When any doubt arises as to the nearest ball, the marker measures the distance, and the player strikes at the ball declared to be nearest his own.

5. The baulk is no protection.

6. The player loses a life by pocketing his own ball off another, by running a coup, by missing the ball played on, by forcing his ball off the table, by playing *with* the wrong ball, by playing *at* the wrong ball, by playing out of his turn, by striking the wrong ball, or by having his ball pocketed by the next striker.

7. Should the striker pocket the ball he plays at, and by the same stroke pocket his own or force it over the table, *he loses a life* and not the person whose ball he pocketed.

8. Should the player strike the wrong ball, he pays the same forfeit to the person whose ball he should have played at as he would have done if he had pocketed it himself.

**9.** If the striker miss the ball he ought to play at, and by the same stroke pocket another ball, *he* loses a life, and not the person whose ball he pocketed ; in which case the striker's ball must be taken up, and both balls remain in hand until it be their several turns to play.

**10.** If the player inquire as to which is his ball, or if it be his turn to play, the marker or the players must give him the information sought.

**11.** If the striker, while taking aim, inquire which is the ball he ought to play at, and should be misinformed by the marker or by any of the company, he does not lose a life. His ball must in this case be replaced and the stroke played again.

**12.** When a ball or balls touch the striker's ball, or are in line between it and the ball he has to play at, so that it will prevent him hitting *any part of the object-ball*, such ball or balls must be taken up until the stroke be played, and, after the balls have ceased running, they must be replaced.

**13.** If a ball or balls are in the way of a striker's cue, so that he cannot play at his ball, he can have them taken up.

**14.** When the striker *takes* a life, he continues to play on as long as he can pocket a ball, or until the balls are all off the table, in which latter case he places his own ball on the spot as at the commencement.

**15.** The first player who loses his three lives is entitled to purchase, or *star*, by paying into the pool a sum equal to his original stake, for which he receives lives equal in number to the lowest number of lives on the board.

**16.** If the player first out refuse to star, the second player out may do so ; but if the second refuse, the third may star, and so on, until only two players are left in the pool, when the privilege of starring ceases.

**17.** Only one star is allowed in a pool.

**18.** If the striker move his own or any other ball *while in the act of striking*, the stroke is foul ; and if, by the same stroke, he pocket a ball or force it off the table, the owner of that ball does not lose a life, and the ball so pocketed must be placed on its original spot. But if by that foul stroke the player pocket his own ball or force it off the table, *he* loses a life.

**19.** If the striker's ball touch the one he has to play at, he is at liberty either to play at it or at any other ball on the table, and such stroke is not to be considered foul ; in such a case, however, the striker loses a life by running his ball into a pocket or forcing it over the table.

**20.** If, after making a hazard, the striker takes up his ball, or

stops it before it has done running, he cannot claim the life for the ball pocketed.

**21.** If, before a star, two or more balls, each having one life, are pocketed by the same stroke, the owner of the first ball struck can star; but if he refuse, the other player whose ball was pocketed may star.

**22.** Should the striker's ball stop on the place from which a ball has been taken up, the ball which has been removed must remain in hand until the spot is unoccupied, when it is to be replaced.

**23.** Should the striker's ball miss the ball played at, no person except the striker is allowed to stop the ball till it has ceased running or struck another ball.

**24.** Should the striker have his next player's ball removed, and his own ball stop on the spot it occupied, the next player must give a miss from baulk, for which miss he does not lose a life.

**25.** When a ball has been taken up, and any other than the next player's ball stop on the spot it occupied, the ball so taken up must remain in hand till it can be replaced. But if it be the turn of the ball in hand to play before the one occupying its proper place, the latter must be taken up till there be room to replace it.

**26.** If the corner of the cushion should prevent the striker from playing in a direct line, he can have any ball removed for the purpose of playing at the object-ball from a cushion.

**27.** When three players, each with one life, remain in a pool, and the striker make a miss, the other two divide without a stroke.

**28.** Neither of the last two players can star, but if they are left with an equal number of lives each they may divide the pool; the striker, however, is entitled to his stroke before the division.

**29.** All disputes are to be decided by the marker; but if he be interested in the game, they shall then be settled by a majority of the players.

---

## BLACK POOL.

This is a variation of English Colour-Ball Pool. A black ball is placed on the centre spot. The colours follow one another just as in English pool, until all the balls have come upon the table. After that, any ball on the table may be played at, and if it is pocketed, the player has the option of playing at the black ball, If he pockets it, each player pays him the amount of a life, so that the player whose ball was first pocketed would have to pay two.

one for his own ball and one for the black. If a ball is pocketed before the balls are all on the table, the player may play on the black; but the following players must play on their colours until the first round is complete. No one is ever dead, and the game may be continued indefinitely, although half an hour is the usual limit. The players share the expense of the table, as at Shell-out

---

## ENGLISH BILLIARDS.

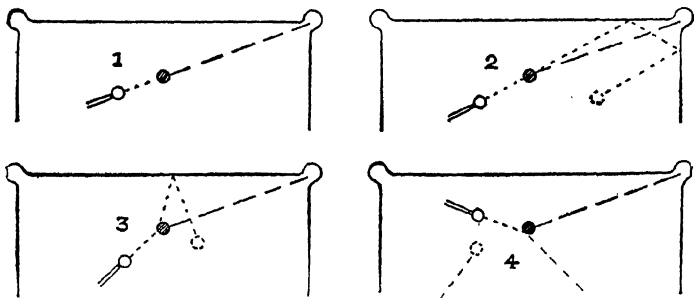
This game is played with three balls, one red and two white. Every winning hazard off the red counts 3; hazards off the white count 2, and all carroms count 2. If a player makes a carrom and a losing hazard on the same stroke, it counts 5 if the red was the object ball; 4 if the white was the object ball. A player may make 10 on one stroke by playing on the red, making a carrom, and pocketing all three balls. A miss counts one for the adversary; but if the player who makes a miss runs into a pocket or jumps off the table, his adversary counts 3.

The secret of success in the English game is not in gathering shots or rail nursing, but in repeated position; that is, playing shots so that the object ball returns to its position, the cue ball falling into a pocket and being played again from an advantageous position in the D. If the red ball is left in a good position for a losing hazard in either of the side pockets, the player should place his own ball in such a position in the D that he can drive the red to the bottom cushion and back again, leaving himself another easy hazard in the side pockets.

If the red is near a bottom pocket, and the player's ball is in hands, the beginner will invariably leave the red ball in baulk, even if he makes the hazard. The reason is that he strikes with just force enough to reach the red and go into the pocket, and this force is just enough to drive the red about the same distance in the opposite direction, leaving it where the cue ball came from—in baulk.

The English do not understand gathering shots, nursing, and cushion carroms so well as the Americans, and play chiefly for the winning and losing hazards. The objective point of the expert is the *spot stroke*, which consists in getting exactly behind the red ball when it is on its spot, and then driving it into the corner pocket, returning the cue ball to its position with a light draw shot. If the cue ball fails to come back exactly behind the red the position may be recovered in several ways, some of which are shown in the diagrams.





No. 1 is the perfect position for the spot stroke; the dotted lines in the others show the course that must be followed by the cue ball to recover the initial position.

*Man-of-war Game* is a variety of English billiards in which there are three white balls, each belonging to different players.

The following *LAWs* are taken, by permission, from the rules published by the Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co.

## ENGLISH BILLIARD LAWS.

1. The choice of balls and order of play shall, unless mutually agreed upon by the two players, be determined by stringing; and the striker whose ball stops nearest the lower [or bottom] cushion, after being forced from baulk up the table, may take which ball he likes, and play, or direct his opponent to play first, as he may deem expedient.

2. The red ball shall, at the opening of every game, be placed on the top [or red] spot, and replaced after being pocketed or forced off the table, or whenever the balls are broken.

3. Whoever breaks the balls, *i. e.*, opens the game, must play out of baulk, though it is not necessary that he shall strike the red ball.

4. The game shall be adjudged in favour of whoever first scores the number of points agreed on, when the marker shall call "game"; or it shall be given against whoever, after having once commenced, shall neglect or refuse to continue when called upon by his opponent to play.

5. If the striker scores by his stroke he continues until he ceases to make any points, when his opponent follows on.

**6.** If when moving the cue backward and forward, and prior to a stroke, it touches and moves the ball, the ball must be replaced to the satisfaction of an adversary, otherwise it is a foul stroke; but if the player strikes, and grazes any part of the ball with any part of the cue, it must be considered a stroke, and the opponent follows on.

**7.** If a ball rebounds from the table, and is prevented in any way, or by any object except the cushion, from falling to the ground, or if it lodges on a cushion and remains there, it shall be considered off the table, unless it is the red, which must be spotted.

**8.** A ball on the brink of the pocket need not be "challenged": if it ceases running and remains stationary, then falls in, it must be replaced, and the score thus made does not count.

**9.** Any ball or balls behind the baulk-line, or resting exactly upon the line, are not playable if the striker be in hand, and he must play out of baulk before hitting another ball.

**10.** Misses may be given with the point or butt of the cue, and shall count one for each against the player; or if the player strike his ball with the cue more than once a penalty shall be enforced, and the non-striker may oblige him to play again, or may call on the marker to place the ball at the point it reached or would have reached when struck first. [The butt may also be used for playing a ball in hand up the table in order to strike a ball in baulk.]

**11.** Foul strokes do not score to the player, who must allow his opponent to follow on. They are made thus: By striking a ball twice with the cue; by touching with the hand, ball, or cue an opponent's or the red ball; by playing with the wrong ball; by lifting both feet from the floor when playing; by playing at the striker's own ball and displacing it ever so little (except while taking aim, when it shall be replaced, and he shall play again).

**12.** The penalty for a foul stroke is losing the lead, and, in case of a score, an opponent must have the red ball spotted, and himself break the balls, when the player who made the foul must follow suit, both playing from the D. If the foul is not claimed the player continues to score, if he can.

**13.** After being pocketed or forced off the table the red ball must be spotted on the top spot, but if that is occupied by another ball the red must be placed on the centre spot between the middle pockets.

**14.** If in taking aim the player moves his ball and causes it to strike another, even without intending to make a stroke, a foul stroke may be claimed by an adversary. (See Rule Fifteenth.)

**15.** If a player fail to hit another ball, it counts one to his opponent ; but if by the same stroke the player's ball is forced over the table or into any pocket it counts three to his opponent.

**16.** Forcing any ball off the table, either before or after the score, causes the striker to gain nothing by the stroke.

**17.** In the event of either player using his opponent's ball and scoring, the red must be spotted and the balls broken again by the non-striker ; but if no score is made, the next player may take his choice of balls and continue to use the ball he so chooses to the end of the game. No penalty, however, attaches in either case unless the mistake be discovered before the next stroke.

**18.** No person except an opponent has a right to tell the player that he is using the wrong ball, or to inform the non-striker that his opponent has used the wrong ball ; and if the opponent does not see the striker use the ball, or, seeing him, does not claim the penalty, the marker is bound to score to the striker any points made.

**19.** Should the striker [whose ball is in hand], in playing up the table on a ball or balls in baulk, either by accident or design, strike one of them [with his own ball] without first going out of baulk, his opponent may have the balls replaced, score a miss, and follow on ; or may cause the striker to play again, or may claim a foul, and have the red spotted and the balls broken again.

**20.** The striker, when in hand, may not play at a cushion within the baulk (except by going first up the table) so as to hit balls that are within or without the line.

**21.** If in hand, and in the act of playing, the striker shall move his ball with insufficient strength to take it out of baulk, it shall be counted as a miss to the opponent, who, however, may oblige him to replace his ball and play again. [Failing to play out of baulk, the player may be compelled to play his stroke over again.]

**22.** If in playing a pushing stroke the striker pushes more than once it is unfair, and any score he may make does not count. His opponent follows by breaking the balls.

**23.** If in the act of drawing back his cue the striker knocks the ball into a pocket, it counts three to the opponent, and is reckoned a stroke.

**24.** If a foul stroke be made while giving a miss, the adversary may enforce the penalty or claim the miss, but he cannot do both.

**25.** If either player take up a ball, unless by consent, the adversary may have it replaced, or may have the balls broken ; but if any other person touches or takes up a ball it must be replaced by the marker as nearly as possible.

**26.** If, after striking, the player or his opponent should by any means obstruct or hasten the speed of any ball, it is at the opponent or player's option to have them replaced, or to break the balls.

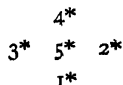
**27.** No player is allowed to receive, nor any by-stander to offer advice on the game; but should any person be appealed to by the marker or either player he has a right to offer an opinion; or if a spectator sees the game wrongly marked he may call out, but he must do so prior to another stroke.

**28.** The marker shall act as umpire, but any question may be referred by either player to the company, the opinion of the majority of whom shall be acted upon.

---

## PIN POOL.

The game of Pin Pool is played with two white balls and one red, together with five small wooden pins, which are set up in the middle of the table, diamond fashion, each pin having a value to accord with the position it occupies.



The pin nearest the string line is No. 1; that to the right of it is No. 2; to the left, No. 3; the pin farthest from the string line is No. 4; and the central or black pin, No. 5. These numbers may be chalked on the cloth in front of each particular pin.

Neither carroms nor hazards count; for pocketing a ball (when playing on a pocket table), or causing it to jump off the table or lodge on the cushion, or for missing altogether, nothing is forfeited other than the stroke. The only penalty is that the ball so offending shall be spotted upon the white-ball spot at the foot of the table, or if that be occupied then on the nearest spot thereto unoccupied.

When the pins are arranged, the rotation of the players is determined in like manner as in Fifteen-Ball Pool, after which each player receives from the marker a little numbered ball which is placed in the player's cup on the pool board, and the number of which is not known to any of his opponents.

The object of the player is to knock down as many pins as will count exactly thirty-one when the number on the small ball held by him is added to their aggregate; thus, if the small ball is No. 9, the player will have to gain twenty-two points on the pins before calling game, and whoever first gets exactly thirty-one points in this manner wins the pool.

A white ball is spotted five inches from the lower end of the table, on a line drawn down the centre; and the red ball placed upon its own spot at the foot of the table.

Player No. 1 must play with the remaining white ball from any point within the string-line at the head of the table at either the red or white ball, or place his own on the string spot. Player No. 2 may play with any ball on the table—red or white. After the first stroke has been played, the players, in their order, may play with or at any ball upon the board.

Unless the player has played on some ball upon the board before knocking down a pin, the stroke under all circumstances goes for nothing, and the pin or pins must be replaced and the player's ball put upon the white-ball spot at the foot of the table or if that be occupied, on the nearest unoccupied spot thereto. But should two balls be in contact the player can play with either of them, direct at the pins, and any count so made is good.

If a player, with one stroke, knocks down the four outside pins and leaves the black one standing on its spot, it is called a Natural, or *Ranche*, and under any and all circumstances it wins the game.

When a player gets more than 31, he is *burst*, and he may either play again immediately with the same ball he has in the pool rack, starting at nothing of course, or he may take a new ball. If he takes a new ball he may either keep it or keep his old one, but he cannot play again until it comes to his turn.

---

## THE LITTLE CORPORAL.

This game is the regular Three-Ball Carrom Game with a small pin added, like those used in Pin Pool, which is set up in the centre of the table. The carroms and forfeits count as in the regular Three-Ball Game, but the knocking down of the pin scores five points for the striker, who plays until he fails to effect a carrom or knock down the pin. A ball must be hit by the cue-ball before the pin can be scored; playing at the pin direct is not allowed. The pin must be set up where it falls; but in case it goes off the table or lodges on the top of the cushion it must be placed upon the centre spot. The pin leaning against the cushion must be scored as down, and when the pin lodges in the corner of the table, so that it cannot be hit with the ball, it is to be set up on the centre spot. One hundred points generally constitute a game, but any number of points may be agreed upon.

## THE SPANISH GAME OF BILLIARDS.

This game is played in the South, California, and in Mexico and Cuba, and is played with two white and one red ball, and five pins placed similar to those in Pin Pool. The red ball is placed on the red-ball spot, and the first player strikes at it from within the baulk semicircle. The game is scored by winning and losing hazards, carroms, and by knocking over the pins. It is usually played thirty points up.

The player who knocks down a pin after striking a ball gains *two* points, if he knocks down two pins he gains *four* points, and so on, scoring two points for each pin knocked down. If he knock down the middle pin alone he gains *five* points. The player who pockets the red ball gains *three* points and two for each pin knocked down by the same stroke. The player who pockets the white ball gains two points, and two for each pin knocked over with the same stroke. Each carrom counts two. The player who knocks down a pin or pins with his own ball before striking another ball loses two for every pin so knocked down. The player who pockets his own ball without hitting another ball forfeits three points; for missing altogether he forfeits one point. The striker who forces his own ball off the table without hitting another ball forfeits *three* points, and if he does so after making a carrom or pocket he loses as many points as he would otherwise have gained. The rules of the American Carrom Game, except where they conflict with the foregoing rules, govern this game also.

---

## BOTTLE POOL.

The game of Bottle Pool is played on a pool table with one white ball, the 1 and 2 ball, and pool-bottle. The 1 and 2 balls must be spotted, respectively, at the foot of the table, at the left and right diamond nearest each pocket, and the pool-bottle is placed standing on its neck on the spot in the centre of the table, and when it falls it must be set up, if possible, where it rests.

Carrom on the two object-balls counts 1 point; Pocketing the 1 ball counts 1 point; Pocketing the 2 ball counts 2 points; Carrom from ball and upsetting bottle counts 5 points. The game consists of 31 points. The player having the least number of points at the finish of the game shall be adjudged the loser.

Any number of persons can play, and the rotation of the players is decided as in ordinary pool. Player No. 1 must play with the

white ball from any point within the string at the head of the table, at either the 1 or 2 ball at his option. The player who leads must play at and strike one of the object-balls before he can score a carrom on the pool-bottle. If a player carrom on the bottle from either of the object-balls, in such a way as to seat the bottle on its base, he wins the game, without further play.

Should the 1 or 2 ball in any way, during the stroke, touch the bottle and the bottle is in the same play knocked over or stood on its base by the cue-ball, the stroke does not count. If the player forces the bottle off the table or into a pocket, the bottle must be spotted on its proper spot in the centre of the table, the player loses his shot and forfeits one point, and the next player plays.

A player who makes more than 31 points is burst, and must start his string anew; all that he makes in excess of 31 points count on his new string, and the next player plays.

---

#### BILLIARD TEXT BOOKS.

##### *American Game :—*

Modern Billiards, Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co.  
Billiard Laws, Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co.  
Manuel du Biliard, by Vignaux.  
Garnier's Practice Shots.  
Daly's Billiard Book, 1916, by Maurice Daly.

##### *English Game :—*

Billiards Simplified, Burroughs and Watts.  
Billiards, by W. Cook.  
Billiards, by Joseph Bennet.  
Billiards, by Maj.-Gen. Drayson.  
Practical Billiards, by W. Duffton.  
The Spot Stroke, by Joseph Bennet.

## CHANCE AND PROBABILITY.

In calculating the probability of any event, the difficulty is not, as many persons imagine, in the process, but in the statement of the proposition, and the great trouble with many of those who dispute on questions of chance is that they are unable to think clearly.

The chance is either for or against the event; the probability is always for it. The chances are expressed by the fraction of this probability, the denominator being the total number of events possible, and the numerator the number of events favourable. For instance: The probability of throwing an ace with one cast of a single die is expressed by the fraction  $\frac{1}{6}$ ; because six different numbers may be thrown, and they are all equally probable, but only one of them would be an ace. Odds are found by deducting the favourable events from the total, or the numerator from the denominator. In the example, the odds against throwing an ace are therefore 5 to 1. The greater the odds against any event the more *improbable* it is said to be, and the more *hazardous* it is to risk anything upon it.

When an event happens which is very improbable, the person to whom it happens is considered *lucky*, and the greater the improbability, the greater his luck. If two men play a game, the winner is not considered particularly lucky; but if one wanted only two points to go out and the other wanted a hundred, the latter would be a very lucky man if he won.

It is a remarkable fact that luck is the only subject in the world on which we have no recognised authority, although it is a topic of the most universal interest. Strictly speaking, to be lucky simply means to be successful, the word being a derivative of *gelingen*, to succeed. There are a few general principles connected with luck which should be understood by every person who is interested in games of chance. In the first place, luck attaches to persons and not to things. It is useless for an unlucky man to change the seats or the cards, for no matter which he chooses the personal equation of good or bad luck adhering to him for the time being cannot be shaken off. In the second place, all men are lucky in some things, and not in others; and they are lucky or unlucky in



those things at certain times and for certain seasons. This element of luck seems to come and go like the swell of the ocean. In the lives of some men the tide of fortune appears to be a long steady flood, without a ripple on the surface. In others it rises and falls in waves of greater or lesser length; while in others it is irregular in the extreme; splashing choppy seas to-day; a storm to-morrow that smashes everything; and then calm enough to make ducks and drakes with the pebbles on the shore. In the lives of all the tide of fortune is uncertain; for the man has never lived who could be sure of the weather a week ahead. In the nature of things this must be so, for if there were no ups and downs in life, there would be no such things as chance and luck, and the laws of probability would not exist.

The greatest fallacy in connection with luck is the belief that certain men *are* lucky, whereas the truth is simply that they *have been* lucky up to that time. They have succeeded so far, but that is no guarantee that they will succeed again in any matter of pure chance. This is demonstrated by the laws governing *the probability of successive events*.

Suppose two men sit down to play a game which is one of pure chance; poker dice, for instance. You are backing Mr. Smith, and want to know the probability of his winning the first game. There are only two possible events, to win or lose, and both are equally probable, so 2 is the denominator of our fraction. The number of favourable events is 1, which is our numerator, and the fraction is therefore  $\frac{1}{2}$ , which always represents equality.

Now for the successive events. Your man wins the first game, and they proceed to play another. What are the odds on Smith's winning the second game? It is evident that they are exactly the same as if the first game had never been played, because there are still only two possible events, and one of them will be favourable to him. Suppose he wins that game, and the next, and the next, and so on until he has won nine games in succession, what are the odds against his winning the tenth also? Still exactly an even thing.

But, says a spectator, Smith's luck must change; because it is very improbable that he will win ten games in succession. The odds against such a thing are 1023 to 1, and the more he wins the more probable it is that he will lose the next game. This is what gamblers call the *maturity of the chances*, and it is one of the greatest fallacies ever entertained by intelligent men. Curiously enough, the men who believe that luck must change in some circumstances, also believe in betting on it to continue in others. When they are *in the vein* they will "follow their luck" in perfect confidence that it will continue. The same men will not bet on another man's luck, even if he is "in the vein," because "the maturity of the chances" tells them that it cannot last!

## 612 (Chance.) *SUCCESSIVE EVENTS.*

If Smith and his adversary had started with an agreement to play ten games, the odds against either of them winning any number in succession would be found by taking

GAMES.	ODDS.
One	1 to 1
Two	3 to 1
Three	7 to 1
Four	15 to 1
Five	31 to 1
Six	63 to 1
Seven	127 to 1
Eight	255 to 1
Nine	511 to 1
Ten	1023 to 1

the first game as an even chance, expressed by unity, or 1. The odds against the same player winning the second game also would be twice 1 plus 1, or 3 to 1; and the odds against his winning three games in succession would be twice 3 plus 1, or 7 to 1, and so on, according to the figures shown in the margin.

That this is so may easily be demonstrated by putting down on a sheet of paper the total number of events that may happen if any agreed number of games are played, expressing wins by a stroke, and losses by a cipher.

Take the case of two games only. There are four different events

GAMES.	
1st	2nd
1	1
1	0
0	1
0	0

which may happen to Smith, as shown in the margin. He may win both games or lose both; or he may win one and lose the other, either first. Only one of these four equally probable events being favourable to his winning both games, and three being unfavourable, the odds are 3 to 1 that he does not win both; but these are the odds *before he begins to play*. Having won the first game, there are only two events possible, those which begin with a win, and he has an equal

chance to win again.

If the agreement had been to play three games, there would have been eight possible events, one of which must happen but all

GAMES.		
1st	2nd	3rd
1	1	1
1	1	0
1	0	1
1	0	0
0	0	0
0	0	1
0	1	0
0	1	1

of which were equally probable. These are shown in the margin. If Smith wins the first game, there are only four possible events remaining; those in which the first game was won. Of these, there are two in which he may win the second game, and two in which he may lose it, showing that it is still exactly an even thing that he will win the second game.

If he wins the second game, there are only two possible events, the first two on the list in the margin, which begin with two wins for Smith. Of these he has one chance to win the third game, and one to lose it. No matter how far we continue a series of successive events it will always be found that having won a certain number of games, it is still exactly an even thing that he will win the next also. The odds of 1023 to 1 against his winning ten games in succession existed only before he began to play. After he has won the first game, the odds against his winning the remaining nine are only 511 to 1, and so on, until it is an even thing that he wins the tenth, even if he has won the nine preceding it.

In the statistics of 4000 coups at roulette at Monte Carlo it was found that if one colour had come five times in succession, it was an exactly even bet that it would come again; for in twenty runs of five times there were ten which went on to six. In the author's examination of 500 consecutive deals of faro, there were 815 cards that either won or lost three times in succession, and of these 412 won or lost out. In a gambling house in Little Rock a roulette wheel with three zeros on it did not come up green for 115 rolls, and several gamblers lost all they had betting on the eagle and O's. When the game closed the banker informed them that the green had come up more than twenty times earlier in the evening. They thought the maturity of the chances would compel the green to come; whereas the chances really were that it would not come, as it had over-run its average so much earlier in the evening. The pendulum swings as far one way as the other, but no method of catching it on the turn has ever yet been discovered.

**Compound Events.** In order to ascertain the probability of compound or concurrent events, we must find the product of their separate probability. For instance: The odds against your cutting an ace from a pack of 52 cards are 48 to 4, or 12 to 1; because there are 52 cards and only 4 of them are aces. The probability fraction is therefore  $\frac{1}{13}$ . But the probabilities of drawing an ace from two separate packs are  $\frac{1}{13} \times \frac{1}{13} = \frac{1}{169}$ , or 168 to 1 against it.

Suppose a person bets that you will not cut a court card, K Q or J, from a pack of 52 cards, what are the odds against you? In this case there are three favourable events, but only one can happen, and as any of them will preclude the others, they are called **conflicting events**, and the probability of one of them is the sum of the probability of all of them. In this case the probability of any one event separately is  $\frac{1}{13}$ , and the sum of the three is therefore  $\frac{1}{13} + \frac{1}{13} + \frac{1}{13} = \frac{3}{13}$ ; or ten to 3 against it.

In order to prove any calculation of this kind all that is necessary is to ascertain the number of remaining events, and if their sum, added to that already found, equals unity, the calculation must be correct. For instance: The probability of turning a black trump at whist is  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$ ; because there are two black suits of 13 cards each. The only other event which can happen is a red trump, the probability of which is also  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and the sum of these two probabilities is therefore  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$ , or unity.

Another fallacy in connection with the maturity of the chances is shown in betting against two successive events, both improbable, one of which has happened. The odds against drawing two aces in succession from a pack of 52 cards are 220 to 1; but after an ace has been drawn the odds against the second card being an ace also are only 16 to 1, although some persons would be mad

enough to bet 1000 to 1 against it, on the principle that the first draw was a great piece of luck and the second ace was practically impossible. While the four aces were in the pack the probability of drawing one was  $\frac{4}{52}$ . One ace having been drawn, 3 remain in 51 cards, so the probability of getting the second is  $\frac{3}{51}$ , or  $\frac{1}{17}$ . Before a card was drawn, the probability of getting two aces in succession was the product of these fractions;  $\frac{4}{52} \times \frac{3}{51} = \frac{1}{171}$ . On the same principle the odds against two players cutting cards that are a tie, such as two Fours, are not 220 to 1, unless it is specified that the first card shall be a Four. The first player having cut, the odds against the second cutting a card of equal value are only 16 to 1.

**Dice.** In calculating the probabilities of throws with two or more dice, we must multiply together the total number of throws possible with each die separately, and then find the number of throws that will give the result required. Suppose two dice are used. Six different throws may be made with each, therefore  $6 \times 6 = 36$  different throws are possible with the two dice together. What are the odds against one of these dice being an ace? A person unfamiliar with the science of probabilities would say that as two numbers must come up, and there are only six numbers altogether, the probability is  $\frac{2}{6}$ , or exactly 2 to 1 against an ace being thrown. But this is not correct, as will be immediately apparent if we write out all the 36 possible throws with two dice; for we shall find that only 11 of the 36 contain an ace, and 25 do not. The proper way to calculate this is to take the chances against the ace on each die separately, and then to multiply them together. There are five other numbers that might come up, and the fraction of their probability is  $\frac{5}{6} \times \frac{5}{6} = \frac{25}{36}$ , or 25 to 11 in their favour.

Take the case of three dice: As three numbers out of six must come up, it might be supposed that it was an even thing that one would be an ace. But the possible throws with three dice are  $6 \times 6 \times 6 = 216$ ; and those that do not contain an ace are  $5 \times 5 \times 5 = 125$ ; so that the odds against getting an ace in one throw with three dice, or three throws with one die, are  $\frac{125}{91}$ , or 125 to 91 against it.

To find the probability of getting a given total on the faces of two or three dice we must find the number of ways that the desired number can come. In the 36 possible throws with two dice there are 6 which will show a total of seven pips. The probability of throwing seven is therefore  $\frac{6}{36}$ , or 5 to 1 against it. A complete list of the combinations with two dice were given in connection with Craps.

**Poker.** In calculating the probability of certain conflicting events, both of which cannot occur, but either of which would be favourable, we must make the denominator of our fraction equal

in both cases, which will, of course, necessitate a proportionate change in our numerator. Suppose a poker player has three of a kind, and intends to draw one card only, the odds against his getting a full hand are  $\frac{1}{18}$ ; against getting four of a kind,  $\frac{1}{18}$ . To find the total probability of improvement, we must make the first fraction proportionate to the last, which we can do by multiplying it by 3. The result will be  $\frac{3}{18} + \frac{1}{18} = \frac{4}{18}$ ; showing that the total chance of improvement is 1 in 12, or 11 to 1 against it.

**Whist.** To calculate the probable positions of certain named cards is rather a difficult matter, but the process may be understood from a simple example. Suppose a suit so distributed that you have four to the King, and each of the other players has three cards; what are the probabilities that your partner has both Ace and Queen? The common solution is to put down all the possible positions of the two named cards, and finding only one out of nine to answer, to assume that the odds are 8 to 1 against partner having both cards. This is not correct, because the nine positions are not equally probable. We must first find the number of possible positions for the Ace and Queen separately, afterward multiplying them together, which will give us the denominator; and then the number of positions that are favourable, which will give us the numerator.

As there are nine unknown cards, and the Ace may be any one of them, it is obvious that the Queen may be any one of the remaining eight, which gives us  $9 \times 8 = 72$  different ways for the two cards to lie. To find how many of these 72 will give us both cards in partner's hand we must begin with the ace, which may be any one of his three cards. The Queen may be either of the other two, which gives us the numerator,  $3 \times 2 = 6$ ; and the fraction of probability,  $\frac{6}{72} = \frac{1}{12}$ ; or 11 to 1 against both Ace and Queen,

If we wished to find the probability of his having the Ace, but not the Queen, our denominator would remain the same; but the numerator would be the three possible positions of the Ace, multiplied by the six possible positions of the Queen among the six other unknown cards, in the other hands, giving us the fraction  $\frac{18}{72}$ . The same would be true of the Queen but not the Ace. To prove both these, we must find the probability that he has neither Ace nor Queen. There being six cards apart from his three, the Ace may be any one of them, and the Queen may be any one of the remaining five. This gives us  $6 \times 5 = 30$ , and the fraction  $\frac{30}{72}$ . If we now add these four numerators together, we have:—for both cards in partner's hand, 6; for Ace alone, 18; for Queen alone, 18; and for neither, 30; a total of 72, or unity, proving all the calculations correct.

In some of the problems connected with Whist, it is important to know the probability of the suits being distributed in various ways among the four players at the table: or, what is the same

thing, the probable distribution of the four suits in any one hand.

DISTRIBUTIONS.	TIMES IN 1000
8 2 2 1	2
8 3 1 1	1½
8 3 2 0	1
8 4 1 0	½
8 5 0 0	0
7 2 2 2	5
7 3 2 1	19
7 3 3 0	3
7 4 1 1	4
7 4 2 0	3
7 5 1 0	1
7 6 0 0	0
6 3 2 2	57
6 3 3 1	35
6 4 2 1	47
6 4 3 0	13
6 5 1 1	7
6 5 2 0	6
6 6 1 0	1
5 3 3 2	155
5 4 2 2	106
5 4 3 1	130
5 4 4 0	12
5 5 2 1	32
5 5 3 0	9
4 3 3 3	105
4 4 3 2	215
4 4 4 1	30

The author is indebted to Dr. Pole's "Philosophy of Whist" for these calculations. As an example of the use of this table, suppose it was required to find the probability of any other player at the table holding four or more trumps if you had six. Take all the combinations in which the figure 6 appears, and add together the number of times they will probably occur. That will be your denominator, 166. The numerator will be the number of times that the combinations occur which contain a figure larger than 3, in addition to the 6. This will be found to be 74, and the probability will therefore be  $\frac{74}{166}$ .

**MARTINGALES.** Many gamblers believe that as the science of probabilities teaches us that events will equalise themselves in time, all that is necessary is to devise some system that will keep a person from guessing, so that he may catch the pendulum as it swings; and to add to it some system of betting, so that he will have the best of it in the long run. Some content themselves with playing a "system" against banking games, which is merely a guide to the placing of the bets, the simplest example of which would be to bet always on heads if a coin was tossed a thousand times, or to bet on nothing but red at Roulette. Others depend more on martingales, which are guides to the amount of the bets themselves, irrespective of what they are placed on.

The most common form of martingale is called *doubling up*, which proceeds upon the theory that if you lose the first time and bet double the amount the next time, and continue to double until you win, you must eventually win the original amount staked. If there was no end to your capital, and no betting limit to the game, this would be an easy way to make money; but all banking games have studied these systems, and have so arranged matters that they can extend their heartiest welcome to those who play them.

In the first place, by simply doubling up you are giving the bank the best of it, because you are not getting the proper odds. If you double up five times you are betting 16 to 1; but the odds against five successive events are 31 to 1, as we have already seen, and the

bank should pay you 31 instead of 16. You should not only double, but add the original amount of the stake each time, betting 1, 3, 7, 15, 31, 63, and so on. If you do this, you will win the amount of your original stake for every bet you make, instead of only for every time you win. This looks well, but as a matter of fact doubling up is only another way of borrowing small sums which will have to be paid back in one large sum when you can probably least afford it.

Suppose the game is Faro, the chips five dollars a stack, and the limit on cases twenty-five dollars. The limit on cases will then be 400 chips. If eight successive events go against your "system," which they will do about once in 255 times, your next bet will be beyond the limit, and the banker will not accept it. At Monte Carlo the smallest bet is a dollar, and the limit is \$2,400. They roll about 4,000 coups a week, and if you were to bet on every one of them, doubling up, you would win about \$1,865, one dollar at a time, and would lose \$4,092 simply through being unable to follow your system beyond the limit of the game during the two or three occasions, in the 4,000 coups, that your system would go against you for eleven or more coups in succession. It is useless to say it would not go against you so often, for probabilities teach us that it would be more wonderful if it did not than if it did.

It must never be forgotten that the most wonderful things that happen are not more wonderful than those that don't happen. If you tossed a coin a thousand times, and did not once toss heads eight times in succession, it would be four times more surprising than if you tossed heads ten times in succession.

**Progression.**

This is a favourite martingale with those who have not the courage or the money to double up. It consists in starting with a certain amount for the first bet, say ten dollars, and adding a dollar every time the bet is lost, or taking off a dollar every time a bet is won. If the player wins as many bets as he loses, and there is no percentage against him, he gets a dollar for every bet he wins, no matter how many bets he makes, or in what order the bets are won and lost, so that the number won equals the number lost. That this is so may be easily demonstrated by setting down on a sheet of paper any imaginary order of bets, such as the ten shown in the margin, five of which are won, and five lost; the net profit on the five bets won being five dollars. No matter how correctly the player may be guessing, and how much the luck runs his way, he wins smaller and smaller amounts, until at last he is "pinched off." But if a long series of events goes against him his bets become larger and

Bets	
Won.	Lost.
10	-
9	-
8	-
-	7
-	8
9	-
-	8
-	9
10	-
-	9
<hr/>	
46	41

larger, but he must keep up the progression until he gets even. If ten bets go his way he wins \$55; if ten go against him he loses \$145.

It is said that Pettibone made a fortune playing progression at Faro, which is very likely, for among the thousands of men who play it the probabilities are that one will win all the time, just as the probabilities are that if a thousand men play ten games of Seven Up, some man will win all ten games. At the same time it is equally probable that some man will lose all ten.

Some players progress, but never pinch, keeping account on a piece of paper how many bets they are behind, and playing the maximum until they have won as many bets as they have lost. Against a perfectly fair game, with no percentage and no limit, and with capital enough to follow the system to the end, playing progression would pay a man about as much as he could make in any good business with the same capital and with half the worry; but as things really are in gambling houses and casinos, all martingales are a delusion and a snare. It is much better, if one must gamble, to trust to luck alone, and it is an old saying that the player without a system is seldom without a dollar. It is the men with systems who have to borrow a stake before they can begin to play.

R. A. Proctor gives a martingale that may be used against any game that pays even money on any of its chances. Suppose you want to win \$5. Divide a card into three vertical columns, and under M (martingale) put down 1, 2, 3. Now bet \$1 until you lose it. Put this 1 down under M and L (losses) and bet the amount of the top and bottom figures, 2. If you lose this, put the 2 under M and L and bet the top and bottom again, which will now be 3. If you win, put the 3 under W only (winnings) and cross out the top and bottom figures under M.

Now bet the remaining top and bottom figures, and put down as before, win or lose. When all the M column have been crossed out, you have won your \$5 and the \$1 you started with, as you will discover if you add the columns W and L, and note the difference.

Such matters as calculating the probability of a certain horse getting a place, the odds against all the horses at the post being given, would be out of place in a work of this kind; but those interested in such chances may find rules for ascertaining their probability in some of the following text books.

#### TEXT BOOKS.

- Calcul de Probabilité, by Bertrand.  
 Philosophy of Whist, by Dr. Pole.  
 Chance and Luck, by R. A. Proctor.  
 Betting and Gambling, by Major Churchill.



## TEN PINS.

The standard American game of Ten Pins is played upon an *alley* 41 or 42 inches wide, and 60 feet long from the head pin to the foul or scratch line, from behind which the player must deliver his ball. There should be at least 15 feet run back of the foul line, and the gutters on each side of the alley must be deep enough to allow a ball to pass without touching any of the pins standing on the alley.

7	8	9	10	<i>The Pins</i> are spotted as shown in the margin, the
4	5	6		centres 12 inches apart, and those of the back row
2	3			3 inches from the edge of the pit. The regulation
1				pins are 15 inches high, $2\frac{1}{4}$ diam. at the base, 15

 inches circumference  $4\frac{1}{2}$  from the bottom, and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  at the neck. *The Balls* must not exceed 27 inches in circumference in any direction, but smaller balls may be used.

**Frames.** Each player rolls ten frames or innings, in each of which he is supposed to have three balls, although as a matter of fact he rolls two only. In match games, two alleys are used, and the players roll one inning on each alternately.

**A Strike** is made when all ten pins are knocked down with the first ball of the innings, and it is scored on the blackboard with a cross, the number of pins made with the three balls being filled in afterward. **A Spare** is made when all ten pins are knocked down with the two balls of one inning, and it is marked with a diagonal stroke. If the player fails to get either a strike or a spare, it is a **Break**, marked with a horizontal line, under which is written the actual number of pins down. After each ball is rolled any pins that have fallen on the alley are called **dead-wood**, and must be removed before the second ball is rolled.

**Counting.** If a player makes a strike in one inning, all that he makes on the next two balls rolled, whether in one inning or not, counts also on the strike, so as to give him the total score on three balls for the frame. Three successive strikes would give him 30 points on the first frame, with a ball still to roll to complete the second frame, and two balls to roll to complete the third. If he got two strikes in succession, and 5 pins on the first ball of the third frame, 4 on the second ball, the first frame would be

## 620 (Ten Pins.) COUNTING AND SCORING.

worth 25, the second frame 19, and the break on the third frame 9; making his total score 53 for the three frames.

If the player makes a spare in one inning, all the pins knocked down by the first ball of the next inning count also on the spare. Suppose a spare to be followed by a strike, the frame in which the spare was made would be worth 20. If he made 5 pins only, the spare would be worth 15.

Although the player is supposed to have three balls in each inning, and is allowed to count all he makes on three balls if he gets a strike or a spare, he is not allowed to roll three balls on a break. It was formerly the custom to let him roll the third ball on the chance of getting a break of 10. This was afterward changed to giving him 10 pins, without rolling for them, if he got 9 on two balls; but the present rule is to call it a break if he does not get a strike or a spare in two balls, and not to waste time in rolling the third ball.

**Scoring.** Instead of putting down the amount made in each inning, the total of the frame is added to the total of the previous score, so that the last figure put down shows the total score up to and including that frame. The following illustration shows the total score of a player for ten innings. The top line of figures gives the number of the frame. The second shows the number of pins knocked down by each ball rolled, and the third line shows how the scores would be actually put down on the blackboard, the strike, spare, and break marks being placed above the figures. With the exception of the second line of figures, which is put in for purposes of illustration only, this might be a copy of an actual score.

Frames	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Pins	8-2	5-5	10	9-0	7-2	8-2	10	8-2	8-1	7-3-9
Score	\ 15	\ 35	X 54	— 63	— 72	\ 92	X 112	\ 140	— 149	\ 168

As the player made a spare on the last frame, he had another ball to roll, on what was practically a new frame, with which he made 9 pins.

**Averages.** If a team is playing a match, and one of the players is unavoidably absent, it is the custom to give him credit for his average, according to the records of his previous games during the tournament or the season. This is considered better than appointing a substitute to play for him.

There are a great many varieties of Ten Pins, the most interesting of which will be found described in the following Laws of the game, which are reprinted here by the kind permission of the Brunswick-Balke-Collender Co., from their 1908 edition of the "Bowler's Guide."

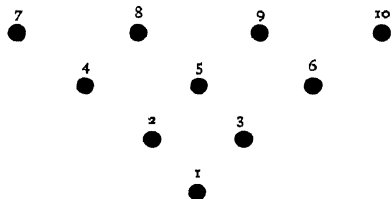
## BOWLING ALLEY LAWS.

### RULES AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING THE GAME OF AMERICAN TEN PINS.

*Revised at Louisville, Ky., March 19-21, 1906. In effect  
Sept. 1, 1906.*

The alleys upon which the game shall be played shall not be less than 41 nor more than 42 inches in width. The length from the centre of No. 1 pin spot to the foul line shall be 60 feet. Back of the foul line there shall be a clear run of not less than 15 feet. The pin spots shall be clearly and distinctly described on or imbedded in the alleys and shall be so placed 12 inches apart from centre to centre. They shall be  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches in diameter. The pin spots numbered 7, 8, 9 and 10 shall be placed 3 inches from the pit edge of the alleys, measuring from the edge to the centre of such pin spots.

The pins shall be spotted on the pin spots placed upon the alleys according to the following diagram, and the pins and spots shall be known by the numbers as follows:



The pins shall be of the following design and measurements: 15 inches in height,  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches in diameter at their base, 15 inches in circumference at a point  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches from their base,  $11\frac{5}{8}$  inches in circumference at a point  $7\frac{1}{4}$  inches from their base,  $5\frac{1}{4}$  inches in circumference at the neck, a point 10 inches from the base; 8 inches in circumference at the head, a point  $13\frac{1}{2}$  inches from the base. The taper from point to point shall be gradual, so that all lines shall have a graceful curve.

The balls shall not in any case exceed 27 inches in circumference nor exceed 16 pounds in weight. Any sized ball of less circumference or weight may be used.

Two alleys immediately adjoining each other shall be used in all games. The contesting teams shall successively and in regular order roll one frame on one alley, and for the next frame alternate and use the other alley, so alternating each frame until the game is completed.

In delivering the ball the player must not permit any part of his foot, while any portion thereof is in contact with the alleys, to rest or extend on, over or beyond the foul line, nor shall any part of his person be permitted to come in contact with any part of the alleys beyond the foul line, at any time before the delivered ball shall have reached the pins. A ball delivered contrary to the provisions of this rule shall be a foul ball, and shall be so declared by the umpire immediately such ball so becomes foul.

No count shall be made on a foul ball, and any pins which are knocked down or displaced thereby shall be at once re-spotted. A foul ball shall count as a ball rolled against the player.

Pins which are knocked down or displaced by a ball which leaves the alley before reaching the pins, or from a ball rebounding from the rear cushions, do not count, and they shall be immediately re-spotted.

Every ball delivered, unless it be declared a dead ball by the umpire, shall be counted against the player.

Pins which are knocked down by another pin rebounding in the play from the side partition or rear cushion are counted as pins down.

Pins which are knocked down or displaced from any cause except by a fairly delivered ball shall in all cases be re-spotted.

Should a player by mistake roll on the wrong alley, or out of his turn, or be interfered with in his play by another bowler or spectator, or should any of the pins at which he is playing be displaced or knocked down in any manner before his delivered ball reaches the pins, or should his ball come in contact with any foreign obstacle on the alleys, then the ball so delivered by him shall be immediately declared a dead ball by the umpire, and such ball shall not count, and shall be immediately re-rolled by the player after the cause for declaring such ball dead has been removed.

Pins which are knocked down by a fair ball, and which remain lying on the alley or in the gutters, are termed dead wood, and shall be removed before the next ball is rolled.

Should a standing pin fall by removing dead wood, such pin or pins shall be at once resotted.

Should a pin be broken or otherwise badly damaged during the game, it shall be at once replaced by another as nearly uniform with the set in use as possible. The umpire shall in all such cases be the sole judge in the matter of replacing such pin or pins.

Each player shall roll two balls in each frame except when he shall make a strike, or when a second strike or spare is made in

the tenth frame, when the player shall complete that frame by rolling a third ball. In such cases the frame shall be completed on the alley on which the first strike or spare is made.

A strike is made when the player bowls down the ten pins with his first ball delivered in any frame and is credited and designated in the score by an X in the upper right hand corner of the frame, and the count in such frame is left open until the player shall have rolled his next two balls, when all pins made, counting ten for a strike, shall be credited therein.

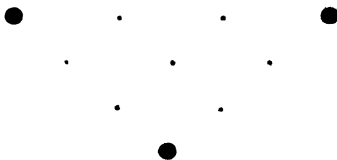
A spare is made when the player bowls down all the pins with his second ball in any frame, and is credited and designated with / in the upper right hand corner of the frame in which it is made. The count in such frame is left open until such player shall roll his next ball in the succeeding frame, when the number of pins rolled down thereby shall be added to the ten represented by his spare, and the total shall be credited therein.

A break is made in all cases where the player does not secure either a strike or a spare in a frame, and in such cases only the number of pins knocked down are credited in the frame where the break is made.

If at the end of the tenth frame the team scores shall be a tie, another frame shall be immediately bowled, and play is so continued until at the close of even frames one of the teams shall have a greater number of pins than their opponents, which shall conclude the game.

### COCKED HAT.

The game is played with a head pin and the right and left corner pins as shown in the following diagram:



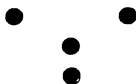
Balls not exceeding six inches must be bowled, and they must be rolled down the alley (not cast or thrown). The rules of American Ten Pins except in St. Louis, where there is a special association with local rules, generally govern this game also, with the exception of three balls instead of two to the frame, but strikes and spares count three instead of ten, and each pin counts one as in Ten Pins. If the bowler knocks down three pins with the ball which is first bowled, in any frame in the game of Clocked Hat, it is

## 624 (Bowling.) *BOWLING ALLEY LAWS*

a strike, and counts three, and is marked on the blackboard the same as in Ten Pins. What pins the bowler knocks down in the second frame with his first two balls must be reckoned as in Ten Pins, i. e., one for each pin bowled down, which pin or pins must be added to the strike and placed to the credit of the player in the inning where the strike was scored (the strike being computed as three); such strike must be added to pins knocked down with the two succeeding spare balls; thus, should the bowler score a strike, and should he in the next new frame knock down but one pin with his two spare balls, the strike and pin scored must be computed as 4—the strike counting 3 and the pin 1.

Poodles, or balls rolled down the gutter, are fair balls, and any pin or pins which they may get must be counted and placed to the credit of the bowler; dead wood is removed from the alley, and any pins knocked down through dead wood remaining on the alley cannot be placed to the credit of the bowler. The maximum number which can be bowled is 90.

### COCKED HAT AND FEATHER.



The pins are spotted as above, the centre pin being the feather.

Ten innings constitute a game, and three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) must be used in each inning.

All the pins except the feather have to be bowled down or the inning goes for naught.

If the feather is left standing alone, the innings count one.

There are no penalties. The dead wood must be removed. Any pins knocked down through dead wood remaining on the alley cannot be placed to the credit of the bowler.

The maximum is 10.

### THE BATTLE GAME.

THE PINS ARE SET UP THE SAME AS FOR THE GAME OF  
TEN PINS.

Four or six innings constitute a battle or game, except in the case of a tie, when another inning is played. In case that inning should result in a tie also, still another inning is played—in fact, until the scores are unequal. In any inning where a tie occurs the score stands over until the next inning, when each point is counted double. If the two innings result in a tie, the score is tripled. Should the total score result in a tie, sufficient innings are played to make the grand score unequal.

## BOWLING ALLEY LAWS (Bowling.) 625

The team having the largest score in the previous inning must bowl the first ball, so that the weaker party will have the last ball.

Three balls of regulation size (27 inches in circumference) or under are allotted to each player in each inning.

Each pin bowled down counts 1, including the king pin.

If all the pins except the king pin are bowled down, it counts 12.

The pins are set up as soon as the nine pins are knocked down, or the king pin is the only one left standing.

The alleys are changed alternately.

The dead wood is removed after each ball is rolled.

In case of uneven teams the Dummy or Blind is filled by any substitute the captain may pick out to bowl. He can select any one of his men he chooses, without regard to rotation, or he himself can bowl, but no man can take the place of the blind twice until every member of the team has acted as the substitute.

Poodles count as balls rolled. Any pin or pins knocked down by such balls are set up again in their former positions.

A rebounding ball does not count, and any pin or pins knocked down by it are set up, as in the case of a poodle ball.

When a ball has left the hand and touched the alley, it goes as a rolled ball.

### NINE UP AND NINE DOWN.

THE PINS ARE SET UP THE SAME AS FOR THE GAME OF  
AMERICAN TEN PINS.

Three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) are bowled in each inning.

The player must knock down a single pin, which counts 1; then with two remaining balls he endeavors to leave one pin standing, which counts 1. Failure to do either, the inning goes for nothing.

No penalties are attached. Dead wood must be removed. Any pins knocked down through the dead wood remaining on the alley cannot be placed to the credit of the player.

Ten innings constitute a game.

The maximum is 20.

### HEAD PIN AND FOUR BACK.



The pins are set up as above.

Three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) are allowed in each inning.

## 626 (Bowling.) *BOWLING ALLEY LAWS*

If the four back pins are bowled down and the head pin is left standing, the score is 2. If all the pins are bowled down, the score is 1.

There are no penalties. The dead wood must be removed. Any pins knocked down through the dead wood remaining on the alleys cannot be placed to the credit of the player.

Ten innings constitute a game.

The maximum is 20.

### FOUR BACK.



The pins are spotted as above.

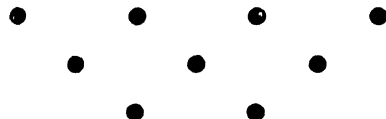
Three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) are allotted to each inning.

Each pin counts as spotted, and only one pin can be made at a time; if more than one pin is made with one ball, it is termed a break, and the player loses that inning and scores nothing.

There are no penalties. The dead wood must be removed. Any pins knocked down through the dead wood remaining on the alley cannot be placed to the credit of the players.

### TEN PINS—HEAD PIN OUT.

ALSO KNOWN AS AMERICAN NINE PINS.



The pins are set as in the diagram.

Ten innings constitute a game.

Three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) are bowled.

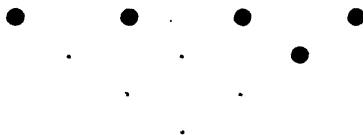
One pin of the frame must be left standing, or the inning goes for nothing.

There are no penalties. The dead wood must be removed. Any pins knocked down through the dead wood remaining on the alley cannot be placed to the credit of the player.

The maximum is 10.



FIVE BACK.



The pins are set as shown in the diagram.

Three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) are bowled in each inning.

Should a left-handed bowler be bowling, the second quarter pin can be set up on the left quarter spot.

Strikes and spares count five each.

No penalties are attached. Dead wood must be removed. Any pins knocked down through dead wood remaining on the alley cannot be placed to the credit of the player.

Ten innings constitute a game.

The maximum is 150.

THE NEWPORT GAME.

THE PINS ARE SET UP THE SAME AS FOR THE GAME OF  
AMERICAN TEN PINS.

Three balls (not exceeding 6 inches in size) are allowed in each inning.

Ten frames constitute a game. The object of the game is to bowl down an exact number of pins from 1 to 10, but not necessarily in routine order. The player who, in ten innings, scores the least number of winning innings is the loser. For instance: A bowls down 2, 5, 7, 8 and 10; B bowls down 1, 6, 8 and 9. Here B loses, as A has one more inning to his credit than B.

NOTE. — As the larger number of pins are easy to obtain, the superior skill lies in picking out the small numbers. For this reason the pony ball is used, and the small numbers are the points of attack from the start. When the player has bowled down a certain number of pins corresponding with any score he has made, and his remaining ball or balls will be of no avail, an (X) is placed under that number, indicating that the inning goes for naught, as he has already made that score.

Only one score is allowed to each inning. Players alternate in the use of alleys.

Balls bounding from the cushions go for naught.

### DUCK PIN GAME.

THE PINS ARE SPOTTED THE SAME AS THE AMERICAN GAME OF TEN PINS.

A regulation Duck Pin shall be 9 inches high,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter at the top,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter at the body of the pin, and  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inches in diameter at the base; shall taper gradually from the bottom to the largest part of the body, and shall be as near uniform in weight as possible.

No ball exceeding  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter can be used in games.

Each player to roll three balls to each frame, and each player to roll two frames at a time.

A line shall be drawn ten feet beyond the regular foul line, and any ball delivered beyond the first named line shall be declared foul.

All other rules of the American Bowling Congress govern.

### KINSLEY CANDLE PIN.

The Count — Two balls shall be allowed for frame.

Strikes — A strike is credited when a player bowls over the ten pins with the delivered ball.

Spare — A spare is credited whenever a player clears the alley with the first and second ball.

Breaks — A break is charged to a player at all times when neither a strike nor spare is made.

The Ball — The ball shall not exceed  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter in any direction, but smaller balls may be used.

### A FEW DON'TS.

Don't try to learn in a day.

Don't use too much speed at first.

Don't grip the ball too tight.

Don't loft the ball.

Don't play the side ball until you have mastered the centre delivery.

Don't swing the ball more than once before delivering it.

Don't start with a jump; walk one and run two steps.

Don't deliver the ball with the right foot in front.

Don't step on or over the foul line.

Don't think you can change the course of the ball after it has left your hand.

Don't expect a "strike" every time you hit the head pin.

Don't blame the pin boys if you get a split. They will spot any pin you call their attention to.

Don't throw away a "spare" because you think you were entitled to a "strike."

Don't use any unnecessary motions.

Don't exert yourself. Take it easy. A slow accurate ball is better than a swift wild one.

Don't put your whole thumb in the finger hole. One joint is enough.

Don't use a large finger hole. Big holes make a ball lop-sided.

Don't roll a ball down the alley when there is a ball in the pit.

Don't use a wide grip if you have a small hand, or two narrow for a big hand.

Don't use chalk on your shoes. It not only cracks the leather, but leaves the runway in bad condition for whoever follows you.

Don't think your wrist is gone if it hurts after bowling a few games. Change your grip and throw the strain somewhere else.

Don't bend your back when delivering the ball. With your feet far apart and knees bent you can start the ball with little or no sound.

Don't be superstitious — 13 is a better start than 12.

Don't think it necessary to be a Sandow. Many lightweights bowl well.

Don't get discouraged, you can learn. Any able-bodied person, with ordinary nerve and a good eye, can become quite expert with little practice.

Don't let an alley owner use pins that are worn out.

Don't think you can sandpaper a ball without injuring it. It takes an expert mechanic to true up a lignum-vitæ ball.

Don't lay a lignum-vitæ ball away DRY, if you don't want it to crack.

# GENERAL LAWS,

## FOR ALL CARD GAMES.

Very few games have their own code of laws, and only one or two of these have the stamp of any recognised authority. In minor games, questions are continually arising which could be easily settled if the players were familiar with a few general principles which are common to the laws of all games, and which might be considered as the basis of a general code of card laws. The most important of these principles are as follows :—

**Players.** It is generally taken for granted that those first in the room have the preference, but if more than the necessary number assemble, the selection must be made by cutting. A second cut will then be required to decide the partnerships, if any, and the positions at the table, the latter being important only in games in which the deal, or some given position at the table, is an advantage or the reverse. The usual method of cutting is to spread the cards face downward on the table, each player drawing one. In some games the cards are thrown round by one of the players.

**Shuffling, Cutting and Dealing.** In all games in which the cards are shuffled at all, each player has the right to shuffle, the dealer last. In English speaking countries the cards are always cut by the player on the dealer's right, who is called the "pone." In cutting to the dealer in any game there must be as many cards left in each packet as will form a trick; or, if the game is not one of tricks, as many cards as there will be in any player's hand; four, for instance, at Whist, and five at Poker. The cards are always distributed to each player in rotation from left to right, and each must receive the same number of cards in the same round. In games in which the cards are dealt by two and threes, for instance, it is illegal to give one player two and another three in the same round.

**Misdeals.** In all games in which the deal is an advantage, a misdeal loses the deal; but in all games in which the deal is a disadvantage, or some position is more advantageous than that of the dealer, such as the "age" at Poker, a misdeal does not lose the deal. The only exception to this rule is in Bridge, in which there are no misdeals, and Cribbage, which has a fixed penalty.

**Bidding.** In all games in which there is any bidding for the privilege of playing or of making the trump, or any betting on the value of the hands, the privilege must be extended to each player in turn, beginning on the dealer's left. Any bid or any bet once made can neither be taken back nor amended. If any bid is made out of turn in any partnership game, it must be assumed that undue information is conveyed, and the player in error, or his partner, must lose his bid. In round games there is no penalty.

**Exposed Cards.** No player can exact a penalty for his own error, so that if an adversary of the dealer exposes one of his own cards he cannot claim a misdeal, but the dealer's side may. There should be no penalty for a player's having exposed a card unless he can derive some benefit from the exposure, such as from his partner's having seen it. If there is no partner, there should be no penalty, because the player injures himself only. All exposed cards must be left on the table, and may be called upon by the adversaries to be led or played.

The same principles apply to **Leading out of Turn.** If the player in error has no partner, or his partner is a dummy, and the lead is taken back, no harm is done except to the player himself, and there should be no penalty. If the adversaries fail to observe that the lead was irregular, they are equally at fault with the player, who must be assumed to have erred unintentionally. In games in which a lead out of turn conveys information to a partner, the usual penalty is to call a suit.

If a player is led into error through a previous error on the part of an adversary, he should not suffer any penalty for it, but may take back his card. This is particularly true of following suit to erroneous leads, or playing after a revoke which is afterward amended.

**Irregularities in the Hands.** In all games in which the player need not follow suit unless he chooses, such as Seven-up, there should be no penalty if the player has not his full complement of cards, because he cannot possibly gain anything by playing with a short hand. But in all such games as Whist, where the absence of a card in plain suits might enable a player to trump, a penalty must be enforced for playing with less than the proper number of cards. In all such games as Poker, it is only to the player's own disadvantage to play with too few cards, provided he is not allowed to call four cards a flush or a straight, and there should be no objection to his playing with a short hand. Many good players "squeeze" their cards, and if they find a good pair in the first two, they put up the ante without looking further. It is manifestly unfair to bar them out of the pool because the dealer has given them only four cards, which gives them no possible advantage, but rather the reverse. This is in accordance with common sense, and is the law in Cribbage and Piquet.

***Discrimination.*** No person should be allowed any advantage over another which is not compensated for in some way. In Seven-up, for instance, the non-dealer counts game if it is a tie ; an advantage which is offset by the dealer's counting Jack if he turns it. In Auction Pitch the dealer has no such advantage, because no trump is turned, and therefore the non-dealer cannot count ties for game. It is a common error among Cassino players to hold that a player cannot build on his own build, but that his adversary may do so. A player holds two deuces, an Eight and a Ten, and builds a Six to an Eight. It is claimed that an adversary may increase this build to ten, but the original builder may not. This is manifestly unfair, because there is no compensating advantage to the player that is denied the privilege to justify its being allowed to his adversary.

***Benefiting by Errors.*** No player should be allowed to win a game by committing a breach of the laws. If a person revokes, for instance, there is a certain penalty, but in addition to the penalty it is always stipulated that the revoking player cannot win the game that hand.

***Double Penalties.*** No person can be subjected to two penalties for one offence. If a player leads out of turn, and a suit is called, the card played in error cannot be also claimed as exposed and liable to be called. If a player revokes, and his adversary wins ten tricks, the revoke penalty adds three tricks to the ten already won ; but these thirteen tricks will not entitle the player to score any points for a slam, because that would be exacting a double penalty ; the tricks for the revoke, and the points for the slam.

***Intentional Error.*** In all games it must be assumed that the player's intentions are honest, and that any errors that arise are committed through inadvertence. Some of our law-makers have attempted so to adjust their codes as to provide against the manœuvres of the blackleg. This is simply impossible. Laws are made for gentlemen, and when it is obvious that a player does not belong to that class the remedy is not to appeal to the laws of the game for protection, but to decline to play with him.

***Etiquette.*** It should be quite unnecessary to legislate against acts which annoy or do injustice to individuals, but there should be some provision in the laws of every game which will secure to each individual equal rights with others in the enjoyment of the game. Some games are especially selfish ; Boston, for instance, in which the four players originally forming the table may monopolise the game for the entire evening, without offering newcomers any chance to cut in. All such games should be limited to a certain number of tournées, at the conclusion of which fresh candidates should be allowed to cut into the table.

# Technical Terms.

G. stands for German ; F. for French.

- A**bnehmen or Abheben, G., to cut.  
**A**bwerfen, G., to discard.  
**A** cheval, across the line ; betting on both sides at once.  
**A**dversary, (G., Feind). In Mort or Bridge, those who play against the Dummy and his partner.  
**A**ffranchir, F., to establish a suit.  
**A**ge, the eldest hand ; sometimes erroneously spelt Edge.  
**A**lbany Lead, a lead in Whist, to show four trumps and three of each plain suit.  
**A**merican Leads, leads that show the number of cards in the suit led, at Whist.  
**A**mes Ace, double aces thrown with dice.  
**A**ncor Shot, getting the object balls against the cushion and astride the line at baulk-line billiards.  
**A**nte, a bet made before playing, but after seeing the hand.  
**A**ntepenultimate, the lowest but two of a suit.  
**A**près, the announcement of a refait at Rouge et Noir.  
**A**rroser, F., to be compelled to play a trump which will not win the trick.  
**A**sk for Trumps, playing an unnecessarily high card, when no attempt is made to win the trick.  
**A**uf die Dörfer gehen, to run for home ; to make all your aces and kings, instead of leading trumps.  
**A**. Y. B. Z., the letters used to distinguish the positions of the four players at Whist ; A-B being partners against Y-Z., and Z. having the deal.
- B**ackgammon. If a player throws off all his men before his adversary's men are still on the side of the board next the winning player, it is a backgammon, or triple game.  
**B**ath Coup, holding up Ace Jack on a King led by an adversary.  
**B**attre, F., to shuffle.  
**B**edienen, G., to follow suit.  
**B**ekommen, G., to win.  
**B**ekennen, G., to follow suit.  
**B**elle, F., the last game of the rubber.

Bidding to the Board, means that the points bid for a certain privilege are not to be credited to any player, but are simply the announcement of the value of an undertaking.

Biseautes (cartes) F., wedges or strippers.

Blätter, G., playing cards.

Blocking a Suit, keeping a high card of it, so that the player with a number of smaller cards cannot win tricks with them.

Blue Peter, the ask for trumps.

Blind, a bet made before seeing the cards.

Blinden, G., a widow, an extra hand dealt at any game.

Board's the Play, a card once played cannot be taken back.

Bobtail, a four-card flush or straight, which is accompanied by a worthless card.

Bone-yard, the stock at dominoes.

Book, the first six tricks taken by either side at Whist which do not count toward game.

Both Ends against the Middle, a system of trimming cards for dealing a brace game of Faro.

Brace Game, a conspiracy between the dealer and the case-keeper at Faro, so that cards improperly taken from the dealing box shall be properly marked by the case-keeper.

Break. In Billiards, a succession of counting shots made by one player, usually called a "run" in America. In Ten Pins, a break is a failure to make either a strike or a spare.

Break Even, a system of playing Faro, betting each card to win or lose an even number of times.

Brelan, F., three cards of the same denomination.

Brelan Carré, F., four cards of the same denomination.

Bringing in a Suit, making tricks in a plain suit after the adverse trumps are exhausted.

Brûler, F., to burn a card.

Bûche, F., cards that count for nothing, such as the tens and court cards in Baccara; equivalent to the G. Ladons, or Fehlkarten.

Bucking the Tiger, playing against the bank at Faro.

Bumblepuppy, playing Whist in ignorance or defiance of conventionality.

Bumper, a rubber of eight points at English Whist.

Burnt Cards, cards which are turned face upward on the bottom of the pack, usually in banking games.

Calling for Trumps, the ask for trumps.

Cannon, (Am. carrom,) a count made at billiards by causing the cue ball to touch two object balls.

Capot, F., winning all the tricks.

Cards, the number of tricks over six at Whist, such as "two by cards." The majority of cards at Cassino.



Carrer, (se) to straddle the blind. Contre-carrer, to over-straddle.  
Carrom, see cannon.

Cartes, F., playing cards.

Carte Blanche, a hand which does not contain K, Q or J.

Carte Roi, F., the best card remaining of a suit.

Cases, when three cards of one denomination have been withdrawn from the box at Faro, the fourth is a case.

Case-keeper, a board for recording the cards as they are withdrawn from the box at Faro. The word is sometimes applied to the person who keeps cases.

Cat-hop, two cards of the same denomination left in for the last turn at Faro.

Cave, F., the amount a player places in front of him at the beginning of play ; table stakes.

Checks, the counters at Poker are checks ; at Faro they are chips.

Chelem, F., a slam.

Chip Along, to bet a single counter and wait for developments.

Chouette, à la, taking all the bets.

Close Cards, those which are not likely to form sequences with others, especially at Cribbage.

Club Stakes, the usual amount bet on any game in the club.

Cogging Dice, turning one over with the finger after they have been fairly thrown.

Cold Deck, a pack of cards which has been pre-arranged, and is surreptitiously exchanged for the one in play.

Colours, a system of playing Faro according to the colour of the first winner or loser in each deal.

Command, the best card of a suit, usually applied to suits which the adversary is trying to establish.

Couper, F., to cut the cards ; also to ruff a suit.

Couleur, F., a suit of cards, such as hearts or clubs.

Coup, a master stroke or brilliant play ; a single roll of the wheel at Roulette, or a deal at Rouge et Noir.

Compass Whist, arranging players according to the points of the compass at Duplicate Whist, and always retaining them in their original positions.

Conventional Play, any method of conveying information, such as the trump signal, which is not based on the principles of the game.

Coppered Bets, bets that have a copper or checker placed upon them at Faro, to show that they play the card to lose.

Court Cards, the K, Q and J ; the ace is not a court card.

Covering, playing a higher card second hand than the one led, but not necessarily the best of the suit.

Crève, F., one who is temporarily out of the game, such as one who has overdrawn his hand at Vingt-et-un ; as distinguished from one who has lost all his money. The latter would be spoken of as *décavé*.

**Crossing the Suit**, changing the trump from the suit turned up to one of a different colour, especially in Euchre.

**Cross-ruff**, two partners alternately trumping a different suit.

**Cul levé**, (jouer à) playing one after another, by taking the place of the loser. A vulgar expression.

**Cutting**, dividing the pack when presented by the dealer; or drawing lots for choice of seats and deal.

**Cutting In and Out**, deciding by cutting which players shall give way to fresh candidates.

**Curse of Scotland**, the nine of diamonds.

**Cut Shots**, very fine winning hazards.

**Dealing Off**, the same dealer dealing again.

**Deck-head**, an Irish name for the turned trump at Spoil Five.

**Deadwood**, the pins that fall on the alley, in bowling.

**Décavé**, F., frozen out; the entire amount of the original stake being lost.

**Défausser**, se, F., to discard.

**D'emblée**, F., on the first deal; before the draw.

**Despatchers**, dice which are not properly marked, having two faces alike, such as double fives.

**Devil's bed posts**, the four of clubs.

**Discarding**, getting rid of a card in plain suits when unable to follow suit and unwilling to trump.

**Donne**, (avoir la) to have the deal. **Donne**, the time occupied in playing the cards distributed during a deal, but "coup" is the term generally used.

**Double Pairs Royal**, four cards of the same denomination.

**Doubleton**, two cards only of a suit.

**Doubling Up**, betting twice the amount of a lost wager.

**Doubtful Card**, a card led by the player on your right, which your partner may be able to win.

**Draw Shot**, any shot which makes the ball return toward the cue; in English, a "screw-back."

**Duffer**, one who is not well up in the principles of the game he is playing.

**Dummy**, the exposed hand in Dummy Whist, Bridge, or Mort.

**Duplicate Whist**, a form of Whist in which the same hands are played by both sides, and as nearly as possible under the same conditions.

**Dutch it** to cross the suit at Euchre.

**Ecarter**, F., to discard.

**Echoing**, showing the number of trumps held when partner leads or calls; in plain suits, showing the number held when a high card is led.

**Edge**, a corruption of the word "age," the eldest hand.

Eldest Hand, the first player to the left of the dealer in all English games; to his right in France.

Encaisser, F., to hand the stakes to the banker.

Entamer, F., to lead.

Established Suits, a suit is established when you or your partner can take every trick in it, no matter who leads it.

Étaler, F., to expose a card.

Exposed Cards, cards played in error, or dropped face upward on the table, or held so that the partner can see them.

Face Cards, K, Q and J.

Faire les Cartes, F., to shuffle; or to make the majority of cards or tricks in a game.

Fall of the Cards, the order in which they are played.

False Cards, cards played to deceive the adversary as to the true holding in the suit.

Fattening, discarding counting cards on partner's tricks.

Feind, G., an adversary; Gegner is the more common word.

Figure, F., K, Q or J.

Fille, F., see Widow.

Finesse, any attempt to take a trick with a card which is not the best of the suit.

First, Second, or Third Hand, the positions of the players on any individual trick.

Five Fingers, the five of trumps at Spoil Five.

Flèches, the points upon a backgammon board.

Fluke, making a count that was not played for.

Flush, cards of the same suit.

Flux, F., only one suit in the player's hand; a flush.

Force, to compel a player to trump a trick in order to win it.

Forced Leads, leads which are not desirable, but which are forced upon the player to avoid those which are still less advantageous.

Fordern, G., to lead trumps.

Fourchette, the two cards immediately above and below the one led, such as K J in the second hand on a Q led.

Four Signal, a method of showing four trumps, without asking for them; usually made by playing three small cards, such as 4 6 2, in that order.

Fourth-best, the fourth card of a suit, counting from the top. The modern substitute for the terms penultimate, and antepenultimate.

Front Stall, one who makes acquaintances for gamblers to fleece.

Frozen, balls touching at billiards.

Frozen Out, a player who has lost his original stake, and cannot continue in the game.

Fuzzing, milking the cards instead of shuffling them.

**Gallery**, the spectators who are betting on the game.

**Gambling**, risking more than one can well afford to lose on any game of chance.

**Gambler's Point**, the count for "game" at Seven-up.

**Gammon**. When a player throws off all his men before his adversary throws off any, it is a gammon, or double game.

**Gathering Shots**, getting the balls together again after driving them round the table. See Nursing.

**Geben, G.**, to deal the cards. Sometimes "Vertheilung der Karten" is used.

**Gegner, G.**, the adversary.

**Grand Coup**, trumping a trick already won by partner; or playing a small trump on a trick which he has already trumped.

**Greek, (grec)** a card sharp.

**Guarded Cards**, cards which cannot be caught by higher cards unless they are led through.

**Hand**, the cards dealt to one player; the distribution of the cards in any one deal. A "remarkable hand" might be the play of an entire deal at Whist, for instance.

**Heading a Trick**, playing a better card than any already played to the trick, but not necessarily the best in the hand.

**Heeled Bets**, bets at Faro which play one card to win and another to lose, but do not win or lose double the amount if both events come on the same turn.

**Hinterhand, G.**, the last player on the first trick, (Skat).

**His Heels**, the Jack turned up for a starter at Cribbage.

**His Nobs**, Jack of the same suit as the starter at Cribbage.

**Hoc, or Hockelty**, the last card in the box at Faro.

**Honours**, usually the highest cards in the suit, such as A K Q J, and sometimes the 10. In Calabresella the 3 and 2 are honours, and in Impérial the lowest card is an honour.

**Horse and Horse**, each player having one game to his credit when they are playing best two out of three.

**Hustling**, inveigling persons into skin games.

**Impair**, the odd numbers at Roulette.

**Impasse, F.**, to finesse.

**Imperfect Fourchette**, two cards, one immediately above the one led, and the other one remove below it; such as K 10 second hand on a Q led.

**Imperfect Pack**, one in which there are duplicate cards, missing cards, or cards so marked that they can be identified by the backs.

**Indifferent Cards**, cards of the same value, so far as trick taking is concerned, such as Q and J.

**Inside Straights**, sequences which are broken in the middle.

**Intricate Shuffles**, butting the two parts of the pack together at the ends, and forcing them into each other.

**Invite, F.**, leading a small card of the long suit.

**Irregular Leads**, leads which are not made in accordance with the usual custom, as distinguished from forced leads.

**Jack Strippers**, two bowers, trimmed to pull out of the pack.

**Jenny**, a fine losing hazard, made off an object ball close to the cushion, between the side pocket and the baulk.

**Jetons, F.**, the counters which represent money at any game.

**Jeu, F.**, derived from *jocus*, a game. The word is variously applied to the game itself; to the player's expectation of success; to his plan of campaign; or to the cards in his hand.

**Jeux de Régle**, hands which should be played in a certain way on account of their mathematical expectations, (*Écarté*).

**Keeping Tab**, keeping a record of the cards that win and lose as they are dealt at *Faro*.

**King Card**, the best card remaining unplayed of the suit.

**King Row**, the four squares on the checker board which are farthest from the player's own side.

**Kitty**, the percentage taken out of a pool to pay for refreshments, or for the expenses of the table.

**Knight Player**, one who can give the odds of a Knight to weak players, at *Chess*.

**Last Trick**, an expression used to distinguish the last trick when all the cards are played from the last when all the cards are not played, especially in *Béziq*ue and *Sixty-six*.

**Last Turn**, the three cards left in the box at the end of the deal at *Faro*, the order of which may be bet upon.

**Lead**, to play the first card in any trick.

**Levéé, F.**, a trick. (*Tric*, is the odd trick.)

**Liées, F.**, to play rubbers.

**Limit**, the amount by which one player may increase his bet over that of another.

**Long Cards**, the dregs of a suit which has been led several times, and exhausted in the hands of the other players.

**Long Suits**, those containing four or more cards, at *Whist*.

**Lose Out**, a card that loses four times in one deal, at *Faro*.

**Losing Cards**, those that would lose tricks if they were led.

**Losing Hazard**, pocketing the cue ball.

**Losing Trump**, one which is not the best, when only one or two remain.

**Love-all**, nothing scored on either side.

**Lurched**, not half way toward game.

**Main, F.**, with *avoir* this expression is indefinite, and may refer to the deal or the lead. With *être*, to be in the lead. *Dans la main*, applies to the possibilities of the hand. *Placer la main*, to place the lead.

Make-up, to get the cards ready for the next deal.

Make the Pass, to put the two parts of the pack back as they were before the cut.

Maldonne, F., misdeal.

Manche, F., one game of the rubber.

Manque, the numbers from 1 to 18 at Roulette. See Passe.

Marque, F., a score which is kept upon the table by means of counters.

Martingale, any system which controls the amounts wagered on a series of events. (See chapter on Chance and Probability.)

Massé, a shot made with the cue held nearly perpendicular.

Master Card, the best card remaining of a suit which has been played.

Matsch, G., to win all the tricks, a slam.

Mechanic, a dealer who can make the cards come any way he pleases at Faro.

Melden, G., to announce, claim, or show any counting combination of cards.

Méler, F., to shuffle.

Memory Duplicate, playing over the same hands at the same table; the players who held the N and S cards getting the E and W for the overplay.

Menage, F., gathering and arranging the cards for the succeeding deal when two packs are used.

Milking, taking a card from the bottom and the top of the pack at the same time with the forefinger and thumb.

Mischen, G., to shuffle.

Misdeal, any failure to distribute the cards properly.

Mise, F., the layout, or the original pool.

Misère Ouverte. There is no such expression as this in French; the proper term is Misère sur table. See Boston.

Mittelhand, G., the second player on the first trick, in Skat.

Mixed Pair, a lady and gentleman playing as partners.

Mort, F., the dummy hand at Whist or Bridge.

Mouth Bets, those made without putting up the money. One who fails to pay mouth bets is a welcher.

Muggins, to take a score which has been overlooked by an adversary, especially in Cribbage and Dominoes.

Natural, anything which wins the stake immediately; 7 or 11 at Craps; 21 at Vingt-et-un; 8 or 9 at Baccara.

Natural Points, those which must be made every deal, such as big and little cassino, high, low, etc.

Navette, F., a cross ruff.

Neben Farbe, G., plain suits.

Next, the suit of the same colour as the turned trump at Euchre. Diamonds are "next" to hearts.

Nick, a natural at Craps ; 7 or 11 on the first throw.

Nicknames for Cards : The  $\diamond 9$  is the curse of Scotland ; the  $\clubsuit 4$  is the devil's bedposts ; the  $\clubsuit A$  is the Puppyfoot ; the Jack of trumps at Spoil Five is the Playboy, and the Five of trumps is the Five Fingers.

N. E. S. W., letters used to distinguish the players at Duplicate Whist. N always leads, unless otherwise specified.

Nursing, keeping the balls together at Billiards, as distinguished from gathering, which brings them together.

Odd Trick, the seventh won by the same partners at Whist.

Open Bets, bets at Faro which play cards to win.

Openers, cards which entitle a player to open a jack-pot.

Original Lead, the opening lead of a hand at Whist.

Pair, F., the even numbers at Roulette. See Impair.

Pairs, in Duplicate Whist, the partners sitting N and S, or E and W. Any two cards of the same denomination.

Pairs Royal, any three cards of the same denomination.

Partie, F., a game which requires a number of deals to decide it.

Pass, to decline any undertaking in a game.

Passe, F., the numbers from 19 to 36 at Roulette.

Pat Hands, those which are played without discarding or exchanging any of the cards originally dealt.

Pausirenden, G., one who shares in the fortunes of the game, although not actually playing, as the dealer in four-handed Skat.

Paying in Cards. When the banker and the player's point is equal, the latter is said to "pay in cards."

Penultimate, the lowest but one of a suit at Whist.

Phaser, F., to change the pack.

Philosopher, a card sharp.

Piano Hands, hands which run along smoothly at Whist, and yield no opportunities for loss or gain.

Piking, making small bets all over the layout at Faro.

Playboy, the Jack of trumps at Spoil Five.

Plain Suits, those which are not trumps.

Point, F., the suit containing the greatest number of pips.

Pone, the player on the dealer's right, who cuts the cards.

Ponte, F., one who plays against the banker.

Post Mortems, discussions as to what might have been at Whist, sometimes called, "If you had."

Pot, strictly speaking, the amount to be played for when a pool has exceeded a certain limit, especially in Spoil Five and Boston.

Premier en Cartes, F., the first to play.

Private Conventions, any system of giving information by the play which could not be understood by a partner unless explained to him.

Probabilities, the odds in favour of any event.

Progression, a martingale which increases a bet a certain amount every time it is lost, and decreases it every time it is won.

Proil, or Prial, Pairs Royal.

Puits, F., only one to go, the whiskey hole.

Punters, those who play against the banker.

Puppy-foot, the ace of clubs.

Quart, the English equivalent of the French word *quatrième*, a sequence of four cards.

Quart Major, A K Q J of any suit.

Quatorze, F., four cards of the same denomination.

Quatrième, F., a sequence of four cards.

Queue, F., the points added for winning the rubber.

Quinte, F., a sequence of five cards.

Quitted. A trick is quitted when the fingers are removed from it after it is turned down. In Duplicate, a trick is not quitted until all four players have removed their fingers from it. A score is quitted when the fingers are removed from the counters, the peg, or the pencil.

Raffles, the same number appearing on all the dice thrown.

Ranche, leaving the black pin standing alone at Pin Pool.

Re-entry Cards, cards in other suits which bring in long suits at Whist.

Reizen, G., to draw a person on; to irritate or provoke him to bidding more than he should.

Rejoué, duplicate whist.

Renegé, failure to follow suit, having none. See Revoke.

Renounce, same as renegé.

Rentrant, F., the player who takes the place of the loser in a previous game.

Renvier, F., to raise the bet, to improve.

Retourne, F., any card turned on the talon, or for a trump.

Revoke, failure to follow suit when able to do so, as distinguished from a renounce or renegé.

Ring In, to exchange any unfair for fair gambling implements during the progress of the game. See Cold Deck.

Robbing, exchanging a card in the hand for the turn-up trump, or discarding several for the trumps remaining in the pack. See Cinch and Spoil Five.

Roeking, hustling, inveigling a person into a game for the purpose of cheating him.

Round, a round is complete when each player has had equal advantages with regard to deal, dummy, etc.

Round Games, those which do not admit of partnerships.

Rubber, winning two out of three games. F., Robre.



Rubiconed, lurched, defeated before getting half way.

Ruffing, trumping a suit.

Run, a succession of counting shots at Billiards.

Schnitt, G., a finesse.

Schneiden, G., to finesse. Schinden is sometimes used.

Scratch, a fluke, a score which was not played for.

Screw Shot, a force shot at Billiards.

Second Dealing, dealing the second card from the top of the pack, keeping back the top card until it can be dealt to yourself or your partner.

See Saw, a cross ruff.

Sequence, three or more cards next in value to one another.

The word is sometimes used for two cards only.

Short-card Player, a poker player ; usually a sharper also.

Short Suits, those containing less than four cards.

Short-stop Billiards. Short-stop players are those who are good enough to play in halls hired for the purpose, but who stop short of the championship class.

Shuffling, any method of disarranging the cards so that no trace remains of their order during the previous deal or play.

Sights, the diamonds on the rail of an American billiard table.

Signalling for Trumps, playing a higher card before a lower in a plain suit, when no attempt is made to win the trick.

Singleton, one card only of any suit.

Skin Games, those in which a player cannot possibly win.

Skunked, whitewashed, schwartz, beaten without having been able to score a single point.

Slam, winning all the tricks. Little Slam, winning 12 out of 13 possible.

Sleeper, a bet left or placed on a dead card at Faro.

Sneak, a singleton which is led for the especial purpose of ruffing the second round of the suit.

Snowing the Cards, milking or fuzzing them.

Soda, the first card at Faro, exposed face upward in the box before any bets are made.

Splits, two cards of the same denomination coming on the same turn at Faro.

Spot Stroke, a series of winning hazards with the red ball at English billiards.

Square Game, one in which the cards are perfectly square, and have not been trimmed for wedges, strippers, etc.

Squeezers, cards with indicators on the edges.

Stack of Chips, twenty. A "stack of whites" is \$5.

Starter, the cut card at Cribbage.

Stechen, G., to trump.

Still Pack, the one not in play when two are used.

Stock, cards left after the deal is complete, but which are to be used in the following play.

Stool Pigeon, a hustler.

Straight Whist, playing a hand and immediately shuffling the cards for another deal, as distinguished from Duplicate.

Strength in Trumps, enough to justify a player in passing a doubtful trick; usually four or five at least.

Strengthening Cards, those which are of no practical trick-taking value to the leader, but which may be useful to the partner; usually restricted to Q J 10 9.

String Bets, those that take all the odd or all the even cards to play one way, win or lose, at Faro.

Strippers, cards trimmed so that certain ones may be pulled out of the pack at will.

Strohman, G., the dummy at Whist or Bridge.

Strong Suits, those in which a number of tricks can be made after the adverse trumps are out of the way.

Sub Echo, a trump signal in a plain suit, made after partner has led trumps, and the player has not echoed on the trump lead.

Sub-sneak, a two-card suit which is led for the sole purpose of getting a ruff on the third round.

Sweating Out, winning a game without taking any risks, by waiting for the trifling points that fall to your share.

Systems, any guide that keeps a player from guessing in the distribution of his bets; as distinguished from a martingale, which controls the amount of the wager itself.

*Table Games, Chess, Checkers, and Backgammon.*

Tables, the ancient name for Backgammon.

Taille, F., a number of packs shuffled together, which are not to be re-shuffled or cut until all have been used.

Talon, the same as Stock.

Team Playing, requiring every member of a team to play with every other an equal number of times, at Whist.

Tenace. The major tenace is the best and third best cards remaining, or unplayed, in any suit, such as A Q. The minor tenace is the second and fourth best, such as K J.

Têtes, Kings, Queens and Jacks.

Three-card Monte. A game in which three cards are dexterously thrown on the table by a gambler, and the victim is induced to bet that he can pick out one which has been previously named and shown.

Three-echo, an echo on a trump lead when holding three only.

Three-on-a-side, a system of playing Faro, in which cards are bet to win or lose an odd number of times.

Tournée, F., see Round.

Trailing, playing a card which accomplishes nothing.

Trash, to discard.

Tric, F., the odd trick at Whist or Mort.

Tricon, F., three cards of the same denomination.

Tric-Trac, the European name for Backgammon.

Trump-showing Leads, a system of private conventionalities in leading plain suits at Whist, to show the number of trumps held by the leader.

Unblocking, getting out of your partner's way when he has more cards of the suit than you have.

Underplay, leading a card which is not the best of a suit, when the best would naturally be led; or holding up the best card to let another player win the trick.

Vade, F., the pool to be played for.

Vergeben, G., misdeal.

Verleugnen, or Verläugnen, G., to revoke.

Vivant, F., Dummy's partner.

Vole, F., winning all the tricks, a slam.

Vorhand, G., the eldest hand, at Skat.

Vorwerfen, G., to play out of turn.

Weak Trumps, not enough to justify a player in passing a doubtful trick.

Wedges, cards trimmed to taper toward one end, so that if certain ones are reversed they can be easily pulled out.

Welcher, one who makes mouth bets, and afterward fails to pay.

Whipsawed, losing two different bets on the same turn.

Whiskey Hole, only one to go.

Whitewashed, defeated without having scored a point.

Wide Balls, those which are near the corner of the table, and are almost sure to be hit by a ball coming from either cushion.

Wide Cards, those which are too far apart to be likely to form sequences. See Close Cards.

Widow, any extra hand dealt in any game.

Wimmeln, G., to bunch the points together; to fatten a trick for the partner.

Wimmelfinte, G., leading a card which is calculated to induce the second hand to fatten the trick for his partner.

Winning Hazards, pocketing the object ball.

Winning Out, a card that wins four times in the same deal at Faro.

Yarborough, a hand at Whist containing no card higher than a Nine; the odds against it are 1827 to 1.

Younger Hand, the one not the leader in two-handed games.

Zange, G., a fourchette or tenace.

Zwickmuhle, G., a cross ruff.

## DRIVE WHIST.

There are several methods of playing Drive Whist; the most popular being to fill as many tables as possible with the players that present themselves, regardless of any order further than that partners should sit opposite each other. The players may select their own partners, or they may be determined by lot, according to the decision of the hostess.

A trump is turned, and each side enters the full number of tricks won, such as 8 against 5. Honours are not counted. There are no "games," each deal being a game.

***Drawing for Partners.*** If there is an equal number of ladies and gentlemen, and the number is less than fifty-two, a sufficient number of red and black cards should be sorted out, and the ladies asked to draw from the red, the men from the black; those getting the same denominations being partners. For instance: 16 couples present themselves for play. The thirteen Hearts and the A 2 3 of Diamonds should be put into one hat for the ladies; the thirteen Clubs, and A 2 3 of Spades being put into another for the men. Those drawing the same denomination of Hearts and Clubs, or of Spades and Diamonds are partners.

Before play begins, the number of hands which it is proposed to play should be announced, or a time set for adjournment.

***Driving.*** There is no rank attached to the tables, but they should be arranged in such a manner that players may know which table to go to next. The partners seat themselves wherever they please, and at the tap of the bell at the head of the table the deal is cut for, and play begins. The winners of the majority of the thirteen tricks at each table go to the next table. Here they may either continue to play as partners, or may divide, which ever has been the style of play decided upon by the hostess. When the partnerships have been drawn for, it is usual to preserve them for the evening.

A very popular form of Drive Whist in England is to play 20 hands. Under the score of the 17th a heavy line is printed. At the end of the play of the 17th deal the score to that point is added and checked by the opponents. If it reaches or exceeds 130, a member of the committee (M C) is called, and he watches the player for the next three deals, and checks the play and scoring very carefully. At the end of 20 deals, the total is turned in for the prizes.

As many as 20,000 players have taken part in these drives, qualifying in smaller numbers for the final, and prizes of \$5,000 are not uncommon. The winning partners leave the table and move in opposite directions, so as not to meet again. The losers remain. Totals of 165 to 175 are usually the top in 20 deals.

---

## BID WHIST.

This is a popular game on trains, or wherever it may be necessary to stop at the end of a deal without finishing the game. Thirteen cards are dealt to each player, one at a time, but no

trump is turned. Partners sit opposite each other, and the player to the left of the dealer makes the first bid.

**BIDDING.** The bidding goes round until no one will go any higher. The eldest hand starts by naming the number of points he will make if allowed to name the trump and lead to the first trick, but he does not name the suit he purposes picking out. It is not necessary to lead a trump.

There are two ways to bid. In some places there are seventeen points to be played for in each deal; one for each trick of the thirteen and one for each of the four honours, ace king queen and jack, in the trump suit. Honours count to the side winning them, and not to the original holders, so that a player holding the four top honours in any suit could safely bid eight; four tricks and four honors being a certainty, but if that was all he made he would lose on the deal, as the other side would score nine points out of the seventeen.

In other places, it is the rule that the bidder must make the odd trick or he cannot count honours or anything else. There are then only eleven points to be played for in each deal; seven odd tricks and four honours. Any player bidding four would have to win the odd and three honors, or two odd and two honours, or something to make up his bid.

**SCORING.** No matter how many more than his bid he makes, he can score it all. If he fails, he is set back the amount of his bid. If his adversaries win the odd trick or more, they count one point for each trick over the book in addition to the amount by which they set the bidder back.

When there are seventeen points in play each deal, it is usual to take the lower score from the higher and score the difference only, but when the bidder fails, he is not set back, but simply gets nothing at all, while his opponents score all they make, without any deductions.

## NORWEGIAN WHIST.

**CARDS.** This variety of whist is played with a full pack of fifty-two cards, which rank from the A K Q down to the deuce. In cutting, the ace is low.

**PLAYERS.** Four persons cut for partners, the two highest playing against the two lowest, the lowest cut having the choice of seats and cards and dealing the first hand.

**DEALING.** The cards shuffled and cut, thirteen are given to each player, one at a time in rotation to the left. No trump is turned, as every hand is played without a trump.

**MISDEALING.** In case of any irregularity in the deal, the same dealer must deal again. The laws governing misdeals are the same as at whist or bridge.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The play is for tricks alone, but whether the players try to win them or to lose them depends on the declaration. In Grands it is to win; in Nullos, it is to lose.

**BIDDING.** The player to the left of the dealer makes the first bid. He may offer to play grand or nullo or he may pass. The moment either grand or nullo is named, the bidding ends. If the first player passes, the next to the left must declare himself. If all pass without a bid, the hand is played as a nullo. Any player bidding out of turn loses 20 points, and is barred from bidding on that deal.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** If the game is grand, the player to the *right* of the bidder leads any card he pleases. If the game is nullo, the player to the *left* of the bidder leads. If no bid is made, the player to the left of the dealer leads. Either partner may take in the tricks won by his side, keeping them separate, so that they may be easily counted.

**SCORING.** The game is 50 points. Each trick over the first six counts four in grands, but in some places only two in nullos. This must be agreed upon before play. Tricks over the book count for the bidder's side in grands, but against him in nullos. If the bidder and his partner fail to get the odd trick in a grand, his opponents count double for each trick they win over the book, but in nullos there is no double value.

**PENALTIES.** In case of a revoke, the side in fault gives three tricks to its opponents in grands, or receives three if it is a nullo. The penalty for a lead out of turn is to call a suit.

---

## RUM.

There are several varieties of this game, and quite a number of ways of playing them, but the standard method, as adopted by the best clubs, is that here given. The principal divisions of the game are those played with the single pack, and those played with the double pack and two jokers.

---

### SINGLE-PACK RUM.

**CARDS.** The full pack of fifty-two cards is used, ranking from the K Q J down to the ace, the suits having no rank. The ace may also be used in sequence with the king as the top of a sequence.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from two to six may play, but four or five makes the best game.

**CUTTING.** The cards are spread and drawn for choice of seats and first deal. The lowest cut has first choice, the next lowest sitting on his left and so on round the table.

**DEALING.** When two play, ten cards are given to each. When three play, seven to each. When four play, six to each. The cards are dealt one at a time until all are helped and the next card is turned face up on the table as a starter for the discard pile. The stock is left beside this card, face down.

**OBJECT OF THE GAME.** The aim of the players is to get rid of the cards dealt them and those they draw from the stock by laying face upward on the table any combinations of three of a kind, or three in sequence and suit.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The player to the left of the dealer begins by taking into his hand the card that is face up, if it suits him, or the top card of the stock. If he takes the top of the stock, he puts it into his hand without showing it. He may then lay out any combination of three cards that he holds, but he is not obliged to do so. Whether he lays out anything or not, he must discard a card, face up, to take the place of the one drawn. This discard is always placed beside the stock, and of course covers up any card already there.

**LAYING OUT.** After drawing from the stock and before discarding, a player may lay out any three cards, but no more than three at one time. Or he may add one card from his hand to any combination already laid out by another player, but he cannot add more than one card in this way. He may add a card to a combination laid out by himself if he wishes to.

**CALLING OUT.** Each player in turn to the left draws, lays out and discards in this manner until some player gets rid of his last card, when he calls out, and the game comes to an end. The last card in a player's hand may be got rid of by laying it out in combination, or by discarding it if it is the only card left.

**SCORING.** As soon as any player calls out it is too late for any other player to lay down any combinations he may hold. Each player in turn to the left shows his hand and the winner gets credit for the pip value of his cards, jacks being worth 11, queens 12, kings 13.

It sometimes happens that the stock is exhausted before any player calls out. In this case the discards are turned face down without shuffling them and the pile drawn from as if it were the stock.

**SPLASHES.** The game is sometimes played with the condition that if any player chooses to risk holding his hand until he can lay it all down at once, or lay down all but the one which he is allowed to discard, he wins double from each of the others. This prompts a player with a good hand to hold

it up for a round or two on the chance of getting down a splash, but the player who sees there is no chance for him should get rid of as many cards as he can before the splash comes, and in many cases some player will get rid of all his cards in two or three rounds, and win without a splash.

---

## POKER RUM.

**CARDS.** In this variety of the game, the A K Q J are worth ten points each, the ace eleven, and the remaining cards their face value. The ace may be used as the top of a sequence Q K A, or the bottom of A 2 3, but not as part of a round-the-corner, K A 2.

**DEALING.** Ten cards are always given to each player, no matter how many are in the game. If there are more than three at the table, the double pack must be used, so as to leave cards enough for the stock.

**OBJECT OF THE GAME.** The aim of the player is to draw cards from the stock or discard pile until the pip value of the unmatched cards in his hand amounts to 15 or less. Sequences may run to any length, and four, five, or six of a kind is in order. The cards in hand that do not fit any combination of three or more are deadwood, and the object is to reduce this deadwood to less than fifteen.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** Each player in turn to the left of the dealer draws a card from the stock or the discard pile and discards one in its place, face up. No player is allowed to lay down anything until he can show his whole hand, and then only when his deadwood is fifteen or less, and he is not obliged to lay down even then if he prefers to wait until he can reduce his deadwood still further.

**THE SHOWDOWN.** As soon as any player can show down his hand, the game is at an end. He lays out his combinations and pushes them aside. Then he announces the pip value of his deadwood, after discarding a card in place of the one drawn. Suppose he draws the seven of hearts, and lays down the 6 7 8 9 of that suit; J Q K of clubs; discards the king of spades and leaves two deuces and a five for his deadwood. That is nine points.

Each of the other players in turn to the left then lays down his hand and pushes aside all combinations held. If the pip



value of his deadwood is more than that of the player calling for the showdown, he pays the difference. If any player has less than the caller, then he is the winner, and each one at the table pays him, the caller paying him double as a penalty. In case of ties for low, they divide the losses of the others.

---

## POKER GIN.

This is a variety of poker rum in which the deadwood must not exceed ten points and each player is allowed not only to put aside his own combinations after the call for a showdown comes, but may add any of his odd cards to the combinations laid out by the one who calls for a showdown.

Suppose that in the example given for poker rum, the caller showing 6 7 8 9 of hearts, J Q K of clubs, and nine in his deadwood, another player has in his ten cards the 7 8 9 of diamonds; 6 7 8 of spades, two fours and the tens of clubs and hearts.

When the showdown is called for, he has twenty-eight points in his deadwood; but by adding his club ten to the caller's sequence of J Q K, and the heart ten to the caller's 6 7 8 9 in that suit, he reduces his deadwood to eight points, the pair of fours, and beats the caller out by a point.

**PENALTIES.** If any player turns out to have less in his deadwood than the caller, as in the example just given, the caller forfeits ten points to him, in addition to having to pay for the difference. Should a player call for a showdown when he has more than ten in his deadwood, he loses five points to each of the others at the table and takes up his cards again.

---

## DOUBLE-PACK RUM.

**CARDS.** This game is always played with two full packs of fifty-two cards each and two jokers, all shuffled together and used as one. The ace may be high or low in sequences.

**DEALING.** Ten cards are given to each player, one at a time, and the next card is turned up and laid beside the stock to start the discard pile.

**LAYING OUT.** Sequences in suit may run to any length, and any number of cards or combinations may be laid out at

one time. Five, six or seven of a kind may be shown, and four of a kind may be of any suits. There is no obligation to lay out anything, but the player who lays out can do so only in his proper turn, after drawing a card. He may add as many cards as he pleases to any combinations already on the table, either of his own or other players.

**THE JOKERS.** These two cards have peculiar privileges. A joker may be called anything the holder pleases. If it is used as the interior of a sequence, such as 6 joker 8 of hearts, it must remain there, but if it is placed at the end of a sequence, any player has the right to remove it to the other end, placing it crossways, to show that it has been moved, provided he can put a card in its place, or add one to the sequence below the joker. A joker once moved cannot be moved again.

Suppose some player has laid out the 6 7 joker of clubs. The joker stands for the 8 of clubs. Another player holding the actual 8 of clubs could move the joker to the position of the 5 and add his 8. Or if he had the 4 of clubs, he could move the joker to represent the 5 and add his 4 to the sequence, or he might add both 8 and 4 if he held those cards.

On account of the privilege of laying out as many cards at a time as the player pleases, and adding as many as he can to other combinations, this is a much livelier game than the ordinary single-pack rum. The settling is the same, the winner getting the pip value of each player's hand. In case no one has all his cards down before the stock is exhausted, which is very unusual, however, the discards are turned face down and drawn from again.

---

## CANFIELD.

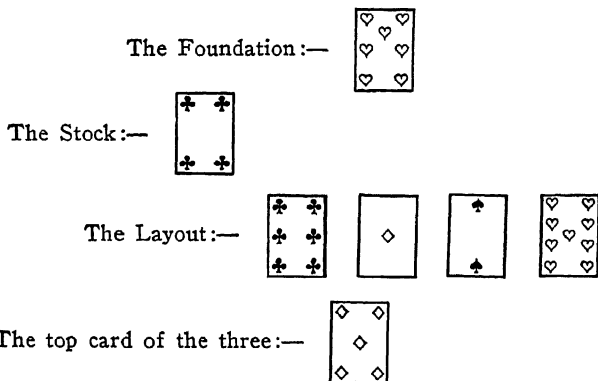
This form of solitaire is often confused with Klondike, but there is a marked difference both in the layout and the play.

The full pack of fifty-two cards is used. After it has been thoroughly shuffled and properly cut, thirteen cards are counted off, face down, and placed at the player's left, face up. This is the stock. The fourteenth card is then turned face up and is the foundation for that deal. Let us suppose it is a seven. It is placed by itself, furthest from the player, waiting for the three other sevens to appear to form three other foundations, each in a different suit.

Four cards are then dealt off from left to right, face up, for the layout. Holding the remaining thirty-four cards in the left hand, face down, the player counts off three at a time and turns them face up on the table, but so that the top card only

is seen. If this card can be used, the card under it is available. If not, the three are left on the table and three more turned up in the same way.

Let us suppose this is the appearance of the table:



The player can make several changes at once. The five of diamonds will go on the club six, the club four on the five, the ace of diamonds on the deuce of spades, leaving a space which must be filled from the top of the stock, using the card that was under the four of clubs. Another card is exposed and available under the five of diamonds.

Cards built on the foundations must be in the same suit, and build upward, nothing but eights being available on the sevens. On the layout, sequences are built down, and must change colour each time. Any time that there is a space in the four columns of the layout, the top card of the stock may be used to fill the space, but the stock itself must never be added to. If there are only two cards in any of the four columns of the layout at any time, and the top one can be used on another pile, it may be taken for that purpose. Suppose the nine of hearts were built on down to a black six, the five of diamonds could be removed to that pile to release the six of clubs.

After running through the entire pack, three cards at a time, the cards that have not been used in the process, and which are lying on the table face up, are taken up again and turned face down, without shuffling them, and run through again, three at a time. As long as any card can be used it must alter the run of the cards that will turn up in threes after that, and the player may continue to go through the pack in this way until

he is stopped by being unable to use any card that shows at the top of the three he turns up.

The betting is against the player getting eleven cards in his foundation piles. If the pack is purchased for \$52, he gets \$5 for every card in his foundations. It is almost impossible to get out the whole fifty-two for \$260, but it is done occasionally.

---

## I DOUBT IT.

This is a good round game, any number taking part. The full pack of fifty-two cards is dealt round, one card at a time as far as it will go equally, the remainder being left in the centre of the table, face down. Any one can deal.

The player to the left of the dealer starts the game by taking from his hand any three cards he pleases and laying them on the table in front of him face down. He then announces, "These are three jacks," or anything he likes to call them, there being no obligation to tell the truth about it, so the cards might actually be a six four and a deuce.

Each player in turn to the left can doubt the statement that the cards are three jacks, or he can pass. If any player in his proper turn says, "I doubt it," the three cards are at once turned face up. If the statement is not correct, the three cards are at once taken back into the player's hand, together with all the cards lying face down in the centre of the table at the time. Should the statement turn out to be true, the player who doubted it must take the three jacks and all the cards on the table.

That settled, the next player to the left lays out three cards and announces that they are three of a kind of something or other, each player to the left passing or doubting it. If no one questions the correctness of a statement, no explanation is given by the player who laid out the cards. He simply pushes them to the centre of the table with the others, face down. If he shows them, or any one of them, as some may do in a spirit of bravado, he must take all three back into his hand and all on the table with them. The object of doubting is simply to prevent a player from getting rid of three cards, but toward the end of the game one must be careful, as triplets are gradually gathered for that stage.

If any player has less than three cards in his hand when it comes to his turn to lay down, he must draw from the table, face down, enough to make three. He may look at what he

draws before announcing. If there are no cards on the table, he must pass his turn.

The first to get rid of all his cards gets a chip from each of the others for each card they hold.

---

## JASS.

This is popularly supposed to be the progenitor of the American game of pinochle, and is still very popular in Switzerland.

**CARDS.** Jass is played with the thirty-six card pack, the 5 4 3 2 of each suit being thrown out. The cards rank from the A K Q down to the 6, both in cutting and in play. The cards have a pip value in scoring, aces 11, tens 10, kings 4, queens 3 and jacks 2. In the trump suit, the jack is the highest card, and is worth 20 points instead of 2. The nine of trumps comes next, being worth 14 points, and is called "Nell." The remaining trumps rank as in plain suits.

The jack of trumps has the special privilege of being allowed to renege, even when the holder of the jack can follow suit.

**MARKERS.** The score is usually kept on a slate.

**PLAYERS.** Any number from two to four can take part, but each is always for himself. The rules for two-hand differ slightly from those for three or four. (See Two-hand Jass.)

**CUTTING.** The first deal is cut for, high wins. The cards rank as in plain suit, and ties cut again, to decide the tie.

**DEALING.** When the pack is cut, at least four cards must be left in each packet. (In Switzerland they cut to the left and deal to the right; but in America this is not necessary.) The cards are dealt three at a time for three rounds, so that each player receives nine cards. When four play, the last card must be turned up for the trump. When three play, the twenty-eighth card is the trump.

**OBJECT OF THE GAME.** The play is to win tricks with cards of pip value in them, especially aces and tens, called game points, and also to meld certain combinations of cards that are found in the player's hand.

When three play, the dealer may exchange his nine cards for the nine that are left on the table, but he must surrender the turned up trump among those nine cards to any player that holds the six. If the dealer does not wish to exchange, each player in turn to the left may do so. In making the exchange, no card of the nine originally dealt to the player may be kept, not even the six of trumps.

The pip value of the cards won in tricks count for the player at the end of the hand. The following values are for the melds:

Four jacks are worth .....	200
Four aces, kings, queens, or tens.....	100
Five cards of any suit in sequence.....	100
Four cards of any suit in sequence.....	50
Three cards of any suit in sequence.....	20
King and queen of trumps.....	20

The melds are made after the player has played his card to the first trick, whether he wins that trick or not, but the melds are not credited to him on the slate unless he wins at least one trick during the play of the hand.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** When four play it is sometimes permissible for one to pass out, each in turn to the left having the right. The first thing is for the holder of the six of trumps to exchange it for the turned-up trump. The player to the left of the dealer then leads any card he pleases, and each player in turn must follow suit and must head the trick if he can; by trumping if he has none of the suit led. As soon as a card is played, the player makes his meld, announcing its pip value. The winner of the last trick scores five points for it.

**SCORING.** Sometimes 1,000 points is a game, as in pinochle, and the first player to call out wins if he is correct; if not he loses. Sometimes in three or four-hand, it is agreed to play some number of deals divisible by four, usually 12 or 16. These are indicated by cross marks on the slate, each arm representing a deal. The two players with the higher scores at the end of the hand each rub off a mark and the one who is first to rub off all his marks is the winner, or the last to wipe off is stuck, according to agreement. Any one failing to get as many as 21 points in meld and play is set back a mark.

## TWO-HAND JASS.

When only two play, the game closely resembles American pinochle, the winner of each trick drawing a card from the top of the stock, the loser drawing the next one. All melds are made immediately after winning a trick and before drawing from the stock, only one meld at a time being allowed. It is not necessary to follow suit to anything until the stock is exhausted, after which all melds cease and the second player to each trick must win it if he can, but the jack of trumps still has the privilege of renouncing if a plain suit is led.

## PATIENCE POKER

As its name implies, this is a form of solitaire, but it may be managed so as to provide a pleasing competition for any number of players. Both forms of the game will be described, the solitaire first.

**CARDS.** The full pack of fifty-two cards is shuffled and cut. Keeping it face down in the left hand, the top card is turned up and laid upon the table. The next card is turned up and laid in such a position that it touches the first one, either on one of its four edges, or one of its four corners. The third card must touch one or other of the two already on the table in the same manner, and so on until twenty-five cards have been drawn and placed, but the twenty-five must be so arranged as to form a square of five cards each way.

As no card can be moved from its original position, as soon as there are cards enough in either direction, up and down, or from left to right, to make a row of five, no more cards can be laid beyond that point, as it would transgress the limits of the square.

**OBJECT OF THE GAME.** The aim of the player is to place each card as it comes from the top of the pack in the most advantageous position for combining with other cards, either already there or hoped for, so that each row of five cards, up and down, or right to left, shall be a poker hand of some value.

**VALUE OF THE HANDS.** The various hands possible in poker are given a counting value, supposed to be in proportion to the difficulty of getting them. There are three systems of counting in common use, the English differing slightly from the American, both in value and in rank. The various scoring values are here given:

One pair.....	2	1	1
Two pairs.....	5	2	3
Triplets .....	10	7	6
Straights .....	15	9	12
Flushes .....	20	5	5
Full hands.....	25	12	10
Four of a kind.....	50	20	16
Straight flush.....	75	30	30
Royal flush.....	100	50	30

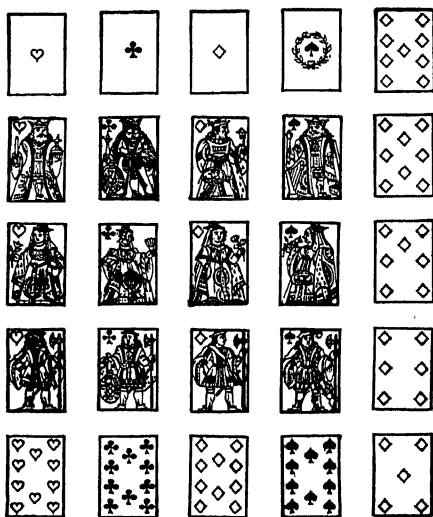
The first column given is the American system of counting by fives, after one pair, retaining the regular poker rank of the hands. The second column is the American system that puts the straight next to the full hand, and the flush between two pairs and a triplet. The third column is the English system, which ranks the straight above the full hand.

As no person has as yet come forward with any figures to show which combination is easier to get in patience poker, nor the proportion of one hand to the other, these figures are all guess work, and players may adopt any values they please.

As soon as the tableau is complete, with five rows of five cards each, the value of each of the ten hands the tableau contains is found and the total put down. The object of the solitaire player usually is to see how many tableaus he needs to reach a grand total of 500 points.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** Experience has shown that it pays to keep certain classes of hand in one section, either left to right or up and down. Many players put all the flushes in the vertical columns, and build the pairs, triplets and fours from right to left. Straights are uncertain quantities unless they are flush also and are seldom played for.

Each card has a double value, and it may help to make up two hands of high scoring power, if well placed. The highest possible point value for a tableau would probably be five hands of four of a kind and five straight flushes, four of which would be royal, like this:



The odds against the cards coming from the stock in such order as to make a tableau like this possible would be enormous,



but there are many sets of twenty-five cards that can be rearranged so as to make a much higher count than that actually arrived at in the solitaire. The player's skill consists in anticipating the possibilities that certain cards will be drawn and in so arranging his table that if the hoped for card comes out, the most advantageous place will be found open for it.

**TWO OR MORE PLAYERS.** Any number can play this game, the only limitation being the number of packs available and space enough on the table for each one to lay out his own tableau. One player is selected as the "caller" and he shuffles his pack and presents it to be cut. In the meantime each of the others sorts his individual pack into sequence and suit, so as to be able to pick out any named card without unnecessary delay.

**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The caller starts by taking off his top card and placing it face up on the table, at the same time announcing aloud its suit and rank, as "Seven of clubs." This makes it unnecessary for the others to watch the cards the caller draws.

Each player picks out his seven of clubs and places it on the table in front of him, face up, as a starter for his tableau. Suppose the next card called is the ten of diamonds. As each player can place that card in any one of eight different positions with regard to the seven of clubs, and the next card after that in any one of a dozen positions, it must be evident that although the twenty-five cards called will be the same for every tableau, the resulting poker combinations may be vastly different.

**SCORING.** Each player is credited with the value of his tableau, and then the duty of being caller passes to the left. The game is at an end when an agreed number of deals have been played, or at the expiration of a specified time, the highest total score being the winner.

---

## SOLITAIRE CRIBBAGE.

This game may be played by one person or by several, two to four making an interesting game, either as partners or each for himself.

The individual player takes a full pack of fifty-two cards, shuffles and cuts, and deals off three for himself, two for his crib, and then three more for himself. Taking up the six, he sorts them and discards for the crib, just as if the two cards already there had been laid off by an opponent. The pack is then cut for the starter.

There is no play, and the hand is turned up and counted, scoring it on a regular cribbage board. The crib is then counted and scored. Leaving the starter still face up on the top of the pack, the eight cards in hand and crib are thrown aside. For the next deal, the player gives himself three cards from the top of the pack, one of which was the starter on the last deal, then two for the crib and three more for himself, discarding for the crib, cutting a starter, counting and scoring hand and crib as before.

This is continued until only four cards are left, one of them being the starter for the last deal. Turn up these four cards and count them as a hand.

The game is usually 91 points, and the object of the solitaire player is to see if he can reach the game hole without going through the pack more than once. If he does not reach with six hands and cribs, each with a starter, and one hand of four cards without a starter, he has failed to get the solitaire.

**WHEN TWO OR MORE PLAY.** The object is now to see which player or partnership can get the greatest number of points in going through the pack once, each playing his own solitaire with his individual pack, but keeping level with his opponents in the matter of hands and deals.

It is usual for each to cut the starter for the other and then to verify the count of the other's hands and cribs. If one reaches 91 before the other gets round past 60, it is reckoned as a double game. If neither side reaches 91 before the pack runs out, the player that comes nearer to it wins. When two play against two as partners, each takes an adversary and plays against him individually, the scores being balanced at the end by adding those of the partners together.

## RUSSIAN BANK.

This is now generally recognized as the best game ever invented for two players. It is a form of double solitaire, and may be played with one or two packs. The game with two packs is the more scientific, but is rather long, complicated, and sometimes ends in a draw. The number of cards that one has to watch, fifteen to twenty, is a serious handicap to some persons.

## WITH TWO PACKS

**CARDS.** Two full packs of 52 cards each are used, which must be of different colored backs, so as to be readily separated again after the game is finished. Small patience cards are best.

**PLAYERS.** Two players sit opposite each other. One is known as the dealer, the other as the pone. The game is sometimes played as a consultation, two against two; but the advisor is not allowed to call stops; only to suggest plays.

**CUTTING.** Either pack may be spread and drawn from for the first deal, choice of cards and seats. The lower cut wins, and ace is low in cutting. Ties cut again. A player exposing more than one card must cut again.

**STAKES.** The game is for so much a point, the average value being about fifty. Games usually last at least half an hour.

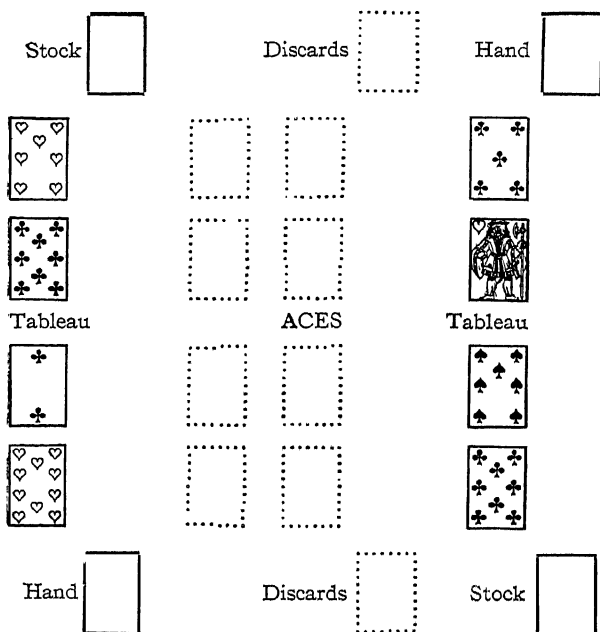
**DEALING.** Each player shuffles his adversary's pack; cuts it, and passes it across the table. Each player simultaneously deals out 12 cards (in some places 13) face down, one at a time, in a pile to his right. This is his *Stock*. Each then deals four cards face up, in a vertical column on the table to his right. These eight cards form the basis of the *Tableau*, and must be far enough apart to leave room for two vertical rows of aces, which will be the start of the *Foundations*. The remaining 36 cards are then laid face down on the player's left, and form his *Hand*. There must be room enough between the stock and the hand for a *Discard Pile*. The layout will then have the appearance shown in the diagram on page 714.

**IRREGULARITIES IN DEALING.** Each player must see that his opponent lays off the full complement of cards for his stock. If too many are laid off, the error cannot be rectified after the first card is turned up for play. If too few, a card must be taken from the hand, if the tableau cards are already exposed; if too many, a card must be transferred to the hand. The 36 cards for the hand should be counted before play begins, to be sure that the pack is complete. Duplicates or missing cards render the deal void.

**OBJECTS OF THE GAME.** The object of the game is to get the entire 52 cards of the player's own pack distributed

on the tableau, foundations, or the adversary's cards, by building them in sequences.

**SCORING.** The player who first gets rid of all his cards wins 30 points bonus for the game, to which he adds 2 points for each card left in his opponent's stock, if any, and 1 point for every card in his opponent's hand and discards. If one player abandons the game, he forfeits 20 points, in addition to the 30, and the payments for cards held. If neither player can get rid of all his cards, which sometimes happens through a stock being blocked, it is a drawn game. A player cannot force a draw by refusing to play cards that can be played, when running through the hand for the last time.



**METHOD OF PLAYING.** The non-dealer or pone has the first play, and begins by removing any aces found in the tableau to the space for foundations. It is usual for each player to place the aces from his own pack to his right. Any cards which are in sequence and suit with these aces, such as the deuce and trey, must be removed from the tableau and placed on the

aces, before any other cards are touched, under penalty of being "stopped."

There being no aces face up, or no further builds upon such aces, the player may proceed to shift any cards in the tableau from one place to another in order to build in descending sequence, changing colors. A red six goes on a black seven; or a black jack on a red queen. These plays are not compulsory, and cards placed may be taken back or placed elsewhere without penalty, but cards placed in the foundations cannot be moved again.

**FOUNDATIONS AND STOPS.** If a card which should be placed on the foundations is placed elsewhere, or if a card is touched when there is another card that should go on the foundations, the opponent may call "Stop," which entitles him to take the turn to play. A card not placed but playable on the foundations is a stop when the fingers leave it. A card not playable on the foundations is a stop the moment it is touched, if there is a playable foundation card. If there are two cards equally playable on the foundations, the player may take his choice. No matter where foundation cards are shown, on either player's stock or discard pile, they must be played. When a stop is called, the card in error must be returned to its place.

**THE TABLEAU.** The player is not obliged to build on the tableau, even if there are cards that fit. Only one card may be moved at a time. If there are two or more in a pile, only the top one can be moved. Then the one under it is available. There being no moves available in the tableau, or the player not wishing to make them, he turns up the top card from his stock. If this is not playable, or undesirable, he leaves it on his stock, face up, and turns up the top card from his hand. If he does not play this either, he lays it down, face up, as the start of his discard pile. As long as he can play cards into the tableau or foundations, he continues to turn up from hand and stock. If the card on the top of his stock is not playable, it blocks that pile, and cards must be turned from the hand only, and transferred to the discard pile.

**SPACES.** The moment a space is made in the tableau, it must be filled immediately from the player's stock, if there are any stock cards left. Failure to fill a space from the stock acts as a stop. Spaces cannot be filled from the discard pile, but they may be filled by cards as turned up from the hand.

**THE DISCARDS.** The top card of the discard pile is always available for play. If it will fit the foundations, it must be used at once, even if it is on the opponent's pile, under penalty of a stop. As soon as the hand is exhausted, the discard pile is turned face down, and becomes the hand again. After it has been so turned down and run through three times, if there is no play, the game is drawn.

**FEEDING.** In addition to building in reverse colors on the tableau, each player has the privilege of feeding his opponent cards which are both sequence and suit with the top card of that opponent's stock or discard pile. Suppose the 8 of spades is face up. The opponent may place on it the 7 or 9 of spades, and on that again the 8 or 10, whichever fits, and so on. Sometimes quite a sequence can be fed in this manner. These cards may be taken from any part of the tableau, or from the player's hand or stock or discard pile; but not from the foundations, and such cards cannot be transferred from the opponent's discard to his stock, or his stock to his discard. Such feeding is optional, and it is manifestly useless to feed cards that can be at once returned to their places; but feeding from the tableau is often useful in making spaces.

**FALSE PLAYS.** As long as the player can get rid of cards by placing them, he continues to turn up and play. As soon as he can go no further, he is automatically stopped, and his opponent takes up the play. If a card is placed wrongly, such as a black card on a black card, or a 6 on an 8, the opponent must call attention to the error at once and have it corrected. If there is a proper place for the card, it must be put there, otherwise there is no penalty. If the error is not corrected at once, it must remain.

**SPREADING.** Players are not allowed to look at any cards that are face down, in hand or stock; but cards on the top of the stock, which are face up, or those in the discard pile, may be spread for examination, without disturbing their order. A player cannot ask to see the extended cards of his opponent, unless the opponent extends them for his own information, and then only at the same time. If more than one card is looked at, all in that pile must be shown if demanded. Notice to extend before playing must be given if there is a play in order on the foundations.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR GOOD PLAY.** The chief element of success in Russian Bank is so to arrange the tableau that spaces can be made, and that cards from the stock can be rapidly got rid of. It is always better to play from the stock than the hand, as the hand cannot be blocked. As kings cannot be placed anywhere but in a space, or on the foundations, they must be provided for if on the stock pile. It is often possible to make a great many changes in the tableau, so as to dig out cards for the foundations. The number of spaces controls the number of cards that can be moved from one pile to another. For instance: the entire sequence from the 7 to the J can be moved over on to a Q, if there are three spaces. Feeding the opponent's stock and discard piles is very important; and, toward the end, watching for stops is essential, as a slip gives the opponent the turn to play.

WITH ONE PACK

**CARDS AND DEAL.** A single pack of 52 cards is used. After cutting for the first deal, and choice of seats, the cards are presented to be cut, and two are given to each player, then three at a time, all face down, until the pack is exhausted. This gives each 26 cards, which are taken up without looking at them, and held face down in the left hand.

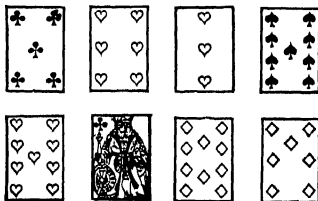
**THE FOUNDATIONS.** The non-dealer starts by laying out four cards, face up, in a row in front of him, horizontally.

**THE PLAY.** If he can make any changes in these four cards by playing one upon the other in both sequence and suit, such as the three of spades on the four, or the four on the three, whichever he likes, he immediately fills the space by turning up the top card from his hand, and he then proceeds to make any further changes possible, continuing to turn up cards as long as he can make plays. When he can make no further plays, he lays the last card turned up from his hand face up on the table as the beginning of his discard pile. It is now his opponent's turn to play.

The second player now turns up four cards in a row from his hand, and proceeds to make any changes possible by building in sequence and suit on any of the eight piles in the tableau. As long as he can play he continues to turn up cards from his hand. When he has no further play, he lays the last card turned up from his hand as the first of his discard pile.



Opponent's Discard



Dealer's Discard



If there were no changes available for the first player, the tableau would have the appearance of the diagram on page 717 when eight cards were down and two discard piles started.

**SEQUENCES.** All sequences are continuous and round-the-corner. An ace may be played on a king, or a king on an ace, and if one pile runs from the ten to the ace, the deuce may continue the run; but the cards must all be of the same suit. As soon as all 13 of a suit have been played, the pile is turned face down, but still occupies a space.

**FEEDING.** Each player may feed his opponent's discard pile by placing upon it cards which are in sequence and suit, but cards must not be taken from the tableau for that purpose, although they may be fed to the opponent as turned up, instead of being used in the tableau. He may then have to pay for them, if the game is run out before he gets another chance to play.

**SHIFTING.** The chief skill in this form of Russian Bank is in a good memory of the cards passed into the discards, and good judgment in shifting sequences by reversing them, when there is a space. All the cards in one pile may be moved to another pile if they fit. The 4 to the 9 of hearts may be shifted to the 10, for instance.

**SPACES.** A space must be filled from the top card of the discard pile before another card is turned up; but before filling a space it may be used to great advantage upon occasion in reversing a sequence. Suppose the spade sequence runs from the 6 to the 10, with the 6 on the top, and you remember that you have passed the spade J into your discards. By placing the spade 6 in a space, and reversing the other cards, you bring the 10 to the top, ready for your jack, which will be available when you turn your discard pile upside down, after your hand is exhausted. On the contrary, if you remember an opponent's cards, you can often block them by reversing a sequence, so that they will not fit when he turns them up. It should be obvious that if you have a space, and a card fits under a sequence, it may be placed there, instead of putting the single card in the space and lifting the sequence on to the top of it.

**STOPS.** There is no calling stops in this game. If a person overlooks a possible play or shift, that is his loss.

**DISCARDS.** Only the top card of the discard pile is available for play. When that is played, the one under it may be used. Either player may spread his own discards, if he is willing to allow his opponent to see them; but he cannot demand to see the extended discards of his adversary when they are not spread by that player. It is better to trust to the memory.



**STAKES.** The game is usually for so much a point, 30 being added for a game won, the one who first gets rid of all his cards being paid one point for each card his opponent has failed to get rid of, in hand or discards.

## TWENTY POINT

### MAH JONG

This game, originally imported from China, passed through three stages in America. On account of the smallness of the results, shortness of the games and the continual pulling down and rebuilding of the walls, the Chinese game rapidly lost interest. Two attempts to improve it were made, one being known as the "Cleared Suit Game," which proved to be little better than drawing beans out of a bag, and required no intellectual effort, being simply a gamble. The next was the "One Double Game," which at first promised to be a little better than the cleared suits, but as all the doubles were matter of luck except clearing a suit, intelligent players soon got tired of it and abandoned it.

The game has now been entirely remodelled, and the absurdity of playing for sets that had no value has been eliminated. In Twenty-point everything counts, pairs, sequences, and triplets, and the Flowers are kept in the hand, to be used in the same way as the Dragons, three of the same kind forming a set and giving a double, or two doubles if one of them is the player's own number. This gives us a game that is full of interesting situations, with unlimited opportunities for the display of good judgment, and ample reward for courageous play. This is the game described in what follows:

Twenty-point is usually played upon an ordinary card table, which should be at least 30 inches square, so as to give sufficient space for the paraphernalia required.

**THE SET.** The game is played with a set of 144 tiles, which are divided into seven groups or suits. The three principal suits are Bamboos, Characters, and Dots (or Circles).



Bamboos



Characters



Dots

The predominating color of the Bamboo set is green; of the Characters, red; and of the Dots, blue. Each set contains four duplicates of the numbers from 1 to 9, making 36 tiles in each suit, or 108 in the three. The 1's and 9's are called Terminals,

and are worth twice as much as the tiles numbered from 2 to 8, which are called Simples. Terminals are usually classed as "honours," on account of their enhanced value.

There are 16 tiles that are called Winds, or Direction pieces, comprising four duplicates of each of the four cardinal points of the compass.



The color of this suit is dark blue, and the four directions correspond to the positions of the players in the game, and also answer to their numbers: E being No. 1; S, No. 2; W, No. 3, and N, No. 4. These tiles are the only ones that fluctuate in value, according to the player holding them, and the "Round" being played.

There are 12 tiles which are known as Dragons, comprising four duplicates of each of the three colors.



Red



White



Green

These 12 tiles and the 16 Winds are called Honours. In addition to these there are 8 tiles called Flowers. These are used in the same way as the red or green Dragons, but each Flower has an intrinsic scoring value of 4 points, and any player holding the numbered Flower that corresponds to his position at the table gets a double for it.

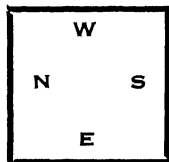


Four of these have the numeral in red, the other four are numbered in green. The numbers correspond to the positions of the players at the table and to the Winds. A player sitting West and holding a No. 3, is said to have his own number Flower. Two of this number would be a pair of his own Flower.

There are usually four extra white tiles in the set, but these are merely to replace tiles lost or broken. They should be kept separately in the drawer for the counters and dice. There is also a Ming box, small cylindrical affair, containing four discs marked with the four Winds. These are to mark the rotation of the "Rounds." If Chinese dice are used, the blank face stands for 1.

**THE PLAYERS.** Mah Jong is strictly a game for four players, who throw two dice to determine their seats at the table. The highest throw has the choice and is known as East; the next higher throw is South, and sits on the right of E; the next higher is West, and sits opposite E. The Fourth is North.

Each player is for himself, there being no partnerships. As long as the player who starts as E wins, he retains his position; but as soon as any other player wins, the position of E passes to the one who was S, and the one who was E becomes N, and so on. In this way the position of E passes round the table until it comes again to the player who started as E. That ends a "Round."

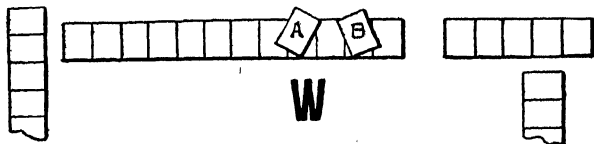


**ROUNDS.** During the first Round E is called the Dominating Wind, and the four tiles marked E have a special value, being raised to the scoring value of Dragons. Suppose Mr. Jones is the first E. When he loses that position and it gets round to him again, the Dominating Wind changes to S, and those four tiles are raised to the value of Dragons, the tiles marked E being no longer of any special value. When the position of E gets round to Mr. Jones the second time, the Dominating Wind changes to West; and the third time Mr. Jones becomes E, it changes to North. That ends the game. At least 16 games must have been played, and as many more as E held his position by winning while he was E. For any further play, seats are thrown for again.

**BUILDING THE WALL.** The players having taken their seats, all the tiles are placed on the table face down and thoroughly shuffled by all four players at once. Each player then takes tiles at random and builds a wall 18 tiles long and 2 high. The four walls are then pushed together toward the center of the table, forming a hollow square.

**BREAKING THE WALL.** E then takes the two dice and throws them. Starting with himself as No. 1, he counts from left to right until he comes to the player indicated by the number thrown. If the number is 5 or 9, it is E's wall; if 3, 7, or 11, it is W; 2, 6, or 10, it is S; if 4, 8, or 12, it is N. The player whose number is thrown takes the two dice and throws them again, adding the total of the second throw to the first throw made by E. Starting at the right-hand end of his wall he counts the stacks from right to left until he arrives at the stack indicated by the two throws. If the number exceeds 18, he goes on to the next wall on his left.

Upon arriving at the stack indicated, he lifts those two tiles and places them on the top of the wall to the right of the opening thus made. These are known as loose tiles. The other side of the opening is called the open end of the wall, or the playing end.

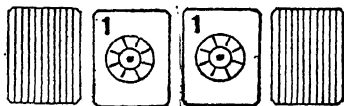


In the diagram, E threw 7 and W threw 6, so W lifted the 13th stack. The lower tile is placed at B and the upper one at A, so that A is the first loose tile to be taken for any purpose.

**THE HANDS.** Each player in turn, beginning with E, draws two stacks, or four tiles at a time from the open end of the wall until each has twelve. Each then takes one, bringing his hand up to thirteen and finally E takes a fourteenth, so as to be ready for his first discard.

**WHEN THREE PLAY,** each takes 12 tiles from the table for his playing hand, before building the walls. This leaves 108 tiles to build three walls, each 18 stacks long, there being no wall on the side of the table where there is no player. The walls are usually pushed into the form of a triangle. In breaking the wall E counts the actual walls, his own being Nos. 1, 4, 7, and 10. Each then takes one tile from the open end, E taking the fourth.

**THE PLAY.** Each player sorts his thirteen tiles into sequence and suit, with the Honours to the left. Racks are commonly used for holding the tiles so that they can be readily seen but not exposed to the opponents. Any player having four of a kind, a "Kong," should show it immediately, and lay the four tiles on the table with the two end tiles turned face down.



Immediately after showing a kong at any stage of the play, the player must draw a loose tile, first taking the one at A, and putting it in his hand without showing it. When both A and B are drawn, two more are put up from that end of the wall.

**THE OBJECT OF THE GAME.** Each player strives to get what is called a Complete Hand, which consists of four "sets" and a pair, and must be at least fourteen tiles. Sets are of two kinds, commonly called "Pungs" and "Chows." A pung is three tiles of the same suit and denomination: such as three 9's of Bamboo, or three S Winds. A kong is four of a kind. A chow is a sequence of not more or less than three tiles of the same suit in numerical order: such as the 5, 6, 7 of Dots. The Winds are never sequences, and sets of Flowers must be of the same color, regardless of their numbers. All sets are either found ready-made in the hand, or are completed by drawing from the wall, or by taking the tiles discarded by other players.

**THE DISCARDS.** E, who starts with fourteen tiles, must discard one of them to start the play, placing it face up in the centre of the table. No one but the player sitting immediately to the right of any discard can take it for a sequence, unless it completes his hand; but any player at the table who has already in his hand two (or three) of the same suit and denomination, can call "Pung" and claim the discard. If two players want the same tile, the pung has the preference. If any player wants it to complete his hand he has preference over every one. In case of ties, to complete the hand, the one nearer to the right of the discarder gets it.

When a player claims a discard he must never take it into his hand, but must leave it face up on the table and take from his hand the two tiles that complete the set and join them to the claimed discard, leaving the set face up in front of his rack, and discarding some tile to reduce his hand to thirteen again. A set once grounded cannot be changed in any way or any of the tiles borrowed to form other sets. If a tile is punned, the intervening players, if any, lose their turn.

The moment a discard is made, all previous discards are dead and cannot be used for any purpose; but they are all left face up for reference, although no player is allowed to inform another as to who discarded any particular tile or tiles.

**THE DRAW.** If no one wants the last discard, the player next to the right of the discarder draws a tile from the open end of the wall and puts it into his rack without showing it. He then discards anything he likes to reduce his hand to thirteen again. If the tile drawn completes a set, it is not shown, as sets in the concealed hand are worth twice as much as sets made up from discards and laid on the table.

Each player in turn to the right continues to draw and discard in this manner until some one gets a complete hand, which must be at least fourteen tiles, so that he will have nothing to discard. If no one succeeds in getting a complete hand until the last tile is drawn, all the hands are abandoned and the tiles shuffled again, the position of E passing to the right, as he did not win.

**FORMING FOURS.** There are three ways to get four of a kind. If three are in hand and the fourth discarded by any player, it may be taken and the four laid on the table, all face up, for a kong, the player drawing a loose tile before discarding. If three are already on the table, the fourth cannot be taken from a discard, but if the player draws it from the wall he may add it to the three on the table, turning the pung into a kong. If the three are in hand and the fourth is drawn from the wall, all four may be laid down, the end tiles turned face down, and a loose tile taken. For any kind of a kong, a loose tile must be drawn, or the hand is short.

The player is not obliged to put down all four tiles if he thinks that by laying down three only he might use the fourth, still in his hand, to fill out a sequence in that suit. If some player goes out it is too late to lay down a kong, and the tiles must be counted as three only, even if all four were in hand. A fourth can be added to three on the table at any time immediately after drawing from the wall, and before discarding; but not immediately after using a discard.

Sequences in the same suit may be extended to 6 or 9 tiles. If the 4 5 6 is grounded, it will be worth 2 only, but if the 1 2 3 is drawn and added to it, it becomes a 6-tile Terminal sequence, worth 8. Adding the 7 8 9 would accomplish the same thing. If the Terminal sequence is drawn it should be kept in hand, as the grounded sequence and the in-hand together are worth 10.

**WINNING THE GAME.** In order to win the game, a player must not only have completed four sets and a pair, but his fourteen tiles must have a total value of at least 20 points, exclusive of any bonuses or doubles that may enhance the value of his hand for the final settling. It is this condition that gives the game its name and adds greatly to its possibilities.

As soon as a player completes a hand that complies with these conditions, he announces it by turning all his tiles face up, for examination by his adversaries. If any of the sets laid down were in the concealed part of his hand, he indicates it by placing one of the tiles on the top of the others, to show that he is entitled to score that set as "in hand."

If a sequence begins or ends with a terminal, such as 1 2 3, or 7 8 9, the end tile is placed on the top of the others to show its double value.

The essential pair is never shown until the end of the play, and it may be two of the same denomination and suit, such as two 4's of Dots, or two Winds of the same number or direction, or two Dragons or Flowers of the same colour. It is difficult to win a game when one has twelve tiles in sets, and must match a single tile, therefore players usually plan to have two chances, such as two pairs in hand and only three sets complete.

In order that the player may know when he has at least 20 points in his hand, the table of values on the opposite page (?) should be memorized, or a score card kept on the table for reference. Grounded sets" are those made by taking discards from the table. Sets "In Hand," are made by drawing from the wall, and are not shown until the hand is complete.

## FOSTER'S TWENTY POINT SCORE CARD

(Copyright, 1924, by R. F. FOSTER)

· All Rights Reserved

SIMPLES are the numbers from 2 to 8.

Terminals are the 1's and 9's.

Open Sequences contain no Terminals.

Closed Sequences end with 1 or 9.

Winning hand must have 20 points, counted as follows:

## TRIPLETS AND KONGS.

	<i>Grounded</i>	<i>In hand</i>
Triplet of Simples . . . . .	2	4
Triplet of Terminals, Winds or Dragons . . . . .	4	8
Triplet of both Own and Prevailing Wind . . . . .	8	16
Triplet of Same Colour Flowers . . . . .	12	24
Kong of Simples . . . . .	8	16
Kong of Terminals, Winds or Dragons . . . . .	16	32
Kong of both Own and Prevailing Wind . . . . .	32	64
Kong of Same Coloured Flowers . . . . .	48	96

## SEQUENCES

Open Sequence of 3 Simples . . . . .	2	4
Closed Sequence of 3 Tiles . . . . .	4	8
Open Sequence, 6 Tiles, All Same Suit . . . . .	4	8
Closed Sequence, 6 Tiles, All Same Suit . . . . .	8	16
Sequence of 9 Tiles, All Same Suit . . . . .	12	24

## PAIRS

Any Pair of Simples, Same Suit . . . . .	2
Pair of Terminals, Winds or Dragons . . . . .	4
Pair of Flowers, Same Colour . . . . .	8
Individual Flowers . . . . .	4

It is impossible for a player to have a single Flower in a winning hand, except in one of the two special hands which are allowed to win the game on account of the great difficulty of getting them, a player usually having to sacrifice his chances for a big score in trying for them.

One of these hands is the "Orphans," and consists of fourteen tiles, all different and all Terminals, Winds, Dragons and Flowers. For this there are fifteen tiles available, 6 Terminals, two in each suit; 4 Winds, 3 Dragons, and 2 Flowers. This hand is always concealed until complete, and is called a "Limit Hand" as it is paid the limit regardless of its point value.

The other is also a Limit Hand, but it must have 20 points in it to win. It is called the "Heavenly Twins," and is made up of any seven pairs. In order to count 20, at least three of these pairs must be worth 4 each, or one pair must be Flowers, worth 8.

It being admitted that the winning hand has the necessary 20 points, it is then allowed to add certain bonuses, the first and invariable of which is the 20 points for the complete hand.



**BONUSES FOR WINNING HAND ONLY.**

For winning the game . . . . .	20 Points
For drawing the winning tile . . . . .	2 Points
For filling the only place . . . . .	2 Points
For both filling and drawing . . . . .	4 Points
For winning on a loose-tile draw . . . . .	1 Double
For winning by robbing a kong . . . . .	1 Double
For winning on the last tile of all . . . . .	1 Double
For winning on the first tile drawn . . . . .	3 Doubles

Robbing the kong is completing the hand by taking the 4th tile of a set of 3 already grounded by another player. If he draws the 4th tile, and adds it to the triplet, any player who wants that tile to complete his hand can take it away from him.

In counting bonuses for filling the only place, one must be careful that it is the only place. A sequence open at both ends, such as 4 5 6 7 of Dots, can make the pair at either end. Drawing the third to a pair is not the only place, as the third to the other pair would have done as well.

In addition to these bonuses which only the winning hand can count, there are a number of doubles, which are open to all the players, whether they have the winning hand or not.

**DOUBLES FOR ALL HANDS**

For Own Flower, either color . . . . .	1 Double
For both Own Flowers, each color . . . . .	2 Doubles
3 or 4 Dragons or Flowers of same colour . . . . .	1 Double
3 or 4 of Own or of Prevailing Wind . . . . .	1 Double
3 or 4 of Both Own and Prevailing Wind . . . . .	2 Doubles
Only One Suit, with Winds, Dragons, or Flowers . . . . .	1 Double
All Terminals, with Winds, Dragons, and Flowers . . . . .	1 Double
Four Sets, all Triplets, and/or all Kongs . . . . .	1 Double
Four Sets, all Sequences . . . . .	1 Double
All One Suit, no Winds, Dragons, or Flowers . . . . .	3 Doubles
All Terminals, no Winds, Dragons or Flowers . . . . .	3 Doubles
All Winds, Dragons and Flowers, no Suit Tiles . . . . .	3 Doubles

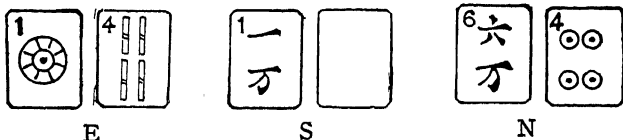
All Terminals means nothing but 1s and 9s, no Simple; but for one double the hand may have honour tiles with the 1s and 9s.

There are many hands in which a player has four sets, all sequences or no sequences, completed, and is only waiting for the pair when some one else shows a winning hand. The non-winning player gets the double just the same. For a Wind to be both Own and Prevailing it must be the Wind of the player's position at the table and the Wind of the Round at the same time. Four Dragons or Flowers are worth no more than three, so far as the double goes, but if one of the Flowers is the player's own, that is an extra double in itself.

All doubles are cumulative, so that three doubles gives one eight times the value of the sets and bonuses, if any. It is not uncommon for a non-winning player to have five or six doubles, and the art of winning at this game is to play more for big doubling hands, rather than for winning with a small hand, unless there is no chance for anything big. Then the best policy is to get out as quickly as you can with anything that counts 20.

The winner having shown his hand and the others having satisfied themselves that it is correctly counted, each pays him in full, and he pays nobody, no matter what they have. If E wins, he is paid double, if he is not the winner he either pays or gets double the difference between his hand and each of the others.

**SETTLING UP.** The winner having been paid, each of the others counts his hand for anything he may have in it, and marks the amount by placing some tiles from the discard in front of him. Suppose W was the winner and E had 14 points, S 10, and N 64, marked this way:



S being low man pays twice the difference, 4 points doubled, to E, and 54 points to N. E then pays twice the difference, 50 doubled, to N. This is because E wins or loses double.

**COUNTERS.** Counters for keeping the scores come with the sets. They are often four different lengths, and the longest are the most valuable, having 5 red dots on the ends. The next have one red dot, the next 10 black dots and the shortest 2 black dots.

2 with 5 red dots are worth 500 each	1,000
9 with 1 red dot are worth 100 each	900
8 with 5 black dots are worth 10 each	80
10 with 2 black dots are worth 2 each	20

Total . . . . . 2,000

These may be reckoned at various values, making the lowest worth 10 instead of 2, for instance, and counting the scores at the nearest 10, 44 being 40, and 45 or 46, 50. Many varieties of counters are now on the market, small round ones with holes punched in them that are piled on four short upright rods being the most convenient of all.

**LIMITS.** As the hands run the scores up to very high figures occasionally, it is usual to set a limit to the stakes. If this is 300, and E pays or loses double, it is called the 300-600 limit game. Or it may be 500-1,000.

**ERRORS.** As Twenty Point is not a partnership game, any one calling attention to a mistake made by another player, such as failing to draw a loose tile, after having grounded a kong, or drawing after taking a discard, or discarding twice, may be penalized 50 points. If a player overcounts his hand, he must be corrected before he is paid. If he undercounts, it is no one's business to correct him, and any player correcting him may be called upon to pay for the two others who said nothing, the difference between the score claimed and the corrected score.

In case a player is found to have too many tiles, he must play out the hand and pay all losses in full, as he cannot win anything or demand any settlement of differences. If his hand is short, he cannot win, but may count what he has to offset the scores of the two others who did not win. Short hands cannot claim a double for all one suit, or all honours, or all 1's and 9's.

**PENALTIES.** If any player has nine tiles of the same suit, or nine honours, grounded, showing that he will probably have a three-double hand if he completes it in that suit, any player discarding the tile that puts him out must pay both for himself and the others. The hands are then abandoned without any settlement of differences among the three that did not win. If the discard does not put the player out, or if it turns out that he did not hold a three-double hand, there is no penalty. The only excuse is that the player who discarded had nothing else in his hand but that suit, or that he was "set" for a three-double hand himself, wanting only one tile to complete it.

If a player incorrectly calls game, he may take up his tiles again on discovery of the error, provided no other player has been led by the error into throwing up his hand. In that case the false caller must pay each of the others the limit, and the hands are all thrown up.















UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



112 380

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY